Khalid Rehman Hakeem
Mohd Sayeed Akhtar *Editors*

Plant, Soil and Microbes

Volume 2: Mechanisms and Molecular Interactions

Springer

Plant, Soil and Microbes

Khalid Rehman Hakeem • Mohd Sayeed Akhtar
Editors

Plant, Soil and Microbes

Volume 2: Mechanisms and Molecular Interactions

Springer

Editors
Khalid Rehman Hakeem
Faculty of Forestry
Universiti Putra Malaysia
Serdang, Malaysia

Mohd Sayeed Akhtar
Department of Botany
Gandhi Faiz-e-Aam College
Shahajahanpur, Uttar Pradesh, India

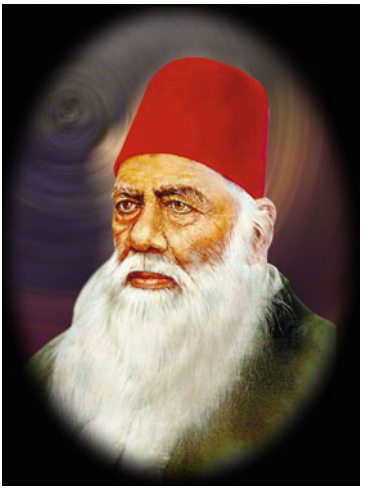
ISBN 978-3-319-29572-5 ISBN 978-3-319-29573-2 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2

Library of Congress Control Number: 2016930561

Printed on acid-free paper

This Springer imprint is published by Springer Nature
The registered company is Springer International Publishing AG Switzerland

This Book is Dedicated to



Sir Syed Ahmad Khan
(1817-1898)

A great visionary, statesman, Muslim reformer of the 19th century and founder of Aligarh Muslim University, India

Foreword

Worldwide considerable research in the area of belowground plant-microbe interaction is quite important to enrich soil fertility and in the enhancement of crop productivity. It seems imperative to understand the modifications of belowground interactions under specific plant and microbe communication system accomplished by molecular dialogues. It is, therefore, essential to decode and explore this molecular language so as to establish a successful tripartite relationship among plant, soil and microbes. The soils are the product of rocks, minerals and organic matters with a pivotal role in ecology. Most of the plants depend on soil, but plants and their associated microorganisms are also important component together in the formation and sustainability of rhizospheric ecology. The understanding about plant, soil and microbe interaction is limited; molecular mechanisms and other several consequences may reveal with other process yet to be explored. This book entitled *Plant, Soil and Microbe, Volume 2: Mechanisms and Molecular Interactions* deals with how plant-microbe interactions occur using molecular pattern and applied in environment scavenging such as pesticide degradation and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) remediation. The importance of fungal symbiosis, tripartite interactions among plant-*Trichoderma*-pathogen with special reference to proteomic tools in biocontrol, has been described. The mechanism of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria-soil-root interaction, their ability towards growth, secondary metabolite production and nutrient uptake in medicinal and aromatic plants has been suitably mentioned. The bacterial determinants and plant defence induction in sustainable agriculture have an added advantage to strengthen the concept of biocontrol of deleterious phytopathogens. The elaborative description on the molecular identification of phytoplasma diseases in ornamental plants is itself appealing. The introductory account on allelochemicals from ascocarp of *Tuber* species is a point of difference. Besides, mycorrhizal associations, the biocontrol potential of *Bacillus thuringiensis*, genomics of plant-soil microbial diversity and the importance of root exudates in rhizosphere ecosystem and phytohormones in abiotic stress tolerance of plants have been elaborated. It is oceanic to gain update in the quest for knowledge of plant-soil-microbial interactions and their applications in a befitting manner. The editors *Khalid Rehman Hakeem* and *Mohd. Sayeed Akhtar* have put some

outstanding efforts to compile subject experts' contribution in a very attractive manner with an understanding of sequences of the chapters. *Plant, Soil and Microbe, Volume 2: Mechanisms and Molecular Interactions* includes broad contributions from all dimensions of agronomy. Specifically, this volume describes a holistic view of plant-microbe interactions, and its recent molecular mechanism emerged from studying multi-tropic interaction. The editors have immensely provided a solid foundation of the subject interesting for the researchers involved in soil microbiology, plant pathology, ecology and agronomy.

Faculty of Life Science
Department of Botany and Microbiology
Gurukul Kangri University
Hardwar, Uttarakhand, India

D.K. Maheshwari

Preface

Plants are exposed to a huge diversity of microbes in the environment. Owing to the broad range of microbes, a complex set of molecular mechanisms mediates the plant-microbe interactions. These interactions have been seen to possess both negative and positive effects on either or both the members. Considering the importance of these ground rhizospheric microorganisms in the plant disease protection, it came into highlight from research that the combined application of these microorganisms is more beneficial than the use of a single agent and provides a better management against the soil-borne plant pathogens. The interaction of these microorganisms also provides an overview about the biological functions of soil and its interaction with the plant-microbe system, nutrient management, biogeochemical cycling, water various environmental condition in response to biotic and abiotic stresses, signalling of molecules during host-pathogen interaction, role of phytohormones against the environmental stresses and the major challenges in the formulation of microorganisms for the biocontrol products. The molecular approach of these microorganisms is also the basis for understanding the mechanism involved in disease suppression by these hidden underground beneficial microbes.

This volume with 18 chapters from experts on the subject describes a holistic view of plant-microbe interactions and its recent molecular mechanism emerged from studying multi-tropic interaction. It is imperative to understand the modifications of belowground interactions under specific plant and microbe communication system accomplished by molecular dialogues. We hope that the book will be helpful for the graduate students, teachers, researchers and industry persons, who are interested in soil microbiology, plant pathology, ecology, environmental sciences and agronomy.

We are highly grateful to all our contributors for readily accepting our invitation for not only sharing their knowledge and research but for venerably integrating their expertise in dispersed information from diverse fields in composing the chapters and enduring editorial suggestions to finally produce this venture. We greatly

appreciate their dedication. We are also thankful to Prof. (Dr.) D. K. Maheshwari for his suggestions and writing the foreword for this volume. We also thank Springer-International team for their generous cooperation at every stage of the book production.

Serdang, Malaysia — Khalid Rehman Hakeem
Shahjahanpur, Uttar Pradesh, India — Mohd Sayeed Akhtar

Contents

The original version of the book frontmatter was revised. The spelling of the second editor, Mohd Sayeed Akhtar's name was corrected in the Table of Contents. The Erratum to the book frontmatter is available at 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_19

About the Editors

Khalid Rehman Hakeem, PhD is working as a fellow researcher at the Faculty of Forestry, Universiti Putra Malaysia (UPM), Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia, and also visiting professor at Fatih University, Istanbul, Turkey. He has obtained his MSc (Environmental Botany) as well as PhD (Botany) from Jamia Hamdard, New Delhi, India, in 2006 and 2011, respectively. He did his postdoctorate in the fields of forest dynamics and biotechnological studies from Universiti Putra Malaysia from 2012 to 2013. Dr. Hakeem has more than 8 years of teaching and research experience in plant ecophysiology, biotechnology and molecular biology as well as in ecological and environmental sciences. Recipient of several fellowships at both national and international levels, Dr. Hakeem has so far edited and authored more than 15 books with international publishers. He has also to his credit more than 100 publications in peer-reviewed international journals, including 35 book chapters with International publishers. He is also an editorial board member and reviewer of several high-impact international journals. Dr. Hakeem is currently engaged in studying the plant processes at ecophysiological as well as proteomic levels.

Mohd. Sayeed Akhtar, PhD is working as an assistant professor in Gandhi Faiz-E-Aam College, Shahjahanpur, affiliated to M.J.P. Rohailkhand University, Bareilly, U.P., India. He has received his PhD degree from Aligarh Muslim University (AMU), India, in 2008. He has conducted his postdoctoral research at the Botanical Institute, University of Basel (BIB), Switzerland (2008–2010), and Chonbuk National University (CBNU), Republic of Korea, in 2011, respectively. He also works as an assistant professor, Department of Biology, College of Natural Sciences, Jimma University, Jimma, Ethiopia (form 2011 to 2014), and fellow researcher UDQ9 at the Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Universiti Putra Malaysia (UPM), Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia (from 2014 to 2015). Dr. Akhtar has more than 12 years of research and teaching experience in soil microbiology, applied microbiology, environmental microbiology, molecular biology, plant pathology and plant nanobiotechnology. Dr. Akhtar has received several prestigious fellowships at national and international levels. His promising approach and dedication stands him in the row of foremost scientists in the field of plant-microbe interaction and plant

nanobiotechnology. He is author and coauthor of about 50 research articles in peer-reviewed journals, contributed 12 book chapters in the books published by Springer-Verlag and also edited 4 books with international publishers. He is serving the scientific community as editorial board member and reviewer of several high-impact international journals. His current research is focused on the rhizospheric plant-microbe interactions and their molecular biotechnology, bioremediation, biomineralization, nano-fertilizers and nanobiotechnology.

Plant-Microbe Interactions: A Molecular Approach

Mustafeez Mujtaba Babar, Sumayyah Fareed Khan, Muhammad Kazim Zargaham, Najam-us-Sahar Sadaf Zaidi, and Alvina Gul

Abstract Plants thrive in a complex environment comprising of various biotic and abiotic agents. Like all biological systems, these agents tend to interact with the plant body. Microorganisms form a major portion of the ecosystem and have been found to inoculate or infect members of all the kingdoms. Plants and microbes have developed molecular mechanisms to interact with one another and attain the maximum benefit from the interactions. This mutualistic relationship provides benefit not only to the microbes but also to the plants. Based upon this complex molecular interplay, a number of mechanisms have been studied and are currently being employed for the agricultural, environmental, and health benefits. The principles of biofertilization and bioremediation utilize the plant-microbe interactions for the survival of the two players along with contributing to the food chain and the ecosystem. Similarly, the secondary metabolites obtained from these organisms contribute to human medical and agricultural welfare. These processes are regulated by a variety of biological, physical, chemical, and environmental factors, the study of which can be helpful in exploiting better outcomes from the interaction. The advent of modern techniques has helped in deciphering the role of various molecular players of the plant-microbe interactions. Moreover, they can be employed for regulating the plant-microbe interaction for improved efficiency. The current chapter discusses the molecular mechanisms involved in the plant-microbe interactions exhibited in biofertilization, bioremediation, biocontrol, and induced systemic resistance. Afterwards, the factors affecting the molecular machinery involved in these pathways have been discussed. Toward the end, a brief introduction of the genetic

M.M. Babar
Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences, National University of Sciences and Technology, Islamabad, Pakistan

Department of Life Sciences, Abasyn University, Islamabad, Pakistan

S.F. Khan • Najam-us-Sahar S. Zaidi • A. Gul (✉)
Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences, National University of Sciences and Technology, Islamabad, Pakistan
e-mail: alvina_gul@yahoo.com

M.K. Zargaham
The University of Lahore, Islamabad Campus, Islamabad, Pakistan

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_1

manipulative techniques and their applications in the plant-microbe interactions has been presented.

Keywords Molecular interaction • Rhizosphere • Biofertilization • Bioremediation • Genetic engineering

1 Introduction

Plants and microbes are the two most abundant organisms in the biosphere. They exist even in the geographical regions that are otherwise not inhabited by humans and other larger animals. The interaction between these organisms has, hence, long been established. This relationship has been seen to possess both negative and positive effects on either or both the members. Infection of plants with bacterial, viral, or fungal pathogens often leads to disease and death of the plant. Similarly, in response to the microbial infections, plants have developed ways and means to protect themselves by producing products that kill these microbes. Contrarily, a number of microbial and bacterial species interact with one another in a positive manner for the benefit of both the organisms. Plants, being larger in size with a well-developed nutrient processing mechanism, can offer both support and nutrition to the microbes. On the other hand, bacterial species in close contact with plants can offer exogenous metabolites and supplements that would, otherwise, not be available to the plant. Moreover, many beneficial microbes defend the host plants against the infection from pathogenic bacteria by releasing agents that specifically kill the invading microbes (Thomashow and Bakker 2015). Such a strong interaction requires a highly efficient communication pathway involving multiple molecular players. A continuous trans-cellular and inter-organismal control of molecules ensures the systematic coordination of signals to "detect, regulate, and affect" in response to particular stimuli (Trapet et al. 2015). The response is, hence, observed in the form of a defensive, regulatory, or conducive outcome. The developments in the field of molecular sciences have exhibited the involvement of a complex interplay of physical, chemical, biological, and environmental signals to regulate the plant-microbe interactions including biofertilization, bioremediation, antibiosis, and biocontrol. The recent understanding in the rapidly developing field of plant-microbe molecular interactions has been presented here.

2 Biofertilization

An important application of the microbe-plant interaction is the biofertilization process in which the symbiotic relationship between the two partners is exploited for promoting the growth of the plants. In the process, the bacteria utilize the nitrogen from the environment to produce nitrogen-containing compounds that are useful for the plants.

In turn, plants provide harbor and carbon source to the bacteria. This natural process accounts for nearly 65 % of the nitrogen fixation for the agricultural crops worldwide (Prasad et al. 2015). Many legumes are used as fertilizers as they tend to promote the nitrogen fixation process by harboring the bacteria necessary for nitrogen fixation. The most common strains of bacteria utilized for the process belong to the *Rhizobium*, *Azorhizobium*, and *Sinorhizobium* genera and are collectively referred to as plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria, or PGPR (Berrada and Fikri-Benbrahim 2014).

The interaction initiates when the bacteria secrete the signaling molecules, mainly lipooligosaccharides, that result in an increase in the growth of stem and root nodules (Mabood et al. 2014). Thereafter, the bacteria penetrate the cortical tissue, divide there, and differentiate into nitrogen-fixing bacteroids. The plant develops a low oxygen status, resulting in the activation of nitrogenase—an enzyme that converts atmospheric nitrogen to ammonia. The genes mainly involved in the process are nitrogen fixation (*nif*) and nodule formation (*nod*) (Gomes et al. 2015). Though the pathway of bacterial strains involved in the signaling process is well known, efforts are underway to decipher the genomic and proteomic machinery of the plants involved in nitrogen fixation. Understanding these mechanisms can potentially help in introducing similar pathways in nonleguminous plants in order to induce a greater capability to fix atmospheric nitrogen. This can, hence, be helpful in increasing the yield of widely cultivated food and cash crops like cotton and rice.

Much similar to the bacterial strains that reside on various plant parts, a number of free-living bacterial species are also involved in the nitrogen fixation process. These rhizobacteria include *Acetobacter*, *Azotobacter*, *Azospirillum*, and *Azoarcus*. They function in a manner much similar to the endophytic bacteria present on the roots and shoots of the plants. At a low oxygen concentration, the nitrogenase complex present in the bacterial proteome converts the atmospheric nitrogen to plant-usable ammonia (Ipata and Pesi 2015). The genetic machinery employed by the free-living microbes is much similar to that utilized for nitrogen fixation, utilization, and regulation by the endophytic bacteria. For agricultural purposes, both the endophytic and free-living bacteria are coated on the seeds and then introduced in the soil. For an efficient biofertilization process, the bacteria are expected to achieve a cell count that is capable enough to survive and establish their presence for an extended time period. A high number does not only help in developing a better source for plant nourishment but also aids in warding off the microbes that might adversely affect the plants (Rogers and Oldroyd 2014). In response, the healthy plant provides nutrients and helps the bacteria to colonize the root and shoot systems of the plant.

Recent findings of the molecular players involved in the biofertilization process have provided a new avenue for exploiting this symbiosis for increasing the agricultural yield. Many bacteria in the rhizosphere have been found to contain certain genes on the chromosome, within the symbiotic island or the symbiosis plasmid (*sym*), that mimic the rhizobial type III secretion system (Ji and Dong 2015; Almario et al. 2014). This genetic machinery is involved in the secretion of certain "symbiosis-forming proteins" which have been isolated from a number of plant-beneficial bacterial strains including *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Similarly, *nif* genes

have also been isolated in a number of free-living nitrogen-fixing bacteria including *Azoarcus* species (Devi and Momota 2015).

An understanding of the genes and gene products involved in various steps of this process can potentially be helpful in replicating the same mechanisms in plants that, otherwise, do not establish a symbiotic relationship with nitrogen-fixing bacteria. Attachment of the bacteria to the seeds is generally the first step of the inoculation process. In a recent study on *Pseudomonas putida* strains, gene products homologous to calcium-binding protein and multidrug efflux have been found to be actively involved in the interaction with seeds (Molina-Santiago et al. 2014). Similarly, molecular dissection of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* has shown the presence of a number of *rhi* genes (rhizosphere genes) that are involved in the process of nutrient absorption from the plants, bacterial metabolism, and secretion of active agents (Moreno and Rojo 2014; Pizarro-Tobías et al. 2015). A number of genes involved in root colonization have also been identified in other species of *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* and other bacterial genera including the ones taking part in biofilm formation and lipopeptide and polyketide metabolite production. Similar studies have shown the plant-induced activation of ABC transporters and porins in various PGPRs (Wisniewski-Dyé and Vial 2015). One additional advantage of introducing PGPRs is their ability to retard the growth of other microbes. Insertion of gene segments (operons), genes, and genetic cassettes has yielded the expression of secondary metabolites that help in protecting the PGPRs and, ultimately, the host plants from unwanted microbial infections. PCA (phenazine-1-carboxylic acid), PCN (phenazine-1-carboxamide), and ACC (1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid) are some of the metabolites that aid the colonization of beneficial bacterial strains on the root surface (LeTourneau et al. 2015; Shahverdi et al. 2014; Kim et al. 2014). Microbe-plant interactions are dependent upon a number of abiotic factors as well. Of chief importance in this respect are the soil pH, presence of organic acids, stress factors, and the availability and nature of carbon source.

Biofertilizers, hence, provide a highly efficient and environment-friendly means for providing the plants with the required nutrition to supplement their growth requirements. Many bioinoculants, including *Rhizobium* and *Bradyrhizobium*, are available in the market for the purpose. Alternate bacterial strains including *Bacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Streptomyces* are now being promoted commercially as well. Though significant progress has been made in deciphering the underlying mechanisms, further investigation in this regard can help in improving the overall efficiency of the naturally as well as the artificially induced biofertilization process.

3 Rhizoremediation by Plant-Microbe Cleaning Team

The application of microbe-plant interaction is not only limited to the use of microorganisms for the development and production of useful metabolites for agricultural purposes. A relatively newer, yet highly established, technique is the exploitation of this interaction for the bioremediation process. Pollutants, from

both organic and nonorganic sources, deteriorate the ecological and biogeographical status of various areas. They are generally deposited in certain areas of the ecosystem which, thereafter, act as nuclei for environmental distress. As per recent estimates, the cost to restore the polluted sites in the USA alone would cost nearly two trillion dollars (Knight et al. 2015). The methods generally adopted for the removal of waste matter include incineration and landfilling which further contribute to increasing the air, land, and water pollution. In contrast to these techniques, bioremediation offers a cheaper, safer, and smarter environmentally friendly alternate for treating the waste material. The underlying principle of bioremediation is the use of biological system, generally microbes or plants, for converting the highly toxic agents to safer products. The genoproteomic machinery of the biological organisms is highly adaptive in nature and, hence, when exposed to the new environmental and/or nutritional conditions, tend to utilize these pollutants and convert them into less toxic products. This process is referred to as natural attenuation and has been employed on large scale for the treatment of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH) polluted sites (Srivastava 2015; Juhasz 2014). Moreover, many industrial solvents including toluene, benzene, and ethylene have also been rendered nontoxic by the same phenomenon (El-Naas et al. 2014). Another similar term, phytoremediation, defines the process, whereby the pollutants are detoxified by plants (Bisht et al. 2015). Plants carry out the process by absorbing the pollutants from the soil, transporting them to the shoot, and/or converting them into relatively safer products. Mustard, sunflower, tobacco, and maize have been found to attain these goals in a number of studies (Prasad 2015).

A combination of natural attenuation and phytoremediation is observed in the case of rhizoremediation in which the interaction of microbes and plants is exploited for detoxifying the pollutants. Rhizosphere—comprising the symbiotic bacteria in the roots of plants—has been related to the degradation of many pesticides, herbicides, and PAH-containing pollutants (Hou et al. 2015; Fulekar 2014). The effectiveness of rhizoremediation process depends upon a number of factors including the plant species, microbial strains, and type of pollutant among other pedological and botanical factors. Legumes and grasses are considered to be the most suitable species that can contribute to the process (Brígido and Glick 2015). They have an extensive branching in their roots which usually homes a large number of bacteria. This mechanism provides an efficient means to detoxify the pollutants. At the molecular level, the pollutants are generally subjected to metabolism by the microbial or botanical enzymatic systems. In certain cases, however, they are mineralized, thereby resulting in the immobilization of these agents (Helbling 2015). The resulting products formed by either one of the symbionts can also be utilized by the other partner for its benefit.

A number of methods have been employed for utilizing the rhizoremediation process for achieving maximum efficiency. Some researchers have reported the introduction of a bacterial strain along with the plant seed. This strategy can help in the propagation of the bacterial strain along with the growing root system of the plant. Such interaction has been exploited for the degradation of naphthalene—a toxic organic compound (Agarry and Oghenejoboh 2015). Introducing a consortium

of diverse bacterial strains has been found to degrade a number of pollutants as each strain tends to employ a different catabolic pathway to detoxify the respective pollutant (Fuentes et al. 2014). In addition to these strategies, genetically engineering the microbes and plants to produce transgenic varieties with greater or diverse ability to detoxify the environmental pollutants can be even more useful (Peng et al. 2014; Mouhamad et al. 2014; Jagtap and Bapat 2015). Transgenically produced tobacco plants, expressing the mammalian cytochrome P450 system, have been found to metabolize a number of pollutants including chloroform and trichloroethylene (Renault et al. 2014). The molecular tools can, hence, be employed for improving the activity of this efficient microbe-plant interaction to attain maximum ecological and biological benefits.

4 Biocontrol and Antibiosis

Microbe-plant interactions may be presented in a number of ways. In the case of a symbiosis, both the members benefit. However, in the case of parasitism, the host organism has to bear the adverse consequences of the interaction. Most microorganisms tend to possess a number of mechanisms to defend themselves and their symbiotic partners from pathogenic microbes. The use of microbes or microbe-derived products for inhibiting the growth of pathogenic agents is covered under the scope of biocontrol and has been investigated in a number of recent studies. The environmental and health concerns associated with the conventional tools have shifted the focus toward the use of these environmentally friendly, efficient, and reproducible biocontrol methods.

A number of mechanisms are employed by the microbes to defend themselves and their symbiotic partners, the plants, from pathogenic microorganisms. The chief technique among these biocontrol strategies is the upregulation of antibiosis process by the production of secondary metabolites that either kill the pathogenic bacteria or retard their growth (Clay 2014). *Pseudomonas*, for instance, produces DAPG for attaining effective biocontrol (Weller 2015). Similarly, nonpathogenic strains of *Agrobacterium* produce a highly effective antibiotic agrocin that specifically kills the pathogenic species of bacteria (Hooykaas 2015). Apart from producing secondary metabolites, a number of beneficial microbes compete with other organisms for nutrients and space, thereby inhibiting the secondary infections. Moreover, in certain stress conditions, the microbes produce entities that absorb nutrients and trace elements from the environment protecting the growth of pathogenic organisms. In this respect, siderophores and pyoverdines are released by microbes to sequester the essential elements. A number of antibiotics have been reported that play a significant role in the biocontrol process. Table 1 represents a few examples of the agents generally involved in antibiosis and, therefore, biocontrol process.

The application of the antibiotics in the biocontrol process has been characterized by employing various techniques of genetic engineering. Using these techniques, a detailed insight of microbe-plant interactions has been attained. Mutants

Table 1 Secondary metabolites produced by plant-microbe interactions for attaining effective antibiosis

Metabolite	Activity
Ammonia	Bactericidal, fungicidal
Butyrolactones	Fungicidal
Kanosamine	Fungicidal
HCN	Bactericidal, fungicidal
Oligomycin	Fungicidal
2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol	Fungicidal
Viscosinamide	Bactericidal, fungicidal
Zwittermicin	Bactericidal, fungicidal

lacking the production of antibiotics and those overexpressing their production are employed for studying the effects of antibiotics on the biocontrol process. Conversely, probes or reporter genes have also been utilized for the identification and characterization process. These molecular techniques have provided a thorough understanding of the operons, genes, and gene clusters that are involved in protecting the plants from the adverse effects of pathogenic bacteria (Singh and Singh 2014). Many of these techniques have established an increased presence of the bacterial strains to the improved biocontrol process.

Among the organisms that are generally employed for achieving biocontrol, *Pseudomonas* strains are considered to be one of the most important candidates. This bacterial species is relatively fast growing with ideal lab handling properties. Moreover, its genome can be easily manipulated. *Pseudomonas* is competitive with a number of nutritional sources and can easily thieve in new nutritional and environmental conditions (Mercado-Blanco 2015). In nature, pseudomonads have been found to carry a strictly regulated antibiosis controlling system. It is found to be composed of two main parts: the sensor and the cytoplasmic unit. The environmental sensor system is generally a membrane protein that is activated or triggered by certain environmental factors. Though these factors have not been fully characterized at the molecular level, yet they are considered to be either the part of the chemical exudates from the host plants, chemicals from the pathogenic bacteria, or the products produced in the soil as a result of the presence of pathogenic bacteria (Carvalhais et al. 2015). The second component, the cytoplasmic response factor, initiates the signaling process that results in the production and release of the antibiotic agent thereafter. An imbalance in either of the components results in the inactivation or discrepancy in the antibiosis. For instance, a mutation in membrane or the cytoplasmic genes lead to the incapability of the cells to produce *Phl*, *Plt,* HCN, protease, and phospholipase, the agents generally used for inhibiting the propagation of pathogenic bacteria (Almario et al. 2014; Sharma et al. 2014; Llamas et al. 2014). Moreover, among the fungal species that have been exploited for attaining biocontrol, *Trichoderma* species is the established choice (Srivastava et al. 2014). The fungus can be easily grown and has a wide host range. Similarly, nonpathogenic species of *Pythium* and *Fusarium* are also being used for biocontrol (Gerbore et al. 2014; Zarafi et al. 2015). Unlike bacterial biocontrol agents which

have been effective in controlling both bacterial and fungal infections, fungi are effective in controlling the infection by other fungal species only. The molecular mechanisms of fungus-based biocontrol are not very well understood and, hence, are under investigation by a number of research groups worldwide.

The mechanisms adapted by the microbes are effective in preventing the growth of bacterial and fungal pathogens. One such example is the biocontrol of a few varieties of *Gaeumannomyces graminis* which are involved in the take-all disease of wheat by *Pseudomonas aureofaciens* (Panwar et al. 2014). The bacteria produce a toxin PCA that specifically acts as a fungicidal agent (Borriss 2015). Much similar to the molecular mechanism mentioned earlier, the infection of the roots by the fungus causes the exudation from the roots. This exudate causes an increase in bacterial propagation of both pseudomonads and other beneficial bacteria. Within the bacterial cells, there is an upregulation of the expression of *phzI* gene, resulting in an increased activity of *N*-acyl-L-homoserine lactone or generally referred to as HSL (Khabbaz et al. 2015; Schenk et al. 2014). This ultimately leads to an increase in the production of PCA which inhibits the further colonization and propagation of the fungus on roots. Similarly, the other bacteria in and near the infection region also cause an increase in the production of PCA aiding the biocontrol against pathogenic fungi. Apart from the *phzI* gene, two sigma factors rpoS and rpoD have also been found to control the transcription and, thereafter, expression of the PCA (Duca et al. 2014). In certain cases as in *Pythium debaryanum* infections, there is an upregulation of trehalose signaling (Smeekens 2015). This ultimately signals the activation of bacterial systems in pseudomonads to provide an effective biocontrol cover to plants including sugar beet. Therefore, a multicomponent system is involved, directly or indirectly, in activating the antibiosis process in bacterial population (Fig. 1).

Another mechanism adopted by the beneficial microbes to inhibit the growth of pathogenic organisms on the host plant is the direct interaction of the bacteria with the parasite followed by the release of cell-degrading enzymes. Actinomycetes, a gram positive group of soil bacteria, tend to parasitize the fungal pathogen and degrade the spores of the fungi. The bacteria interrupts the transport of nutrients from plant to the fungus and an increase in bacterial colonization that leads to an increased biotic stress on the fungus or a complete degradation of the fungus, owing to the release of extracellular enzymes. Cellulases and glucanases are the enzymes that have been established to cause the degradation of cellulose and chitin component of the fungal pathogens (Kubicek et al. 2014; Turrà et al. 2014). Similarly, molecular intervention studies have also identified the involvement of endochitinase and other proteases in the prevention of fungal infections in cotton, wheat, and berries (Nagpure et al. 2014).

The competition for nutrition and space within the rhizosphere also plays a major part in the biocontrol process. An increase in the number of "beneficial" microbes causes the pathogenic bacterial and fungal species to compete for space, carbon source, nitrogen source, micronutrients, and the infection/inoculation sites on the host plant. The growth of pathogenic strains of *Fusarium oxysporum*, generally associated with *Fusarium* wilt in tomato, legumes, tobacco, and banana, is suppressed by the presence of nonpathogenic strains of the same fungal species (Jiménez-Díaz et al. 2015). Apart from the competition for space, certain microbial

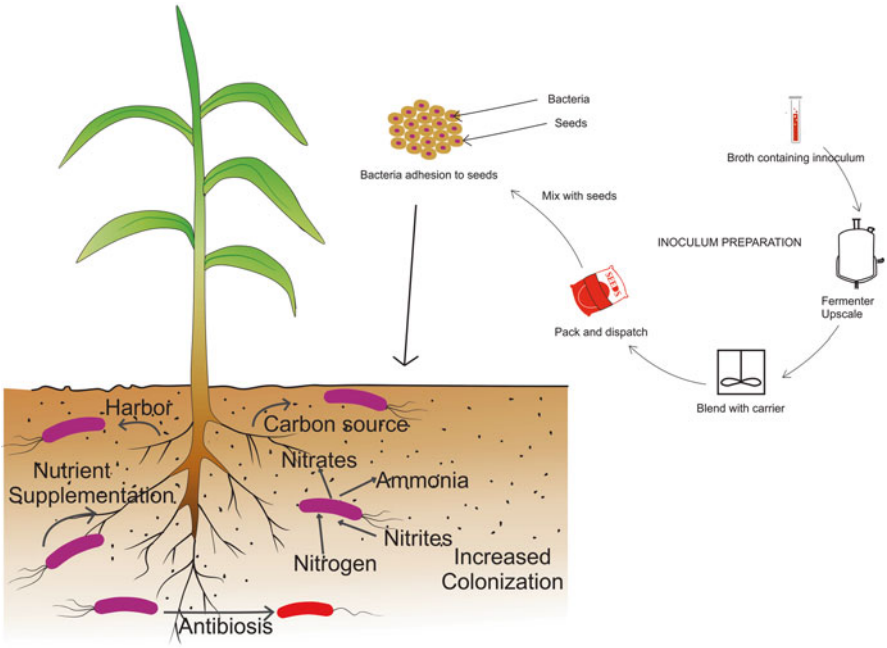


Fig. 1 Inoculation of microbes for biofertilization and biocontrol process

species require a specific nutrient for their survival. Unavailability of the appropriate amounts of the nutrient causes the ultimate death of the pathogenic microbes. An interesting example of this phenomenon is the biocontrol achieved in the wheat rhizosphere against the pathogenic varieties of *Gaeumannomyces* species due to the limited availability of thiamine (Kemen 2014). The microorganisms involved in the biocontrol process have developed a number of means to increase their survival. Modification of the transport proteins to cause an enhanced absorption of the nutrients, faster growth cycles, and rapid induction of inoculation at the preferred sites of infection provides them with a major edge over the pathogenic forms. One such example is the interaction of *Idriella bolleyi* fungi with the cortical cells, leading to the prevention of infection from pathogenic fungi. The fungus occupies the upper region of the root system and travels down in growing nodules to establish its role as an effective biocontrol agent. Though the competition provides adequate defense to the plant from the pathogenic bacteria, further research in the molecular mechanisms involved in the process is still needed.

An interesting example of the biocontrol process that employs the production of secondary metabolites along with the principle of nutrition competition is the production of siderophores or iron-chelating agents (Xia et al. 2014). Under iron-stress conditions, microbial species produce the molecules which sequester the limited

amount of iron available in the plant rhizosphere, making it unavailable to the pathogenic microbes. The siderophores tend to chemically interact with the oxidized form of iron, ferric ions, and aid in their mobilization into the cell. Pseudomonads, for instance, produce pyoverdine and pyochelin, which transport the iron intracellularly preventing the attack of bacterial and fungal organisms on the roots of various crops (Cézard et al. 2015; Cunrath et al. 2015). Siderophores may be used only by the bacteria that produces them, or once released, they may also be utilized by other bacterial species. Apart from the nonspecificity of the bacteria, siderophores also cause the chelation of other metals like aluminum, copper, zinc, manganese, lead, and cadmium (Braud et al. 2015). Additionally, these molecules might also cause the induction of resistance within the plants to a number of pathogens.

Though most of the biocontrol mechanisms involve the use of a single microbe, the involvement of multiple organisms for protecting the plants from infection can be very effective. These microbes can act in harmony and provide synergistic benefits. Addition of multiple microbial species including different species of bacteria or fungi or a bacterial-fungal consortium can be highly effective in inhibiting the growth of pathogenic microbes. A variety of mechanisms can, hence, be exploited for the purpose. Various combinations of *Bacillus* species have been found to protect cucumber and tomato plants from different pathogens (Xu et al. 2014; Hao et al. 2014; Singh and Siddiqui 2015). Similarly, *Trichoderma* and *Pseudomonas* strains have been used in combination for protecting the plants from *Pythium* infection (Kumar et al. 2014). Employing microbial consortia not only helps in providing effective biocontrol, but reports have also suggested an improvement in plant health owing to the induction by PGPRs. The interaction between the indigenous microbial population and the inoculated biocontrol agents has to be considered while devising an effective biocontrol strategy.

In general, the beneficial microbes are introduced in the plant rhizosphere by coating the seeds or the roots of plant saplings with the microbial inoculum. In addition to exogenously introducing the microbes, certain agricultural practices also tend to promote the growth of beneficial bacteria within the rhizosphere. Of prime importance among these are the crop rotations, introduction of soil amendments, soil fumigation, and solarization (Chandel 2015; Sun et al. 2015). These methods are considered safe by the farmers as no genetic or microbial manipulation is involved. A deeper understanding of the plant-microbe interaction is necessary to integrate the molecular techniques with the current agricultural practices. Currently, enhanced efforts are being made to produce transgenic microbes that can provide effective biocontrol. Moreover, the role of environmental conditions, local fauna, and cropping systems is also being studied to help in improving the overall effectiveness of the process.

5 Systemic Resistance

Microbial infection of plants generally causes either of the two presentations: an infection exhibited in the form of plant disease or the development of resistance to the pathogenic agent. In case of an infection, the pathogen or the pathogenic metabolites target various parts of the plant and are then spread throughout the

plant body, ultimately, resulting in the phenotypic changes and finally death. Conversely, for inducing the systemic resistance, following a microbial infection, there is an oxidative stress condition at the local site, resulting in the apoptosis of these cells (Baxter et al. 2014). The rapidly dividing pathogens are entrapped within the cells and, hence, do not mobilize to other parts of the plant body. At the same time, a number of secondary metabolites, including phytoalexins, pathogenesis-related proteins (PR proteins), and proteases, are produced that help in the prevention of the pathogenic attack at any secondary site (De Coninck et al. 2015). The release of these metabolites, especially PR proteins, has been related to the phenomenon known as "induced systemic resistance"—*the vaccination of the plants* (Pieterse et al. 2014a). Moreover, the cell morphology at the local site is also changed in order to prevent the colonization and exaggerated infection at various secondary sites.

The main molecular players involved in ISR are the PR proteins which are generally classified into two main classes: the acidic PR proteins and the basic PR proteins (Golshani et al. 2015). The first category includes the proteins that are generally found in the intercellular spaces, while the basic PR proteins are mainly concentrated in the intracellular regions, for instance, within the vacuole of the plant. Both the classes are functionally similar but vary mainly in the amino acid sequences and, therefore, the molecular weights as well. A number of PR proteins possess chitinase or glucanase activity which helps the plant to defend themselves against the pathogenic fungal species (Ng and Wong 2013). These proteins hydrolyze the cell wall of the fungus, thereby preventing the plant from fungal infection. The role of a large number of PR proteins is, however, still unknown. Generally, they have been isolated in biotic stress conditions from a number of plants and, therefore, serve as excellent markers for correlating the microbial infection. On similar grounds, phytoalexins, in particular camalexin, have been related to ISR and hence help in promoting plant defense against the microbes (An and Mou 2014). Both PR proteins and phytoalexins induce the nonspecific protection of the plants, i.e., the induction of systemic resistance by any one type of the microbe can help in the prevention of attacks by other microbial species.

The mechanism of ISR initially involves the priming or sensitization process in which the microbial pathogen is "sampled" by the plant (Fu and Dong 2013). This results in a complex molecular interplay, causing the activation of the signaling and effector functions, thereafter. The chief among the chemical molecules acting as the inducers for ISR is β-aminobutyric acid (Justyna and Ewa 2013). The activation is followed by the secondary changes including the morphological adaptations like lignification or regulation of other functions including the overexpression of PR proteins and phytoalexins. The exact molecular mechanisms of the priming pathways are, however, still under investigation. After the priming has occurred, the signaling pathways are activated in a manner to prepare the whole plant for protection against the pathogen attack. Salicylic acid (SA)-mediated pathways are considered the most active way to effectively establish the ISR (An and Mou 2014). Infection at the primary site leads to an increase in the endogenous production of SA adding the metabolite into the vascular system of the plant. SA is produced and released from

sites other than that of primary infection as well, causing thereby a "SA storm" within the plant body. The role of SA has been established in a number of plants including wheat, rice, potato, and certain legumes mediated by salicylate synthase (SAS) as well as naphthalene hydroxylase G (*nahG*) gene systems (Kobayashi 2015; Puntus et al. 2015). However, genetic engineering experiments have also lead to the identification of other non-SA systems in the activation and maintenance of ISR. The exact nature of molecules, however, still remains to be established.

As discussed, the effects of the molecules produced during ISR may be in the form of morphological, physiological, or metabolic changes. A diverse set of signaling pathways and chemical reactions are generally involved in the process. These pathways might synergize or antagonize the effects of one another. An in-depth understanding of the molecular players involved in inducing ISR is necessary to devise means to protect the host plants. A number of research groups have investigated the role of various plant metabolites in the ISR regulation. The production of jasmonic acid (JA) is one such pathway adopted by many plants to defend themselves from the microbial and even animal attacks (Carvalhais et al. 2015). In response to the wounding at the primary site of infection/ingestion, the membrane lipids are converted to linolenic acid ultimately transforming to JA. Systemin is another molecule that has been indicated to play a role in the activation of these pathways (Huffaker 2015). The release of JA, hence, results in the overexpression of genes encoding proteinase inhibitors and other enzymes involved in the production of volatile oils, phenolics, and alkaloids, all of which play an important role in the biodefense process. These mechanisms have been well characterized in the case of legumes in response to fungal infection by *Trichoderma viride* (Ruocco et al. 2015). In this case, cellulysin released by the fungus induces the production and release of JA and downstream volatile compounds (Pushpalatha et al. 2013) (Fig. 2).

Whether mediated by SA or JA, ISR has been effective in protecting the plants from subsequent microbial and herbivore attacks. In certain cases, it has been observed that the metabolites produced by one pathway can confer resistance against the pathogens that, otherwise, induce the metabolite production by other pathways. In the case of watermelon, for instance, the attack of the crop by thrips and other insects leads to the protection against fungal attack by *Colletotrichum* species (Lima et al. 2014). Similarly, beetle attacks can help in preventing attacks from *Rumex* species of fungal pathogens (Hejcman et al. 2014). A number of research groups have also reported the antagonistic responses when the plants are attacked by different organisms or have been induced to produce ISR against pathogens. In the case of tomato, for example, chemically induced ISR causes a decrease in the ability of the plant to respond to wound-induced proteinase inhibitors. Moreover, treating the plants with salicylic acid, acetyl salicylic acid, or other chemical inducers also leads to a partial reduction in the systemic resistance. These compounds interact with the octadecanoid-signaling cascade, upstream pathway for the production of JA, and inhibit it in a competitive, dose response manner (Vidhyasekaran 2015). In general, the pattern of ISR involves either of the three mechanisms: the induction by a biological agents against a biological agent, a chemical agent against a biological agent, or a biological agent against a chemical agent. A detailed investigation of these methods needs to be

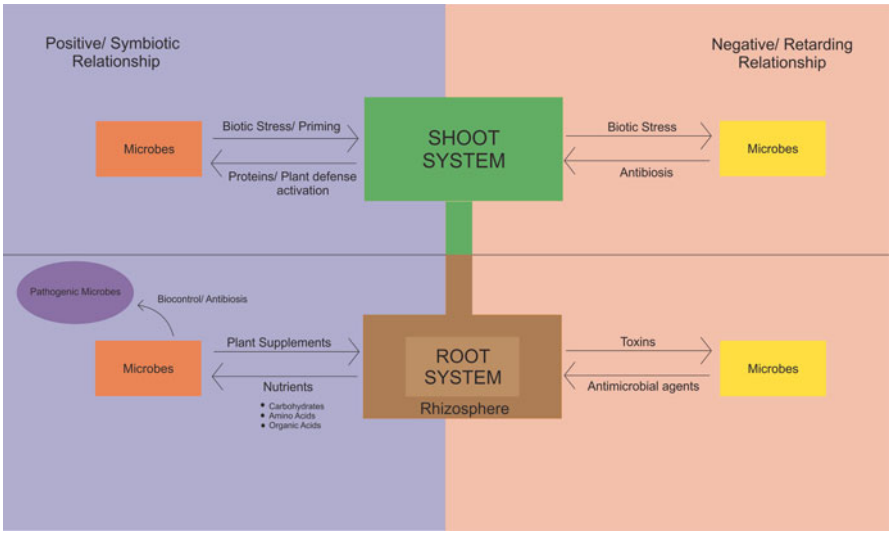


Fig. 2 Biodefense mechanisms in plants based upon plant-microbe molecular interactions

done in order to establish an appropriate means to induce systemic resistance against various pathogenic organisms.

One of the major disadvantages of the ISR mechanism, however, is that the plants are not protected until they have not been exposed to the pathogen at least once. Therefore, in case the primary microbial attack is quite significant, there would be a total failure of resistance mechanisms. Moreover, predictive information needs to be attained in order to prevent the plants from subsequent attacks from the microbes. Concurrent, biotic, and abiotic stress factors should also be considered as either of these can also cause an increase in the propensity of the microbes to cause infection. Therefore, a complex molecular interplay is involved in the induction and sustenance of ISR.

6 Factors Affecting Plant-Microbe Interactions

6.1 Mechanical Signals

Plants respond to a number of physical stimuli. Certain plants possess highly sensitive mechanosensory cells that respond to the external stimuli very rapidly. This can be observed in the case of *Mimosa* and *Dionaea* species of plants (Johnson et al. 2014). In a large variety of plants, however, the response is not as fast, yet there is always a change in the morphological, cellular, or molecular machinery owing to the mechanical simulation. Jasmonic acid, for instance, is

known to be involved in inducing plant resistance against various microbial pathogens (Pieterse et al. 2014b). An increase in the jasmonic acid generally mimics the mechanical simulation and vice versa. This phenomenon coordinates an exaggerated response to bacterial and fungal organisms. Similarly, calcium levels are also changed in response to any mechanical stimuli, causing the activation of a variety of downstream defense response players (Stael et al. 2015). These stimuli are known to upregulate the touch-inducible genes encoding the calmodulin protein that is associated with the development of immunity against the pathogens. It is, therefore, evident that on exposure to these mechanical stimuli, specific molecules are activated within the plant body that mimic the microbial infection aiding the development of resistance, thereafter.

Microbes exploit mechanical simulation to interact with the plants. Many fungi produce a penetration peg to aid its entry into the cell as well as for providing the support to the pathogen (Wang and Qi 2015). After gaining a strong support, the hyphae utilize shear mechanical force to breach further into the underlying tissue. This phenomenon has been observed in the case of *Colletotrichum* and *Magnaporthe grisea* species. After this initial physical interaction, the fungus causes an imbalance in the molecular and chemical homeostasis leading to various presentations within the cells including the nuclear repositioning as observed in the case of an abiotic stress response in plants as well. The response has been well characterized in *Gigaspora* and *Phoma medicaginis species* infection in plants. In case of plant-microbe infection, the nuclear repositioning is supported by the development of a penetration apparatus that facilitates the entry of the fungus in to the plant body. Membrane reorganization, cytoplasmic streaming, microtubule reaggregation, and other mechanical responses are also observed in combination with the molecular reactions in response to a microbial infection (Ueda et al. 2015). Extracellular ATP or eATP acts as a signaling molecule to cause the activation of a number of effector molecules including lectin nucleotide phosphohydrolase (LNP) and other kinases through G-protein complexes (Fliegmann and Bono 2015).

Elictins are another group of molecules that are produced as a result of microbial infection. Following an increase in calcium concentration and oxidative stress, certain kinases are activated. These kinases, for instance, in *Phytophthora* species, cause the activation of nucleotide-binding-site Leucine-rich repeats, or NBS-LRR proteins (Reddy et al. 2015). These proteins cause a hypersensitive reaction that further warrants the activity of self-defense mechanisms. Among other instances of use of mechanical forces for establishing the microbial infection in plants is the development of infection thread. The rhizobacterium is located on the root nodules. The presence of a small colony of microbes induces the production of root hair curl (Fournier et al. 2015). The structure tends to curl onto itself resulting in an increased force and, hence, plant response to both biotic and abiotic stress factors. Based on the induction of host responses to both biotic and abiotic stress factors, it is imperative that the physical and mechanical stimuli act in a similar way as other induction molecules.

6.2 Chemical Signals

The exposure of a plant to the microbial attack leads to a variety of chemical modifications. These changes are observed in response to certain enzyme-activated reactions or release of certain metabolites that ultimately lead to the generation of new chemical entities. The chief among the chemical modifications are the redox reactions and the generation of oxygen moieties. Pathogen-triggered immunity (PTI), for instance, is the resistance developed as a result of microbial recognition and involves multiple players for the generation of ultimate response (Pieterse et al. 2014a). The microbes are identified by means of representative pathogen-associated molecular patterns, or PAMPs (Macho and Zipfel 2014). This is followed by the induction of PR genes and an outburst of reactive oxygen species, or ROS (Corpas et al. 2015). These mechanisms lead to the ability of plants to effectively defend themselves against a microbial attack. Microbes have, in response, developed mechanisms to establish their pathogenicity by the release of effector molecules that interfere with the intracellular PTI responses. Plants have developed another mechanism, referred to as effector-triggered immunity or ETI, which can detect the effector molecules or the accompanying alterations within the plant cell, leading to the generation of a secondary immune response against the pathogen (Cui et al. 2015). Both ETI and PTI are mediated by the generation of large amounts of ROS that are involved in the direct killing of the microbes, retardation of their growth, or generation of mechanism to induce apoptosis in order to reduce the microbial spread within the plant body. Microbes, with their high genetic adaptability, have developed means to prevent the effects of ROS and establish their infection in the host plants.

The chemical interplay between microbes and host plants should, therefore, be deciphered in order to develop effective means to utilize the genetic engineering technologies for the benefit of plants. The nature of the stress molecules helps in determining the pathways involved in the interactions. Plant-derived ROS, for instance, not only lead to the development of resistance against the microbe but also act as a trigger for the generation of microbial responses against the ROS release. In *Magnaporthe* species, glutathione peroxidase, catalases, transcription factors, and serine-rich proteins are all involved in mounting a successful response against the host ROS. The genes including *HYR*, *AP1*, *DES1*, *CATB*, *NOX1*, and *NOX2* are upregulated for the generation of an effective response (Demidchik 2015). In other pathogenic fungi like *Podospora* and *Epichloe*, these changes have been related to the modifications in their growth patterns represented by alterations in hyphae growth, spore-forming ability, and establishment of infection. Based upon similar studies, it is established that the ROS are not solely effective in inducing or neutralizing the pathogen infection on plants. Contrarily, in certain microbial species, these chemical signals act as triggers for enhancing the microbial attack. The exaggerated response involving catalases, ROS, and, the ultimate generation of, hydrogen peroxide might be effective in inhibiting a localized attack (Lindermayr and Durner 2015). However, to effectively control the infection, other molecular and biological players are also required, for instance, the upregulation of proteins and certain mechanical changes.

6.3 Environmental Factors

Apart from the intrinsic factors of both the microbes and the plants, a number of environmental aspects do have a significant effect on the manner in which these organisms interact. Among these, the biotic and abiotic stress factors play an important role. The time of exposure of the microbes and the plants to these agents varies widely. However, they do regulate the molecular machinery within the organism which ultimately leads to the modification in the interaction patterns between the two players. As discussed earlier, in iron-stressed conditions, the bacteria produce certain agents known as siderophores that chelate the iron from the surroundings aiding the survival of the bacteria under these conditions (Ahmed and Holmström 2014). This property, additionally, serves as a bactericidal mechanism depriving the pathogenic microbes from iron, ultimately leading to the diminished colonization of the pathogenic bacteria in the rhizosphere. The interaction between these biotic and abiotic players is not one sided only. The secondary metabolites of microbes also modify their environment. Antibiosis, for instance, is a general mechanism adapted by many microbes to survive and colonize the plant surface (Wackett 2014). Pseudomonads release a number of antibiotics to suppress the growth of pathogenic bacteria in the rhizosphere and maintain the environment in a manner that ensures their long-term survival.

The physical and nutritional characteristics of the soil are one of the main drivers in regulating plant-microbe interactions. The availability of carbon and nitrogen sources, for instance, determines the kind and density of microbial population around the plant. A combination of responses known as plant-soil feedback, or PSF, comprises a set of reactions that are observed after the interaction of plants with the soil microbiota and vice versa (Kos et al. 2015; Baxendale et al. 2014). Many functional traits of the plants act as the modulators of PSF which might adversely affect the plant growth. Soil humidity and partial pressures of entrapped gases also contribute to the selective growth of certain microbes in the ecological sphere (Valentín-Vargas et al. 2014). Among other environmental factors contributing to the regulation of plant-microbe interaction are agricultural practices, cropping systems, exposure to sunlight, temperature variation, and infestation with herbivorous agents.

7 Applications of Plant-Microbe Interactions

The significant importance of plant-microbe interactions under natural circumstances leads to the adaptability of these mechanisms to obtain greater agricultural, biological, and environmental benefits. Microbes tend to initiate both beneficial and adverse effects in the plant body. Bioremediations, biofertilization, and biocontrol are some of the examples of beneficial aspects of plant-microbe interactions. Conversely, microbial diseases in plants have been associated with famine and poverty over the past several decades. In extreme cases, for instance, in the case of ergot poisoning caused by the

fungus *Claviceps purpurea*, humans and animals present with neurological and metabolic symptoms, leading even to death (Young et al. 2015). However, with modern agricultural practices and increased awareness about these interactions, various aspects of the plant-microbe interactions are well understood.

The advent of genetic engineering tools has provided efficient means to study plant-microbe interactions. Therefore, many signaling pathways and molecular players are now very well characterized. The treatment of roots of young plants with rhizobacterial species is now a common practice for the biofertilization purpose. Similarly, a number of bacterial and fungal species are inoculated along with the plants to attain effective biocontrol against the pathogenic microbes. The chief among the biocontrol agents include pseudomonads and *Bacillus* species. The complex plant-microbe interaction is also utilized in order to attain effective phytoremediation in which the organic pollutants are utilized by microbes and plants, thereafter, for the metabolic activity of these organisms.

Recent progress in agricultural processes not only utilizes the whole organisms, i.e., bacteria and fungus, for the improvement of crop yield, but also molecular and submolecular units of the microbes have been used for the purpose. At the molecular level, an interesting example is the utilization of the tumorigenesis capability of the fungus *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* (Bourras et al. 2015). The fungus infects a large number of plant species, and, hence, the genetically modified vectors based on the fungal genome are used for attaining successful gene transfer in many plants. Similarly, small interfering RNA molecules, designed on the basis of plant genome, have been employed to prevent the plants from viral attacks (Cullen 2014). These viral suppressors of RNA (VSRs) integrate into the molecular machinery and inhibit the viral propagation. MAPK, or mitogen-activated protein kinases, are involved in the signaling pathways for the defense of plants against the pathogens (Hettenhausen et al. 2015). These molecules are often induced artificially to obtain an exaggerated response against the pathogens. Similarly, using a spectrum of physical and chemical inducers, plants can be used to produce certain secondary antibiotics that would have otherwise been produced only in response to microbial infections. Chief among these metabolites are various forms of alkaloids, volatile oils, and antibiotics (Maag et al. 2015). On similar basis, antibiotics are produced by the microbes for defending themselves and their plant hosts from pathogen attacks. Antibiotics and siderophores are the chief examples in this regard. Moreover, using the molecular pharming techniques, overexpression of the secondary metabolites has been helpful in gaining a variety of medical and economic benefits. It is, therefore, well established that a deeper understanding of the plant-microbe interactions is necessary for improving agricultural, ecological, and medical gains obtained from the system.

8 Conclusion and Future Perspectives

The interactions between plants and microbes contribute to the improvement in plant health, microbial colonization, and the surroundings. A number of complex molecular mechanisms are involved in this process. Though the advent of modern genetic techniques has helped in improving the understanding of plant-microbe

interactions, efforts need to be made to decipher the exact mechanisms and molecules involved. The application of latest techniques of molecular biology, including NGS and multispecies transcriptomics, can be helpful in improving the outcomes of the research into the plant-microbe interactions. The studies and outcomes, thereafter, would help in improving the quality of food, medicine, and environment. New techniques and technologies based upon the genoproteomic, transcriptomics, and metabolomics understanding would, therefore, provide an opportunity to exploit maximum benefits of the plant-microbe relationship.

References

Agarry SE, Oghenejoboh KM (2015) Enhanced aerobic biodegradation of naphthalene in soil: kinetic modelling and half-life study. Int J Environ Bioremediat Biodegrad 3(2):48–53

Ahmed E, Holmström SJM (2014) Siderophores in environmental research: roles and applications. J Microbial Biotechnol 7(3):196–208

Almario J, Gobbin D, Défago G, Moënne-Loccoz Y, Rezzonico F (2014) Prevalence of type III secretion system in effective biocontrol pseudomonads. Res Microbiol 165(4):300–304

An C, Mou Z (2014) Salicylic acid and defense responses in plants. In: Phytohormones: a window to metabolism, signaling and biotechnological applications. Springer, New York, pp 191–219

Baxendale C, Orwin KH, Poly F, Pommier T, Bardgett RD (2014) Are plant–soil feedback responses explained by plant traits? New Phytol 204(2):408–423

Baxter A, Mittler R, Suzuki N (2014) ROS as key players in plant stress signalling. J Exp Bot 65(5):1229–1240

Berrada H, Fikri-Benbrahim K (2014) Taxonomy of the rhizobia: current perspectives. Br Microbiol Res J 4:616–639

Bisht S, Pandey P, Bhargava B, Sharma S, Kumar V, Sharma KD (2015) Bioremediation of polyaromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) using rhizosphere technology. Braz J Microbiol 46(1):7–21

Borriss R (2015) Towards a new generation of commercial microbial disease control and plant growth promotion products. In: Principles of plant-microbe interactions. Springer, New York, pp 329–337

Bourras S, Rouxel T, Meyer M (2015) Agrobacterium tumefaciens gene transfer: how a plant pathogen hacks the nuclei of plant and nonplant organisms. Phytopathology 105:1288–1301, PHYTO-12

Braud AM, Hubert M, Gaudin P, Lebeau T (2015) A quick rhizobacterial selection tests for the remediation of copper contaminated soils. J Appl Microbiol 119(2):435–445

Brígido C, Glick BR (2015) Phytoremediation using rhizobia. In: Phytoremediation. Springer, New York, pp 95–114

Carvalhais LC, Dennis PG, Badri DV, Kidd BN, Vivanco JM, Schenk PM (2015) Linking jasmonic acid signaling, root exudates, and rhizosphere microbiomes. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 28(9):1049–1058

Cézard C, Farvacques N, Sonnet P (2015) Chemistry and biology of pyoverdines, pseudomonas primary siderophores. Curr Med Chem 22(2):165–186

Chandel S (2015) Organic amendment, biocontrol agents and soil solarization practice in management of Fusarium wilt of carnation caused by Fusarium oxysporum Schledit. f. sp. dianthi (Prill. and Del.) Snyd. and Hans. Int J Plant Prot 8(1):130–133

Clay K (2014) Defensive symbiosis: a microbial perspective. Funct Ecol 28(2):293–298

Corpas FJ, Gupta DK, Palma JM (2015) Production sites of reactive oxygen species (ROS) in organelles from plant cells. In: Reactive oxygen species and oxidative damage in plants under stress. Springer, New York, pp 1–22

Cui H, Tsuda K, Parker JE (2015) Effector-triggered immunity: from pathogen perception to robust defense. Annu Rev Plant Biol 66:487–511

Cullen BR (2014) Viruses and RNA interference: issues and controversies. J Virol 88(22):12934–12936

Cunrath O, Gasser V, Hoegy F, Reimmann C, Guillon L, Schalk IJ (2015) A cell biological view of the siderophore pyochelin iron uptake pathway in pseudomonas aeruginosa. Environ Microbiol 17(1):171–185

De Coninck B, Timmermans P, Vos C, Cammue BP, Kazan K (2015) What lies beneath: below-ground defense strategies in plants. Trends Plant Sci 20(2):91–101

Demidchik V (2015) Mechanisms of oxidative stress in plants: from classical chemistry to cell biology. Environ Exp Bot 109:212–228

Devi SI, Momota P (2015) Plant-endophyte interaction and its unrelenting contribution towards plant health. In: Plant microbes symbiosis: applied facets. Springer, New York, pp 147–162

Duca D, Lorv J, Patten CL, Rose D, Glick BR (2014) Indole-3-acetic acid in plant–microbe interactions. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 106(1):85–125

El-Naas MH, Acio JA, El Telib AE (2014) Aerobic biodegradation of BTEX: progresses and prospects. J Environ Chem Eng 2(2):1104–1122

Fliegmann J, Bono J-J (2015) Lipo-chitooligosaccharidic nodulation factors and their perception by plant receptors. Glycoconj J 32:455–464

Fournier J, Teillet A, Chabaud M, Ivanov S, Genre A, Limpens E, de Carvalho-Niebel F, Barker DG (2015) Remodeling of the infection chamber before infection thread formation reveals a two-step mechanism for rhizobial entry into the host legume root hair. Plant Physiol 167(4):1233–1242

Fu ZQ, Dong X (2013) Systemic acquired resistance: turning local infection into global defense. Annu Rev Plant Biol 64:839–863

Fuentes S, Méndez V, Aguila P, Seeger M (2014) Bioremediation of petroleum hydrocarbons: catabolic genes, microbial communities, and applications. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 98(11):4781–4794

Fulekar MH (2014) Rhizosphere bioremediation of pesticides by microbial consortium and potential microorganism. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 3(7):235–248

Gerbore J, Benhamou N, Vallance J, Le Floch G, Grizard D, Regnault-Roger C, Rey P (2014) Biological control of plant pathogens: advantages and limitations seen through the case study of Pythium oligandrum. Environ Sci Pollut Res 21(7):4847–4860

Golshani F, Fakheri BA, Behshad E, Vashvaei RM (2015) PRs proteins and their mechanism in plants. In: Biological forum, 2015. Research Trend, New Delhi, p 477

Gomes DF, Ormeño-Orrillo E, Hungria M (2015) Biodiversity, symbiotic efficiency, and genomics of rhizobium tropici and related species. In: de Bruijn F (ed) Biological nitrogen fixation. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, pp 747–756

Hao K, Liu J-Y, Ling F, Liu X-L, Lu L, Xia L, Wang G-X (2014) Effects of dietary administration of Shewanella haliotis D4, Bacillus cereus D7 and Aeromonas bivalvium D15, single or combined, on the growth, innate immunity and disease resistance of shrimp, Litopenaeus vannamei. Aquaculture 428:141–149

Hejcman M, Strnad L, Hejcmanová P, Pavlů V (2014) Biological control of Rumex obtusifolius and Rumex crispus by goat grazing. Weed Biol Manag 14(2):115–120

Helbling DE (2015) Bioremediation of pesticide-contaminated water resources: the challenge of low concentrations. Curr Opin Biotechnol 33:142–148

Hettenhausen C, Schuman MC, Wu J (2015) MAPK signaling: a key element in plant defense response to insects. Insect Sci 22(2):157–164

Hooykaas PJJ (2015) Agrobacterium, the genetic engineer. In: Principles of plant-microbe interactions. Springer, New York, pp 355–361

Hou J, Liu W, Wang B, Wang Q, Luo Y, Franks AE (2015) PGPR enhanced phytoremediation of petroleum contaminated soil and rhizosphere microbial community response. Chemosphere 138:592–598

Huffaker A (2015) Plant elicitor peptides in induced defense against insects. Curr Opin Insect Sci 9:44–50

Ipata PL, Pesi R (2015) What is the true nitrogenase reaction? A guided approach. Biochem Mol Biol Educ 43(3):142–144

Jagtap UB, Bapat VA (2015) Genetic engineering of plants for heavy metal removal from soil. In: Heavy metal contamination of soils. Springer, New York, pp 433–470

Ji H, Dong H (2015) Key steps in type III secretion system (T3SS) towards translocon assembly with potential sensor at plant plasma membrane. Mol Plant Pathol 16(7):762–773

Jiménez-Díaz RM, Castillo P, del Mar Jiménez-Gasco M, Landa BB, Navas-Cortés JA (2015) Fusarium wilt of chickpeas: biology, ecology and management. Crop Prot 73:16–27

Johnson K, Narasimhan G, Krishnan C (2014) Mimosa pudica Linn-a shyness princess: a review of its plant movement, active constituents, uses and pharmacological activity. Int J Pharm Sci Res 5(12):5104

Juhasz AL (2014) Bioavailability and biodegradation of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Microbiol Aust 35(4):199–200

Justyna P-G, Ewa K (2013) Induction of resistance against pathogens by β-aminobutyric acid. Acta Physiol Plant 35(6):1735–1748

Kemen E (2014) Microbe–microbe interactions determine oomycete and fungal host colonization. Curr Opin Plant Biol 20:75–81

Khabbaz SE, Zhang L, Cáceres LA, Sumarah M, Wang A, Abbasi PA (2015) Characterisation of antagonistic Bacillus and Pseudomonas strains for biocontrol potential and suppression of damping-off and root rot diseases. Ann Appl Biol 166(3):456–471

Kim K, Park S-H, Chae J-C, Soh BY, Lee K-J (2014) Rapid degradation of Pseudomonas fluorescens 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid deaminase proteins expressed in transgenic Arabidopsis. FEMS Microbiol Lett 355(2):193–200

Knight S, Klaere S, Fedrizzi B, Goddard M (2015) Regional microbial signatures positively correlate with differential wine phenotypes: evidence for a microbial aspect to terroir. Sci Rep 5:14233

Kobayashi K (2015) Plant methyl salicylate induces defense responses in the rhizobacterium Bacillus subtilis. Environ Microbiol 17(4):1365–1376

Kos M, Tuijl MAB, de Roo J, Mulder PPJ, Bezemer TM (2015) Plant–soil feedback effects on plant quality and performance of an aboveground herbivore interact with fertilisation. Oikos 124(5):658–667

Kubicek CP, Starr TL, Glass NL (2014) Plant cell wall-degrading enzymes and their secretion in plant-pathogenic fungi. Annu Rev Phytopathol 52:427–451

Kumar CA, Narinder S, Daljeet S (2014) Exploitation of indigenous strains of Trichoderma and Pseudomonas fluorescens for the control of damping-off in chilli. Plant Dis Res 30(1):6–10

LeTourneau MK, Marshall MM, Thomashow LS, Harsh JB (2015) Impact of phenazine-1-carboxylic acid upon biofilm development in the rhizosphere of dryland and irrigated wheat. Microsc Microanal 21(S3):711–712

Lima C, Sarmento R, Rosado J, Silveira M, Santos G, Neto MP, Erasmo E, Nascimento I, Picanço M (2014) Efficiency and economic feasibility of pest control systems in watermelon cropping. J Econ Entomol 107(3):1118–1126

Lindermayr C, Durner J (2015) Interplay of reactive oxygen species and nitric oxide: nitric oxide coordinates reactive oxygen species homeostasis. Plant Physiol 167(4):1209–1210

Llamas MA, Imperi F, Visca P, Lamont IL (2014) Cell-surface signaling in Pseudomonas: stress responses, iron transport, and pathogenicity. FEMS Microbiol Rev 38(4):569–597

Maag D, Erb M, Köllner TG, Gershenzon J (2015) Defensive weapons and defense signals in plants: some metabolites serve both roles. Bioessays 37(2):167–174

Mabood F, Zhou X, Smith DL (2014) Microbial signaling and plant growth promotion. Can J Plant Sci 94(6):1051–1063

Macho AP, Zipfel C (2014) Plant PRRs and the activation of innate immune signaling. Mol Cell 54(2):263–272

Mercado-Blanco J (2015) Pseudomonas strains that exert biocontrol of plant pathogens. In: Pseudomonas. Springer, New York, pp 121–172

Molina-Santiago C, Daddaoua A, Fillet S, Duque E, Ramos JL (2014) Interspecies signalling: Pseudomonas putida efflux pump TtgGHI is activated by indole to increase antibiotic resistance. Environ Microbiol 16(5):1267–1281

Moreno R, Rojo F (2014) Features of pseudomonads growing at low temperatures: another facet of their versatility. Environ Microbiol Rep 6(5):417–426

Mouhamad R, Ibrahim K, Ali N, Ghanem I, Al-Daoude A (2014) Determination of heavy metal uptake in transgenic plants harbouring the rabbit CYP450 2E1 using X-ray fluorescence analysis. Int J Environ Stud 71(3):292–300

Nagpure A, Choudhary B, Gupta RK (2014) Chitinases: in agriculture and human healthcare. Crit Rev Biotechnol 34(3):215–232
Ng TB, Wong JH (2013) Antifungal proteins for control of fusarium species. Asia Pac J Life Sci 7(3):259
Panwar M, Tewari R, Nayyar H (2014) Microbial consortium of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria improves the performance of plants growing in stressed soils: an overview. In: Phosphate solubilizing microorganisms. Springer, New York, pp 257–285
Peng R-H, Fu X-Y, Zhao W, Tian Y-S, Zhu B, Han H-J, Xu J, Yao Q-H (2014) Phytoremediation of phenanthrene by transgenic plants transformed with a naphthalene dioxygenase system from Pseudomonas. Environ Sci Technol 48(21):12824–12832
Pieterse CM, Zamioudis C, Berendsen RL, Weller DM, Van Wees SC, Bakker PA (2014a) Induced systemic resistance by beneficial microbes. Annu Rev Phytopathol 52:347–375
Pieterse CMJ, Zamioudis C, Does D V, Van Wees SCM (2014) Signalling networks involved in induced resistance. In: DR Walters, AC Newton, GD Lyon,. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, (eds.). induced resistance for plant defense: a sustainable approach to crop protection. Chichester, UK. pp. 58–80
Pizarro-Tobías P, Udaondo Z, Roca A, Ramos JL (2015) Events in root colonization by pseudomonas putida. In: Pseudomonas. Springer, New York, pp 251–286
Prasad M (2015) Phytoremediation crops and biofuels. In: Sustainable agriculture reviews. Springer, New York, pp 159–261
Prasad R, Kumar M, Varma A (2015) Role of PGPR in soil fertility and plant health. In: Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) and medicinal plants. Springer, New York, pp 247–260
Puntus I, Vlasova E, Sokolov A, Zakharchenko N, Funtikova T (2015) Properties of non-homologous salicylate hydroxylases of pseudomonas bacteria. Appl Biochem Microbiol 51(2):215–221
Pushpalatha H, Sudisha J, Shetty HS (2013) Cellulysin induces downy mildew disease resistance in pearl millet driven through defense response. Eur J Plant Pathol 137(4):707–717
Reddy AC, Venkat S, Singh TH, Aswath C, Reddy KM, Reddy DCL (2015) Isolation, characterization and evolution of NBS-LRR encoding disease-resistance gene analogs in eggplant against bacterial wilt. Eur J Plant Pathol 143(3):417–426
Renault H, Bassard J-E, Hamberger B, Werck-Reichhart D (2014) Cytochrome P450-mediated metabolic engineering: current progress and future challenges. Curr Opin Plant Biol 19:27–34
Rogers C, Oldroyd GE (2014) Synthetic biology approaches to engineering the nitrogen symbiosis in cereals. J Exp Bot 65:1939–1946, eru098
Ruocco M, Lanzuise S, Lombardi N, Woo SL, Vinale F, Marra R, Varlese R, Manganiello G, Pascale A, Scala V (2015) Multiple roles and effects of a novel Trichoderma hydrophobin. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 28(2):167–179
Schenk ST, Hernández-Reyes C, Samans B, Stein E, Neumann C, Schikora M, Reichelt M, Mithöfer A, Becker A, Kogel K-H (2014) N-acyl-homoserine lactone primes plants for cell wall reinforcement and induces resistance to bacterial pathogens via the salicylic acid/oxylipin pathway. Plant Cell 26(6):2708–2723
Shahverdi M, Mirshekari B, Rahmani HA, Rashidi V, Ardakani M (2014) Response of forage quality in Persian clover upon co-inoculation with native Rhizobium leguminosarum symbiovar (sv.) trifoli RTB3 and plant-growth promoting Pseudomonas florescence 11168 under different levels of chemical fertilizers. Afr J Microbiol Res 8(2):155–161
Sharma P, Kumar V, Ramesh R, Saravanan K, Deep S, Sharma M, Mahesh S, Dinesh S (2014) Biocontrol genes from Trichoderma species: a review. Afr J Biotechnol 10(86):19898–19907
Singh N, Siddiqui ZA (2015) Effects of Bacillus subtilis, Pseudomonas fluorescens and Aspergillus awamori on the wilt-leaf spot disease complex of tomato. Phytoparasitica 43(1):61–75
Singh HP, Singh BP (2014) Genetic engineering of field, industrial and pharmaceutical crops. Am J Plant Sci 5(26):3974
Smeekens S (2015) From leaf to kernel: trehalose-6-phosphate signaling moves carbon in the field. Plant Physiol 169(2):912–913
Srivastava S (2015) Bioremediation technology: a greener and sustainable approach for restoration of environmental pollution. In: Applied environmental biotechnology: present scenario and future trends. Springer, New York, pp 1–18

Srivastava M, Shahid M, Pandey S, Singh A, Kumar V, Gupta S, Maurya M (2014) Trichoderma genome to genomics: a review. J Data Mining Genomics Proteomics 5:162, 2153-0602
Stael S, Kmiecik P, Willems P, Van Der Kelen K, Coll NS, Teige M, Van Breusegem F (2015) Plant innate immunity–sunny side up? Trends Plant Sci 20(1):3–11
Sun L, Song S, Fu L, Deng X, Wang D, Liang X, Li R, Shen Q (2015) Exploring a soil fumigation strategy based on ammonium bicarbonate to control Fusarium wilts of cucurbits. Crop Prot 70:53–60
Thomashow L, Bakker PAHM (2015) Microbial control of root-pathogenic fungi and oomycetes. In: Principles of plant-microbe interactions. Springer, New York, pp 165–173
Trapet P, Kulik A, Lamotte O, Jeandroz S, Bourque S, Nicolas-Francès V, Rosnoblet C, Besson-Bard A, Wendehenne D (2015) NO signaling in plant immunity: a tale of messengers. Phytochemistry 112:72–79
Turrà D, Segorbe D, Di Pietro A (2014) Protein kinases in plant-pathogenic fungi: conserved regulators of infection. Annu Rev Phytopathol 52:267–288
Ueda H, Tamura K, Hara-Nishimura I (2015) Functions of plant-specific myosin XI: from intracellular motility to plant postures. Curr Opin Plant Biol 28:30–38
Valentín-Vargas A, Root RA, Neilson JW, Chorover J, Maier RM (2014) Environmental factors influencing the structural dynamics of soil microbial communities during assisted phytostabilization of acid-generating mine tailings: a mesocosm experiment. Sci Total Environ 500:314–324
Vidhyasekaran P (2015) Jasmonate signaling system in plant innate immunity. In: Plant hormone signaling systems in plant innate immunity. Springer, New York, pp 123–194
Wackett LP (2014) Antibiosis in the environment. Environ Microbiol Rep 6(5):532–533
Wang L-J, Qi X (2015) Metabolomics research of quantitative disease resistance against barley leaf rust. In: Plant metabolomics. Springer, New York, pp 303–319
Weller DM (2015) Take-all decline and beneficial pseudomonads. In: Principles of plant-microbe interactions. Springer, New York, pp 363–370
Wisniewski-Dyé F, Vial L (2015) Cell–cell communication in azospirillum and related PGPR. In: Handbook for azospirillum. Springer, New York, pp 263–285
Xia Y, Xu Q, Lin Y, Chen Z, Kong F, Zhang C (2014) Research progress of mechanism of action of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Agric Sci Technol 15(1):87
Xu Z, Zhang R, Wang D, Qiu M, Feng H, Zhang N, Shen Q (2014) Enhanced control of cucumber wilt disease by Bacillus amyloliquefaciens SQR9 by altering the regulation of its DegU phosphorylation. Appl Environ Microbiol 80(9):2941–2950
Young CA, Schardl CL, Panaccione DG, Florea S, Takach JE, Charlton ND, Moore N, Webb JS, Jaromczyk J (2015) Genetics, genomics and evolution of ergot alkaloid diversity. Toxins 7(4):1273–1302
Zarafi AB, Elzein A, Abdulkadir DI, Beed F, Akinola OM (2015) Host range studies of Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. strigae meant for the biological control of Striga hermonthica on maize and sorghum. Arch Phytopathol Plant Prot 48(1):1–9

Interaction Between Pesticide and Soil Microorganisms and Their Degradation: A Molecular Approach

Talat Parween, Pinki Bhandari, Sumira Jan, and S.K. Raza

Abstract The use of pesticide in crops is meant to protect plants against harmful insects and increases crop yields. Pesticides are biologically active compounds, and an unintended consequence of its application may influence physicochemical proprieties of soil and lead to significant changes in microbial populations and activities influencing microbial ecological balance affecting soil fertility and metabolic activity of soil microbial communities. Inactivation of nitrogen-fixing and phosphorus-solubilizing microorganisms is observed in pesticide-contaminated soils. Recent studies show that some pesticides disturb molecular interactions between plants and N-fixing rhizobacteria and consequently inhibit the vital process of biological nitrogen fixation. Similarly, many studies show that pesticides reduce activities of soil enzymes that are key indicators of soil health. The applied pesticides may also influence many biochemical reactions such as mineralization of organic matter, nitrification, denitrification, ammonification, redox reactions, methanogenesis, etc. The fate of pesticides applied in agricultural ecosystems is governed by the transfer and degradation processes and their interaction with soil microorganisms. The increasing reliance of sustainable agriculture on pesticide has led to concern about their ecotoxicological effects influencing microbial populations and enzyme activities, which may serve as indicators of soil quality. In this chapter, we attempt to analyze the impacts of pesticides on soil microbial communities, soil biochemical reactions, and molecular approach of degradation of pesticide by soil microorganisms.

Keywords Pesticides • Microorganism • Nitrogen fixation • Ecological balance • Soil microbial community

T. Parween (✉) • P. Bhandari • S.K. Raza
Institute of Pesticide Formulation Technology,
Sector-20, Udyog Vihar, NH-8, Gurgaon 122016, India
e-mail: talat.jmi@gmail.com

S. Jan
ICAR- Central institute of temperate horticulture, Rangreth, Srinagar 190007, India

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_2

1 Introduction

The use of pesticide in crops against a range of pests infesting agricultural crops is meant to protect plants against different groups of pests. The amount of applied pesticides reaching the target organism is about 0.1 %, while the remaining bulk contaminates the soil environment (Carriger et al. 2006) which can alter the chemical and biological proprieties of soil and affect their metabolic activities. The effects of pesticides on soil microorganisms consist in the decrease of the number of microorganisms, alterations in biochemical activity, and quantitative and qualitative decrease of the microbial community (Filimon et al. 2015). Microbial biomass is an important indicator of microbial activities and provides direct assessment of the linkage between microbial activities and the nutrient transformations and other ecological processes.

Pesticide applied in field practices is not neutral for the soil environment (Choudhary et al. 2008). Improper application of chemical preparations which often have the ability of long-term persistence is frequently the cause of their excessive accumulation in the soil. Agricultural chemicals undergo various transformations in the soil. The intensity and directions of those transformations depend largely on the kind of chemicals applied, its properties, and rate of decomposition and also on the properties of the soil environment (Onet 2009). This constitutes a serious threat to the natural environment. Such chemical may interfere with the run of microbiological and biochemical processes which play a key role in the correct functioning of ecosystems. There are also reports documenting the ability of soil microorganisms to degrade pesticides in the soil environment (Hussain et al. 2007). The degradation products of these pesticides are assimilated by soil microorganisms resulting in increased population sizes and activities of microorganisms (Das and Mukherjee 2000b). Recently, molecular techniques have been used to elucidate the impact of pesticides on microbial community structure and functioning (Widenfalk et al. 2008).

This chapter reviews research on pesticide and its degradation in two sections. The first section reviews recent research concerning pesticide effect on microbial population and biochemical reaction in soil, whereas the second section addresses the molecular basis of degradation of pesticide by soil microbes.

2 Effect of Pesticide on Soil Microbial Activities

2.1 Population

Pesticides undergo various degradative, transport, and adsorption/desorption processes in soil depending on the chemical nature of the pesticide (Laabs et al. 2007) and soil properties (Weber et al. 2004). Microbial population is an important indicator of microbial activities and provides direct link between its activities and transformations of nutrient and other ecological processes (Schultz and Urban 2008). The

negative impacts of pesticides on microbial biomass and respiration of soil have been studied by Pampulha and Oliveira (2006). Generally, a decrease in soil respiration reflects the reduction in microbial biomass (Klose and Ajwa 2004). For some microbes, applied pesticide may act as a source of nutrients and energy, whereas other group of pesticides may be toxic to other organisms (Johnsen et al. 2001). Sometimes, initially microbial population is affected by pesticide application, but with time after a certain period of acclimation, the microbial population returns to normal or even increases (Fliessbach and Mader 2004). This is an indication of changes in microbial catabolic capabilities that may be either due to induced pesticide degradation capabilities or due to a change within the microbial community. In the work of Bacmaga et al. (2015), they indicate that the diflufenican + mesosulfuron-methyl + iodosulfuron-methylsodium mixture had a generally stimulating effect on oligotrophic bacteria, spore-forming oligotrophic bacteria, organotrophic bacteria, and actinomycetes. A detailed description of impacts of various pesticides on soil microbial communities is summarized in Table 1.

In addition to the persistence, concentration, toxicity of the applied pesticide, and its bioavailability, various other factors are responsible for the impact of pesticides on soil microbial population. Bioavailability of applied pesticides in soil environment contributes a major role on soil microbes' population. Adsorption and desorption processes regulate concentration of a contaminant in soil solution (Bonczek and Nkedi-Kizza 2007; Katagi 2008) and hence its bioavailability, bioactivity, and degradability in soil environment. Inhibitory effect of insecticide chlorpyrifos and quinalphos in the loamy sand was found greater than in the sandy loam soil due to greater bioavailability (less sorption) of the pesticides in loamy sand which result in lower organic carbon and clay content (Menon et al. 2004). Effect of insecticides, viz., monocrotophos, quinalphos, and cypermethrin, on microbial density in a black clay soil has been reported by Gundi et al. (2005) and observed that the presence of organic matter and vegetation influences the pesticide toxicity to the soil microbes. By using integrated approaches of soil microbial biomass analysis and community-level physiological profiles (CLPPs), Wang et al. (2006) evaluated the effect of methamidophos and urea on microbial diversity in soil and concluded that agrochemicals enhanced functional diversities of soil microbial communities and reduced microbial biomass that some bacterial species might be enriched in soils under methamidophos stress. Demanou et al. (2006) investigated the effect of a combined application of copper and mefenoxam on the functional diversity of soil microbial communities determined by structural and metabolic profiling (arbitrarily primed and RNA arbitrarily primed PCR). After pesticide spray to agricultural fields, pesticides undergo bio- and physiochemical transformations and form different metabolites which are either more persistent or lethal to target and nontarget organisms or harmless depending upon the victims and metabolites formed.

Virag et al. (2007) studied the effects of pesticides and their degradative products, produced by UV treatment, on microbiological activity. They selected five photosensitive pesticides (carbendazim, acetochlor, simazine, EPTC, and chlorpyrifos) and six representative soil microbes (*Bacillus subtilis*, *Pseudomonas*

Table 1 Effect of pesticide on soil microorganisms

S. no.	Pesticide	Microbial community	Result	References
1	Sulfentrazone @ 0.7 μg g^{-1} soil	Bacteria and actinomycetes	Increase in the counts of bacteria and actinomycetes	Martinez et al. (2008)
2	Diuron herbicide at doses of 1.5, 7.5, and 150 mg kg^{-1} soil	Heterotrophic bacteria	An increase in the size of heterotrophic bacterial populations in loamy sand	Cycon and Piotrowska-Seget (2009)
3	Apyros 75 WG at doses of 8.9, 89.0, and 890.0 μg kg^{-1} containing sulfosulfuron	Bacteria and actinomycetes	Inhibited the proliferation of bacteria and actinomycetes, and bacteria were most sensitive to the tested compound	Kucharski and Wyszkowska (2008)
4	Atrazine, primextra, paraquat, and glyphosate	Azotobacter and fungi	Inhibitory effects of herbicides on soil-dwelling microorganism herbicide inhibited the proliferation of *Azotobacter* and fungi	Sebiomo et al. (2011)
5	Apyros 75 WG herbicide	Fungus	Fungal proliferation was inhibited	Kucharski and Wyszkowska (2008)
6	Mesotrione applied to soil at 0.45–45 mg kg^{-1}	Fungus	A stimulatory effect of herbicides on fungal counts	Crouzet et al. (2010)
7	2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetate applied to soil at 1–10 mg kg^{-1}	Fungus	A stimulatory effect of herbicides on fungal counts	Zabaloy et al. (2010)
8	Metazachlor doses of 0.333–213.312 mg kg^{-1} soil DM	Bacteria, fungus	Changes in the structure and biodiversity of microbial communities	Bacmaga et al. (2014a)

fluorescens, *Mycobacterium phlei*, *Fusarium oxysporum*, *Penicillium expansum*, and *Trichoderma harzianum*) for their experiments. Among them, acetochlor and its degradation products were more toxic to bacteria than fungi. All bacterial strains were sensitive to the parent compound and its degradation products as well. End product of carbendazim was moderately toxic against *P. fluorescens* and *B. subtilis* but strongly toxic against *T. harzianum*. Chlorpyrifos and its metabolites did not inhibit the test organisms. They concluded that the pesticide photo degradation could result in significant changes in soil microbiota in addition to the formation of biologically harmful degradation products.

To evaluate the effect of agrochemicals, various molecular techniques are used to study the change in the structure and functions of microbial community. Long-term effects of methyl parathion contamination were investigated by Zhang et al. (2006) on soil microbial diversity estimated by 16S rRNA gene cloning. In the control soil, a member of bacterial division, the *Bacillus* genus, and a member of a *Proteobacteria*, while in methyl parathion-contaminated soil, the dominant phylotypes included a member of the *Flexibacter–Cytophaga–Bacteroides* division, and two members of the g-proteobacteria were observed. This study provided the evidence to assess the long-term environmental toxicological effects of methyl parathion on microbial diversity. Hoshino and Matsumoto (2007) investigated the effect of chloropicrin and 1,3-dichloropropene and spinach growth on fungal community structure in a field by developing a nested PCR-DGGE method with a new combination of primer pairs. They showed that the chloropicrin treatment changed DGGE profiles drastically and reduced the diversity index H0 in both bulk and rhizosphere soils after 2 months of fumigation. The profiles and diversity index did not recover completely even after a period of 1 year. The DGGE profile of 1, 3-dichloropropene demonstrated a smaller change during 2 months of fumigation which became indistinguishable from the control plots after 6 months of fumigation. The authors concluded that the rhizosphere may contribute to minimizing the effect of chemical fumigation. Paul et al. (2006) demonstrated by using 16S rRNA gene sequences that the community structure of the pesticide-contaminated soil was mainly constituted by *Proteobacteria* and *Actinomycetes*. Borzı et al. (2007) investigated the impact of the fungicide fenhexamid (FEX) on the genetic structure of soil bacterial communities already having pcaH sequence. The use of FEX increased the number of the gene copies which implied microbial population of the contaminated soil adapted to the presence of FEX with an increase in degradation potential.

Su et al. (2007) investigated the toxic effects of acetochlor, methamidophos, and their combination on *nif*H gene in soil. The acetochlor decreased the *nif*H gene diversity (gene richness and diversity index values) and changed the *nif*H gene composition with increasing its concentrations. The methamidophos also reduced *nif*H gene richness in first 4 weeks. The medium concentrations of methamidophos (150 mg kg^{-1}) changed *nif*H gene diversity in first week, but higher concentrations (250 mg kg^{-1}) demonstrated prominent effects on *nif*H gene diversity in next weeks. Wang et al. (2006) conducted an experiment to examine the effect of continuous input of methamidophos for 4 years on the biochemical, catabolic, and genetic characteristics of soil microbial communities through characterizing microbial biomass,

PLFA profiles, and CLCPs and ARDRA patterns. They reported that high methamidophos inputs significantly decreased total microbial biomass carbon (Cmic) and fungal biomass, but enhanced Gram-negative bacteria biomass and catabolic activity with no significant effects on the Gram-positive bacteria. These studies support the applications of molecular techniques in studying the response of soil microbes to applied pesticides.

2.2 Biochemical Reaction in Soil

Microorganisms that inhabit in the soil have the ability to carry out biochemical transformations like nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P), sulfur (S), and carbon (C). Agrochemicals may directly or indirectly affect biochemical reactions such as nitrogen fixation, nitrification, denitrification, and ammonification by activating/deactivating specific soil microorganisms and/or enzymes (Kinney et al. 2005). Information on possible effects of pesticides on all biochemical processes is sparse; however, a description of pesticides' effects on soil biochemical reactions is summarized in Table 2.

Table 2 Selected lists of genes involved in the degradation of pesticides

Gene	Organism
Bacteria	
Opd	*Pseudomonas diminuta*
opaA	*Alteromonas* spp.
opdA	*A. radiobacter*
adpB	*Nocardia* sp.
pepA	*Escherichia coli*
hocA	*Pseudomonas monteilii*
pehA	*Burkholderia caryophylli*
Phn	*Bacillus cereus*
ophB	*Burkholderia* sp. JBA3
ophC2	*Stenotrophomonas* sp. SMSP-1
OpdB	*Lactobacillus brevis*
Imh	*Arthrobacter* sp. scl-2
Mpd	*Ochrobactrum* sp. Yw28, *Rhizobium radiobacter*
Oph	*Arthrobacter* sp.
Mph	*Arthrobacter* sp. L1 (2006)
MpdB	*Burkholderia cepacia*
opdE	*Enterobacter* sp.
Fungi	
A-opd	*Aspergillus niger*
P-opd	*Penicillium lilacinum*

Modified from Singh and Walker 2006

2.2.1 Nitrogen Fixation

An efficient and natural source of nitrogen is the biological nitrogen fixation (BNF). The total BNF has been estimated twice (175 million tons) as compared to the total nitrogen fixation by nonbiological processes. Legumes and rhizobial symbioses contribute nearly half the annual quantity of BNF entering soil ecosystem (Singh and Walker 2006). Pesticide may influence the nodulation and BNF in legumes either by affecting virulence of attacking nodular bacteria, the root fibers of the plants in which the infection occurs, or both. Some agrochemicals not only inhibit the nitrogen fixation process in nitrogen-fixing bacteria but also reduce the bacterium's respiration rate (Tate 1995; San-Tos and Flores 1995). Atmospheric nitrogen gas (N_2) is fixed by the enzyme nitrogenase. Application of pesticides affects the efficiency and activity of nitrogenase enzyme. A decrease in total nitrogenase activity (measured from pots sown with *Pisum sativum* plants) with the application of herbicides was reported (Singh and Wright 1999). There is clear evidence that nontarget soil bacteria are influenced by pesticides, but the impacts of these pesticides vary from stimulatory to highly inhibitory. Effects may be direct or indirect and are dependent upon several interacting factors that relate to the mode of application and the soil environment. A number of factors, viz., chemical nature of pesticides, concentration used, microbial community structure, type of soil, and soil conditions, can contribute to divergent research findings (Digrak and Ozcelik 1998). Thus, previous studies attributed such differences to the dual behavior of pesticides, both harmful and beneficial for soil microorganisms. The vital process of nitrogen fixation is coordinated and regulated by phytochemical signaling to *Rhizobium* (Baker 1998). Some pesticides interfere with plant–Rhizobium signaling and affect symbiotic nitrogen fixation by inhibiting nodulation by *Rhizobium* (Fox et al. 2007). Detailed description of pesticides' effects on plant–*Rhizobium* signaling has been given by Fox et al. (2001). Variation among legume species with regard to nodulation and N_2 fixation under pesticide treatment may depend on the type and dose of the pesticide, species of *Rhizobium* and legume, and stage of development of the *Rhizobium*–legume symbiosis. Khan et al. (2006) reported that herbicides applied in sandy clay loam soil had an adverse phytotoxic effect on chickpea vitality and subsequently the *Mesorhizobium*–chickpea symbiosis. Similarly, Madhaiyan et al. (2006) studied the influence of different pesticides on the growth and survival of *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* strain PAL5. The monocrotophos, lindane, and dichlorvos proved lethal to *Gluconacetobacter*, while endosulfan, chlorpyrifos, and malathion effects were intermediate. The herbicides did not affect the growth and survival of *Gluconacetobacter* in the medium except for the concentrations exceeding recommended rates while it had a slight effect on the growth of *Gluconacetobacter* at recommended dose except Ridomil. Most of the pesticides affected the cell morphology to a larger extent resulting in larger number of pleomorphic cells.

Gulhane et al. (2015) studied the effect of pesticides Hilcyperil and Nuvan on desired nitrogen-fixing bacteria, *Rhizobium* spp. and *Azotobacter* spp., which are very essential for the growth of plant as well as for more yields. Nuvan pesticide greatly inhibited the growth of both the nitrogen-fixing bacteria as compared to

that of Hilcyperil and concluded that pesticides which are under field condition possibly due to its high toxic nature reduced the population of these bacteria under field condition.

2.2.2 Mineralization of Organic Compounds and Availability of Nitrogen, Phosphorus, and Potassium in Soil

Assessing pesticide effects on organic compounds such as carbon and nitrogen mineralization is a standardized component of testing pesticides for nontarget effects in the registration process by USEPA and OECD in various countries. Organic matter is one of the most critical properties of soil that affects soil quality, productivity of soil, and emission of trace gases to atmosphere. Much changes in the levels and the dynamics of organic matter is controlled by biological activities in soil and the quantity and quality of plant residues returned to the soil. Understanding the effects on both processes is important in understanding pesticide interactions in soil and their role in supporting plant growth and overall ecosystem health. Walia et al. (2014) evaluated the effect of mancozeb at different concentration (0–2000 ppm) and concluded that 0, 10, and 100 ppm of mancozeb had little effect on the average amount of available phosphorous released. Above 100 ppm, the amount of phosphorous increased significantly with increase in mancozeb concentrations, and maximum value was obtained at 2000 ppm mancozeb (97.60 ppm). The effect of incubation period revealed significant increase in average phosphorous after 1 week of incubation (71.34 ppm). Further incubation had inhibitory effect on phosphorous solubilization as average phosphorous decreased to 49.43 ppm at the end of 3 weeks. Some scientists reported that in soils treated with different insecticides at recommended doses (BHC, phorate, carbofuran, and fenvalerate representing the organochlorine, organophosphate, carbamate, and pyrethroid groups of insecticide), the rate of mineralization of organic C was higher compared to the control. This indicated that biodegradation of insecticides stimulated the growth and activities of heterotrophic microorganisms which favor mineralization of organic matter and biological transformation of other plant nutrients in soil to derive energy, carbon, and other elements for microbial metabolism for their cellular constituents, resulting in lower retention of organic C in soil (Debnath et al. 1994; Das and Mukherjee 2000a). Application of insecticides resulted in an increase in the amounts of mineralized N (NH_4^+ and NO_3^-) in soil. Insecticides probably stimulated the growth and activities of ammonifying and nitrifying bacteria which were mainly responsible for mineralization of organic N. Chen and Edwards (2001) studied the effect of captan, benomyl, and chlorothalonil on N-dynamics in soils. All fungicides enhanced rates of net N-mineralization and nitrification initially, but reduced the rates after 20 days. They attributed the increase in N-mineralization to the death of certain fungi and increase in certain bacteria that most likely increased the rates of N-mineralization. Demanou et al. (2004) studied the effect of Ridomil Gold copper fungicide on N-ammonification and P-mineralization and found higher mineralization of both elements, probably occurred through killing of a part of microflora and increasing NH_4^+–N by surviving

part of the microflora. The inhibition of nitrification could be another way of NH_4^+–N accumulation in soil. Das and Mukherjee (2000b) also reported higher mineralization of P with the incorporation of insecticides suggesting that insecticides significantly increased the phosphate-solubilizing/phosphate-mineralizing microorganisms. Different results that have been reported by Sardar and Kole (2005) observed significant reduction in N-, P-, and K-mineralization with the application of chlorpyrifos (organophosphate insecticide). The inhibitory effect on available N, P, and K was attributed to the primary and secondary metabolites of chlorpyrifos metabolism rather than parent chlorpyrifos itself. However, the average N and P status was recovered at 120 days after the disappearance of the metabolites. Arginine deaminase catalyzes the mineralization of nitrogenous compounds in soil to release ammonium and nitrate. Menon et al. (2004) reported that arginine ammonification activity of rhizospheric microbes was inhibited after seed treatment with chlorpyrifos and quinalphos and their principal metabolites.

A more accurate assessment of P-solubilizing ability is revealed by the solubilization index (SI). Ahemad and Khan (2012a) evaluated the effect of selected herbicides (quizalofop-p-ethyl, clodinafop, metribuzin, and glyphosate) at one, two, and three times the recommended field rates on the plant-growth-promoting (PGP) traits of *Pseudomonas putida* strain PS9 isolated from the mustard rhizosphere. The effect of 1× and 2× of all herbicides on SI of the *P. putida* PS9 was less deleterious, while the highest concentration (3×) had the maximum adverse impact on P-halo formation. The order of toxicity of herbicides at 3× on SI was quizalofop-p-ethyl > clodinafop > metribuzin = glyphosate. Another study by Ahemad and Khan (2012c) was designed to explore beneficial plant-associated rhizobacteria exhibiting substantial tolerance against fungicide tebuconazole vis-a-vis synthesizing plant growth regulators under fungicide stressed soils and to evaluate further these multifaceted rhizobacteria for protection and growth promotion of green gram [*Vigna radiata* (L.) Wilczek] plants against phytotoxicity of tebuconazole. The *P. aeruginosa* strain PS1 solubilized phosphate significantly and produced indole acetic acid, siderophores, exo-polysaccharides, hydrogen cyanide, and ammonia even under tebuconazole stress. Generally, tebuconazole at the recommended two and three times the recommended field rate adversely affected the growth, symbiosis, grain yield, and nutrient uptake in green gram in a concentration-dependent manner. In contrast, the *P. aeruginosa* strain PS1 along with tebuconazole significantly, increased the growth parameters of the green gram plants. The inoculant strain PS1 increased appreciably root nitrogen, shoot nitrogen, root phosphorus, shoot phosphorus, and seed yield of green gram plants at all tested concentrations of tebuconazole when compared to the uninoculated plants treated with tebuconazole. Dubey et al. (2012) studied the effect of different pesticides such as carbofuran, phorate, carbosulfan, and thiamethoxam on soil microflora and resulted that the viable count of rhizobia and phosphate-solubilizing bacteria from rhizospheric soil of leguminous crop ranged between 107 and 105 Cfu/g soil.

2.2.3 Nitrification, Denitrification, Ammonification, Sulfur Oxidation, and Respiration

Walia et al. (2014) studied the impact of fungicide mancozeb at different concentration (0–2000 ppm) on different soil biological processes. Nitrification of diammonium hydrogen phosphate in soil revealed that average nitrate–nitrogen (NO_3–N) decreased significantly with the increase in mancozeb concentrations from 0 (34.74 ppm NO_3–N) to 2000 ppm (20.63 ppm NO_3–N). However, the difference in NO_3–N between 250 and 500 ppm and 1000 and 2000 ppm was nonsignificant among themselves. The effect of mancozeb (0–2000 ppm) on the production of ammoniacal nitrogen (NH_4^+–N) from applied peptone was studied in apple orchard soil. The findings showed significant decrease in the average NH_4^+–N in mancozeb-treated soil as compared to control. The amount of average ammoniacal nitrogen was at par among 250 and 500 ppm and 1000 and 2000 ppm of mancozeb concentrations. Average ammoniacal nitrogen decreased with increase in incubation period irrespective of mancozeb concentrations.

One of the primary indices used in the estimation of the status of the soil environment is the respiratory activity which indicates the level of general activity of soil microorganisms (Dutta et al. 2010). This process is related to the degradation and oxidation of organic compounds, in which CO_2 is evolved. The disturbances exhibit in carbon transformation processes in soil due to the effect of pesticides can be measured by the respiratory activity. Tys and Rutkowska (2013) studied the long-term effect of Reglone 200 SL and Elastiq 550 EC on the respiratory activity in soil. They demonstrated that the amount of emitted CO_2 and the content of ammonium and nitrate ions depended largely on the periods of the analysis and the type of chemical agent. The optimal dose of 200 SL and Elastiq 550EC applied caused periodic statistically significant changes in the respiratory activity. Araujo et al. (2003) observed 10–15 % increase in the amount of evolved CO_2 in the soil studied under glyphosate treatment. Ahemad and Khan (2012b) assessed the effect of selected pesticides [herbicides (metribuzin and glyphosate), insecticides (imidacloprid and thiamethoxam), and fungicides (hexaconazole, metalaxyl, and kitazin)] at recommended and higher dose rates on plant growth-promoting activities of the *Mesorhizobium* sp. isolated from chickpea nodules. Among these strains, the *Mesorhizobium* sp. strain MRC4 was specifically selected due to the highest tolerance levels for all selected pesticides and the maximum production of plant growth-promoting substances. Strain MRC4 produced indole acetic acid (44 lg ml^{-1}), siderophores [salicylic acid (35 lg ml^{-1}) and 2,3-dihydroxy benzoic acid (19 lg ml^{-1})], exo-polysaccharides (21 lg ml^{-1}), HCN, and ammonia. Under pesticide stress, pesticide-concentration-dependent progressive decline in all plant growth-promoting traits of the *Mesorhizobium* sp. strain MRC4 exposed was observed except for exo-polysaccharides which consistently increased with exceeding the concentration of each pesticide from recommended dose.

Soil Enzymes

For the biodegradation of natural and anthropogenic organic compounds in soil, an enzyme plays a vital role and is often used as indicators of changes that occur in the soil environment in response to pesticides and fertilizers (Bacmaga et al. 2012). Dehydrogenases, similarly as catalase, are intracellular. Enzyme activity is strongly correlated with microbial activity (Bello et al. 2013). In the experiment of Bacmaga et al. (2015), soil enzymes showed different sensitivity to a mixture of diflufenican + mesosulfuron-methyl + iodosulfuron-methylsodium on soil enzymatic activity, compared with uncontaminated samples. They observed that dehydrogenase enzyme was most sensitive to soil contamination with the tested pesticide at the dose of 36.480 mg kg^{-1} and catalase activity was significantly reduced on day 60 in response to herbicide doses of 2.280–9.120 mg kg^{-1}. Cycon et al. (2013) demonstrated that dehydrogenases were strongly inhibited by napropamide doses of 2.25 and 22.5 mg kg^{-1}. The inhibitory effect produced by the 2.25 mg kg^{-1} dose was transient, and on incubation day 28, dehydrogenase activity was similar to that of control soil. Doses tenfold higher than those recommended by the manufacturer significantly inhibited dehydrogenase activity throughout the experiment. A decrease in phosphatase activity was also noted by Yao et al. (2006) in soil contaminated with acetamiprid, Wyszkowska and Kucharski (2004) in a study of Triflurotox 250 EC, and by Wyszkowska (2002) in an experiment with Treflan 460 EC. Bacmaga et al. (2012) observed a positive effect of the Aurora 40 WG herbicide containing carfentrazone-ethyl on the activity of the above enzymes. In the study of Bacmaga et al. (2015), the tested herbicide had a neutral effect on the activity of urease and β-glucosidase. In treatments subjected to the highest herbicide dose, urease activity increased by 7.5 % on day 30 and decreased by 13.2 % on day 60. On day 30, the activity levels of β-glucosidase were fairly similar across the analyzed treatments, but on day 60, they decreased by 13.8 % in treatments exposed to herbicide doses of 1.140 and 2.280 mg kg^{-1}. Saha et al. (2012) observed higher levels of β-glucosidase activity in soil samples treated with alachlor, butachlor, and pretilachlor. Walia et al. (2014) studied the effect of mancozeb (0–2000 ppm) on soil enzymes, viz., amylase, invertase, and phosphatase that showed adverse and disruptive effect when mancozeb used was above 10 ppm in unamended soil. Khudsar and Askar (2013) studied the effect of some pesticides on growth, nitrogen fixation, and *nif* genes in *Azotobacter chroococcum* and *Azotobacter vinelandii* isolated from soil. They investigated the effect of Dimethoate (insecticide), Bayleton (fungicide), and Imazetapir (herbicide) on nitrogenase activity through amplification of *nif*H1, *nif*H2, *nif*H3, *nif*U, *nif*V, and FV genes for *A. chroococcum* and *nif*H, *nif*D, *nif*K, *nif*M, and FV genes for *A. vinelandii* by PCR technique. Band generation of PCR-amplified *nif* gene fragments was used to evaluate the effect of tested pesticides on *A. chroococcum* and *A. vinelandii* isolated from soil cultivated with wheat plants and applied with pesticides. The number of bands present or absent is used to estimate the influence of pesticides on the bases of the number of shared amplification products. Both insecticide- and fungicide-treated pots

affected negatively the *nif* genes, and *nif*H1, *nif*H2, *nif*H3, *nif*U, and *nif*V, while herbicide did not affect the *nif* genes, and the bands appeared as normal sample of *A. chroococcum*.

3 Molecular Basis of Degradation of Pesticide by Soil Microbes

In order to investigate molecular basis of pesticide biodegradation by soil microorganisms, several works had been reported on the role of catabolic genes and the application of recombinant DNA technology. Genes responsible for pesticide degradation such as plasmids and transposons of only a few microorganisms have been shown to encode enzymes responsible for the degradation of several pesticides.

In comparison with standard microbiological methods, molecular techniques give more comprehensive interpretation for in situ microbial community. RFLP, dot blot, Southern blot, PCR amplification, subsequent analysis of bacterial rRNA genes by sequencing, preparing metagenomic libraries, denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE), and microarrays are several techniques which are applied for degradation (Sinha et al. 2009). In this study, colonies were hybridized by entire plasmids as probes to compute the cells containing catabolic plasmids, and then they observed positive relationship between plasmid concentrations and the rates of mineralization. These techniques were used to monitor the xylE and ndoB genes involved in creosote degradation in soil communities. Amplicon length heterogeneity PCR (LH-PCR) and terminal restriction fragment length polymorphism (T-RFLP) technique were used to monitor the effect of nutrient amendments on microbial community during bioremediation of petroleum-contaminated soils (Mills et al. 2003). The gene encoding TCE-RDase required for PCE biotransformation, *tceA*, has been cloned and sequenced by an inverse PCR approach. Sequence comparisons of *tce*A to proteins in the public databases revealed weak sequence similarity confined to the C-terminal region, which contains the eight-iron ferredoxin cluster binding motif (Magnuson et al. 1998). Direct DNA hybridization techniques have been made to monitor TOL and naphthalene-degrading plasmid (NAH) (Sayler and Layton 1990). Polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB) catabolic genes have been used to measure the level of PCB-degrading organisms in soil microbial communities with the help of dot-blot technique (Walia et al. 1990). To quantify the degradation of 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2, 4-D), *tfd*A and *tfd*B gene probes have been used and identified with the help of Southern hybridization technique (Holben et al. 1992).

The degradation of organochlorine pesticides by pure cultures has been proven to occur in situ. One of the works published in nature by Matsumura et al. (1968) was able to evidence the breakdown of dieldrin in the soil by a *Pseudomonas* sp. Most of the xenobiotic-degrading bacteria harbor plasmids which code for catabolic genes. To characterize the appropriate genes and to enhance the process of degradation through improved constructed strains, a proper management is required, and

degradation technology is spanning the spectrum from environmental monitoring ultimately to biodegradation as well as bioremediation (Eyers et al. 2004). Currently, molecular approaches are being used to characterize the nucleic acids of various bacteria from environmental samples (Hurt et al. 2001). Comparing with standard microbiological methods, the molecular techniques provide us with a more comprehensive interpretation of the in situ microbial community and its response to both engineered bioremediation and natural attenuation processes (Brockman 1995). Different microbial enzymes with the capacity to hydrolyze pesticides have been identified (Yan et al. 2007) such as **organophosphorus hydrolase** (OPH, encoded by the *opd* gene). This gene has been found in bacterial strains that can use organophosphate pesticides as carbon source. These plasmids show considerable genetic diversity, but the region containing the *opd* gene is highly conserved. **Methyl-parathion hydrolase** (MPH; encoded by the *mpd* gene), Are *Pseudaminobacter*, *Achromobacter*, *Brucella* and *Ochrobactrum* genes, they were identified by comparison with the gene *mpd* from *Plesiomonas* sp. M6 strain (Zhongli et al. 2001), the gene for the organophosphorus hydrolase has 996 nucleotides, a typical promoter sequence of the promoter TTGCAA N17 TATACT from *E. coli* (Zhang et al. 2005). In various isolates of microorganisms capable of degrading pesticide, several genes have been described in Table 3.

Another powerful molecular technique known as metagenomic libraries has been flourished for the identification of the desired catabolic genes. Basically, metagenomic is a culture-dependent genomic analysis; it is either function-driven approach or sequence-driven approach of total microbial communities, which provides access to retrieve unknown sequences (Schloss and Handelsman 2003). Though the technique is applicable, yet contains certain drawbacks. One of the major drawbacks is less recovery of desired clones that however can be overcome. The metagenomic libraries are particularly promising for locating denitrifying genes (Eyers et al. 2004). The sequence-driven approach which is primarily based on conserved regions in bacterial genes has also been studied. It is reported that certain hybridization probes (screen out clone libraries for specific DNA sequences) may identify the required genes for degradation. For example, in the denitration of 2,4,6-trinitrophenol, the *ndp*G and *ndp*I genes were identified in *Rhodococcus erythropolis HL-PMI* (Heiss et al. 2003). In order to search out diverse degrading genes in relation to bacterial ecology, fingerprinting techniques are also used which are tagged to a PCR reaction to amplify selected sequences. For example, the amplified segment of *nah*Ac genes from a miscellaneous bacterial population may be of related size when amplified with a particular set of *nah*Ac-specific degenerate primers; nevertheless, they contain minute differentiation within the PCR-amplified products (Schneegurt and Kulpa 1998). To investigate the PCB degradation, polymorphism and PCR amplification of *bph*C gene have been done, but no significant restriction polymorphism has been observed. Through DGGE and terminal restriction fragment length polymorphism (T-RFLP), a comparative analysis of PCB-dechlorinating communities in enrichment cultures has been reported (Watts et al. 2001). To evaluate the restriction fragments of PCR-amplified products, matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectrophotometry (MALDI-TOF-MS) has been

Table 3 List of pesticides and their degrading bacterial species

Pesticides	Bacteria	Isolated sites	References
DDT (dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane)	*Pseudoxanthobacter liyangensis* sp. Nov.	Bacterial strain, DDT-3T, was isolated from DDT-contaminated soil in Liyang, PR China	Liu et al. (2014b)
	Novosphingobium Arabidopsis sp. Nov.	Bacterium, designated strain CC-ALB-2T, was isolated from the *Arabidopsis thaliana* rhizosphere	Liu et al. (2014a)
	Alcaligenes sp. Strain DG-5	Bacteria were isolated from DDT-contaminated sediment	Gao et al. (2011)
	Serratia marcescens DT-1P	Bacteria were isolated by long-term enrichment of soil samples collected from DDT-contaminated fields	Bidlan and Manonmani (2002)
HCH/lindane (1,2,3,4,5,6-hexachlorocyclohexane)	*Sphingobium czechense* LL01^T	Bacterial strain was isolated from (HCH) contaminated soil at Spolana Neratovice, a former Czech producer of lindane	Niharika et al. (2013)
	Sphingomonas sp. NM05	Studied by surfactant (rhamnolipid, sophorolipid, and trehalose) mediated enhanced biodegradation	Manickam et al. (2012)
	Streptomyces sp. M7	Studied by the use of lindane as the only carbon source	Cuozzo et al. (2009)
	Pseudomonas strains	Strains isolated from agricultural soil possess c-hexachlorocyclohexane-degrading ability	Nawaz et al. (2003)
2, 4-D (2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid)	*Maribacter* sp. AMSU	Bacterial strain was isolated from aquaculture effluent by enrichment culture technique	Sankaralingam et al. (2013)

Pesticides	Bacteria	Isolated sites	References
	Delftia sp.	Bacterial strain was isolated from a polluted river in Buenos Aires, Argentina	Gonzalez et al. (2012)
	Pseudomonas putida SM1443	Studied by fed-batch microcosm system and a lab-scale sequencing batch reactor (SBR) to enhance degradation capacity of 2,4-D	Quan et al. (2010)
	Comamonas koreensis strain CY01	Anaerobic reductive dechlorination of 2, 4-D and the role of humic substances in the degradation	Wang et al. (2009)
Diuron DCMU (3-)3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1,1-dimethylurea)	*Arthrobacter* sp. BS2 and *Achromobacter* sp. SP1	Bacterial strain was isolated from enrichment culture of buffer strip (BS) soil and in the sediments (SED) of the Morcille river in the Beaujolais vineyard where diuron was found	Devers-Lamrani et al. (2014)
	Micrococcus sp. strain PS-1	Bacterial strain was isolated from diuron storage site	Sharma and Suri 2011
	Pseudomonas sp. and *Stenotrophomonas* sp.	Diuron-degrading bacteria were isolated from enrichment culture of lotic surface water	Batisson et al. (2007)
	Streptomyces sp.	17 *Streptomyces* strains, obtained from agricultural soils, were determined in the laboratory	Castillo et al. (2006)
	Arthrobacter sp.	A bacterial strain was isolated from a soil by enrichment procedures	Widehema et al. (2002)

reported (Taranenko et al. 2002). Probes with DNA microarrays have been designed to identify key genes involved in the degradation of 2, 4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid in the presence of 2,4-D with *Ralstonia eutropha*, a 2,4-D degrading bacteria (Dennis et al. 2003). Replicative limiting dilution PCR (RLD-PCR), an alternate quantitative PCR for environmental application, is based on RLD analysis and the pragmatic trade-offs between analytical sensitivity and practical utility (Chandler 1998). This method has been used to detect and quantify specific biodegradative genes in aromatic-compound-contaminated soil. The catabolic genes *cdo*, *nah*Ac, and *alk*B were used as target genes (Chandler 1998). The biotransformation of pyrene by *Mycobacterium* KMS is extensively studied and confirmed with the aid of proteomics by identifying almost all the enzymes required during the initial steps of the degradation of this pericondensed PAH compound (Liang et al. 2006).

4 Conclusion and Future Prospects

The application of molecular tools in the field of microbial ecology is undergoing unprecedented changes. With the postgenomic molecular approaches, we simply dented the surface of the genetic and metabolic diversity of the prokaryotes. Several questions on a number of microbes and microbial communities that are governed by biological, chemical, and physical factors remain to be understood. Understanding the functional roles of uncultured organisms still remains a daunting task, as most of the genes identified have no homologous representatives in databases. Although considerable progress has been made in the characterization of microbial communities by the application of metagenomic, metatranscriptomic, and proteogenomic approaches, many technical challenges remain including DNA, RNA, and protein extraction from environmental samples, mRNA instability, and low abundance of certain gene transcripts in total RNA. The next-generation sequencing techniques are still developing, and many technological innovations particularly tuned for environmental samples are expected in these techniques. Development in bioinformatics tools is also needed for whole-genome analysis and metagenomic and metatranscriptomic approaches. Quantitative assessment of microbial communities is the greatest challenge due to significant biases associated with nucleic acid isolation and PCR and requires more advanced DNA/RNA extraction techniques for environmental samples. All of the molecular approaches available for community structure and function analysis have advantages and limitations associated with them, and none provides complete access to the genetic and functional diversity of complex microbial communities. A combination of several techniques should be applied to interrogate the diversity, function, and ecology of microorganisms. An interdisciplinary systems approach embracing several “omics” technologies to reveal the interactions between genes,

proteins, and environmental factors will be needed to provide new insights into environmental microbiology.

References

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2012a) Evaluation of plant-growth-promoting activities of rhizobacterium Pseudomonas putida under herbicide stress. Ann Microbiol 62:1531–1540

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2012b) Effects of pesticides on plant growth promoting traits of Mesorhizobium strain MRC4. J Saudi Soc Agric Sci 11:63–71

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2012c) Alleviation of fungicide-induced phytotoxicity in greengram [*Vigna radiata* (L.) Wilczek] using fungicide-tolerant and plant growth promoting Pseudomonas strain. Saudi J Biol Sci 19:451–459

Araujo ASF, Monteiro RTR, Abarkeli RB (2003) Effect of glyphosate on the microbial activity of two Brazilian soils. Chemosphere 52:799–804

Bacmaga M, Boros E, Kucharski J, Wyszkowska J (2012) Enzymatic activity in soil contaminated with the Aurora 40 WG herbicide. Environ Protec Eng 38(1):91–102

Bacmaga M, Kucharski J, Wyszkowska J, Borowik A, Tomkiel M (2014) Responses of microorganisms and enzymes to soil contamination with metazachlor. Environ Earth Sci 72:2251–2262. doi:10.1007/s12665-014-3134-8

Bacmaga M, Borowik A, Kucharski J, Tomkiel M, Wyszkowska J (2015) Microbial and enzymatic activity of soil contaminated with a mixture of diflufenican + mesosulfuron-methyl + iodosulfuron-methyl-sodium. Environ Sci Pollut Res 22:643–656

Baker ME (1998) Flavonoids as hormones: a perspective from an analysis of molecular fossils. Adv Exp Med Biol 439:249–276

Batisson I, Pesce S, Hoggan PB, Sancelme M, Bohatier J (2007) Isolation and characterization of diuron degrading bacteria from lotic surface water. Microb Ecol 54(4):761–770

Bello D, Trasar-Cepeda C, Leiros MC, Gil-Sotres F (2013) Modification of enzymatic activity in soils of contrasting pH contaminated with 2, 4-dichlorophenol and 2, 4, 5-trichlorophenol. Soil Biol Biochem 56:80–86

Bidlan R, Manonmani HK (2002) Aerobic degradation of dichlorodiphenyl trichloroethane (DDT) by *Serratia marcescens* DT-1P. Process Biochem 38:49–56

Bonczek JL, Nkedi-Kizza P (2007) Using surfactant-modified clays to determine sorption mechanisms for a representative organic base, quinoline. J Environ Qual 36:1803–1810

Borzı D, Abbate C, Martin-Laurent F, El Azhari N, Gennari M (2007) Studies on the response of soil microflora to the application of the fungicide fenhexamid. Int J Environ Anal Chem 87:949–956

Brockman FJ (1995) Nucleic acid based methods for monitoring the performance of in situ bioremediation. Mol. Ecol 4:567–578

Carriger JF, Rand GM, Gardinali PR, Perry WB, Tompkins MS, Fernandez AM (2006) Pesticides of potential ecological concern in sediment from South Florida Canals: an ecological risk prioritization for aquatic arthropods. Soil Sed Contam 15:21–45

Castillo MA, Felis N, Aragon P, Cuesta G, Sabater C (2006) Biodegradation of the herbicide diuron by *Streptomycetes* isolated from soil. Int Biodet Biodeg 58(3/4):196–202

Chandler DP (1998) Redefining relativity: quantitative PCR at low template concentrations for industrial and environmental microbiology. Ind. J. Microbiol. Biotechnol 21:128–140

Chen SK, Edwards CA (2001) A microcosm approach to assess the effects of fungicides on soil ecological processes and plant growth: comparison of two soil types. Soil Biol Biochem 33:1981–1991

Chowdhury A, Pradhan S, Saha M, Sanyal N (2008) Impact of pesticides on soil microbiological parameters and possible bioremediation strategies. Ind J Microbiol 48:114–127

Crouzet O, Batisson I, Besse-Hoggan P, Bonnemoy F, Bardot C, Poly F, Bohatier J, Mallet C (2010) Response of soil microbial communities to the herbicide mesotrione: a dose–effect microcosm approach. Soil Biol Biochem 42:193–202

Cuozzo SA, Rollan GG, Abate CM, Amoroso MJ (2009) Specific dechlorinase activity in lindane degradation by *Streptomyces* sp. M7. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 25:1539–1546
Cycon M, Piotrowska-Seget Z (2009) Changes in bacterial diversity and community structure following pesticides addition to soil estimated by cultivation technique. Ecotoxicology 18(5):632–642
Cycon M, Wojcik M, Borymski S, Piotrowska-Seget Z (2013) Short-term effects of the herbicide napropamide on the activity and structure of the soil microbial community assessed by the multi-approach analysis. Appl Soil Ecol 66:8–18
Das AC, Mukherjee D (2000a) Influence of insecticides on microbial transformation of nitrogen and phosphorus in Typic Orchragualf soil. J Agric Food Chem 48:3728–3732
Das AC, Mukherjee D (2000b) Soil application of insecticides influences microorganisms and plant nutrients. Appl Soil Ecol 14:55–62
Debnath A, Das AC, Mukherjee D (1994) Studies on the decomposition of nonconventional organic wastes in soil. Microbiol Res 149:195–201
Dennis P, Edwards EA, Liss SN, Fulthorpe R (2003) Monitoring gene expression in mixed microbial communities by using DNA microarrays. Appl. Environ. Microbiol 69:769–778
Demanou J, Monkiedje A, Njine T, Foto SM, Nola M, Serges H, Togouet Z, Kemka N (2004) Changes in soil chemical properties and microbial activities in response to the fungicide Ridomil gold plus copper. Int J Environ Res Public Health 1:26–34
Demanou J, Sharma S, Weber A, Berndt-Michae W, Njine T, Monkiedje A, Munch JC, Schloter M (2006) Shifts in microbial community functions and nitrifying communities as a result of combined application of copper and mefenoxam. FEMS Microbiol Lett 260:55–62
Devers-Lamrani M, Pesce S, Rouard N, Martin-Laurent F (2014) Evidence for cooperative mineralization of diuron by *Arthrobacter* sp. BS2 and *Achromobacter* sp. SP1 isolated from a mixed culture enriched from diuron exposed environments. Chemosphere 117:208–215
Digrak M, Ozcelik S (1998) Effect of some pesticides on soil microorganisms. Bull Environ Contam Toxicol 60(1):916–922
Dubey V, Singh D, Shukla A, Shukla S, Singh N (2012) Effect of application of different pesticides to leguminous crops on soil microflora of Sidhi district (M.P.). Int J Eng Res Dev 3(12):1–3
Dutta M, Sardar D, Pal R, Kole RK (2010) Effect of chlorpyrifos on microbial biomass and activities in tropical clay loam soil. Environ Monit Assess 160:385–391
Eyers L, George I, Schuler L, Stenuit B, Agathos SN, Fantroussi SEI (2004) Environmental genomics: exploring the unmined richness of microbes to degrade xenobiotics. Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol 66:123–130
Filimon MN, Voia SO, Popescu R, Dumitrescu G, Petculescu L, Mituletu CM, Vlad DC (2015) The effect of some insecticides on soil microorganisms based on enzymatic and bacteriological analyses. Rom Biotechnol Lett 20(3):10439–10447
Fliessbach A, Mader P (2004) Short- and long-term effects on soil microorganisms of two potato pesticide spraying sequences with either glufosinate as defoliants. Biol Fertil Soils 40:268–276
Fox JE, Starcevic M, Kow KY, Burow ME, Mclachlan JA (2001) Nitrogen fixation: endocrine disrupters and flavonoid signaling. Nature 413:128–129
Fox JE, Gulledge J, Engelhaupt E, Burow ME, McLachlan JA (2007) Pesticides reduce symbiotic efficiency of nitrogen-fixing rhizobia and host plants. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:10282–10287
Gao B, Liu WB, Jia LY, Xu L, Xie J (2011) Isolation and characterization of an *Alcaligenes* sp. strain DG-5 capable of degrading DDTs under aerobic conditions. J Environ Sci Health B 46(9):257–263
Gonzalez AJ, Gallego A, Gemini VL, Papalia M, Radice M, Gutkind G, Planes E, Korol SE (2012) Degradation and detoxification of the herbicide 2, 4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2, 4-D) by an indigenous *Delftia* sp. strain in batch and continuous systems. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 66(1):8–13
Gulhane PA, Gomashe AV, Sunderkar KM (2015) Influence of pesticides on nitrogen fixing bacteria. Int J Tech Res Appl 3(4):157–160
Gundi VAKB, Narasimha G, Reddy BR (2005) Interaction effects of insecticides on microbial populations and dehydrogenase activity in a black clay soil. J Environ Sci Health B 40:269–283

Heiss G, Trachtmann N, Abe Y, Takeo M, Knackmuss HJ (2003) Homologous npdGI genes in 2,4-dinitrophenol and 4-nitrophenoldegrading Rhodococcus sp. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:2748–2754

Holben WE, Schroeter BM, Calabrese VGM, Olsen RH, Kukor JK, Biederbeck UD, Smith AE, Tiedje JM (1992) Gene probe analysis of soil microbial populations selected by amendment with 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid. Appl Environ Microbiol 58:3941–3948

Hoshino YT, Matsumoto N (2007) DNA-versus RNA-based denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis profiles of a bacterial community during replenishment after soil fumigation. Soil Biol Biochem 39:434–444

Hurt RA, Qiu X, Wu L, Roh Y, Palumbo AV, Tiedje JM, Zhou J (2001) Simultaneous recovery of RNA and DNA from soils and sediments. Appl. Environ. Microbiol 67:4495–4503

Hussain S, Arshad M, Saleem M, Khalid A (2007) Biodegradation of a- and b-endosulfan by soil bacteria. Biodegradation 18:731–740

Johnsen K, Jacobsen CS, Torsvik V (2001) Pesticides effects on bacterial diversity in agricultural soils-A review. Biol Fertil Soils 33:443–453

Katagi T (2008) Surfactant effects on environmental behavior of pesticides. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 194:1–177

Khan MS, Zaidi A, Rizvi PQ (2006) Biotoxic effects of herbicides on growth, nodulation, nitrogenase activity, and seed production in chickpeas. Commun Soil Sci Plant Anal 37:1783–1793

Kinney CA, Mandernack KW, Mosier AR (2005) Laboratory investigations into the effects of the pesticides mancozeb, chlorothalonil and prosulfuron on nitrous oxide and nitric oxide production in fertilized soil. Soil Biol Biochem 37:837–850

Klose S, Ajwa HA (2004) Enzymes activities in agricultural soils fumigated with methyl bromide alternatives. Soil Biol Biochem 36:1625–1635

Kucharski J, Wyszkowska J (2008) Biological properties of soil contaminated with the herbicide Apyros 75 WG. J Elem 13(3):357–371

Laabs V, Wehrhan A, Pinto A, Dores E, Amelung W (2007) Pesticide fate in tropical wetlands of Brazil: an aquatic microcosm study under semi-field conditions. Chemosphere 67:975–989

Liang Y, Gardener Dr, Miller CD, Chen D, Anderson AJ, Weimer BC, Sims RC (2006) Study of biochemical pathways and enzymes involved in pyrene degradation by Mycobacteriumsp. strainK MS KMS. Appl. Environ. Microbiol 72:7821–7828

Liu XM, Chen K, Meng C, Zhang C, Zhu JC, Huang X, Li SP, Jiang JD (2014a) *Pseudoxanthobacter liyangensis* sp. nov., isolated from dichlorodiphenyl trichloroethane contaminated soil. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 64:3390–3394

Liu H, Yao J, Yuan Z, Shang Y, Chen H, Wang F, Masakorala K, Yu C, Cai M, Blake RE, Choi MMF (2014b) Isolation and characterization of crude oil degrading bacteria from oil water mixture in Dagang oil field, China. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 87:52–59

Madhaiyan A, Poonguzhali S, Hari K, Saravanan VS, Sa T (2006) Influence of pesticides on the growth rate and plant-growth promoting traits of *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus*. Pesti Biochem Physiol 84:143–154

Magnuson JK, Stern RV, Gossett, JM, Zinder, SH, Burris, DR (1998) Reductive dechlorination of tetrachloroethene to ethene by a two component enzyme pathway. Applied Environmental Microbiology 64:1270–1275

Manickam N, Bajaj A, Saini HS, Shanker R (2012) Surfactant mediated enhanced biodegradation of hexachlorocyclohexane (HCH) isomers by *Sphingomonas* sp. NM05. Biodegradation 23:673–682

Martinez CO, Silva CMMS, Fay EF, Maia AHN, Abakerli RB, Durrant LR (2008) Degradation of the herbicide sulfentrazone in a Brazilian typic hapludox soil. Soil Biol Biochem 40:879–886

Matsumura F, Boush GM, Tai A (1968) Breakdown of Dieldrin in the Soil by a Microorganism, Nature, Vol. 219, No. 5157, (August 1968), pp.965–967, ISSN 0028-0836

Menon P, Gopal M, Parsad R (2004) Influence of two insecticides, chlorpyrifos and quinalphos, on arginine ammonification and mineralizable nitrogen in two tropical soil types. J Agric Food Chem 52:7370–7376

Mills DK, Fitzgerald K, Litchfield CD, Gillevet PM (2003) A comparison of DNA profiling techniques for monitoring nutrient impact on microbial community composition during bioremediation of petroleum-contaminated soils. J Microbiol Methods 54(1):57–74

Nawaz A, Aleem A, Malik A (2003) Determination of organochlorine pesticides in agricultural soil with special reference to c-HCH degradation by *Pseudomonas* strains. Bioresour Technol 88:41–46

Niharika N, Moskalikova H, Kaur J, Khan F, Sedlackova M, Hampl A, Damborsky J, Prokop Z, Lal R (2013) *Sphingobium czechense* sp. nov. isolated from a hexachlorocyclohexane dump site. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 63:723–728

Onet A (2009) Study of the effect of some pesticides on soil microorganisms. Anal Univ din Oradea Fascicula Protectia Mediului 14:763–765

Pampulha ME, Oliveira A (2006) Impact of an herbicide combination of bromoxynil and prosulfuron on soil microorganisms. Curr Microbiol 53:238–243

Paul D, Pandey G, Meier C, Van der Meer JR, Jain RK (2006) Bacterial community structure of a pesticide-contaminated site and assessment of changes induced in community structure during bioremediation. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 57:116–127

Quan XC, Tang H, Xiong WC, Yang ZF (2010) Bioaugmentation of aerobic sludge granules with a plasmid donor strain for enhanced degradation of 2, 4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid. J Hazard Mater 179(1/3):1136–1142

Saha S, Dutta D, Karmakar R, Ray DP (2012) Structure–toxicity relationship of chloroacetanilide herbicides: relative impact on soil microorganisms. Environ Toxicol Pharmacol 34:307–314

Sankaralingam S, Nithyanand P, Karuthapandiyan ST, Palavesam A, Ramasubburayan R, Immanuel G (2013) Identification and growth characterization of a novel 2, 4-D (Dichlorophenoxyacetic Acid) degrading bacterium *Maribacte*r *sp Amsu* isolated from aquaculture effluent. Appl Ecol Environ Res 11(1):137–151

San-Tos A, Flores M (1995) Effects of glyphosate on nitrogen fixation of free-living heterotrophic bacteria. Lett Appl Microbiol 20:349–352

Sardar D, Kole RK (2005) Metabolism of chlorpyrifos in relation to its effect on the availability of some plant nutrients in soil. Chemosphere 61:1273–1280

Sayler GS, Layton AC (1990) Environmental application of nucleic acid hybridization. Annual Review of Microbiology 44:625–648

Schloss PD, Handelsman J (2003) Biotechnological prospects from metagenomics. Curr. Opin. Microbiol 14:303–310

Schneegurt-Mark A, Kulpa-Charler FJR (1998) The application of molecular techniques in environmental biotechnology for monitoring microbial systems. Biotechnol. Appl. Biochem 27:73–79

Schultz P, Urban NR (2008) Effects of bacterial dynamics on organic matter decomposition and nutrient release from sediments: a modeling study. Ecol Model 210:1–14

Sebiomo A, Ogundero WV, Bankloe SA (2011) Effect of four herbicides on microbial population, soil organic matter and dehydrogenase activity. Afr J Biotechnol 10:770–778

Sharma P, Suri CR (2011) Biotransformation and biomonitoring of phenyl urea herbicide diuron. Bioresour Technol 102:3119–3125

Singh BK, Walker A (2006) Microbial degradation of organophosphorus compounds. FEMS Microbiol Rev 30(3):428–471

Singh G, Wright D (1999) Effect of herbicides on nodulation, symbiotic nitrogen fixation, growth and yield of pea (*Pisum sativum*). J Agric Sci 133:21–30

Sinha S, Chattopadhyay P, Pan I, Chatterjee S, Chanda P, Bandyopadhyay D, Das K, Sen SK (2009) Microbial transformation of xenobiotics for environmental bioremediation. Afr J Biotechnol 8(22):6016–6027

Su Z, Zhang H, Li X, Zhang Q, Zhang C (2007) Toxic effects of acetochlor, methamidophos and their combination on *nif*H gene in soil. J Environ Sci 19:864–873

Taranenko NI, Hurt R, Zhou J, Isola NR, Huang H, Lee SH, Chen CH (2002) Laser desorption mass spectrometry for microbial DNA analysis. J. Microbiol. Methods 48:101–106

Tate RL (1995) Soil microbiology (symbiotic nitrogen fixation). Wiley, New York, pp 307–333

Tys SJ, Rutkowska A (2013) Respiratory activity, intensity of processes of ammonification and nitrification in soil subjected to the effect of chemical preparates Reglone 200 SL and Elastiq 550 EC. Afr J Agric Res 10(13):1565–1571

Virag D, Naar Z, Kiss A (2007) Microbial toxicity of pesticide derivatives produced with UV-photodegradation. Bull Environ Contam Toxicol 79:356–359

Walia A, Mehta P, Guleria S, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2014) Impact of fungicide mancozeb at different application rates on soil microbial populations, soil biological processes, and enzyme activities in soil. Scientific World Journal 2014:702909, 9 pages

Walia S, Khan A, Rosenthal N (1990) Construction and application of DNA probes for detection of polychlorinated biphenyl-degrading genotypes in toxic organic-contaminated soil environments. Appl Environ Microbiol 56:254–259

Wang MC, Gong M, Zang HB, Hua XM, Yao J, Pang YJ, Yang YH (2006) Effect of methamidophos and urea application on microbial communities in soils as determined by microbial biomass and community level physiological profiles. J Environ Sci Health B 41:399–413

Watts JEM, Wu Q, Schreier SB, May HD, Sowers KR (2001) Comparative analysis of polychlorinated biphenyldechlorinating communities in enrichment cultures using three different molecular screening techniques. Environ. Microbiol 3:710–719

Wang Y, Wu C, Wang X, Zhou S (2009) The role of humic substances in the anaerobic reductive dechlorination of 2, 4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid by *Comamonas koreensis* strain CY01. J Hazard Mater 164(2/3):941–947

Weber JB, Wilkerson GG, Reinhardt CF (2004) Calculating pesticide sorption coefficients (K sub (d)) using selected soil properties. Chemosphere 55:157–166

Widehema P, Aissaa SA, Tixierb C, Sancelmeb M, Veschambreb H, Truffaut N (2002) Isolation, characterization and diuron transformation capacities of a bacterial strain *Arthrobacter* sp. N2. Chemosphere 46(4):527–534

Widenfalk A, Bertilsson S, Sundh I, Goedkoop W (2008) Effects of pesticides on community composition and activity of sediment microbes-responses at various levels of microbial community organization. Environ Pollut 152:576–584

Wyszkowska J (2002) Effect of soil contamination with Treflan 480 EC on biochemical properties of soil. Pol J Environ Stud 11(1):71–77

Wyszkowska J, Kucharski J (2004) Biochemical and physicochemical properties of soil contaminated with herbicide Triflurotox 250 EC. Pol J Environ Stud 13:223–231

Yan QX, Hong Q, Han P, Dong X-J, Shen YJ, Li SP (2007) Isolation and characterization of a carbofuran-degrading strain *Novosphingobium* sp. FND-3. FEMS Microbiol Lett 271:207–213

Yao X, Min H, Li Z, Yuan H (2006) Influence of acetamiprid on soil enzymatic activities and respiration. Eur J Soil Biol 42:120–126

Zabaloy MC, Garland JL, Gomez MA (2010) Assessment of the impact of 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4-D) on indigenous herbicide degrading bacteria and microbial community function in an agricultural soil. Appl Soil Ecol 46:240–246

Zhang R, Cui Z, Jiang J, Gu X, Li S (2005) Diversity of organophosphorus pesticides degrading bacteria in a polluted soil and conservation of their organophosphorus hydrolase genes. Can J Microbiol 5:337–343

Zhang R, Jiang J, Gu JD, Li S (2006) Long term effect of methylparathion contamination on soil microbial community diversity estimated by 16S rRNA gene cloning. Ecotoxicology 15:523–530

Zhongli C, Shunpeng L, Guoping F (2001) Isolation of methyl parathion-degrading strain m6 and cloning of the methyl parathion hydrolase gene. Appl Environ Microbiol 67(10):4922–4925

In Silico Functional Analyses of SWEETs Reveal Cues for Their Role in AMF Symbiosis

Muhammad Sameeullah, Tijen Demiral, Noreen Aslam, Faheem Shehzad Baloch, and Ekrem Gurel

Abstract SWEETs are novel class of sugar effluxers, which have unique functional role in plant biology. Besides nectar production, freezing tolerance, and transport of hexoses across tonoplast and growth-supporting role of pathogens, these SWEETs could have potential role in establishing powerful symbiotic relationship at the root interface and also in feeding to arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) symbionts. The microarray or transcriptome expression of SWEET genes from colonized roots revealed that out of 28 *Medicago* SWEETs, three genes (*MtSWEET1b*, *MtSWEET3c*, and *MtSWEET12*) were induced specifically due to AMF symbiosis. The root type specific expression of these three genes was also enhanced by AMF colonization in rice. The degree of expression of *OsSWEET1b*, *OsSWEET3b*, and *OsSWEET12* was increased in colonized large lateral roots (LLRM) and crown roots (CRM), while *OsSWEET3b* and *OsSWEET12* were induced in fine lateral roots (FLRM) and CRM, respectively. Promoter regions of these SWEETs represent critical motif elements (MYCS, PB1S, and PHR1) which play critical role in establishment of AMF symbiosis and phosphate starvation-induced responses, respectively. Taken together, these SWEETs have potential to be explored via functional genomics tools to understand feeding mechanisms to symbionts.

Keywords AMF symbiosis • Phylogenetic tree • Promoter analyses • Sugar effluxers • SWEET

M. Sameeullah (✉) • N. Aslam • E. Gurel
Department of Biology, Faculty of Science and Arts, Abant Izzet Baysal University, 14030 Bolu, Turkey
e-mail: sameepbg@gmail.com

T. Demiral
Department of Biology, Faculty of Science and Arts, Harran University, 63100 Şanlıurfa, Turkey

F.S. Baloch
Department of Field Crops, Faculty of Agricultural and Natural Sciences, Abant Izzet Baysal University, Bolu, Turkey

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_3

1 SWEET Proteins

SWEET transporters or sugar efflux transporters were identified (Chen et al. 2010; Braun 2012) by integrated tools of genetics, genomics, cell biology, and biochemistry by using fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET), an optical sensor that could detect the level of sugars in cytoplasm (Lager et al. 2006; Braun 2012). SWEETs do not show strong tendency to pH dependence and function in both uptake and efflux assays (Eom et al. 2015). These proteins play crucial role in the efflux of sugars. For example, AtSWEET11 and AtSWEET12 localized to the plasma membrane of mesophyll parenchyma cells are involved in efflux of sucrose (Chen et al. 2012; Eom et al. 2015) to the cell walls between parenchyma and companion cells. The sucrose transporter localized at the plasma membrane of companion cell import sugar into companion cells and then finally through plasmodesmata load into the phloem (Fig. 1). Le Hir et al. (2015) very recently reported that AtSWEET11 and AtSWEET12 to transport glucose and fructose in addition to sucrose and their expression localized not only in phloem parenchyma cells but also in xylem cells close to the cambium region. Furthermore, the double *Arabidopsis* mutants *sweet11-sweet12* exhibited greater freezing tolerance than the wild type and both single mutants by modification of the chemical composition of the xylem

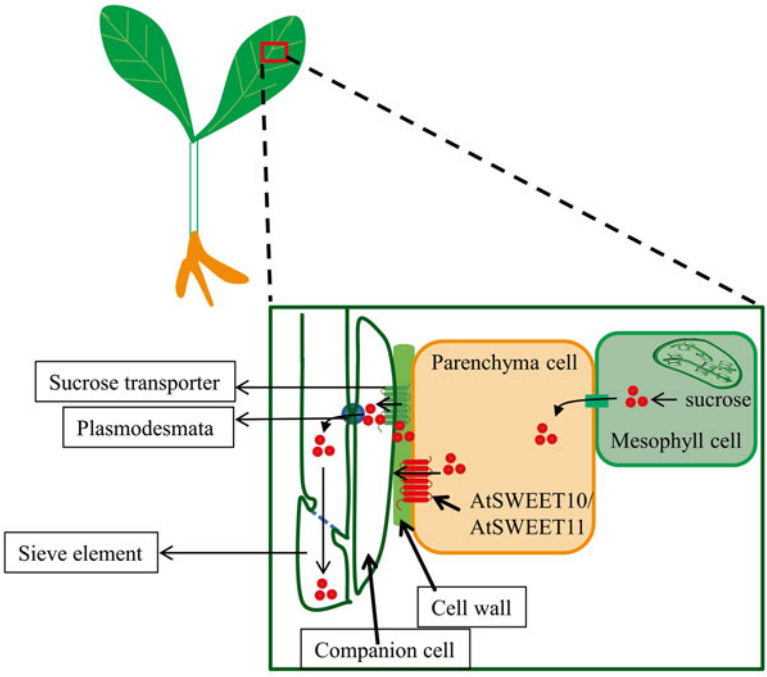


Fig. 1 A key role of SWEETs for translocation of sucrose from the site of synthesis (mesophyll cell) to phloem

cell walls (Le Hir et al. 2015). These findings suggested that AtSWEET11 and AtSWEET12 have a role as sugar exporters delivering carbon-containing skeletons to developing xylem cells to support secondary cell wall formation besides their role in contributing phloem loading in source leaves (Le Hir et al. 2015). SWEET9 is involved in the secretion of nectar (Lin et al. 2014) that is essential as food for pollinating insects (Sargent 2004). AtSWEET5, AtSWEET8, and AtSWEET13 are essential in pollen feeding. AtSWEET11, AtSWEET12, and AtSWEET15 which are expressed in seed coat and endosperm have a role in healthy seed development, while triple knock-out mutants exhibited extremely procrastinate embryo development and seed phenotype was wrinkled (Eom et al. 2015). AtSWEET16 and AtSWEET17 are tonoplast-localized hexose transporters. Overexpression of AtSWEET16 improved the seed germination and freezing tolerance (Klemens et al. 2013). AtSWEET17 controls the fructose content of *Arabidopsis* leaf (Chardon et al. 2013) and also facilitates fructose content across the tonoplast of leaf and roots of *Arabidopsis* (Guo et al. 2014). AtSWEET2 functions on the root tonoplast of the cortex and epidermis cells by sequestering glucose into root vacuoles, thereby limiting carbon loss into the rhizosphere (Chen et al. 2015). Reduced sugar availability in the rhizosphere due to SWEET2 activity thus provides *Arabidopsis* seedlings with resistance against soilborne pathogen *Pythium irregulare* (Chen et al. 2015).

Maintenance of sustainable food production is seriously hampered by plant pathogens worldwide, and exploitation of disease resistance (R) genes seems the best bet to combat the adverse effects of the diseases. One of the most common phytopathogens causing blight disease in rice (*Oryza* sp.) is *Xanthomonas oryzae* pv. *oryzae* (*Xoo*) (Mansfield et al. 2012), and virulence of most *Xoo* strains mainly relies on the presence of individual transcriptional activator-like (TAL) effectors (Streubel et al. 2013). TAL effectors recognize and bind to the effector-binding elements (EBEs) at the promoter region of disease susceptibility (S) genes in host DNA, which are thus induced to provide advantage to the pathogen. Hutin et al. (2015) screened a germplasm of 169 rice accessions for polymorphism in the promoter of the major bacterial blight susceptibility (S) gene *OsSWEET14* which encodes a sugar transporter targeted by numerous strains of *Xoo* and identified a single allele (*xa41*(t)) conferring resistance against half of the tested *Xoo* strains. They showed that this allele with a deletion of 18-bp conferred resistance against *Xoo* strains by possibly preventing the binding of several TAL effectors known to target *OsSWEET14* (Hutin et al. 2015). Out of 21 SWEETs, five SWEETs from clade III have been shown that these can support the growth of *Xanthomonas oryzae* pv. *oryzae* (*Xoo*) in rice. Among these five SWEETs, OsSWEET14 was induced by bacterial pathogen transcription activator-like 5 (TAL) which is a novel TAL effector. These artificial TAL effectors, which targeted specifically to the SWEETs, could support the growth of pathogens (Streubel et al. 2013). A SWEET from citrus CsSWEET1 could express upon infection of *Xanthomonas citri* in a TAL effector-dependent manner (Hu et al. 2014) also another example of feeding role of SWEETs to pathogens. To date, the feeding role of SWEETs to symbiotic microbes is still missing, and the horizons of SWEET interaction with symbionts to develop efficient symbiotic relationships with plants need to be explored. The detailed studies of SWEET interaction with symbionts could play a role in sustainable agriculture and healthy crop management under abiotic and biotic stresses. However, SWEET proteins could be involved in establishment of

symbiotic interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) and plant roots (Udvardi et al. 1990). Thus, SWEET protein might be responsible for transport of carbohydrates from roots to AMF cells to flourish its growth and thus make AMF capable of continuous supply of phosphate for the host plant as a feedback. The phosphates can be acquired by low- or high-affinity phosphate transporters in roots, which can be then translocated to shoot region to meet the demands of the plant (Ceasar et al. 2014). Here, we present the SWEET proteins, which were upregulated due to inoculation with AM fungi in *Medicago truncatula* and *Oryza sativa*.

1.1 Phylogenetic Tree

SWEET genes were classified into four clades following the classifications described previously (Chen et al. 2010; Streubel et al. 2013). Purple color lines and SWEETs belong to clade I, teal color represents clade II, green color for clade III SWEETs, and olive color for clade IV and from *Arabidopsis*, *Medicago*, and rice. Red color-labeled SWEETs were induced by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) symbiosis in *Medicago* and rice plant roots. MtSWEET1b, OsSWEET1b OsSWEET3b, and MtSWEET3c belong to clade I, and MtSWEET12 and OsSWEET12 fall in clade III (Fig. 2).

1.2 SWEETs Induced by AMF Symbiosis in Medicago

Gomez et al. (2009) employed Affymetrix GeneChip® *Medicago* Genome Array for transcript profiling which was associated with AMF (*Glomus intraradices*) symbiosis. Their focus was to determine the gene expression related to AMF symbiosis in cortical cells. However, SWEET genes were unattended since SWEETs were reported later (Chen et al. 2010, 2012). SWEET expression log intensity according to values of genome array of control roots and AMF symbiotic roots revealed that out of 12 SWEETs, three-SWEET expression was prominently elevated due to AMF symbiosis. Expression level of *MtSWEET1b*, *MtSWEET3c*, and *MtSWEET12* was AMF symbiotic dependent manner, while rests of SWEETs were

Fig. 2 (continued) MtSWEET12 (Medtr8g096320), MtSWEET13 (Medtr3g098910), MtSWEET14 (Medtr8g096310), MtSWEET15a (Medtr2g007890), MtSWEET15b (Medtr5g067530), MtSWEET15c (Medtr7g405730), MtSWEET15d (Medtr7g405710), MtSWEET16 (Medtr2g436310), *Oryza sativa* SWEETs: OsSWEET1a (LOC_Os01g65880), OsSWEET1b (LOC_Os05g35140), OsSWEET2a (LOC_Os01g36070), OsSWEET2b (LOC_Os01g50460), OsSWEET3a (LOC_Os05g12320), OsSWEET3b (LOC_Os01g12130), OsSWEET4 (LOC_Os02g19820), OsSWEET5 (LOC_Os05g51090), OsSWEET6a (LOC_Os01g42110), OsSWEET6b (LOC_Os01g42090), OsSWEET7a (LOC_Os09g08030), OsSWEET7b (LOC_Os09g08440), OsSWEET7c (LOC_Os12g07860), OsSWEET7d (LOC_Os09g08490), OsSWEET7e (LOC_Os09g08270), OsSWEET11 (LOC_Os08g42350), OsSWEET12 (LOC_Os03g22590), OsSWEET13 (LOC_Os12g29220), OsSWEET14 (LOC_Os11g31190), OsSWEET15 (LOC_Os02g30910), and OsSWEET16 (LOC_Os03g22200)

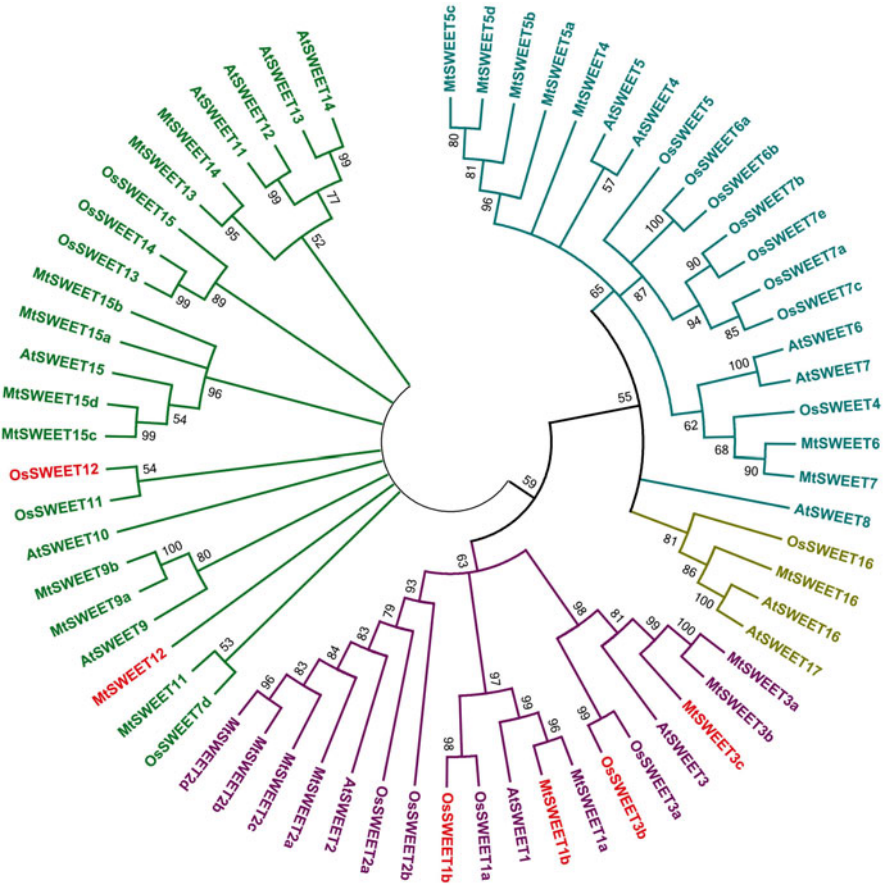


Fig. 2 Phylogenetics of SWEETs from *Arabidopsis*, *Medicago*, and rice. The phylogenetic tree was constructed by amino sequences of SWEETs from *Arabidopsis thaliana*, *Oryza sativa*, and *Medicago truncatula*. Protein sequences were aligned using MUSCLE (http://www.ebi.ac.uk/Tools/msa/muscle/), and phylogenetic tree was developed using MEGA7 assuming a Poisson substitution model, uniform rates among sites, and partial deletions for missing data and gaps with 1000 replicates. *Red color*-labeled SWEETs were induced by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) in *Medicago* and rice plant roots. SWEET accessions were followed from Lin et al.(2014), and MtSWEET16 accession was retrieved from *Medicago truncatula* gene expression database (http://mtgea.noble.org/v3/). Protein sequences of *Arabidopsis* were obtained from https://www.*Arabidopsis*.org, *Oryza sativa* protein sequences from http://rice.plantbiology.msu.edu, and *Medicago truncatula* protein sequences from http://plantgrn.noble.org/LegumeIP/ or http://phytozome.jgi.doe.gov/pz/portal.html. *Arabidopsis* SWEET gene names and accession are AtSWEET1 (At1G21460), AtSWEET2 (At3G14770), AtSWEET3 (At5G53190), AtSWEET4 (At3G28007), AtSWEET5 (At5G62850), AtSWEET6 (At1G66770), AtSWEET7 (At4G10850), AtSWEET8 (At5G40260), AtSWEET9 (At2G39060), AtSWEET10 (At5G50790), AtSWEET11 (At3G48740), AtSWEET12 (At5G23660), AtSWEET13 (At5G50800), AtSWEET14 (At4G25010), AtSWEET15 (At5G13170), AtSWEET16 (At3G16690), AtSWEET17 (At4G15920), *Medicago truncatula* SWEETs: MtHext1 (Medtr1g104780), MtSWEET1a (Medtr1g029380), MtSWEET1b (Medtr3g089125), MtSWEET2a (Medtr8g042490), MtSWEET2b (AC235677_9), MtSWEET2c (Medtr6g034600), MtSWEET2d (Medtr2g073190), MtSWEET3a (Medtr3g090940), MtSWEET3b (Medtr3g090950), MtSWEET3c (Medtr1g028460), MtSWEET4 (Medtr4g106990), MtSWEET5a (Medtr6g007610), MtSWEET5b (Medtr6g007637), MtSWEET5c (Medtr6g007623), MtSWEET5d (Medtr6g007633), MtSWEET6 (Medtr3g080990), MtSWEET7 (Medtr8g099730), MtSWEET9a (Medtr5g092600), MtSWEET9b (Medtr7g007490), MtSWEET11 (Medtr3g098930),

downregulated or insensitive to response of AMF symbiotic relationship (Fig. 3). Doidy et al. (2012) explored sucrose transporters in *Medicago truncatula* (MtSUTs) and their implication in carbon partitioning toward the fungal symbiont by inoculation with the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus intraradices*. Their results proved the involvement of MtSUT1-1 in roots and MtSUT4-1 in leaves upon AMF inoculation, implying a role of these transporters in phloem unloading toward AMF-colonized sink tissues during plant symbioses (Doidy et al. 2012). But the role of SWEETs in sugar partitioning in AMF symbiosis still remains to be explored.

1.3 SWEET Expression Depends upon AMF Symbiosis in Rice

Transcriptome of AMF symbiosis of *Oryza sativa* was reported by Gutjahr et al. (2015). *Rhizophagus irregularis* (previously called *Glomus intraradices*) was inoculated with *Oryza sativa* ssp. Japonica cv. Nipponbare. They investigated different root types and associated transcript phytohormones and secondary cell wall, but SWEETs still remain elusive. OsSWEET1b transcript expression upon AMF symbiosis was highly upregulated in large lateral roots (LLRM), and degree of expression was relatively lower in other colonized roots such as fine large lateral roots (FLRM) and crown roots (CRM). However, overall expression of *OsSWEET1b* was higher in colonized roots compared to non-colonized roots (NC). The expression of *OsSWEET3b* was highly upregulated in FLRM roots than FLRNC. Expression level was also increased in LLRM than in LLRNC. However, expression of *OsSWEET3b* was downregulated in CRM compared to CRNC that suggest the tissue specificity of *OsSWEEt3b*. Expression of OsSWEET12 was slightly upregulated in FLRM and LLRM compared to FLRNC and LLRNC, respectively. However, degree of

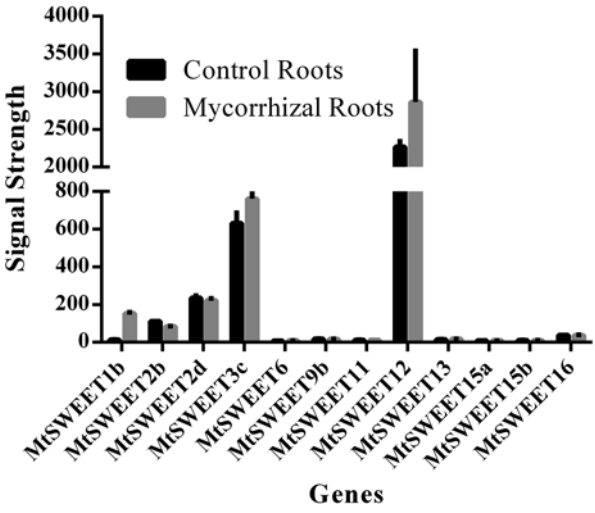


Fig. 3 *Medicago truncatula* SWEET expression regulated by AMF symbiosis. Three microarray expression values from three independent repeats of control or treated roots with AMF symbiosis of *Medicago truncatula* were used. Data represent mean ± SE

expression of OsSWEET12 was higher in CRM than CRNC suggesting the tissue specific role of this SWEET gene (Fig. 4).

In silico prediction of SWEET genes was performed which were induced by AMF colonization in *Medicago* or rice as shown in Figs. 3 and 4. The protein sequences were used to predict subcellular localization that was performed by Wolf PSORT, Plant-mPLoc, and RiceNetDB. Localization of MtSWEET1b and 3c at the chloroplast, vacuole, and cell membrane depicts multicellular functionality; however, MtSWEET12 is predicted to be localized in the cell membrane and extracellular. OsSWEET1b and 3b localized in the cell membrane predominantly, while OsSWEET12 localization is predicted in extracellular and the nucleus (Table 1).

1.4 Prediction of Transmembrane Helices of AMF-Induced SWEETs

Transmembrane helices and topology of SWEETs were conducted by using the TMHMM2.0 program http://www.cbs.dtu.dk/services/TMHMM/. As a representative dicot and a monocot, topologies of MtSWEET1b and OsSWEET1b were predicted, respectively. SWEET proteins consist of seven transmembrane helices and with peptide sequences of 200–250 (Fig. 5).

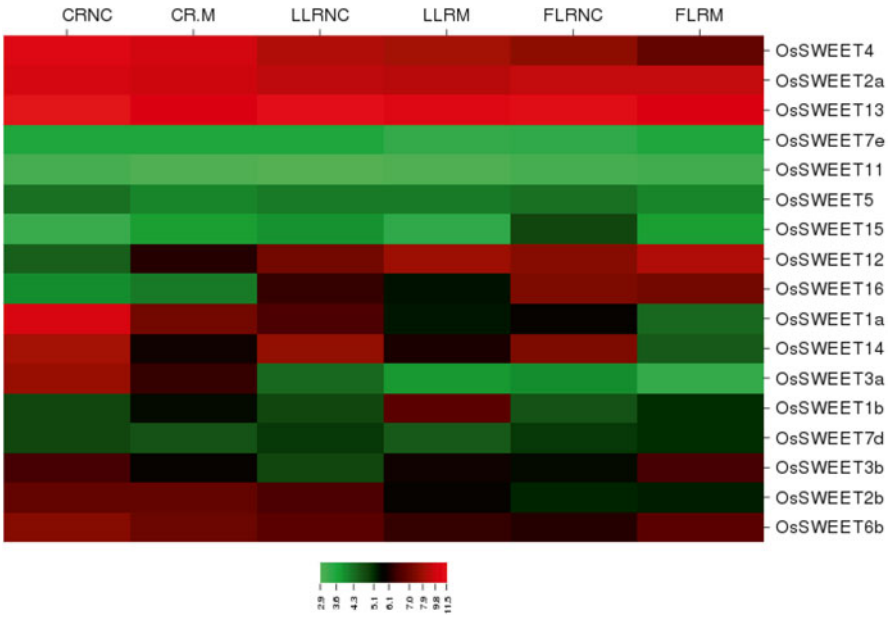


Fig. 4 Heat map expression of rice SWEET genes induced in different root types. Crown roots (CR), large lateral roots (LLR), fine lateral roots (FLR), non-colonized (NC), mycorrhizal (M)

Table 1 In silico subcellular localization prediction of SWEETs induced by AMF

Genes	Accession no.	Length	Subcellular prediction
MtSWEET1b	Medtr3g089125	247	Chloroplast, vacuole, cell membrane
MtSWEET3c	Medtr1g028460	256	Chloroplast, vacuole, cell membrane
MtSWEET12	Medtr8g096320	255	Cell membrane, extracellular
OsSWEET1b	Os05g35140	261	Cell membrane, Golgi
OsSWEET3b	Os01g12130	252	Cell membrane
OsSWEET12	Os03g22590	300	Extracellular, nucleus

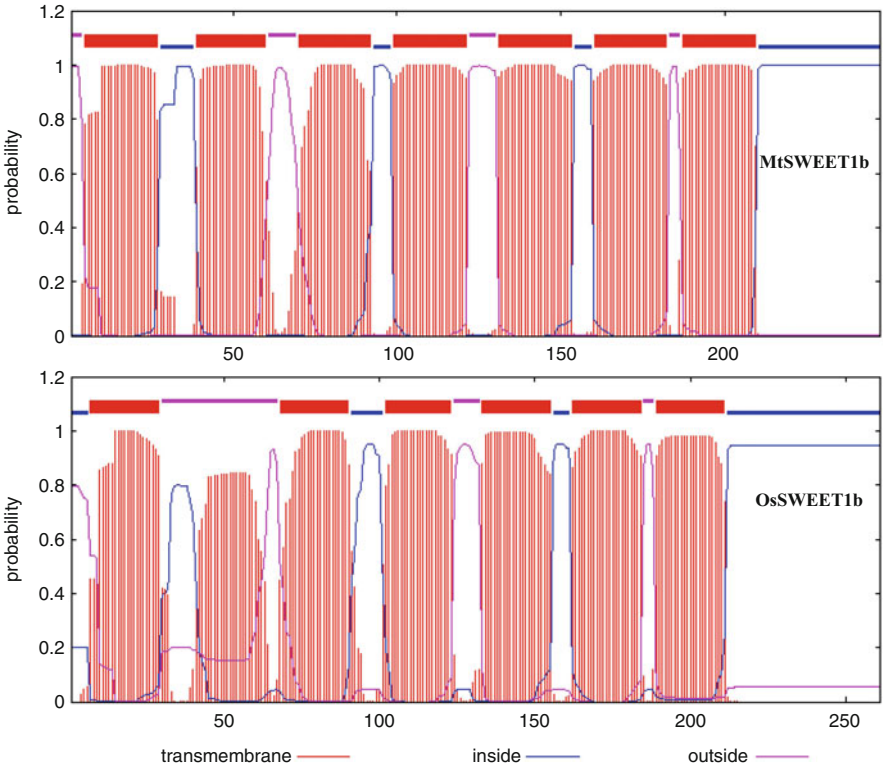


Fig. 5 Predicted transmembrane helices of AMF-inducible SWEETs from *Medicago* and rice

1.5 Promoter Analyses of AMF-Inducible SWEETs

In silico analysis of putative promoters regions of SWEETs (*MtSWEET1b*, *MtSWEET3c*, *MtSWEET12*, *OsSWEET1b*, *OsSWEET3b*, and *OsSWEET12*) of *Medicago truncatula* and *Oryza sativa* revealed several known *cis*-acting elements which are responsible for phosphate starvation (PHR1 or P1BS) or transcriptional activators involved in AMF-mediated inorganic phosphate transporters genes

(MYCS). Specifically, MYCS *cis*-acting elements were found in *MtSWEET1B*, *OsSWEET1B*, *OsSWEET3b*, and *OsSWEET12* but not in *MtSWEET3c* and *MtSWEET12*. The MYCS element is an 11 bp sequence (TTTCTTGTTCT) which is present in many other phosphate transporters LePT4, StPT4, SmPT4, NtPT4, SmPT5, NtPT5, MtPT4, StPT3, SmPT3, and NtPT3 (Chen et al. 2011). There are two MYCS *cis*-elements in promoter regions of *OsSWEET1b* and *OsSWEET3b* and one in *MtSWEET1b* and *OsSWEET12* (Table 2). P1BS elements were found in phosphate transporters LePT4, StPT4, SmPT4, NtPT4, SmPT5, NtPT5, MtPT4, StPT3, SmPT3, NtPT3, OsPT11, OsPT2, SmPT2, and AtPT8. The P1BS elements (GNATATNC) were reported for the first time by Rubio et al. (2001). These phosphate starvation response elements were also observed in promoter regions of *MtSWEEt1b* (two elements), *MtSWEET3c* (three elements), *MtSWEET12* (two elements), and *OsSWEET1b* (three elements). These P1BS elements could be involved in the regulation of AMF-inducible SWEETs in a similar manner as reported previously (Chen et al. 2011). PHR1, a MYB transcription factor, to which P1BS element interacts to regulate the expression of phosphate starvation-inducible genes (PSI) (Daram et al. 1998; Rubio et al. 2001; Schachtman and Shin 2007) also found in the promoters of SWEETs of rice and *Medicago truncatula*. The promoter *cis*-acting elements (P1BS, PHR1, and MYCS) play essential role for the induction and maintaining of high expression of AMF-activated PHT genes (Chen et al. 2011) that also suggest a similar putative role for SWEETs in monocots and dicots. The *cis*-acting elements nodulin consensus 1 and 2 have similar function but are variable in the SWEETs. Promoter of *MtSWEET1b* contains two elements of nodulin consensus 1 and 11 of consensus 2. *MtSWEET3c* promoter has four and eight, *MtSWEET12* has six and eight, *OsSWEET1b* has three and nine, and *OsSWEET12* has six and two nodulin consensus 1 and consensus 2, respectively. *OsSWEET3b* has three elements of nodulin consensus 2 (Table 2). Nodulin consensus were activated specifically in nitrogen-fixing nodules and also in mycorrhizal colonized root cells as well suggest a critical associated role of these elements in symbiosis (Vieweg et al. 2004; Fehlberg et al. 2005). By considering all these data, we predict a presumptive model in Fig. 6 that shows possible function of SWEETs in supplying carbohydrates to arbuscular mycorrhizal roots during infection.

2 Future Perspective

SWEETs are potential sugar effluxers, which offer unique ability to feed AMF symbionts at root soil interface. However, these recently reported novel classes of sugar effluxers need to be explored functionally in detail either using forward or reverse genetic approach. CRISPR/Cas9, a new and a novel genome editing strategy, can be employed to characterize these AMF-inducible SWEET candidates from *Medicago* and rice. Subcellular localization prediction either using homologous or heterologous approach will also help in depicting clear picture of these SWEET expression sites and will be helpful in revealing their feeding role to symbionts. Interaction of

Table 2 Presence of *cis*-acting elements related to phosphate starvation and AM symbiosis in promoter regions of SWEETs

Gene name	*Cis*-element	Sequence	Function	Copies/promoter	Upstream location of *cis*-elements
MtSWEET1b	PHR1/MYB transcription factor	GCATATCC	Phosphate starvation response	2	−68, −2298
	MYCS	TTTCTTGTTCT	Mycorrhizal transcription factor	1	−2283
	P1BS	GNATATNC	Responsiveness to phosphate deprivation	2	−1742, −1747
	Nodulin consensus 1	AAAGAT	Activation in infected cells of mycorrhizal colonized roots and nodulation	2	−556, −1611
	Nodulin consensus 2	CTCTT	Activation in infected cells of mycorrhizal colonized roots and nodulation	11	−43, −84, −840, −1000, −1024, −1621, −1796, −1868, −1996, −2248, −2796
MtSWEET3c	PHR1/MYB transcription factor	GCATATCC	Phosphate starvation response	1	−2735
	P1BS	GNATATNC	Responsiveness to phosphate deprivation	3	−1977, −2250, −2303
	Nodulin consensus 1	AAAGAT	Activation in infected cells of mycorrhizal colonized roots and nodulation	4	−325, −1556, −2644, −2683
	Nodulin consensus 2	CTCTT	Activation in infected cells of mycorrhizal colonized roots and nodulation	8	−60, −176, −384, −767, −1074, −1812, −2392, −2935
MtSWEET12	P1BS	GNATATNC	Responsiveness to phosphate deprivation	2	−608, −1771
	Nodulin consensus 1	AAAGAT	Activation in infected cells of mycorrhizal colonized roots and nodulation	6	−682, −1371, −1503, −1953, −2567, −2837
	Nodulin consensus 2	CTCTT	Activation in infected cells of mycorrhizal colonized roots and nodulation	8	−128, −693, −796, −908, −1154, −1257, −1995, −2228

OsSWEET1b	PHR1/MYB transcription factor	GCATATCC	Phosphate starvation response	6	−1353, −1362, −1367, −1798, −1825, −2255
	MYCS	TTTCTTGTTCT	Mycorrhizal transcription factor	2	−132, −406
	P1BS	GNATATNC	Responsiveness to phosphate deprivation	3	−778, −783, −2291
	Nodulin consensus 1	AAAGAT	Activation in infected cells of mycorrhizal colonized roots and nodulation	3	−1776, −2134, −2719
	Nodulin consensus 2	CTCTT	Activation in infected cells of mycorrhizal colonized roots and nodulation	9	−297, −565, −639, −656, −778, −1637, −1837, −2354, −2814
OsSWEET3b	PHR1/MYB transcription factor	GCATATCC	Phosphate starvation response	5	−155, −160, −198, −642, −845
	MYCS	TTTCTTGTTCT	Mycorrhizal transcription factor	2	−273, −1914
	Nodulin consensus 2	CTCTT	Activation in infected cells of mycorrhizal colonized roots and nodulation	3	−2012, −2303, −2358
OsSWEET12	PHR1/MYB transcription factor	GCATATCC	Phosphate starvation response	3	−1569, −1570, −2369
	MYCS	TTTCTTGTTCT	Mycorrhizal transcription factor	1	−2427
	P1BS	GNATATNC	Responsiveness to phosphate deprivation	2	−1761, −1781
	Nodulin consensus 1	AAAGAT	Activation in infected cells of mycorrhizal colonized roots and nodulation	6	−891, −912, −1093, −1592, −2060, −2578
	Nodulin consensus 2	CTCTT	Activation in infected cells of mycorrhizal colonized roots and nodulation	2	−998, −1642

These motifs are located between −1 and −3100 bp upstream of ATG start codon. The analysis of SWEET promoters was performed using Genomatix Software Suite v3.4 (http://www.genomatix.de/?s=6d6a837b2130461f14fb6272ffae52b5) and PLACE (https://sogo.dna.affrc.go.jp/cgi-bin/sogo.cgi?lang=en&pj=640&action=page&page=newplace)

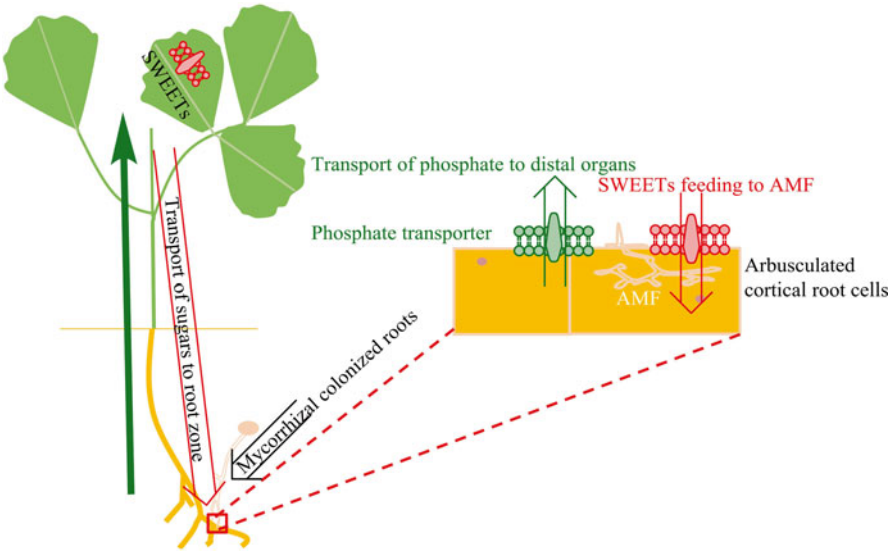


Fig. 6 A presumptive model elaborating the putative feeding role of SWEETs to AMF at root soil interface

SWEETs with other transporters and metabolic invertase activities in different subcellular compartments need to be studied more to clarify the role of these transporters in sugar secretion from plant roots to feed AMF symbionts and to enlighten the intricate sugar flux pathways in both infected and uninfected roots. Furthermore, these SWEETs can be a source of crop breeding tools for breeding better roots with excellent ability of establishment of symbiosis.

References

Braun DM (2012) SWEET! The pathway is complete. Science 335:173–174

Ceasar SA, Hodge A, Baker A, Baldwin SA (2014) Phosphate concentration and arbuscular mycorrhizal colonisation influence the growth, yield and expression of twelve PHT1 family phosphate transporters in foxtail millet (*Setaria italica*). PLoS One 9:e108459

Chardon F, Bedu M, Calenge F, Klemens PAW, Spinner L, Clement G, Chietera G, Leran S, Ferrand M, Lacombe B, Loudet O, Dinant S, Bellini C, Neuhaus HE, Daniel-Vedele F, Krapp A (2013) Leaf fructose content is controlled by the vacuolar transporter SWEET17 in *Arabidopsis*. Curr Biol 23:697–702

Chen L-Q, Hou B-H, Lalonde S, Takanaga H, Hartung ML, Qu X-Q, Guo W-J, Kim J-G, Underwood W, Chaudhuri B, Chermak D, Antony G, White FF, Somerville SC, Mudgett MB, Frommer WB (2010) Sugar transporters for intercellular exchange and nutrition of pathogens. Nature 468:527–532

Chen A, Gu M, Sun S, Zhu L, Hong S, Xu G (2011) Identification of two conserved cis-acting elements, MYCS and P1BS, involved in the regulation of mycorrhiza-activated phosphate transporters in eudicot species. New Phytol 189:1157–1169

Chen L-Q, Qu X-Q, Hou B-H, Sosso D, Osorio S, Fernie AR, Frommer WB (2012) Sucrose efflux mediated by SWEET proteins as a key step for phloem transport. Science 335:207–211

Chen H-Y, Huh J-H, Yu Y-C, Ho L-H, Chen L-Q, Tholl D, Frommer WB, Guo W-J (2015) The *Arabidopsis* vacuolar sugar transporter SWEET2 limits carbon sequestration from roots and restricts *Pythium* infection. Plant J 83:1046–1058

Daram P, Brunner S, Persson BL, Amrhein N, Bucher M (1998) Functional analysis and cell-specific expression of a phosphate transporter from tomato. Planta 206:225–233

Doidy J, van Tuinen D, Lamotte O, Corneillat M, Alcaraz G, Wipf D (2012) The *Medicago truncatula* sucrose transporter family: characterization and implication of key members in carbon partitioning towards arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Mol Plant 5:1346–1358

Eom J-S, Chen L-Q, Sosso D, Julius BT, Lin IW, Qu X-Q, Braun DM, Frommer WB (2015) SWEETs, transporters for intracellular and intercellular sugar translocation. Curr Opin Plant Biol 25:53–62

Fehlberg V, Vieweg MF, Dohmann EMN, Hohnjec N, Puhler A, Perlick AM, Kuster H (2005) The promoter of the leghaemoglobin gene VfLb29: functional analysis and identification of modules necessary for its activation in the infected cells of root nodules and in the arbuscule-containing cells of mycorrhizal roots. J Exp Bot 56:799–806

Gomez SK, Javot H, Deewatthanawong P, Torres-Jerez I, Tang Y, Blancaflor EB, Udvardi MK, Harrison MJ (2009) *Medicago truncatula* and *Glomus intraradices* gene expression in cortical cells harboring arbuscules in the arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. BMC Plant Biol 9:10

Guo W-J, Nagy R, Chen H-Y, Pfrunder S, Yu Y-C, Santelia D, Frommer WB, Martinoia E (2014) SWEET17, a facilitative transporter, mediates fructose transport across the tonoplast of *Arabidopsis* roots and leaves. Plant Physiol 164:777–789

Gutjahr C, Sawers RJH, Marti G, Andres-Hernandez L, Yang S-Y, Casieri L, Angliker H, Oakeley EJ, Wolfender J-L, Abreu-Goodger C, Paszkowski U (2015) Transcriptome diversity among rice root types during asymbiosis and interaction with arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112:6754–6759

Hu Y, Zhang J, Jia H, Sosso D, Li T, Frommer WB, Yang B, White FF, Wang N, Jones JB (2014) Lateral organ boundaries 1 is a disease susceptibility gene for citrus bacterial canker disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111:E521–E529

Hutin M, Sabot F, Ghesquière A, Koebnik R, Szurek B (2015) A knowledge-based molecular screen uncovers a broad spectrum *OsSWEET14* resistance allele to bacterial blight from wild rice. Plant J. doi:10.1111/tpj.13042

Klemens PAW, Patzke K, Deitmer J, Spinner L, Le Hir R, Bellini C, Bedu M, Chardon F, Krapp A, Neuhaus HE (2013) Overexpression of the vacuolar sugar carrier AtSWEET16 modifies germination, growth, and stress tolerance in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Physiol 163:1338–1352

Lager I, Looger LL, Hilpert M, Lalonde S, Frommer WB (2006) Conversion of a putative agrobacterium sugar-binding protein into a FRET sensor with high selectivity for sucrose. J Biol Chem 281:30875–30883

Le Hir R, Spinner L, Klemens PAW, Chakraborti D, de Marco F, Vilaine F, Wolff N, Lemoine R, Porcheron B, Géry C, Téoulé E, Chabout S, Mouille G, Neuhaus E, Dinant S, Bellini C (2015) Disruption of the sugar transporters AtSWEET11 and AtSWEET12 affects vascular development and freezing tolerance in *Arabidopsis*. Mol Plant. doi:10.1016/j.molp.2015.08.007

Lin IW, Sosso D, Chen L-Q, Gase K, Kim S-G, Kessler D, Klinkenberg PM, Gorder MK, Hou B-H, Qu X-Q, Carter CJ, Baldwin IT, Frommer WB (2014) Nectar secretion requires sucrose phosphate synthases and the sugar transporter SWEET9. Nature 508:546–549

Mansfield J, Genin S, Magori S, Citovsky V, Sriariyanum M, Ronald P, Dow M, Verdier V, Beer SV, Machado MA et al (2012) Top 10 plant pathogenic bacteria in molecular plant pathology. Mol Plant Pathol 13:614–629

Rubio V, Linhares F, Solano R, Martin AC, Iglesias J, Leyva A, Paz-Ares J (2001) A conserved MYB transcription factor involved in phosphate starvation signaling both in vascular plants and in unicellular algae. Genes Dev 15:2122–2133

Sargent RD (2004) Floral symmetry affects speciation rates in angiosperms. Proc R Soc B Biol Sci 271:603–608

Schachtman DP, Shin R (2007) Nutrient sensing and signaling: NPKS. Annu Rev Plant Biol 58:47–69

Streubel J, Pesce C, Hutin M, Koebnik R, Boch J, Szurek B (2013) Five phylogenetically close rice SWEET genes confer TAL effector-mediated susceptibility to *Xanthomonas oryzae* pv. *oryzae*. New Phytol 200:808–819

Udvardi MK, Yang LJO, Young S, Day DA (1990) Sugar and amino-acid-transport across symbiotic membranes from soybean nodules. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 3:334–340

Vieweg MF, Fruhling M, Quandt HJ, Heim U, Baumlein H, Puhler A, Kuster H, Perlick AM (2004) The promoter of the *Vicia faba* L. leghemoglobin gene VfLb29 is specifically activated in the infected cells of root nodules and in the arbuscule-containing cells of mycorrhizal roots from different legume and nonlegume plants. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 17:62–69

Root Exudates and Their Molecular Interactions with Rhizospheric Microbes

Mallappa Kumara Swamy, Mohd. Sayeed Akhtar, and Uma Rani Sinniah

Abstract Biologically important plant-microbe interactions are mediated by a wide array of signal compounds rhizodeposited from both plant and microbial species. Root exudates are some of the potentially important low molecular weight compounds secreted from plant roots. They are involved in building a network of biointeractions through several physical, chemical, or biological interactions. Application of bioinoculums has significantly improved growth parameters and yield of many economically valued crops. Root exudates mediate the plant-microbe interactions by colonizing the roots and promoting root growth. Also, root exudates improve chemical and physical characteristics of the rhizospheric soil. Some of the beneficial plant-microbe associations include nitrogen fixation by rhizobium, symbiotic biointeractions with AM (arbuscular mycorrhizal) fungi, and PGPR (plant-growth-promoting *Rhizobacteria*). These interactions improve plant growth and quality, stress tolerance, and plant defense responses. Root exudates constitute a wide variety of secondary metabolite constituents that help plants to guard against microbial infections, insects, or herbivore attack. Root exudates secreted by plants act as antimicrobial agents to curb various harmful rhizospheric pathogens. In this chapter, we provide a summary of literatures on the significance of plant-microbe interactions in the improvement of plant morphological and biochemical features. Further, detailed information on various types of root exudates and their role in mediating plant-microbe interactions and possible exploration of root exudates as a novel antimicrobial compounds are also discussed.

Keywords Soil microbes • PGPR • Mycorrhizae • Signal molecules • Antimicrobials

---

The original version of this chapter was revised: The spelling of the second author's name was corrected. The erratum to this chapter is available at 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_19

M.K. Swamy (✉) • U.R. Sinniah (✉)
Department of Crop Science, Faculty of Agriculture, Universiti Putra Malaysia,
43400 Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia
e-mail: swamy.bio@gmail.com; umarani@upm.edu.my

M.S. Akhtar (✉)
Department of Botany, Gandhi Faiz-E-Aam College,
Shahjahanpur 242001, Uttar Pradesh, India
e-mail: sayeedbot@gmail.com

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_4

1 Introduction

In nature, plants exhibit variety of biotic interactions between rhizospheric soil microbes by means of extremely complex mechanisms mediated by a wide array of signals produced from both plants and microbial species (Badri et al. 2009; Huang et al. 2014). Plants secrete root exudates as key signals into their surroundings to facilitate its better survival by establishing positive interactions with microbial community in the rhizosphere (Haichar et al. 2008; Bonfante and Anca 2009; Xie et al. 2012). However, the complex molecular interactions occurring between the soil microbes and plant roots are mainly modulated by exudates of roots. These exudates are known to build a network of interactions with plant roots and their surrounding rhizospheric microbes through various physical, chemical, or biological interactions (Huang et al. 2014; Haichar et al. 2014). Over past few years, researchers have suggested that the application of plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) is sustainable in agricultural practices and development of agricultural biotechnology products such as biofertilizers, phytostimulators, biopesticides, and bioremediators. PGPR are extensively utilized all over the world, and their application rate is extremely rising due to numerous advantages. The growth and yield of many agriculturally important crops have been significantly increased by the application of PGPR (Akhtar and Siddiqui 2010; Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012; Ahemad and Kibret 2014).

Some past research studies have clearly stated that the microbial associations are very specific to plant species (Figueiredo et al. 2011; Haichar et al. 2014). Most of the legume plants are well known to associate with bacterial strains of rhizobacteriaceae family to fix the atmospheric nitrogen. Sugiyama and Yazaki (2012) reported that mutual symbiotic association fixes annually about 40–60 million metric tons of atmospheric nitrogen. However, the rhizobial bacterial species are also reported to secrete indole acetic acid. Changes occurring due to these auxin levels are shown to influence root nodule organogenesis and development. Similarly, it is reported that the auxin and cytokinin ratio play a key role in the regulation of nodule development (Figueiredo et al. 2008).

Since, PGPR are not only used as yield stimulators but also as bioprotectors in the management of plant pathogens or diseases (Figueiredo et al. 2008). Similarly, the symbiotic association of arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) fungi with plants improves the uptake of water and mineral nutrients and also provides resistance toward stresses and pathogens (Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008; Akhtar and Panwar 2011; Akhtar et al. 2015). In this symbiotic association, both fungi and plants benefited each other. For instance, mycorrhizal fungi help the plants in uptake of nutrients from soil and in return provide carbohydrates to plants. However, the molecular mechanisms of nutrient exchange between the host plant and fungi are yet to be understood clearly (Thompson and Cunningham 2002; Bonfante and Anca 2009). The mycorrhizal fungi and their propagules, hyphae, and rhizomorphs form a network or a bridge between plant roots, fungi, and soil through which movement of nutrients is believed to occur (Bonfante and Anca 2009; Akhtar et al. 2011).

This network formation is mainly mediated by numerous signaling incidents involving low molecular weight compounds secreted from both plant and fungi (Paszkowski 2006; Parniske 2008).

Plant and soil fungal association used is agricultural practices to improve the soil fertility known as biofertilizers. This biological approach improved the soil fertility as well as prevents the environment by the hazardous effect of synthetic fertilizers. Also, this emerging practice has totally reduced the application of chemical products for controlling various plant diseases as eco-friendly approach (Figueiredo et al. 2008; Bais et al. 2008), as concluded by several past investigators that the plant roots secrete numerous types of compounds which are believed to facilitate the possible interactions between the plant root and the surrounding environment especially during symbiotic interactions (Bais et al. 2008; Bonfante and Anca 2009; Sugiyama and Yazaki 2012; Rashid et al. 2015). Over the last few years, rhizospheric investigation has witnessed the existence of these interactions between root and root, root and microbe, or root and insects (Badri and Vivanco 2009; Shukla et al. 2013; Haichar et al. 2014). Some of the examples of root exudates include amino acids, sugar molecules, organic acids, mucilage (polysaccharides), various proteins, phenolic acids, and secondary metabolite compounds (Bais et al. 2008; Badri et al. 2013; Haichar et al. 2014; Rashid et al. 2015). The secretion of root compounds is a normal process of plant root rhizodeposition to release major source organic carbon into soil (Nguyen 2003; Badri and Vivanco 2009). However, more research efforts are still required to understand the molecular mechanisms of root secretions. Root exudation mediates the plant-microbe interactions by colonizing the roots and promoting root growth. The rhizosphere soil provides an environment for diverse class of microbial community which is useful as well as harmful to the plants. Some of these microbes associate to form beneficial interaction with the plants. In contrast, plant interactions with pathogenic bacteria can be harmful to the plants. Studies have revealed the existence of rich microbial community around the rhizospheric soil of different plant species.

Hence, plant-microbe interactions might be both positive and negative approaches depending on the other factors of its rhizosphere vicinity (Mougel et al. 2006; Micallef et al. 2009; Sugiyama and Yazaki 2012; Haldar and Sengupta 2015). Extensive research reports accumulated over the past last decade have witnessed the new understanding on these beneficial interactions of plant exudates and microbial flora of rhizospheric soil. These studies have unlocked the possible exploration and application of plant microbial interactions by using various biotechnological tools and techniques for better crop production (Yedidia et al. 2001; Woo et al. 2006). Some of the negative plant-microbe interactions modulated by root exudates are the association with microbial pathogens, parasitic plants (Shukla et al. 2013). Rhizospheric bacterial strains utilize root exudates as nutrient source and mediate in the process of contaminant elimination and also can degrade various ecological pollutants (Bais et al. 2008; Shukla et al. 2013). Few researchers have emphasized on the aspect of understanding the possible functions of root exudates and the competent microbes in the process of phytoremediation and rhizoremediation (Gleba et al. 1999; Shukla et al. 2010, 2013). Also, root exudates act as antimicrobial molecules

to provide tissue-specific resistance against various pathogenic bacterial strains (Bais et al. 2005). Hence, knowledge on the mechanisms of interactions is very crucial in exploring the applications of plant-microbe interactions in many ways in the modern-day agricultural practices. This chapter describes the importance of root exudates, applications, and their role in understanding various mechanisms of interactions.

2 Root Exudates and Their Characteristics

The rhizospheric soil surrounding the plant roots is characterized by many kinds of distinctive biochemical, ecological, and physical interactions that are largely mediated by various chemical compounds released by plant roots into their immediate vicinity. These wide arrays of chemical compounds that are exuded to the rhizosphere by the plant roots are generally known as root exudates (Walker et al. 2004; Huang et al. 2014). The quantity of root exudate secretion depends mainly on plant species, age, cultivar type, plant root metabolic attributes, root system architecture, and environmental conditions that come across during plant growth (Bertin et al. 2003; Haichar et al. 2008; Compant et al. 2010; Haldar and Sengupta 2015). Secretion of plant root exudates into the soil requires large amounts of energy (5–21 % of fixed carbon). Primarily, root exudates are the low molecular weight carbon-containing chemical compounds that are derived mainly from the products of photosynthesis (Bertin et al. 2003). Root exudates function as potent chemical messengers to facilitate rhizobacterial chemotaxis process and mediate biological interactions through wide array of complex molecular networks (Walker et al. 2004; Bais et al. 2006; Glick et al. 2007; Cheng et al. 2009; Xie et al. 2012; Haichar et al. 2014). Root exudates are known to perform various functions such as the regulation of plant-microbe association, encouragement for various symbiotic interactions, prevention from herbivores attack, and inhibition of other competent plant growth in their surroundings (Haldar and Sengupta 2015). Moreover, it also improved the chemical and physical characteristics of the rhizospheric soil (Walker et al. 2003; Haichar et al. 2014; Yadav et al. 2015).

Root exudates encompass a wide array of chemical constituents including primary and secondary metabolites, ions, mucilage, free oxygen molecules, and water molecules (Hejl and Koster 2004; Bais et al. 2006), while other arrays of signal molecules include amino acids (glutamine, arginine, cystine, asparagine, aspartic acid, cysteine), enzymes, peptides, sugars (oligosaccharides, fructose, arabinose, glucose, mannose, maltose), vitamins, nucleotides, organic acids (ascorbic acid, acetic acid, benzoic acid, ferulic acid, malic acid), fungal stimulators, plant inhibitors, chemoattractants, growth regulators, sterols (campestrol, cholesterol, sitosterol, stigmasterol), fatty acids (palmitic, stearic, linoleic, linolenic, oleic), tannins, phenolic compounds, and few other miscellaneous chemicals. Some of the examples of primary root exudates comprise amino acids, enzymes, proteins, organic acids, sugars, lipids, flavonoids, allelochemicals, siderospores, coumarins,

and aliphatic and aromatic chemical metabolites (Bertin et al. 2003; Shukla et al. 2013; Huang et al. 2014; Haldar and Sengupta 2015). Among all these root exudates, organic acids play a significant role by serving as energy source for microbial cellular metabolism and also act as intermediate in biogeochemical cyclic reactions in the rhizospheric soil (Shukla et al. 2013).

Legume plants are widely consumed throughout the world, and hence, metabolic profiling studies and other basic research have been mainly focused on the same plant species in order to understand the types, characteristics, and functions of root exudates. Moreover, legume plants exhibit some of the biologically significant property, viz., fixation of atmospheric nitrogen through symbiotic association with rhizobacteria. Some of the commonly explored plants for root exudates and other metabolites include *Medicago sativa*, *Trifolium repens*, *Pisum sativum*, *Lotus japonicus*, *Medicago truncatula*, *Phaseolus vulgaris*, and *Glycine max* (Desbrosses et al. 2005; Farag et al. 2009; Hernandez et al. 2009; Rispail et al. 2010; Sugiyama and Yazaki 2012). Most of the characteristic properties and primary metabolic activities involved in symbiotic nitrogen fixation have been discovered through various classical methods involving studies on plant biochemistry, genetics, and molecular biology. Use of genetic approaches, transcriptomics, proteomics, and other functional genomics studies has provided better understanding of metabolic activities of nodule formation in some of the model plants such as *Lotus japonicas* and *Medicago truncatula* (Desbrosses et al. 2005; Sugiyama and Yazaki 2012; Xie et al. 2012).

In Arabidopsis plant, many reports have identified numerous root exudates such as sugars, amino acids, fatty acids, and an assortment of proteins (De-la-Pena et al. 2008; Badri et al. 2009; Badri and Vivanco 2009; Chaparro et al. 2013). Flavonoids and other phenolics are the most common compounds looked for in majority of the metabolomic studies (Abdel-Lateif et al. 2012; Badri et al. 2013). Use of GC-MS (gas chromatography-mass spectrometry) profiling has revealed the possible plant metabolites such as asparagine, octadecanoic acid, glutamate, cysteine, putrescine, homoserine, mannitol, gluconic acid, threonic acid, glycerol-3-P, and glyceric acid-3-P to be involved in root nodulation process in legume plants (Desbrosses et al. 2005). Some of the key signal molecules exuded from the legume plants that are involved in the interaction of plant microbes includes isoflavonoids derived from phenylpropanoids, and also they act as defensive compounds. The process of symbioses in legume and rhizobacterial nodulation is mediated by multiple actions of flavonoids which act as a signal molecule (Cooper 2007; Subramanian et al. 2007; Farag et al. 2008; Abdel-Lateif et al. 2012). The intracellular and extracellular secondary metabolome compounds of *M. truncatula* were analyzed by Farag et al. (2008) by using HPLC (high-performance liquid chromatography) analysis coupled with UV (ultraviolet) photodiode array detection method and mass spectrometry. The study revealed three novel methylated isoflavones (6-hydroxy-7,4′-dimethoxyisoflavone, 7-hydroxy-6,4′-dimethoxyisoflavone, and 5,7-dihydroxy-4′,6-dimethoxy isoflavone). Their study also highlighted the flexibility involved in the metabolic isoflavonoid biosynthetic pathways which depend on the nature of external stresses or elicitations. It has been reported that strigolactone secreted by plants like *L. japonicus* are involved in facilitating the arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis (Steinkellner et al. 2007). Root exu-

dates (vestitol) of *L. japonicus* function as chemical barriers to suppress the invasion of *Striga hermonthica* (a parasitic weed) into its roots (Ueda and Sugimoto 2010).

The complex interaction between rhizobium and roots is because of definite genetic as well as metabolic signals communicating between both symbionts (Geurts et al. 2005; Rispail et al. 2010). The signal compounds communicate between both plant host and rhizobia to form symbiosis. Also, rhizobium produces a large number of signaling compounds including Nod factor and many other surface polysaccharides which are involved in mediating the process of host-specific symbioses. Likewise, specific root exudates are secreted by host plant to mediate the preinfection events by triggering Nod factor biosynthetic pathways. The synthesized Nod factors then stimulate the accumulation of flavonoids by inducing flavonoid-encoding gene expressions (Cooper 2007; Haichar et al. 2014). Some of the reports suggest that flavonoids regulate the transport and accumulation of auxins inside the cortical cells to mediate root nodule development (Wasson et al. 2006; Subramanian et al. 2007). In another study by Rispail et al. (2010), inoculation of a symbiont *M. loti* to *L. japonicas* induced diverse alterations in the quantity of phenolic compounds secreted by the roots, while the compounds vestitol, sativan, and phytoalexin were not observed in the root zone after inoculation (Rispail et al. 2010; Badri et al. 2013). The identified coumestan and two other unidentified flavanones increased after inoculation of *M. loti* are described to be involved in nod gene stimulation. Proteomic and metabolomic approaches are being effectively used to study the targeted root exudate compounds in legume plant species. Plant-microbe interactions such as plant-rhizobia, plant-PGPR, and plant-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi are described well in legume plants, and these interactions have significantly enhanced plant growth and yield (Sugiyama and Yazaki 2012; Haichar et al. 2014). The exudation of root compounds takes place through different processes such as passive transport, active transport, and transporter-mediated processes (Bais et al. 2006; Badri and Vivanco 2009).

3 Beneficial Plant-Microbe Interactions Mediated by Root Exudates

3.1 Root Exudates and Plant-Rhizobacteria Interactions

Biological interactions between plant and microbes occur through various molecular mechanisms and benefit the plant directly or indirectly. Root exudates modulate positive plant-microbe interactions and thereby regulate the plant growth, development, and yield. Some of these beneficial interactions include fixation of atmospheric nitrogen through root nodule formation by rhizobia in legume plants, providing tolerance against biotic as well as abiotic stresses and interactions with PGPR to improve plant growth and quality (Gray and Smith 2005; Bais et al. 2006; Badri et al. 2013; Huang et al. 2014). Moreover, biofilms, antibiotics, and other metabolites produced by bacteria interact with plants positively to impart

protection against likely pathogens, insects, and herbivores. Few root compounds secreted into rhizospheric soil exhibit allelopathic effect (Bais et al. 2004, 2006; Foley and Moore 2005; Ueda and Sugimoto 2010). Over the past few decades, many research studies on molecular interactions between legumes and *Rhizobium* spp. to form root nodule have been well documented. The root nodules are unique organs occurring in legume plant roots, and it harbors rhizobacteria involved in fixing atmospheric nitrogen. This specialized structure allows plants to utilize fixed nitrogen directly, and bacterium obtains its nutrients for its survival, and thus this is a mutual association benefitting both the species. Rhizospheric root soil favors the increased microbial activity, and plant-microbe symbioses are usually initiated by colonization of these soil-borne microbes. This is due to the fact that plant roots release abundant organic carbon that favors microbial ecology (Hartmann et al. 2009; Haldar and Sengupta 2015). It appears that rhizobacteria are attracted toward plants due to signal compounds and nutrients released by its roots (Bais et al. 2006). These bacteria form networks with plant roots through recognizing signal molecules produced by roots and further induce colonization by producing more signals. These signals are recognized by microbes to initiate symbioses with plants through physical interaction mediated by pili, fimbriae, adhesins, flagella, Type III and Type IV secretion system, and signal proteins (Lugtenberg et al. 2002; de Weert et al. 2002; Bais et al. 2006). Many studies have stated that flavonoids in the exudates act as a major chemical compound to attract rhizobia (Faure et al. 2009; Badri et al. 2013). About 4000 different types of flavonoids have been recognized and characterized in plants. Interestingly, isoflavonoids are observed only legume plants (Bais et al. 2006). Flavonoids are believed to induce several nod genes of the rhizobium spp. to produce nod factors (lipochitooligosaccharides) that cause curling of root hairs, form infection thread, and finally initiate bacterial colonization to form nodules. Nod factors could be modified with the substitution of acetate, carbamoyl, sulfate groups, and sugars (Bais et al. 2006; Haldar and Sengupta 2015). The familiar nod genes of rhizobia include nod A, nod B, and nod C. Also, there are species-specific nod genes. In addition, lipooligosaccharides released from bacteria were shown to stimulate plant genes responsible for flavonoid biosynthesis. It has been reported that these nod genes are involved in the synthesis of nod factors, and the expression of genes specific to species modifies nod factor structure (Perret et al. 2000; Riely et al. 2004; Badri et al. 2013). Horiuchi et al. (2005) reported that the interaction between *Medicago truncatula* (a legume) and *Sinorhizobium meliloti*, a root exudate, dimethylsulfide, attracts nematodes (*Caenorhabditis elegans*), and these nematodes carry *Sinorhizobium meliloti* to the vicinity of plant roots. Xanthones, isovanillin, and vanillin are some of the other non-flavonoid-related molecules which induce the expression of nod D gene clusters. However, they are needed in large quantity compared to flavonoids (Cooper 2007; Badri et al. 2009). The interaction of a rhizobium, *Mesorhizobium tianshanense*, with *Glycyrrhiza uralensis* (licorice) plants revealed the secretion of canavanine, a chemical compound commonly observed in the root exudates and seed coats of many legume plants (Cai et al. 2009). Canavanine was found to be toxic to various soil bacteria but nontoxic to rhizobacterial strains as they

possessed a mechanism to detoxify it. This research supports the exudation of specific antimetabolites by legume plants in order to select right rhizobia for a successful symbiosis. Nod genes of *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* are induced by the exudates such as isoflavonoids, genistein, and daidzein that are released by *Glycine max*. However, these compounds inhibit the expression of nod gene in *Sinorhizobium meliloti*, a nitrogen-fixing bacterium. Luteolin is another common flavonoid which can encourage the expression of nod genes in *S. meliloti* (Bais et al. 2006). Malic acid secreted in *Arabidopsis* plant root has shown to regulate the defensive responses activated by pathogens and effectively recruits *Bacillus subtilis* FB17, a beneficial rhizobacterial strain (Rudrappa et al. 2008). Similarly, Neal et al. (2012) have reported that benzoxazinoids (root exudates), such as 2,4-dihydroxy-7-methoxy-2*H*-1,4-benzoxazin-3(4*H*)-one, attract beneficial rhizobacteria (*Pseudomonas putida*) to the site of rhizosphere. Badri et al. (2013) have revealed that *A. thaliana* plant root exudates phenolic compounds which serve as signal compound to attract soil bacteria. The amount of root exudates and their composition differs with the environmental changes and surrounding soil microbial flora. Also, pH of the rhizospheric soil encourages the growth of microbial community in the root surrounding (Bravin et al. 2009; Haldar and Sengupta 2015).

3.2 Root Exudates and Plant-Mycorrhizal Interactions

About 80 % of plant species including terrestrial plants, ferns, angiosperms, woody gymnosperms, and grasses are found to have symbiotic interactions with soil mycorrhizal fungi (ectomycorrhizae, endomycorrhizae, vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizae (AM), ericoid and orchid mycorrhizae). This symbiotic association enhances plant growth by increased uptake of nutrients, while fungi are benefitted with nutrients (carbohydrates and lipids) of the host plant roots (Bais et al. 2008; Haldar and Sengupta 2015). AM fungi associate with plants in a similar way as observed in plant-rhizobia interaction. Both mycorrhizae and rhizobia make use of similar signal molecules and proteins to regulate their associations with plants. Similar to rhizobia, AM fungi also recognize host plant species based on the available root exudates in the soil. Therefore, it is hypothesized that both AM fungi and rhizobia associations share a common origin of plant-microbe interaction and probably originated from a fungi (Nagahashi and Douds 1999, 2003; Levy et al. 2004; Bais et al. 2006; Akhtar et al. 2011). However, the exact mechanism of mycorrhizal association with specific host plant is yet to be recognized. As AM fungi are found in the rhizosphere soil, their propagules such as hyphae, rhizomorphs, and also spores are known to form a network of connections or a bridge between plant roots, fungi, and soil through which movement of nutrients is believed to occur (Simard et al. 1997; Bonfante and Anca 2009). This network formation is mainly mediated by numerous signaling incidents involving low molecular weight compounds secreted from both plant and fungi (Paszkowski 2006; Besserer et al. 2008; Parniske 2008). Flavonoids

present in low quantity are often proposed to stimulate the initial symbiotic association of AM fungi (Vierheilig and Piche 2002; Besserer et al. 2006; Haichar et al. 2014). Nevertheless, it is very well understood that the main signal factor involved in bridging plant-mycorrhizal symbiosis is considered to be strigolactone, a root exudate released from the plant (Akiyama et al. 2005, 2010; Haldar and Sengupta 2015). Strigolactones are carotenoid pathway-derived plant hormones which are generally produced when there is a nutrient deficiency. They also regulate plant growth and developmental processes by inhibiting shoot branching or by modifying plant structure (Akiyama et al. 2010). Strigolactones when released into the soil specify the host plants to symbiotic fungal species or plant parasites and stimulate the branching of hyphae during the symbiotic association between AM and host plant species (Lopez-Raez et al. 2008; Smith 2014; Al-Babili and Bouwmeester 2015). Root exudates of tomato, sorghum, pea, *L. japonicas* contained strigolactones, while they were absent in the root exudates of tobacco, carrot, and alfalfa. This indicates that there are many other signal compounds in the root exudates which are also responsible for the activation of fungal hyphae branching (Garcia-Garrido et al. 2009; Sugiyama and Yazaki 2012). Strigolactones were also observed in the root exudates of non-host plants of AM such as white lupin (*Lupinus albus*) and *Arabidopsis thaliana* (Yoneyama et al. 2008; Goldwasser et al. 2008). *Lupinus albus* was shown to produce pyranoisoflavones that inhibit the fungal hyphae growth and development (Akiyama et al. 2010). Similarly, Oba et al. (2002) have reported that root exudates of *Lupinus* species (*L. luteus*, *L. aridus*, *and L. cosentini*) inhibited growth of AM fungal hyphae (*Gigaspora margarita*). This could be a competitive strategy to suppress the possible mycorrhizal associations in other plant species or to strengthen their competing fitness.

Studies on gene expression, RT-PCR (reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction), and blotting techniques have indicated that during the initial phase of hyphal penetration, many signal molecules from plants are released to chemoattract mycorrhizal fungi. Several early nodulin genes such as Psam5, PsENOD12A, MsENOD2, MtENOD11, MsENOD40, and leghaemoglobin VfLb29 are shown to get induced during the early development of symbioses (Fruhling et al. 1997; Albrecht et al. 1998; Kosuta et al. 2003). In *Pisum sativum* plants, gene expression findings have suggested that induction of *PsENOD12A* and *Psam5*genes is found during appressorium formation and hyphal penetration into the root cortex (Albrecht et al. 1998; Roussel et al. 2001). In *Oryza sativa* plants, Blilou et al. (2000) have reported that appressorium formation is due to expression of *Ltp* (lipid transferase protein) gene in epidermal cells by using gene-promoter β-glucuronidase (GUS) fusion studies. However, in *Medicago truncatula*, *ENOD11* gene was found to get activated transcriptionally in cortical and epidermal cells where hyphae penetrate during *Gigaspora rosea* infection (Chabaud et al. 2002). In physically separated culture of AM and *Medicago truncatula*, Kosuta et al. (2003) have demonstrated that root signal molecules induce hyphae to secrete fungal factors which further induce the expression of the *MtENOD11* (nod factor-inducible gene). This study was confirmed by using a p*MtENOD11-gusA* reporter gene expression system. The study also reports that in all the tested AM (*Gigaspora rosea*, *Gigaspora margarita*,

Gigaspora gigantean, and *Glomus intraradices*), transgene expression was initially observed at the root cortex and later extended from the root hair emergence region to the matured root hair region. This suggests that though AM infection occurs in cortex zone of roots, its proliferation is restricted mainly to root tissues, and this mechanism is highly regulated by host plant. According to García-Garrido and Ocampo (2002), plant-mycorrhizal symbiotic establishment triggers plants to activate various defensive mechanisms such as degradation of elicitors, control of signal compound concentration, defensive regulation through nutrition and hormone, and regulation of symbiotic genes and pathogen-related gene expression. However, activation and regulation of these defensive responses during symbiosis are yet to be understood. In many cases, host plant defenses are very weak, and it differs from the responses that are usually noticed during plant-pathogen relations. The enzymes such as chalcone synthase and phenylalanine ammonia lyase responsible for flavonoid biosynthesis were induced in *M. truncatula* cells which contained arbuscules. However, the defense-specific enzyme isoflavone reductase was not induced. This suggests that mycorrhizal fungi growth is stimulated by flavonoid biosynthesis and not the phytoalexins (antimicrobials) (Harrison 2005; Bais et al. 2006). The induction of *lpt* (lipid transfer protein) gene was found to regulate the appressoria formation and hyphal penetration of *Glomus mosseae* during colonization with *Oryza sativa* roots (Blilou et al. 2000). In a study by Lanfranco et al. (2005), it was found that when spores of *Gigaspora margarita* (BEG 34) were exposed to *L. japonicus* and *M. truncatula* root exudates, induction level of *GmarCuZnSOD* gene was found to increase. This gives evidence on the involvement of fungal reactive oxygen species-scavenging systems in plant-fungi interactions. Further studies have suggested that reactive oxygen species and SOD produced from *Oidiodendron maius* and *Glomus intraradices* play a pivotal role in mycorrhizal symbiosis (Abba et al. 2009; Gonzalez-Guerrero et al. 2010). A necrotrophic fungus, *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, was found to repress defensive mechanisms of host plants such as *Lycopersicon esculentum*, *Nicotiana benthamiana*, or *N. tabacum* (Veluchamy et al. 2012). Though many researchers have identified the role of root exudates in mediating plant-fungal associations, still many chemical communications in the rhizosphere are yet to be documented at the molecular level for better exploitation of symbioses for agricultural benefits.

3.3 Root Exudates and Plant-PGPR Interactions

PGPR are a group of naturally occurring useful rhizobacteria that colonize with a plant root system and exhibit positive synergistic effect by stimulating plant growth, development, and yield. PGPR trigger the production of growth hormones as well as facilitate uptake of nutrients effectively by plants from their surroundings. Moreover, they release inhibitor compounds that guard plants against diseases or other environmental stresses (Jahanian et al. 2012; Ipek et al. 2014). Application of chemically synthesized fertilizers, pesticides, and plant nutrients

has significantly reduced with the application of PGPR in modern agricultural practices (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012). It is believed that PGPR establish association with plants through plant root signals. However, meager information is available on the involvement of root exudate compounds in mediating the process of plant-PGPR interactions and their regulatory acts. Root exudates of plants containing chemical signals are contemplated to communicate with signal molecules of PGPR during their interactions. de Weert et al. (2002) have reported the chemotactic reaction of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* WCS365 during its root colonization in tomato plants. The major chemoattractive root exudates of tomato for *P. fluorescens* were found to be malic acid and citric acid. All nonmotile mutants of *P. fluorescens* (cheA mutants) showed no chemotactic response. Likewise, other root exudates including amino acids and carbohydrates are also reported to have dominant chemoattractive ability for PGPR population in rhizospheric soil (Somers et al. 2004; Huang et al. 2014). Arabinogalactan proteins are complex plant cell wall proteins unique to plant organs and root exudates. These fascinating sets of macromolecules are also involved in facilitating the interactions of plant roots with rhizobacteria (Nguema-Ona et al. 2013; Huang et al. 2014). Cannesan et al. (2012) have reported that arabinogalactan proteins of *Pisum sativum* and *Brassica napus* roots induced encystment formation and inhibited germination of *Aphanomyces euteiches* zoospores. A study by Vicre et al. (2005) suggests the positive role of arabinogalactan proteins in *A. thaliana* root colonization with PGPR. Likewise, Xie et al. (2012) report the chemotactic ability of arabinogalactan proteins to beneficial microbial species. According to them, root exudate of pea, wheat, legumes, and *Arabidopsis* showed a novel mode of arabinogalactan-induced polar attachment with *Rhizobium leguminosarum*. These reports thus suggest that arabinogalactan proteins play a major role in the attachment of rhizobacterial strains to root surfaces. Bacilio-Jiménez et al. (2003) characterized the rice plant root exudates and studied the chemotaxis of *Corynebacterium flavescens*, *Bacillus pumilus*, *Azospirillum brasilense*, and *Bacillus* sp. isolated from the rice rhizosphere. The study revealed the positive chemotactic nature of root exudates for all the rhizobacterial strains tested. The major outer membrane proteins (MOMPs) of rhizobacteria share a homology with bacterial porins. These MOMPs possess cell surface-exposed domains where adhesion process might take place to initiate plant-bacterial interaction (Burdman et al. 2000). In another study by Burdman et al. (2001), MOMPs of *Azospirillum brasilense* were shown to act as an adhesion to assist in bacterial cell aggregation and root attachment in sweet corn, forage corn, sorghum, wheat, tomato, common bean, and chickpeas. Many phytostimulants (cytokinins, auxins, and gibberellins) are secreted by PGPR to improve plant development. Customarily, plants also release root exudates that serve as nutrients for PGPR around the rhizosphere. Some of the root exudates such as tryptophan also serve as precursors for phytohormone synthesis in plants (Steenhoudt and Vanderleyden 2000; Bais et al. 2006; Lawal and Babalola 2014). PGPR produce 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase, a precursor for the biosynthesis of a phytohormone, ethylene which is involved in root growth regulatory mechanisms (Glick et al. 2007). The volatiles (acetoin and 2,3-butanediol) secreted by

Bacillus spp. were shown to improve *Arabidopsis* plant growth. This suggests that plant-rhizobacterial association may not always require physical attachment (Ryu et al. 2003; Doornbos et al. 2012).

4 Root Exudates as Antimicrobials Confer Plant Protection

A diverse class of microbial population prevalent in the rhizosphere soil is mainly influenced by plant root exudates. However, some of these bacterial and fungal strains are pathogens which cause diseases and hence can be detrimental to plants. These damages are managed by plants through defensive responses like suppressing pathogenic microbial strains or recruiting helpful microbial strains. Moreover, plant exudates constitute a wide array of secondary metabolites that help plants to guard against microbial infections, insects, or herbivores attack (Foley and Moore 2005; Doornbos et al. 2012; Haichar et al. 2014). Root exudates secreted by plants act as antimicrobial agents to curb the harmful rhizospheric pathogens. In response to pathogens, plant releases root exudates (defensive proteins, phytoalexins, and other unnoticed chemicals) into their surroundings. Root exudates which act as antimicrobial compounds include indole, benzoxazinone, terpenoids, flavonoids, phenolics, and isoflavonoids. These antimicrobials are observed in plants such as rice, *Arabidopsis*, soybean, corn, and a legume, *Medicago truncatula* (Bais et al. 2004, 2006; Perry et al. 2007). The secretions of *A. thaliana* roots function as antimicrobials provided tissue-specific defensive response to various pathogenic bacterial strains (Bais et al. 2005). But, *Pseudomonas syringae* strain showed resistance to these antimicrobials and infected the plant roots. This resistance ability was proposed to be dependent on the secretory system (type III). Similarly, *P. aeruginosa* forms root colonization, and eventually biofilm is formed which resists antimicrobials secreted from roots (Walker et al. 2004). Hairy roots of soybean induced the biosynthetic pathway of phenylpropanoids, to secrete isoflavones when challenged with a pathogen, *Fusarium solani* (Lozovaya et al. 2004). It is well described that phenylpropanoid pathway is activated in response to pathogenic fungi or other biotic stresses (Lanoue et al. 2010; Miedes et al. 2014). Rosmarinic acid (a caffeic derivative) was produced from hairy root cultures of basil (*Ocimum basilicum*) when challenged with a plant pathogen (*Pythium ultimum*) that causes root rot diseases. Rosmarinic acid was shown to possess a strong antimicrobial property against several rhizospheric microbes (Bais et al. 2002). In a study by Rudrappa et al. (2008), infected *Arabidopsis* plants with *Pseudomonas syringae* (a bacterial leaf pathogen) pv. Tomato DC3000 (Pst) was shown to recruit *Bacillus subtilis* FB17 as a biocontrol agent to infected plant roots. In their study, the rhizospheric strain *B. subtilis* FB17 showed chemotaxis to signal molecule, malic acid secreted by infected plant roots. Plant roots secrete many defense proteins in addition to antimicrobials that also confer root resistance or mediate plant-microbe interactions (De-la-Pena et al. 2008; Denance et al. 2013). Likewise, Lanoue et al. (2010) investigated the likely secretion of defensive root exudates in barley (*Hordeum vulgare*) when

challenged with a fungal pathogen, *Fusarium graminearum*. The results revealed that root exudates inhibited the germination of *F. graminearum* macroconidia. The identified root exudates included *t*-cinnamic, ferulic, *p*-coumaric, vanillic, syringic, 4-hydroxyphenylacetic, indoleacetic, and benzoic acids. In other ways, harmful microbes can be repressed by recruitment of biocontrol bacteria such as *Pseudomonas* spp. that establishes efficient root colonization. Root colonization by *Pseudomonas* spp. can result in suppression of wide range of plant pathogens (Akhtar and Siddiqui 2010; Lanoue et al. 2010). When plants are infected by pathogens, they secrete natural compounds called glucosinolates that are later hydrolysed by an endogenous thioglucosidases enzyme called myrosinases to yield several antimicrobial compounds such as isothiocyanates, thiocyanates, and nitriles (Halkier and Gershenzon 2006). A diterpene compound, rhizathalene A produced by noninfected *A. thaliana* plants, is considered to give defense against herbivorous insect attack (Denance et al. 2013; Haichar et al. 2014). Plant defense responses against pathogens and pests are mainly regulated by signaling networks of the major phytohormones such as jasmonic acid, jasmonates, salicylic acid, and abscisic acid (Robert-Seilaniantz et al. 2011). Researchers have proposed that strigolactone compounds provide plant defenses by regulating jasmonic acid signaling pathway to secrete defense-related hormones (Dor et al. 2011; Denance et al. 2013). Irrespective of numerous advanced studies carried out to understand natural compounds of root exudates and their role as antimicrobials or defensive molecules, their significance in the rhizosphere is yet be established completely. Hence, these findings could pave a way for future scientists to focus on the direction to discover novel new lead molecules as antimicrobials from root exudates.

5 Conclusion and Future Prospects

We described an overview of research information on the importance of biologically important plant-microbe interactions. Also, a wide range of root exudates and their significant role in mediating various plant-microbe interactions are discussed in detail. This chapter mainly focuses on the symbioses of plants with rhizobia, AM fungi, and PGPR as they are widely considered for developing agricultural biotechnology products such as biofertilizers, phytostimulators, biopesticides, and bioremediators. Moreover, these beneficial microbial inoculums are used in the sustainable agricultural practices worldwide. Volatile compounds of root exudates play a significant biological role in establishing communications between plant roots and the rhizospheric microbial flora. Through these biointeractions, plants are benefited through increased nutrient uptake from soil and better defensive responses against unfriendly surroundings. However, these biointeractions mediated by root exudates are yet to be understood clearly due to the fact that all biological interactions occur below ground. Hence, there is a need to establish new methodologies to explore their interactions under lab conditions. Literature survey has witnessed that root exudates function as signal molecules during plant-microbe interactions. Many study reports have

identified several genes and their regulatory expressions to produce root exudates for establishing biointeractions. Yet, more research efforts are needed to understand these interactions in detail at molecular level. Understanding about other root exudate genes, regulatory aspects of these genes and their expression under different environments, gene manipulation studies to modify root exudate products, alterations in the biosynthetic pathways of root exudates, and factors effecting root exudation are some of the research areas for the coming years. Progress in these research areas could be beneficial in developing economically valued crop plants with a capacity to produce higher useful root exudates. As plant interaction studies are mainly restricted to only few rhizosphere microbes, future research should focus on the understanding of other possible plant-microbe interactions in the complex rhizosphere environment. Also, chemical characterization of these rhizodeposits will pave a way in the discovery of novel metabolites with antimicrobial activity.

References

Abba S, Khouja HR, Martino E, Archer DB, Perotto S (2009) SOD1-targeted gene disruption in the ericoid mycorrhizal fungus *Oidiodendron maius* reduces conidiation and the capacity for mycorrhization. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 22:1412–1421

Abdel-Lateif K, Bogusz D, Hocher V (2012) The role of flavonoids in the establishment of plant roots endosymbioses with arbuscular mycorrhiza fungi, rhizobia and *Frankia* bacteria. Plant Signal Behav 7:636–641

Ahemad M, Kibret M (2014) Mechanisms and applications of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria: current perspective. J King Saudi Univ Sci 26:1–20

Akhtar MS, Panwar J (2011) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and opportunistic fungi: efficient root symbionts for the management of plant parasitic nematodes. Adv Sci Eng Med 3: 165–175

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2008) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi as potential biprotectants against plant pathogens. In: Siddiqui ZA, Akhtar MS, Futai K (eds) Mycorrhizae: sustainable agriculture and forestry. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 61–98

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2010) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in biocontrol of plant diseases and sustainable agriculture. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Plant growth and health promoting bacteria, vol 18, Microbiology monographs. Springer, Berlin, pp 157–196

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA, Wiemken A (2011) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and rhizobium to control plant fungal diseases. In: Lichtfouse E (ed) Alternative farming systems, biotechnology, drought stress and ecological fertilisation, vol 6, Sustainable agriculture reviews. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 263–292

Akhtar MS, Panwar J, Abdullah SNA, Siddiqui Y, Swamy MK, Ashkani S (2015) Biocontrol of plant parasitic nematodes by fungi: efficacy and control strategies. In: Meghvanshi MK, Varma A (eds) Organic amendments and soil suppressiveness in plant disease management, vol 46, Soil biology. Springer International Publishing, Switzerland, pp 219–247

Akiyama K, Matsuzaki K, Hayashi H (2005) Plant sesquiterpenes induce hyphal branching in arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Nature 435:824–827

Akiyama K, Ogasawara S, Ito S, Hayashi H (2010) Structural requirements of strigolactones for hyphal branching in AM fungi. Plant Cell Physiol 51:1104–1117

Al-Babili S, Bouwmeester HJ (2015) Strigolactones, a novel carotenoid derived plant hormone. Annu Rev Plant Biol 66:161–186

Albrecht C, Geurts R, Lapeyrie F, Bisseling T (1998) Endomycorrhizae and rhizobial Nod factors both require Sym8 to induce the expression of the early nodulin genes PsENOD5 and PsENOD12A. Plant J 15:605–614

Bacilio-Jiménez M, Aguilar-Flores S, Ventura-Zapata E, Pérez-Campos E, Bouquelet S, Zenteno E (2003) Chemical characterization of root exudates from rice (*Oryza sativa*) and their effects on the chemotactic response of endophytic bacteria. Plant Soil 249:271–277

Badri DV, Vivanco JM (2009) Regulation and function of root exudates. Plant Cell Environ 32:666–681

Badri DV, Weir TL, van der Lelie D, Vivanco JM (2009) Rhizosphere chemical dialogues: plant microbe interactions. Curr Opin Biotechnol 20:642–650

Badri DV, Chaparro JM, Zhang R, Shen Q, Vivanco JM (2013) Application of natural blends of phytochemicals derived from the root exudates of *Arabidopsis* to the soil reveal that phenolic-related compounds predominantly modulate the soil microbiome. J Biol Chem 288:4502–4512

Bais HP, Walker TS, Schweizer HP, Vivanco JM (2002). Root specific elicitation and antimicrobial activity of rosmarinic acid in hairy root cultures of Ocimum basilicum. Plant Physiology and Biochemistry 40(11):983–995

Bais HP, Park SW, Weir TL, Callaway RM, Vivanco JM (2004) How plants communicate using the underground information superhighway. Trends Plant Sci 9:26–32

Bais HP, Prithiviraj B, Jha AK, Ausubel FM, Vivanco JM (2005) Mediation of pathogen resistance by exudation of antimicrobials from roots. Nature 434:217–221

Bais HP, Weir TL, Perry LG, Gilroy S, Vivanco JM (2006) The role of root exudates in rhizosphere interactions with plants and other organisms. Annu Rev Plant Biol 57:233–266

Bais HP, Broeckling CD, Vivanco JM (2008) Root exudates modulate plant–microbe interactions in the rhizosphere. In: Karlovsky P (ed) Secondary metabolites in soil ecology. Springer, Göttingen, Germany, pp 241–252

Bertin C, Yang XH, Weston LA (2003) The role of root exudates and allelochemicals in the rhizosphere. Plant Soil 256:67–83

Besserer A, Puech-Pagès V, Kiefer P, Gomez-Roldan V, Jauneau A, Roy S, Portais JC, Roux C, Becard G, Sejalon-Delmas N (2006) Strigolactones stimulate arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi by activating mitochondria. PLoS Biol 4:e226

Besserer A, Becard G, Jauneau A, Roux C, Sejalon-Delmas N (2008) GR24, a synthetic analog of strigolactones, stimulates the mitosis and growth of the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Gigaspora rosea* by boosting its energy metabolism. Plant Physiol 148:402–413

Bhattacharyya PN, Jha DK (2012) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): emergence in agriculture. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:1327–1350

Blilou I, Ocampo JA, García-Garrido JM (2000) Induction of Ltp (lipid transfer protein) and Pal (phenylalanine ammonia-lyase) gene expression in rice roots colonized by the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus mosseae*. J Exp Bot 51:1969–1977

Bonfante P, Anca IA (2009) Plants, mycorrhizal fungi, and bacteria: a network of interactions. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:363–383

Bravin MN, Tentscher P, Rose J, Hinsinger P (2009) Rhizosphere pH gradient controls copper availability in a strongly acidic soil. Environ Sci Technol 43:5686–5691

Burdman S, Okon Y, Jurkevitch E (2000) Surface characteristics of *Azospirillum brasilense* in relation to cell aggregation and attachment to plant roots. Crit Rev Microbiol 26:91–110

Burdman S, Dulguerova G, Okon Y, Jurkevitch E (2001) Purification of the major outer membrane protein of *Azospirillum brasilense*, its affinity to plant roots, and its involvement in cell aggregation. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 14:555–558

Cai T, Cai W, Zhang J, Zheng H, Tsou AM, Xiao L, Zhong Z, Zhu J (2009) Host legume-exuded anti-metabolites optimize the symbiotic rhizosphere. Mol Microbiol 73:507–517

Cannesan MA, Durand C, Burel C, Gangneux C, Lerouge P, Ishii T, Laval K, Follet-Gueye ML, Driouich A, Vicré-Gibouin M (2012) Effect of arabinogalactan proteins from the root caps of pea and Brassica napus on Aphanomyces euteiches zoospore chemotaxis and germination. Plant Physiology 159(4), pp. 1658–1670

Chabaud M, Venard C, Defaux-Petras A, Bécard G, Barker DG (2002) Targeted inoculation of *Medicago truncatula in vitro* root cultures reveals MtENOD11 expression during early stages of infection by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. New Phytol 156:265–273

Chaparro JM, Badri DV, Bakker MG, Sugiyama A, Manter DK, Vivanco JM (2013) Root exudation of phytochemicals in *Arabidopsis* follows specific patterns that are developmentally programmed and correlate with soil microbial functions. PLoS One 8:e55731

Cheng Z, Duan J, Hao Y, McConkey BJ, Glick BR (2009) Identification of bacterial proteins mediating the interactions between *Pseudomonas putida* UW4 and *Brassica napus* (Canola). Mol Plant Microbe Interact 22:686–694

Compant S, Clément C, Sessitsch A (2010) Plant growth-promoting bacteria in the rhizo- and endosphere of plants: their role, colonization, mechanisms involved and prospects for utilization. Soil Biol Biochem 42:669–678

Cooper JE (2007) Early interactions between legumes and rhizobia: disclosing complexity in a molecular dialogue. J Appl Microbiol 103:1355–1365

de Weert S, Vermeiren H, Mulders IH, Kuiper I, Hendrickx N, Bloemberg GV, Lugtenberg BJ (2002) Flagella-driven chemotaxis towards exudate components is an important trait for tomato root colonization by *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:1173–1180

De-la-Pena C, Lei Z, Watson BS, Sumner LW, Vivanco JM (2008) Root-microbe communication through protein secretion. J Biol Chem 283:25247–25255

Denance N, Sánchez-Vallet A, Goffner D, Molina A (2013) Disease resistance or growth: the role of plant hormones in balancing immune responses and fitness costs. Front Plant Sci 4:155

Desbrosses GG, Kopka J, Udvardi MK (2005) *Lotus japonicus* metabolic profiling. Development of gas chromatography-mass spectrometry resources for the study of plant-microbe interactions. Plant Physiol 137:1302–1318

Doornbos RF, van Loon LC, Bakker PA (2012) Impact of root exudates and plant defense signaling on bacterial communities in the rhizosphere: a review. Agron Sustain Dev 32:227–243

Dor E, Joel DM, Kapulnik Y, Koltai H, Hershenhorn J (2011) The synthetic strigolactone GR24 influences the growth pattern of phytopathogenic fungi. Planta 234:419–427

Farag MA, Huhman DV, Dixon RA, Sumner LW (2008) Metabolomics reveals novel pathways and differential mechanistic and elicitor-specific responses in phenylpropanoid and isoflavonoid biosynthesis in *Medicago truncatula* cell cultures. Plant Physiol 146:387–402

Farag MA, Deavours BE, de Fatima A, Naoumkina M, Dixon RA, Sumner LW (2009) Integrated metabolite and transcript profiling identify a biosynthetic mechanism for hispidol in *Medicago truncatula* cell cultures. Plant Physiol 151:1096–1113

Faure D, Vereecke D, Leveau JHJ (2009) Molecular communication in the rhizosphere. Plant Soil 321:279–303

Figueiredo MVB, Martinez CR, Burity HA, Chanway CP (2008) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria for improving nodulation and nitrogen fixation in the common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris L.*). World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:1187–1193

Figueiredo MDVB, Seldin L, de Araujo FF, Mariano RDLR (2011) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria: fundamentals and applications. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Plant growth and health promoting bacteria. Springer, Berlin, pp 21–43

Foley WJ, Moore BD (2005) Plant secondary metabolites and vertebrate herbivores-from physiological regulation to ecosystem function. Curr Opin Plant Biol 8:430–435

Fruhling M, Roussel H, Gianinazzipearson V, Puhler A, Perlick AM (1997) The *Vicia faba* leghemoglobin gene VfLb29 is induced in root nodules and in roots colonized by the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus fasciculatum*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 10:124–131

García-Garrido JM, Ocampo JA (2002) Regulation of the plant defence response in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. J Exp Bot 53:1377–1386

Garcia-Garrido JM, Lendzemo V, Castellanos-Morales V, Steinkellner S, Vierheilig H (2009) Strigolactones, signals for parasitic plants and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Mycorrhiza 19:449–459

Geurts R, Fedorova E, Bisseling T (2005) Nod factor signaling genes and their function in the early stages of *Rhizobium* infection. Curr Opin Plant Biol 8:346–352

Gleba D, Borisjuk NV, Borisjuk LG, Kneer R, Poulev A, Skarzhinskaya M, Dushenkov M, Logendra S, Gleba YY, Raskin I (1999) Use of plant roots for phytoremediation and molecular farming. Proc Natl Acad Sci 25:5973–5977

Glick BR, Cheng Z, Czarny J, Duan J (2007) Promotion of plant growth by ACC deaminase-producing soil bacteria. Eur J Plant Pathol 119:329–339

Goldwasser Y, Yoneyama K, Xie X, Yoneyama K (2008) Production of strigolactones by Arabidopsis thaliana responsible for Orobanche aegyptiaca seed germination. Plant Growth Regul 55:21–28

Gonzalez-Guerrero M, Oger E, Benabdellah K, Azcón-Aguilar C, Lanfranco L, Ferrol N (2010) Characterization of a CuZn superoxide dismutase gene in the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus intraradices*. Curr Genet 56:265–274

Gray EJ, Smith DL (2005) Intracellular and extracellular PGPR: commonalities and distinctions in the plant-bacterium signaling processes. Soil Biol Biochem 37:395–412

Haichar FZ, Marol C, Berge O, Rangel-Castro JI, Prosser JI, Balesdent J, Heulin T, Achouak W (2008) Plant host habitat and root exudates shape soil bacterial community structure. ISME J 2:1221–1230

Haichar FZ, Santaella C, Heulin T, Achouak W (2014) Root exudates mediated interactions belowground. Soil Biol Biochem 77:69–80

Haldar S, Sengupta S (2015) Plant-microbe cross-talk in the rhizosphere: insight and biotechnological potential. Open Microbiol J 9:1–7

Halkier BA, Gershenzon J (2006) Biology and biochemistry of glucosinolates. Annu Rev Plant Biol 57:303–333

Harrison MJ (2005) Signaling in the arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Annu Rev Microbiol 59:19–42

Hartmann A, Schmid M, van Tuinen D, Berg G (2009) Plant driven selection of microbes. Plant Soil 321:235–257

Hejl AM, Koster KL (2004) The allelochemical sorgoleone inhibits root H^+-ATPase and water uptake. J Chem Ecol 30:2181–2191

Hernandez G, Valdes-Lopez O, Ramirez M, Goffard N, Weiller G, Aparicio-Fabre R, Fuentes SI, Erban A, Kopka J, Udvardi MK, Vance CP (2009) Global changes in the transcript and metabolic profiles during symbiotic nitrogen fixation in phosphorus-stressed common bean plants. Plant Physiol 151:1221–1238

Horiuchi JI, Prithiviraj B, Bais HP, Kimball BA, Vivanco JM (2005) Soil nematodes mediate positive interactions between legume plants and rhizobium bacteria. Planta 222:848–857

Huang XF, Chaparro JM, Reardon KF, Zhang R, Shen Q, Vivanco JM (2014) Rhizosphere interactions: root exudates, microbes, and microbial communities. Botany 92:267–275

Ipek M, Pirlak L, Esitken A, Figen Dönmez M, Turan M, Sahin F (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) increase yield, growth and nutrition of Strawberry under high-calcareous soil conditions. J Plant Nutr 37:990–1001

Jahanian A, Chaichi MR, Rezaei K, Rezayazdi K, Khavazi K (2012) The effect of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on germination and primary growth of artichoke (*Cynara scolymus*). Int J Agric Crop Sci 4:923–929

Kosuta S, Chabaud M, Lougnon G, Gough C, Dénarié J, Barker DG, Becard G (2003) A diffusible factor from arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi induces symbiosis-specific MtENOD11 expression in roots of *Medicago truncatula*. Plant Physiol 131:952–962

Lanfranco L, Novero M, Bonfante P (2005) The mycorrhizal fungus *Gigaspora margarita* possesses a CuZn superoxide dismutase that is up-regulated during symbiosis with legume hosts. Plant Physiol 137:1319–1330

Lanoue A, Burlat V, Henkes GJ, Koch I, Schurr U, Röse US (2010) De novo biosynthesis of defense root exudates in response to *Fusarium* attack in barley. New Phytol 185:577–588

Lawal TE, Babalola OO (2014) Relevance of biofertilizers to agriculture. J Hum Ecol 47:35–43

Levy J, Bres C, Geurts R, Chalhoub B, Kulikova O, Duc G, Journet EP, Ane JM, Lauber E, Bisseling T, Denarie J, Rosenberg C, Debelle F (2004) A putative Ca^{2+} and calmodulin-dependent protein kinase required for bacterial and fungal symbioses. Science 303:1361–1364

Lopez-Raez JA, Charnikhova T, Gomez-Roldan V, Matusova R, Kohlen W, De Vos R, Verstappen F, Puech-Pages V, Becard G, Mulder P, Bouwmeester H (2008) Tomato strigolactones are derived from carotenoids and their biosynthesis is promoted by phosphate starvation. New Phytol 178:863–874

Lozovaya VV, Lygin AV, Li S, Hartman GL, Widholm JM (2004) Biochemical response of soybean roots to Fusarium solani f. sp. glycines infection. Crop Sci 44:819–826

Lugtenberg BJ, Chin-A-Woeng TF, Bloemberg GV (2002) Microbe-plant interactions: principles and mechanisms. Antonie Van Leeuwen 81:373–383

Micallef SA, Shiaris MP, Colon-Carmona A (2009) Influence of Arabidopsis thaliana accessions on rhizobacterial communities and natural variation in root exudates. J Exp Bot 60:1729–1742

Miedes E, Vanholme R, Boerjan W, Molina A (2014) The role of the secondary cell wall in plant resistance to pathogens. Front Plant Sci 5:358

Mougel C, Offre P, Ranjard L, Corberand T, Gamalero E, Robin C, Lemanceau P (2006) Dynamic of the genetic structure of bacterial and fungal communities at different developmental stages of *Medicago truncatula* Gaertn. cv. Jemalong line J5. New Phytol 170:165–175

Nagahashi G, Douds DD (1999) A rapid and sensitive bioassay with practical application for studies on interactions between root exudates and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Biotechnol Tech 13:893–897

Nagahashi G, Douds DD Jr (2003) Action spectrum for the induction of hyphal branches of an arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus: exposure sites versus branching sites. Mycol Res 107:1075–1082

Neal AL, Ahmad S, Gordon-Weeks R, Ton J (2012) Benzoxazinoids in root exudates of Maize attract *Pseudomonas putida* to the rhizosphere. PLoS One 7:e35498

Nguema-Ona E, Vicré-Gibouin M, Cannesan MA, Driouich A (2013) Arabinogalactan proteins in root–microbe interactions. Trends Plant Sci 18:440–449

Nguyen C (2003) Rhizodeposition of organic C by plants: mechanisms and controls. Agronomoie 23:375–396

Oba H, Tawaraya K, Wagatsuma T (2002) Inhibition of pre-symbiotic hyphal growth of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Gigaspora margarita* by root exudates of *Lupinus* spp. Soil Sci Plant Nutr 48:117–120

Parniske M (2008) Arbuscular mycorrhiza: the mother of plant root endosymbioses. Nat Rev Microbiol 6:763–775

Paszkowski U (2006) A journey through signaling in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbioses. New Phytol 172:35–46

Perret X, Staehelin C, Broughton WJ (2000) Molecular basis of symbiotic promiscuity. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 64:180–201

Perry LG, Alford ER, Horiuchi J, Paschke MW, Vivanco JM (2007) Chemical signals in the rhizosphere: root-root and root-microbe communication. In: Pinton R, Varanini Z, Nanniperi P (eds) The rhizosphere. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 297–330

Rashid MH, Krehenbrink M, Akhtar MS (2015) Nitrogen-fixing plant-microbe symbioses. In: Lichtfouse E (ed) Sustainable agriculture reviews, vol 15. Springer International Publishing, Switzerland, pp 193–234

Riely BK, Ane JM, Penmetsa RV, Cook DR (2004) Genetic and genomic analysis in model legumes bring Nod-factor signaling to center stage. Curr Opin Plant Biol 7:408–413

Rispail N, Hauck B, Bartholomew B, Watson AA, Nash RJ, Webb KJ (2010) Secondary metabolite profiling of the model legume *Lotus japonicus* during its symbiotic interaction with *Mesorhizobium loti*. Symbiosis 50:119–128

Robert-Seilaniantz A, Grant M, Jones JDG (2011) Hormone crosstalk in plant disease and defense: more than just JASMONATE-SALICYLATE antagonism. Annu Rev Phytopathol 49:317–343

Roussel H, van Tuinen D, Franken P, Gianinazzi S, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (2001) Signaling between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and plants: identification of a gene expressed during early interactions by differential RNA display analysis. Plant Soil 232:13–19

Rudrappa T, Czymmek KJ, Paré PW, Bais HP (2008) Root-secreted malic acid recruits beneficial soil bacteria. Plant Physiol 148:1547–1556

Ryu CM, Farag MA, Hu CH, Reddy MS, Wei H-X, Paré PW, Kloepper JW (2003) Bacterial volatiles promote growth in *Arabidopsis*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:4927–4932

Shukla KP, Singh NK, Sharma S (2010) Bioremediation: developments, current practices and perspectives. Genet Eng Biotechnol J 3:1–20

Shukla KP, Sharma S, Singh NK, Singh V, Tiwari K, Singh S (2013) Nature and role of root exudates: efficacy in bioremediation. Afr J Biotechnol 10:9717–9724

Simard SW, Perry DA, Jones MD, Myrold DD, Durall DM, Molina R (1997) Net transfer of carbon between ectomycorrhizal tree species in the field. Nature 388:579–582

Smith S (2014) Q&A: what are strigolactones and why are they important to plants and soil microbes. BMC Biol 12:19

Somers E, Vanderleyden J, Srinivasan M (2004) Rhizosphere bacterial signalling: a love parade beneath our feet. Crit Rev Microbiol 30:205–235

Steenhoudt O, Vanderleyden J (2000) Azospirillum, a free-living nitrogen-fixing bacterium closely associated with grasses: genetic, biochemical and ecological aspects. FEMS Microbiol Rev 24:487–506

Steinkellner S, Lendzemo V, Langer I, Schweiger P, Khaosaad T, Toussaint JP, Vierheilig H (2007) Flavonoids and strigolactones in root exudates as signals in symbiotic and pathogenic plant-fungus interactions. Molecules 12:1290–1306

Subramanian S, Stacey G, Yu O (2007) Distinct, crucial roles of flavonoids during legume nodulation. Trends Plant Sci 12:282–285

Sugiyama A, Yazaki K (2012) Root exudates of legume plants and their involvement in interactions with soil microbes. In: Vivanco JM, Baluska F (eds) Secretions and exudates in biological systems. Springer, Berlin, pp 27–48

Thompson JN, Cunningham BM (2002) Geographic structure and dynamics of coevolutionary selection. Nature 417:735–738

Ueda H, Sugimoto Y (2010) Vestitol as a chemical barrier against intrusion of parasitic plant *Striga hermonthica* into *Lotus japonicus* roots. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 74:1662–1667

Veluchamy S, Williams B, Kim K, Dickman MB (2012) The CuZn superoxide dismutase from *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* is involved with oxidative stress tolerance, virulence, and oxalate production. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 78:14–23

Vicre M, Santaella C, Blanchet S, Gateau A, Driouich A (2005) Root border-like cells of *Arabidopsis*. Microscopical characterization and role in the interaction with rhizobacteria. Plant Physiol 138:998–1008

Vierheilig H, Piche Y (2002) Signalling in arbuscular mycorrhiza: facts and hypotheses. In: Buslig BS, Manthey JA (eds) Flavonoids in cell functions. Springer, New York, pp 23–39

Walker TS, Bais HP, Grotewold E, Vivanco JM (2003) Root exudation and rhizosphere biology. Plant Physiol 132:44–51

Walker TS, Bais HP, Déziel E, Schweizer HP, Rahme LG, Fall R, Vivanco JM (2004) *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*-plant root interactions. Pathogenicity, biofilm formation, and root exudation. Plant Physiol 134:320–331

Wasson AP, Pellerone FI, Mathesius U (2006) Silencing the flavonoid pathway in *Medicago truncatula* inhibits root nodule formation and prevents auxin transport regulation by rhizobia. Plant Cell 18:1617–1629

Woo SL, Scala F, Ruocco M, Lorito M (2006) The molecular biology of the interactions between *Trichoderma* spp., phytopathogenic fungi, and plants. Phytopathology 96:181–185

Xie F, Williams A, Edwards A, Downie JA (2012) A plant arabinogalactan-like glycoprotein promotes a novel type of polar surface attachment by *Rhizobium leguminosarum*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 25:250–258

Yadav BK, Akhtar MS, Panwar J (2015) Rhizospheric plant microbe interactions: a key factor to soil fertility and plant nutrition. In: Arora NK (ed) Plant microbe symbiosis-applied facets. Springer, India, pp 127–145

Yedidia I, Srivastva AK, Kapulnik Y, Chet I (2001) Effect of *Trichoderma harzianum* on microelement concentrations and increased growth of cucumber plants. Plant Soil 235:235–242

Yoneyama Y, Xie X, Sekimoto H, Takeuchi Y, Ogasawara S, Akiyama K, Hayashi H, Yoneyama K (2008) Strigolactones, host recognition signals for root parasitic plants and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi, from Fabaceae plants. New Phytol 179:484–494

A Proteomic Approach to Understand the Tripartite Interactions Between Plant-*Trichoderma*-Pathogen: Investigating the Potential for Efficient Biological Control

Chetan Keswani, Kartikay Bisen, S.P. Singh, B.K. Sarma, and H.B. Singh

Abstract Efficient biological control of plant diseases involves successful interactions among plant, biocontrol agents, and pathogens. *Trichoderma* spp. being the most popular and successful biocontrol agents are predominantly used to protect plants against a broad range of phytopathogens. However, a better understanding of the tripartite relationship established among *Trichoderma*-plant-pathogen is necessary in order to advance the practical applicability in agroecosystems and to unveil the cross talk involved in this beneficial association. Moreover, comprehensive knowledge of this three-way association is also required to identify the effective strain of *Trichoderma* to be used for efficient plant disease control. In this regard, several approaches have been adapted to study these tripartite interactions at molecular level such as transcriptomics, proteomics, and metabolomics. Although transcriptomic approach generates huge data, the study is incomplete without involving proteomic aspect, as it is directly responsible for cellular activity. Therefore, implication of proteomics in studying plant-pathogen interaction is now gaining noteworthy attention. Recently, proteomic approach has been found to contribute successfully in recognizing and characterizing the major proteins playing key role in inducing the defense mechanism in plants against pathogen attack. Nevertheless, empathizing proteomics of *Trichoderma* spp. can be used to discover novel determinants that would be helpful in developing new biocontrol formulation with enhanced biocontrol potential. Moreover, strain improvement using such determinants could also be achieved. In addition, proteomic study of the pathogen in this interaction is of great interest, as it would give insight into two aspects: firstly, the major factors contributing to the

C. Keswani • S.P. Singh
Department of Biochemistry, Faculty of Science, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi 221005, India

K. Bisen • B.K. Sarma • H.B. Singh (✉)
Department of Mycology and Plant Pathology, Institute of Agricultural Sciences, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi 221005, India
e-mail: hbs1@rediffmail.com

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_5

pathogenicity and secondly, targeting such factors for diminishing the pathogenicity. Therefore, in this chapter we focus our attention on highlighting the recent advances and findings regarding the proteomic approach used to study tripartite interaction between *Trichoderma*-plant-pathogen.

Keywords *Trichoderma* • Proteomics • Host-pathogen interaction • Secretomics • Molecular communication

1 Introduction

Conventional techniques used to prevent plant diseases have been based on the application of synthetic chemicals. Chemical fungicides can have hazardous effects on the environmental and human health (Naseby et al. 2000). A decline or elimination of chemical pesticide applications is highly desirable in present agricultural system. Among various alternatives, one of the most potent approaches is the use of biocontrol agents (BCAs) for disease control. Plethora of biocontrol agents are available in global markets, including bacteria such as *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, *Agrobacterium*, and *Streptomyces* and fungi such as *Trichoderma*, *Gliocladium* (Singh et al. 2012; Romero et al. 2007), *Ampelomyces*, *Beauveria bassiana*, *Metarhizium*, *Coniothyrium* (Whipps et al. 2008), and *Candida* (Torres et al. 2003).

Filamentous ascomycetes *Trichoderma* (teleomorph *Hypocrea*) is a free-living saprophytic fungus frequently found in rhizosphere. These fungi are avirulent plant symbionts and antagonists to many soilborne phytopathogenic fungi. Currently, *Trichoderma* spp. are the most frequently investigated fungal biocontrol agents, and more than 60 % of the commercially available registered biofungicides worldwide are based on different formulations of *Trichoderma* (Keswani et al. 2013). About 250 products are commercially available for field applications in India (Singh et al. 2009). Application of *Trichoderma* strain in agriculture can provide various advantages: (1) rhizosphere competence that helps in root colonization and quick establishment of BCA in soil microbial community, (2) biological control of plant pathogenic fungi by an array of mechanisms, and (3) plant growth promotion (Keswani et al. 2013).

2 *Trichoderma*-Pathogen Interaction

Trichoderma is a fast-growing opportunistic fungus and produces an array of antibiotics and cell wall-degrading enzymes such as chitinases, cellulases, glucanases, etc. Most of the strains of *Trichoderma* are "rhizosphere competent" and easily degrade polysaccharides, chlorophenolic compounds, hydrocarbons, and in some case even

pesticides residues (Mishra et al. 2015; Harman et al. 2004). The main mechanisms that *Trichoderma* utilizes in interaction with fungal pathogens are antibiosis (Keswani 2015) and mycoparasitism (Keswani et al. 2013). The direct interactions between *Trichoderma* spp. and other phytopathogenic fungi are usually expressed as mycoparasitism or necrotrophic hyperparasitism (Bisen et al. 2015). Various cell wall-degrading enzymes and lytic enzymes are secreted by *Trichoderma* during the mycoparasitism which hydrolyze the host fungal cell wall and result in liberation of oligomers from the host cell wall (Table 1) (Woo et al. 2006; Kubicek et al. 2001; Sarma et al. 2014).

Table 1 Some major hydrolytic enzymes secreted by *Trichoderma* spp.

Species	Hydrolytic enzymes	Total amino acids	Accession no.
T. reesei	Cellobiohydrolase, beta-glucan	490	1003195A GI: 223874
	Endoglucanase I	371	1EG1_C GI: 2392307
	Chitinase 18-5	277	AEV54218.1 GI: 359720067
	Glycoside hydrolase family 39	440	XP_006969975.1 GI: 589115905
T. virens	Hydrophobin	45	ABE60727.1 GI: 91771573
	Endochitinase 42	252	ADP37575.1 GI: 31089309
	Extracellular serine protease	409	AAO63588.1 GI: 29421423
	Beta-1,6-glucanase precursor	429	AAL84696.1 GI: 19072999
T. atroviride	Endochitinase	344	AAM77132.1 GI: 33413585
	Chitinase 18-5	270	AJD86858.1 GI: 747037110
T. harzianum	Cellobiohydrolase I Cel7a	426	2YOK_A GI: 414145321
	Endochitinase 42	265	ADN93313.1 GI: 307752707
	Class V chitinase	397	AAT47713.1 GI: 48928004
	Secreted aspartic proteinase	530	ABK64120.1 GI: 118161444
	Chitinase 18-5, partial	245	ACY68414.1 GI: 262478801
T. viride	Cellobiohydrolase I	514	AAQ76092.1 GI: 34582632
	Endoglucanase III	418	AAQ21383.1 GI: 33521680
	Cellobiohydrolase	470	ADJ10628.1 GI: 299033169
	Exocellulase	515	ACX42576.1 GI: 260513728
	Endoglucanase VIII	438	ACD36972.1 GI: 187766738
	Endo-1,4-beta-xylanase	229	ABK59833.1 GI: 117959724
	Beta-D-glucoside glucohydrolase	74	AAQ76093.1 GI: 34582634
	Cellobiohydrolase II	471	ABH01083.1 GI: 110826033
T. koningii	Endochitinase 42	242	ADN93307.1 GI: 307752695
	Cellulose 1,4-beta-cellobiosidase	513	S45380 GI: 630421
	Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (phosphorylating)	337	S29814 GI: 422228
	Cellobiohydrolase II	471	AAK01367.1 GI: 12667268
	Endoglucanase	234	AAM77712.1 GI: 218421

Table 2 Various antimicrobial secondary metabolites produced and secreted by *Trichoderma* spp.

Species	Secondary metabolites	References
T. aggressivum	Mellein	Krupke et al. (2003)
T. lignorum	Lignoren	Berg et al. (2004)
T. atroviride	Atroviridins A, B, and C, α-phellandrene, ferricrocin, β-bisabolene, α-terpinene, β-phellandrene, γ-curcumene, α-bergamotene, α-curcumene	Oh et al. (2000), Vinale et al. (2008), Stoppacher et al. (2010)
T. longibrachiatum	LGB II and LGB III, Longibrachin, Mevastatin, Trichogin GA IV	Leclerc et al. (2001), Degenkolb et al. (2006), Mohamed-Benkada et al. (2006)

Currently, 287,808 proteins in *T. reesei*, 12,712 in *T. virens*, 12,237 in *T. atroviride*, 1181 in *T. harzianum*, 215 in *T. viride*, and 121 in *T. koningii* have been characterized (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/).

Trichoderma spp. produce plethora of biologically active secondary metabolites (Keswani et al. 2014). Antibiotic and secondary metabolites' production is well associated with biocontrol ability, and the use of purified antimicrobial compounds was found effective against various fungal plant pathogens (Jain 2012) (Table 2). Secondary metabolite harzianopyridone displayed strong antifungal activity against *B. cinerea*, *R. solani* (Dickinson et al. 1989), and *Pythium ultimum* (Vinale et al. 2006), while harzianolide, T39 butenolide, and T22 azaphilone displayed in vitro inhibition of *P. ultimum* and *R. solani* (Vinale et al. 2006). In tomato and canola seedlings, incidence of *B. cinerea* and *Leptosphaeria maculans* was significantly reduced when same metabolites were applied at concentration of 1–10 mg/ml (Vinale et al. 2008). Cerinolactone at 100 µg/plug concentration showed 100 and 28 % inhibition in growth of *P. ultimum* and *B. cinerea* (Vinale et al. 2011). Competition for growth factors such as nitrogen, carbon, and space is also a defense strategy employed by *Trichoderma* spp. to control plant pathogens (Singh 2012). In addition, *Trichoderma* spp. have an enhanced ability to mobilize soil nutrients, thus making it more competitive and efficient than any other rhizhosperic microorganism (Rakshit et al. 2015).

3 *Trichoderma*-Plant Interaction

In addition to the biocontrol potential against phytopathogens, many *Trichoderma* species are potent plant root colonizers and cause considerable alteration in plant physiology and metabolism (Harman et al. 2004). It is well accepted that some

strains of *Trichoderma* promote plant growth by increasing nutrient availability to the roots, improve crop production, and induce systemic resistance in plants against various phytopathogens (Fig. 1) (Harman et al. 2004). Trichokonin secreted by *T. koningii* when applied as foliar spray at concentration of 100 nM resulted in improved resistance response in *Cucumis sativus*. In 57 % reduction in lesion size, 54 % lesion inhibition was recorded in *Nicotiana tabacum* against tobacco mosaic virus (TMV) infection (Luo et al. 2010). Yedidia et al. (1999) observed the physical interaction between plant and *Trichoderma* under electron microscopy and reported that hyphae of *Trichoderma* penetrate the root cortex but colonization is checked by deposition of callose. *Trichoderma* mediated induction of defence responses in various plants have been well documented (Table 3). Increased resistance against pathogen attack was shown by a vast range of plants species, when seeds were primed with *Trichoderma* spp. (Bisen et al. 2015; Singh et al. 2011). Plant growth promotion and inhibition property of antimicrobial secondary metabolites secreted by *Trichoderma* spp. have been reported (Vinale et al. 2009a, b; Luo et al. 2010). Application of harzianic acid at concentration of 100 µg/seed resulted in 45 % inhibition in stem length in canola seedlings, while when applied at concentration of 100 ng/seed, 42 %

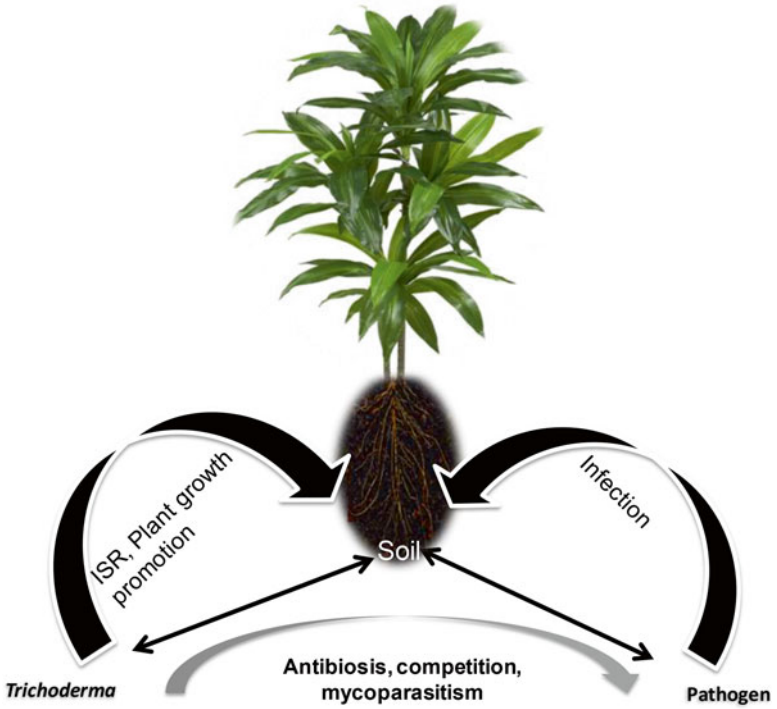


Fig. 1 Three-way interaction between *Trichoderma*-plant-pathogen

Table 3 Factors involved in *Trichoderma*-induced resistance in plants

Trichoderma strain	Target pathogen	Factors involved in induced resistance	References
Trichoderma spp.	*P. capsici*	Various defense-related genes and ESTs	Bae et al. (2011)
T. atroviride, *T. harzianum*	*B. cinerea*	SA, JA	Tucci et al. (2011)
T. arundinaceum IBT40837	*B. cinerea*, *R. solani*	SA, JA	Malmierca et al. (2012)
T. hamatum T382	*B. cinerea*	Phenylpropanoid compounds	Mathys et al. (2012)
T. harzianum T39	*Plasmopara viticola*	Jasmonic acid (JA), ethylene (ET), reactive oxygen species (ROS), callose, various defense-related proteins	Perazzolli et al. (2012)
T. asperellum SKT-1	*Pseudomonas syringae* pv. *tomato*	Salicylic acid (SA), JA, ET	Yoshioka et al. (2012)

increase in stem length was recorded (Vinale et al. 2009a, b). Similarly, positive effects of harzianolide on defense response and plant health were reported in *Solanum lycopersicum* and *Brassica napus* seedlings (Vinale et al. 2008).

Species of *Trichoderma* have been characterized as avirulent plant symbiont (Harman et al. 2004). Recent studies have revealed that colonization of *Trichoderma* spp. is not only limited to plant root tissues and rhizosphere but also as endophytes (Druzhinina et al. 2011). Most of the newly discovered endophytic *Trichoderma* were previously unknown, e.g., *T. stromaticum*, *T. evansii*, *T. amazonicum*, *T. theobromicola*, *T. martiale*, and *T. taxi* (Mukherjee et al. 2012) (Table 4). The endophytic *Trichoderma* spp. are reported to protect hosts from various biotic and abiotic stresses through transcriptomic changes (Bailey et al. 2006; Bae et al. 2009).

T. harzianum strain T22 has shown enhanced level of growth hormone in cherry plant. In vitro inoculation of strain T22 in cherry resulted in 76 % increases in root length and 61 % increases in shoot length. Although *T. harzianum* T22 did not release any phytohormones in the medium, 143 % increase in gibberellic acid (GA3) and 40 % increase in indole acetic acid (IAA) were recorded in the roots (Sofo et al. 2011). Similarly, 71 % and 49 % increase in gibberellic acid and indole acetic acid (IAA) concentration was recorded in cherry leaves, respectively (Sofo et al. 2011). Concentration of five phytohormones including zeatin, salicylic acid, ethylene precursor 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid, IAA, and jasmonic acid in melon plants inoculated with *T. harzianum* CECT 20714 was analyzed. Up to 30 % increase in zeatin, 40 % increase in IAA, and 40 % increase in ACC were recorded and correlated with increased root and shoot length (Martinez-Medina et al. 2011).

Table 4 Endophytic *Trichoderma* spp. isolated from various hosts

Trichoderma spp.	Plant	Effect on biotic and abiotic stress	Reference
Trichoderma sp.	*H. brasiliensis*	–	Santamaria and Bayman (2005)
T. viride	*Azadirachta indica*	–	Verma et al. (2005)
T. theobromicola	*Theobroma cacao*	–	Samuels et al. (2006)
T. paucisporum, *T. caribbaeum* var. *aequatoriale*	*Theobroma* spp.	–	Samuels et al. (2006)
T. taxi	*Taxus mairei*	–	Zhang et al. (2007)
T. lieckfeldtiae, *T. martiale*	*Theobroma* spp.	Biological control of black pod rot caused *Phytophthora palmivora*	Hanada et al. (2008)
T. hamatum DIS 219b	*Theobroma cacao*	Root growth and delayed drought response	Bae et al. (2009)
T. evansii	*Theobroma* spp.	–	Samuels and Ismaiel (2009)
T. koningiopsis	*Hevea brasiliensis*		Gazis and Chaverri (2010)
T. amazonicum	*Hevea brasiliensis*, *H. guianensis*	–	Chaverri et al. (2011)
T. asperellum, T. virens, *T. brevicompactum*, *Hypocrea lixii*	*Musa paradisiaca*	–	Xia et al. (2011)
T. atroviride CAE_{210}, *T. atroviride* CSE_{114}, *T. koningii* CSE_{32}	*Cupressus arizonica*, *Thuja orientalis*, *C. sempervirens* var. *cereiformis*	Biocontrol of *Pyricularia oryzae*	Hosseini-Moghaddam and Soltani (2014)

4 Deciphering the Intricacies of Tripartite Interaction Through Proteomics

The tripartite interactions involving plant, *Trichoderma*, and phytopathogen have received less attention in contrast to the plant-*Trichoderma*, plant-pathogen, and *Trichoderma*-pathogen interactions. The major focus of the studies on the three-way interactions has been related to molecular changes during pathogen attack and/or plant responses (Dangl and Jones 2001; Hammond-Kosack and Parker 2003; Suzuki et al. 2004). Various defense factors, signaling molecules, and virulence and avirulence factors have been identified in plants (Cánovas et al. 2004; Rep et al. 2002)

and in microbes (Kazemi-Pour et al. 2004; Smolka et al. 2003). Furthermore, the influence of biocontrol agents on plant and pathogen has not been a extensively studied at proteomics level, even though this technique offers an effective alternate to decipher such communication networks (Woo et al. 2006).

Though structural genomics has revealed significant information on the identity and structure of genes expressed in plant-microbe interactions (Singh et al. 2004; Talbot 2003), proteomics allows a large-scale exploration of gene expression and has been studied for protein profiles produced from varied interaction (Pandey and Mann 2000; Lim and Elenitoba-Johnson 2004).

In order to analyze the differential protein produced during the tripartite interactions between plant-*Trichoderma*-pathogen, Marra et al. (2006) investigated the interactions of *Trichoderma*, plant, and different fungal pathogens by using proteomic techniques. Alteration in the proteomes of each partner during the three-way cross talk was studied, and the most appealing differential spots were analyzed via PMF. Several differentially expressed proteins were found in the *T. atroviride* proteome during the tripartite interactions with foliar pathogen *B. cinerea* and bean leaves. Results showed that the tripartite interaction may be regulated by disease-related factors and plant proteome-specific PR proteins. A protein with PPIase activity was earlier identified by LC-MS/MS in the proteome of *T. harzianum* (Grinyer et al. 2005). The in silico study of data from plant-*Trichoderma* and plant-*Botrytis* interactions exposed many homologues to PR proteins. Conserved domains like nucleotide-binding sites (NBS), leucine-rich repeats (LRR), and SGS domains along with conserved sequences of Bet v I PR and Barwin-protein families were found. For example, thaumatin-like protein and tobacco PR-4 family with a Barwin domain involved in the plant defense response to *Magnaporthe grisea* (Kim et al. 2004) were accumulated in the host. Various proteins from the *T. atroviride* interaction showed similarities with ABC transporters and fungal hydrophobins. In *M. grisea* proteome, virulence factors such as cyclophilins were also regulated in the interaction with the antagonist and with the plant. The role of cell wall-degrading enzymes secreted by *Trichoderma* spp. in the vicinity of the fungal phytopathogens including *Pythium ultimum* and *Rhizoctonia solani* is also well known (Keswani et al. 2013). The significance of endochitinases and exochitinases (*nag1* and *chit42*) of *T. atroviride* in the mycoparasitism of soilborne phytopathogens is also well documented (Lu et al. 2004).

5 Two-Dimensional Polyacrylamide Gel Electrophoresis

In 2D-PAGE, proteins are separated according to net charge present on them by isoelectric focusing in first dimension, and in second dimension, proteins are resolved according to their molecular weight (Gorg et al. 2004). Protein spots can be identified by staining the gels with different stains such as Coomassie brilliant blue, colloidal silver stain, and SYPRO Ruby stain (Nat et al. 2007; Patterson and Aebersold 2003; Duley and Grover 2001). 2D-PAGE images are analyzed using

various software packages such as PDQuest BioRad, Melanie, Progenesis, Phoretix, Z3, and Z4000 (Righetti et al. 2007). Identification of excised spots is done by mass spectroscopy (Zhu et al. 2003). 2D-PAGE gels also offer information on various biochemical and biophysical parameters including isoelectric point, molecular weight, and posttranslational modifications (PTMs) (Gorg et al. 2004; Wittmann-Liebold et al. 2006). 2D-PAGE is a reproducible, sensitive, and steadfast technique for studying comparative alterations in proteome of an organism (Somiari et al. 2003; Hakeem et al. 2012).

Comparative analysis of differential protein pattern in *T. atroviride* grown on different substrates including *R. solani* cell wall residues and glucose was done by Grinyer et al. (2005). In *T. atroviride* grown on glucose, a total of 67 proteins were observed in comparison to 56 proteins from that of grown on *R. solani* cell wall. Proteins observed in *T. atroviride* grown on *R. solani* cells range from proteins involved in antagonistic activity of *T. atroviride* to novel proteins. Of the different proteins, *N*-acetyl-β-D-glucosaminidase and 42-kDa endochitinase have been found to play an important role in antagonism against various fungal pathogens. *T. atroviride* secretes both enzymes in order to hydrolyze the cell wall of the fungal pathogen (Mach et al. 1999).

6 Fluorescent Two-Dimensional Difference Gel Electrophoresis (2D-DIGE)

It allows the analysis of two differential protein regulations between target samples and control by treating the samples with fluorescent dyes and run on single 2D gel. Thus, protein present in one sample can be compared with its differentially labeled counterpart from other sample. Later, the gel is scanned at two different wavelengths that stimulate dye molecules and reveal whether spot is coupled with one or two dye molecules (Unlu et al. 1997). DIGE offers comparing of many protein samples under comparable electrophoresis conditions and thus ensure accuracy of quantification and better reproducibility (Van den Bergh and Arckens 2005; Zhou et al. 2005). An alternative approach is the gel-free proteomic technology, which is more suitable for the analysis of proteins with low abundance in complex samples (Lambert et al. 2005; Nat et al. 2007; Zhu et al. 2010).

7 Multidimensional Protein Identification Technology (MudPIT)

In this process protein samples are digested with sequence-specific enzymes including endoproteinase lyase and trypsin and separated by reversed-phase (RP) high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) and strong cation exchange (Issaq et al. 2005; Washburn et al. 2001). MudPIT technique offers fast, sensitive,

and reproducible analysis while generating an extensive list of existing proteins in given sample (Rose et al. 2004; Washburn et al. 2001). MudPIT is used in different proteomic experiments such as protein profiling of cell membrane, cell organelle, and analysis and identification of protein expression (Yates et al. 2005; Speers and Wu 2007; Cantin et al. 2006).

8 Mass Spectrometry

Anderson in 1958 first reported the use of mass spectrometry (MS) to analyze amino acids and peptides. During the process the test samples are transformed into gas and separated according to mass-to-charge ratio (*m*/*z*). Proteins are fragmented by trypsin and separated by liquid chromatography. The samples are ionized by matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization (MALDI) and transformed into the gas. Peptides of specific mass are fragmented by collision-induced dissociation and subjected to second mass spectrometry. Results are compared with protein identification algorithms grouped as de novo search algorithms and database search algorithms.

9 Protein Microarray

Protein microarray is used to profile large quantities of complex samples, and it offers functional and classical proteome analysis (Duburcq et al. 2004; La Baer and Ramachandran 2005; Athwal et al. 2000; Ramachandran et al. 2005; Hammond-Kosack and Jones 2000). Cell lysate is allowed to pass over the surface to tie the antigen to their related antibodies. Antibody or other similar reagents such as peptides, allergens, and polysaccharides can be spotted on a flat surface such as plastic, glass, or silicon chip. Radioactively labeled proteins are used to screen the bound antigen. Generally three kinds of microarray are used in proteomic analysis including functional protein microarray, used for studying protein-protein interaction; analytical microarray, used for studying protein-DNA and protein-RNA interaction; and reversed-phase protein microarray used for differential expression profile for altered protein.

10 Conclusion

The performance of biocontrol agents is reliant upon the complex interactions that these microorganisms maintain with plants and pathogens in the soil. A superior understanding of the process and cross talk among the members will result in efficient utilization of microbial biocontrol agents for management of seed and soil-borne diseases. Current strategies including proteomics and metabolomics provide

novel insights into tripartite associations, particularly about the capacity of *Trichoderma* to sense the plant, the soil, and the microbial groups. Proteomic approaches offer easy identification of various differential proteins engaged in cross talk between biocontrol agents, plant, and pathogens. Most of the experiments conducted so far have been centered toward the two-partner interactions (Dangl and Jones 2001), thus providing a comparatively partial view of a resistance/pathogenicity processes as intervened by both pathogenic and beneficial microbes. Proteomic analysis can be very helpful to present both general and specific data on the interaction proteomes used by microbes and plants. In tripartite interactions, more than one partner is active at the same time indicating the complexity of the system, and hence a more integrated approach is needed to understand the mechanisms of biological control.

Acknowledgments BKS, HBS, and CK are grateful to ICAR AMAAS for financial support, while KB is thankful to BHU for providing UGC Research Fellowship.

References

Anderson CO (1958) Mass spectrometric studies on amino acid and peptide derivatives. Acta Chem Scand 12:1353

Athwal GS, Lombardo C, Huber JL, Masters SC, Fu H, Huber SC (2000) Modulation of 14-3-3 interactions with target proteins by physical and metabolic effectors. Plant Cell Physiol 41:523–533

Bae H, Sicher RC, Kim MS, Kim SH, Strem MD, MeInice RL, Bailey BA (2009) The beneficial endophyte *Trichoderma hamatum* isolate DS 219b promotes growth and delays the onset of the drought response in *Theobroma cacao*. J Exp Bot 60:3279–3295

Bae H, Roberts DP, Lim HS, Strem MD, Park SC, Ryu CM, Bailey BA (2011) Endophytic *Trichoderma* isolates from tropical environments delay disease onset and induce resistance against *Phytophthora capsici* in hot pepper using multiple mechanisms. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 24:336–351

Bailey BA, Bae H, Strem MD, Roberts DP, Thomas SE, Crozier J, Samuels GJ, Choi IY, Holmes KA (2006) Fungal and plant gene expression during the colonization of cacao seedlings by endophytic isolates of four *Trichoderma* spp. Planta 224:1449–1464

Berg A, Wangun HVK, Nkengfack AE, Schlegel B (2004) Lignoren, a new sesquiterpenoid metabolite from *Trichoderma lignorum* HKI 0257. J Basic Microbiol 44:317–319

Bisen K, Keswani C, Mishra S, Saxena A, Rakshit A, Singh HB (2015) Unrealized potential of seed biopriming for versatile agriculture. In: Rakshit A, Singh HB, Sen A (eds) Nutrient use efficiency: from basics to advances. Springer, New Delhi, India, pp 193–206

Cánovas FM, Dumas-Gaudot E, Recorbet G, Jorrin J, Mock HP, Rossignol M (2004) Plant proteome analysis. Proteomics 4:285–298

Cantin GT, Venable JD, Cociorva D, Yates JR (2006) Quantitative phosphoproteomic analysis of the tumor necrosis factor pathway. J Proteome Res 5:127–134

Chaverri P, Gazis RO, Samuels GJ (2011) *Trichoderma amazonicum*, a new endophytic species on *Hevea brasiliensis* and *H. guianensis* from the Amazon basin. Mycologia 103:139–151

Dangl JL, Jones JDG (2001) Plant pathogens and integrated defense responses to infection. Nature 411:826–833

Degenkolb T, Gräfenhan T, Nirenberg HI, Gams W, Brückner H (2006) *Trichoderma brevicompactum* Complex: rich source of novel and recurrent plant-protective polypeptide antibiotics. J Agric Food Chem 54:7047–7061

Dickinson JM, Hanson JR, Hitchcock PB, Claydon N (1989) Structure and biosynthesis of harzianopyridone, an antifungal metabolite of *Trichoderma harzianum*. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:1885–1887

Druzhinina IS, Seidl-Seiboth V, Herrera-Estrella A, Horwitz BA, Kenerley CM, Monte E, Mukherjee PK, Zeilinger S, Grigoriev IV, Kubicek CP (2011) Trichoderma—the genomics of opportunistic success. Nat Rev Microbiol 9:749–759

Duburcq X, Olivier C, Malingue F, Desmet R, Bouzidi A, Zhou F, Auriault C, Gras-Masse H (2004) Peptide-protein microarrays for the simultaneous detection of pathogen infections. Bioconjug Chem 15:307–316

Duley H, Grover A (2001) Current initiatives in proteomics research: the plant perspective. Curr Sci 80:262–269

Gazis R, Chaverri P (2010) Diversity of fungal endophytes in leaves and stems of wild rubber trees (*Hevea brasiliensis*) in Peru. Fungal Ecol 3:240–254

Gorg A, Weiss W, Dunn MJ (2004) Current two-dimensional electrophoresis technology for proteomics. Proteomics 4:3665–3685

Grinyer J, Hunt S, McKay M, Herbert BR, Nevalainen H (2005) Proteomic response of the biological control fungus *Trichoderma atroviride* to growth on the cell walls of *Rhizoctonia solani*. Curr Genet 47:381–388

Hakeem KR, Chandna R, Ahmad P, Ozturk M, Iqbal M (2012) Relevance of proteomic investigations in plant stress physiology. OMICS 16(11):621–635

Hammond-Kosack KE, Jones JDG (2000) Responses to plant pathogens. In: Buchanan BB, Gruissem W, Jones RL (eds) Biochemistry and molecular biology of plants. American Society of Plant Physiology, Rockville, pp 1102–1156

Hammond-Kosack KE, Parker JE (2003) Deciphering plant-pathogen communication: fresh perspectives for molecular resistance breeding. Curr Opin Biotechnol 14(2):177–193

Hanada RE, de Jorge Souza T, Pomella AW, Hebbar KP, Pereira JO, Ismaiel A, Samuels GJ (2008) *Trichoderma martiale* sp. nov., a new endophyte from sapwood of *Theobroma cacao* with a potential for biological control. Mycol Res 112:1335–1343

Harman GE, Howell CR, Viterbo A, Chet I, Lorito M (2004) *Trichoderma* species—opportunistic, avirulent plant symbionts. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:43–56

Hosseyni-Moghaddam MS, Soltani J (2014) Bioactivity of endophytic *Trichoderma* fungal species from the plant family Cupressaceae. Ann Microbiol 64(2):753–761

Issaq HJ, Chan KC, Janini GM, Conrads TP, Veenstra TD (2005) Multidimensional separation of peptides for effective proteomic analysis. J Chromatogr B Analyt Technol Biomed Life Sci 817:35–47

Jain A (2012) Studies on interactions of biocontrol agents for management of *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*. Thesis, Banaras Hindu University

Kazemi-Pour N, Condemine G, Hugouvieux-Cotte-Pattat N (2004) The secretome of the plant pathogenic bacterium *Erwinia chrysanthemi*. Proteomics 4:3177–3186

Keswani C, Singh SP, Singh HB (2013) A superstar in biocontrol enterprise: *Trichoderma* spp. Biotech Today 3:27–30

Keswani C (2015) Proteomic studies of thermotolerant strain of trichoderma spp. Ph.D. Thesis, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi, India

Keswani C, Mishra S, Sarma BK, Singh SP, Singh HB (2014) Unraveling the efficient applications of secondary metabolites of various *Trichoderma* spp. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 98:533–544

Kim ST, Kim SG, Hwang DH, Kang SY, Kim HJ, Lee BH, Lee JJ, Kang KY (2004) Proteomic analysis of pathogen-responsive proteins from rice leaves induced by rice blast fungus, *Magnaporthe grisea*. Proteomics 4:3569–3578

Krupke OA, Castle AJ, Rinker DL (2003) The North American mushroom competitor, *Trichoderma aggressivum* f. *aggressivum*, produces antifungal compounds in mushroom compost that inhibit mycelia growth of the commercial mushroom *Agaricus bisporus*. Mycol Res 107:1467–1475

Kubicek CP, Mach RL, Peterbauer CK, Lorito M (2001) *Trichoderma*: from genes to biocontrol. J Plant Pathol 83:11–23

La Baer J, Ramachandran N (2005) Protein microarrays as tools for functional proteomics. Curr Opin Chem Biol 9:14–19

Lambert JP, Ethier M, Smith JC, Figeys D (2005) Proteomics from gel based to gel free. Anal Chem 77:3771–3787

Leclerc G, Goulard C, Prigent Y, Bodo B, Wroblewski H, Rebuffat S (2001) Sequences and anti-mycoplasmic properties of longibrachins LGB II and LGB III, two novel 20-residue peptaibols from *Trichoderma longibrachiatum*. J Nat Prod 64:164–170

Lim MS, Elenitoba-Johnson KSJ (2004) Proteomics in pathology research. Lab Invest 84:1227–1244

Lu Z, Tombolini R, Woo SL, Zeilinger S, Lorito M, Jansson JK (2004) In vivo study of Trichoderma–pathogen–plant interactions with constitutive and inducible GFP reporter systems. App Environ Microbiol 70(5):3073–3081

Luo Y, Zhang D, Dong XW, Zhao PB, Chen LL, Song XY, Wang XJ, Chen XL, Shi M, Zhang YZ (2010) Antimicrobial peptaibols induce defense responses and systemic resistance in tobacco against tobacco mosaic virus. FEMS Microbiol Lett 13:120–126

Mach RL, Peterbauer CK, Payer K, Jaksits S, Woo SL, Zeilinger S, Kullnig C, Lorito M, Kubicek CP (1999) Expression of two major chitinase genes of *Trichoderma atroviride* (*T. harzianum* P1) is triggered by different regulatory signals. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:1858–1863

Malmierca MG, Cardoza RE, Alexander NJ, McCormick SP, Hermosa R, Monte E, Gutiérrez S (2012) Involvement of *Trichoderma* trichothecenes in the biocontrol activity and induction of plant defense-related genes. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:4856–4868

Marra R, Ambrosino P, Carbone V, Vinale F, Woo SL, Ruocco M, Ciliento R, Lanzuise S, Ferraioli S, Soriente I, Gigante S, Turrà D, Fogliano V, Scala F, Lorito M (2006) Study of the three-way interaction between *Trichoderma atroviride*, plant and fungal pathogens by using a proteomic approach. Curr Genet 50:307–321

Martinez-Medina A, Roldan A, Albacete A, Perez-Alfocea F, Pascual JA (2011) Hormonal signalling of the *Trichoderma harzianum* induced resistance to *Fusarium oxysporum* and growth promotion effect in melon plants. Acta Horticulturae. pp 61–67

Mathys J, De Cremer K, Timmermans T, Kerckhove SV, Lievens B, Vanhaecke M, Cammue PA, Barbara De Coninck B (2012) Genome-wide characterization of ISR induced in *Arabidopsis thaliana* by *Trichoderma hamatum* T382 against *Botrytis cinerea* infection. Front Plant Sci 3:108

Mishra S, Singh A, Keswani C, Saxena A, Sarma BK, Singh HB (2015) Harnessing plant-microbe interactions for enhanced protection against phytopathogens. In: Arora N (ed) Plant microbes symbiosis: applied facets. Springer, New Delhi, India, pp 111–125

Mohamed-Benkada M, Montagu M, Biard J, Mondeguer F, Verite P, Dalgalarrondo M, Bissett J, Pouchus YF (2006) New short peptaibols from a marine *Trichoderma* strain. Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom 20:1176–1180

Mukherjee PK, Buensanteai N, Moran-Diez ME, Druzhinina IS, Kenerley CM (2012) Functional analysis of non-ribosomal peptide synthetases (NRPSs) in *Trichoderma virens* reveals a polyketide synthase (PKS)/NRPS hybrid enzyme involved in induced systemic resistance response in maize. Microbiology 158:155–165

Naseby DC, Pascual JA, Lynch JM (2000) Effect of biocontrol strains of *Trichoderma* on plant growth, *Pythium ultimum* population, soil microbial communities and soil enzyme activities. J Appl Microbiol 88:161–169

Nat NVK, Srivastava S, Yajima W, Sharma N (2007) Application of proteomics to investigate plant-pathogen interactions. Curr Proteom 4:28–43

Oh SU, Lee SJ, Kim JH, Yoo ID (2000) Structural elucidation of new antibiotic peptides, atroviridins A, B and C from *Trichoderma atroviride*. Tetrahedron Lett 41:61–64

Pandey A, Mann M (2000) Proteomics to study genes and genomes. Nature 405:837–846

Patterson SD, Aebersold RH (2003) Proteomics: the first decade and beyond. Nat Genet 33:311–321

Perazzolli M, Moretto M, Fontana P, Ferrarini A, Velasco R, Moser C, Pertot I (2012) Downy mildew resistance induced by *Trichoderma harzianum* T39 in susceptible grapevines partially mimics transcriptional changes of resistant genotypes. BMC Genomics 13:660

Rakshit A, Sunita K, Pal S, Singh A, Singh HB (2015) Bio-priming mediated nutrient use efficiency of crop species. In: Rakshit A, Singh HB, Sen A (eds) Nutrient use efficiency: from basics to advances. Springer, New Delhi, India, pp 181–191

Ramachandran N, Larson DN, Stark PR, Hains-worth E, LaBaer J (2005) Emerging tools for real-time label-free detection of interactions on functional protein microarrays. FEBS J 272:5412–5425

Rep M, Dekker HL, Vossen JH, de Boer AD, Houterman PM, Speijer D, Back JW, de Koster CG, Cornelissen BJC (2002) Mass spectrometric identification of isoforms of PR proteins in xylem sap of fungus-infected tomato. Plant Physiol 130:904–917

Righetti PG, Castagna A, Antonucci F, Piubelli C, Cecconi D, Campostrini NC, Antonioli P, Astner H (2007) Critical survey of quantitative proteomics in two-dimensional electrophoretic approaches. J Chromatogr A 1051:3–17

Romero D, de Vicente A, Zeriouh H, Cazorla FM, Fernández-Ortuño D, Torés JA, Pérez-García A (2007) Evaluation of biological control agents for managing cucurbit powdery mildew on greenhouse-grown melon. Plant Pathol 56:976–986

Rose JKC, Bashir S, Giovannoni JJ, Jahn MM, Saravanan RS (2004) Tackling the plant proteome: practical approaches, hurdles and experimental tools. Plant J 39:715–733

Samuels GJ, Ismaiel A (2009) *Trichoderma evansii* and *T. lieckfeldtiae*: two new *T. hamatum* like species. Mycologia 101:142–156

Samuels GJ, Suarez C, Solis K, Holmes KA, Thomas SE, Ismaiel A, Evans HC (2006) *Trichoderma theobromicola* and *T. paucisporum*: two new species isolated from cacao in South America. Mycol Res 110:381–392

Santamaria J, Bayman P (2005) Fungal epiphytes and endophytes of coffee leaves (*Coffea arabica*). Microbiol Ecol 50:1–8

Sarma BK, Yadav SK, Patel JS, Singh HB (2014) Molecular mechanisms of interactions of *Trichoderma* with other fungal species. Open Mycol J 8:140–147

Singh A (2012) Biological control of *Sclerotium rolfsii* using microbial consortium. Thesis, Banaras Hindu University

Singh BK, Millard P, Whiteley AS, Murrell JC (2004) Unraveling rhizosphere-microbial interactions: opportunities and limitations. Trend Microbiol 12:386–393

Singh HB, Singh BN, Singh SP, Singh SR, Sarma BK (2009) Biological control of plant diseases: current status and future prospects. In: Johri JK (ed) Recent advances in biopesticides: biotechnological applications. New India Pub, New Delhi, p 322

Singh BN, Singh A, Singh SP, Singh HB (2011) *Trichoderma harzianum* mediated reprogramming of oxidative stress response in root apoplast of sunflower enhances defense against *Rhizoctonia solani*. Eur J Plant Pathol 131:121–134

Singh HB, Singh BN, Singh SP, Sarma BK (2012) Exploring different avenues of *Trichoderma* as a potent bio-fungicidal and plant growth promoting candidate—an overview. Rev Plant Pathol 5:315–426

Smolka MB, Martins D, Winck FV, Santoro CE, Castellari RR, Ferrari F, Brum IJ, Galembeck E, Della Coletta Filho H, Machado MA, Marangoni S, Novello JC (2003) Proteome analysis of the plant pathogen *Xylella fastidiosa* reveals major cellular and extracellular proteins and a peculiar codon bias distribution. Proteomics 3:224–237

Sofo A, Scopa A, Manfra M, De Nisco M, Tenore G, Troisi J (2011) *Trichoderma harzianum* strain T-22 induces changes in phytohormone levels in cherry rootstocks (*Prunus cerasus* × *P. canescens*). Plant Growth Regul 65:421–425

Somiari RI, Sullivan A, Russell S, Somiari S, Hu H, Jordan R, Shriver C (2003) High-throughput proteomic analysis of human infiltrating ductal carcinoma of the breast. Proteomics 3:1863–1873

Speers AE, Wu CC (2007) Proteomics of integral membrane proteins—theory and application. Chem Rev 107:3687–3714

Stoppacher N, Kluger B, Zeilinger S, Krska R, Schuhmacher R (2010) Identification and profiling of volatile metabolites of the biocontrol fungus *Trichoderma atroviride* by HS-SPME-GC-MS. J Microbiol Methods 81:187–193

Suzuki H, Xia Y, Cameron R, Shadle G, Blount J, Lamb C, Dixon RA (2004) Signals for local and systemic responses of plants to pathogen attack. J Exp Bot 55:169–179

Talbot NJ (2003) Functional genomics of plant-pathogen interactions. New Phytol 159:1–10

Torres R, Usall J, Teixidó N, Abadias M, Viñas I (2003) Liquid formulation of the biocontrol agent *Candida* sake by modifying water activity or adding protectants. J Appl Microbiol 94:330–339

Tucci M, Ruocco M, De Masi L, De Palma M, Lorito M (2011) The beneficial effect of *Trichoderma* spp. on tomato is modulated by the plant genotype. Mol Plant Pathol 12:341–354

Unlu M, Morgan ME, Minden JS (1997) Difference gel electrophoresis: a single gel method for detecting changes in protein extracts electrophoresis. Electrophoresis 18:2071–2077

Van den Bergh G, Arckens L (2005) Recent advances in 2D electrophoresis: an array of possibilities. Exp Rev Proteom 2:243–252

Verma VC, Gond SK, Kumar A, Kharwar RN, Strobel G (2005) The endophytic mycoflora of bark, leaf, and stem tissues of *Azadirachta indica* A. Juss (Neem) from Varanasi (India). Microbiol Ecol 54:119–125

Vinale F, Marra R, Scala F, Ghisalberti EL, Lorito M, Sivasithamparam K (2006) Major secondary metabolites produced by two commercial *Trichoderma* strains active against different phytopathogens. Lett Appl Microbiol 43:143–148

Vinale F, Sivasithamparam K, Ghisalberti EL, Marra R, Barbetti MJ, Li H (2008) A novel role for *Trichoderma* secondary metabolites in the interactions with plants. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 72:80–86

Vinale F, Flematti G, Sivasithamparam K, Lorito M, Marra R, Skelton BW, Ghisalberti EL (2009a) Harzianic acid, an antifungal and plant growth promoting metabolite from *Trichoderma harzianum*. J Nat Prod 72:2032–2035

Vinale F, Ghisalberti EL, Sivasithamparam K, Marra R, Ritieni A, Ferracane R, Woo S, Lorito M (2009b) Factors affecting the production of *Trichoderma harzianum* secondary metabolites during the interaction with different plant pathogens. Lett Appl Microbiol 48:705–711

Vinale F, Girona IA, Nigro M, Mazzei P, Piccolo A, Ruocco M, Woo S, Rosa RD, Herrera CL, Lorito M (2011) Cerinolactone, a hydroxylactone derivative from *Trichoderma cerinum*. J Nat Prod 75:103–106

Washburn MP, Wolters D, Yates JR (2001) Large-scale analysis of the yeast proteome by multidimensional protein identification technology. Nat Biotechnol 19:242–247

Whipps JM, Sreenivasaprasad S, Muthumeenakshi S, Rogers CW, Challen MP (2008) Use of *Coniothyrium minitans* as a biocontrol agent and some molecular aspects of sclerotial mycoparasitism. Eur J Plant Pathol 121:323–330

Wittmann-Liebold B, Graack HR, Pohl T (2006) Two dimensional gel electrophoresis as tool for proteomics studies in combination with protein identification by mass spectrometry. Proteomics 17:4688–4703

Woo SL, Scala F, Rocco M, Lorito M (2006) The molecular biology of the interactions between *Trichoderma* spp., phytopathogenic fungi, and plants. Phytopathology 96:181–185

Xia X, Lie T, Qian X, Huang Y, Shen Y (2011) Species diversity, distribution and genetic structure of endophytic and epiphytic *Trichoderma* associated with banana roots. Microbiol Ecol 61:615619

Yates III, Gilchrist JRA, Howell KE, Bergeron JJ (2005) Proteomics of organelles and large cellular structures. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 6:702–714

Yedidia I, Benhamou N, Chet I (1999) Induction of defence responses in cucumber plants (*Cucumis sativus* L.) by the biocontrol agent *Trichoderma harzianum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:1061–1070

Yoshioka Y, Ichikawa H, Naznin HA, Kogure A, Hyakumachi M (2012) Systemic resistance induced in *Arabidopsis thaliana* by *Trichoderma asperellum* SKT-1, a microbial pesticide of seed borne diseases of rice. Pest Manag Sci 68:60–66

Zhang CL, Liu SP, Lin FC, Kubicek CP, Druzhinina IS (2007) *Trichoderma taxi* sp. nov., an endophytic fungus from Chinese yew *Taxus mairei*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 270:90–96

Zhou G, Li H, De Camp D (2005) 2D Differential In-Gel electrophoresis for the identification of esophageal scans cell cancer-specific protein markers. Mol Cell Proteomics 1:117–124

Zhu H, Bilgin M, Snyder M (2003) Proteomics. Annu Rev Biochem 72:783–812

Zhu W, Smith JW, Huang CM (2010) Mass spectrometry-based label-free quantitative proteomics. J Biomed Biotechnol 71:780–800

Mycorrhizal Association and Their Role in Plant Disease Protection

Julio Alves Cardoso Filho, Sergio Florentino Pascholati, and Roberto Ramos Sabrinho

Abstract The arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) symbiosis is a mutualistic association formed between plants and soil fungi. Members of AM-forming fungi (AMF) belong to the phylum *Glomeromycota*. They are symbiotically associated with roots of more than 80 % of terrestrial plant species. AM fungi are obligate biotrophs that require the host plant to proliferate, survive, and complete their life cycle. The AMF, during the symbiosis, establish a sink for plant photosynthate by utilizing it for biomass and metabolic energy, while the AM plants obtain nutrients and water through the AMF hyphae. The benefits of AM symbiosis on fitness plants are largely known, including a better mineral nutrition and a higher tolerance of mycorrhizal plants to abiotic stresses, such as drought, salinity, and presence of heavy metals. Additionally, recent investigations reveal that AMF can suppress pests and plant diseases through induction of systemic resistance. The knowledge about the mechanisms behind the induction of resistance by mycorrhizal symbiosis remains unknown. This chapter describes the role of mycorrhizal symbiosis in plant disease protection, with special emphasis on the mycorrhiza-induced resistance (MIR).

Keywords Plant defense • Arbuscular mycorrhizae • Induced resistance

1 Introduction

Mycorrhiza is a mutualistic association formed between plant roots and certain soil fungi (Azcon-Aguilar and Barea 1996). The symbiosis is named after the Greek words "*mycos*" and "*rhiza*" meaning "fungus root"(Smith and Read 2008). Both of them derive benefits from this interaction; mycorrhizal fungi improve the nutrient status, water absorption, and growth and enhance the host plant's resistance to

J.A.C. Filho (✉) • S.F. Pascholati • R.R. Sabrinho
Center of Agricultural Sciences, Sector of Plant Pathology, Federal University of Alagoas, BR 104 Norte, Km 85 s/n, Rio Largo, AL 57100-000, Brazil

Escola Superior de Agricultura "Luiz de Queiroz" Plant Pathology and Nematology Department, Esalq/USP Biochemical and Physiological Plant Pathology Laboratory, Avenida Pádua Dias, Cx. P. 11, Piracicaba, SP, Brazil
e-mail: julioalvescardosofilho@hotmail.com; sfpascho@esalq.usp.br

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_6

biotic and abiotic stresses, while the host plant is necessary for fungal growth and reproduction by providing carbon in the form of photosynthates (Smith and Gianinazzi-Pearson 1988; Smith and Read 2008; Harrison 2012). Mycorrhizal association is found in 80 % of all vascular plant families (Brundrett 1991; Wang and Qiu 2006) and virtually all terrestrial ecosystems, including tropical to temperate forests, sand dunes, deserts, and grasslands as well agroecosystems (Brundrett 1991). These associations play a key role in shaping terrestrial ecosystems and are widely believed to have promoted the evolution of land plants (Zuccaro et al. 2014).

Harley and Smith (1983) recognized seven types that, for the most part, still comprise the generally accepted classification. These different groups of mycorrhizal associations have been recognized, involving different groups of fungi and host plants and distinct morphology patterns, based on the presence of various extraradical or intraradical hyphal structures (Bonfante and Perotto 2000). These include ectomycorrhizae, endomycorrhizae, ectendomycorrhizae, arbutoid mycorrhizae, monotropoid mycorrhizae, and orchid mycorrhizae (Brundrett 2004; Smith and Read 2008). Arbuscular mycorrhiza (AM) is a member of endomycorrhizae (Harley and Smith 1983). AM is the most widespread form of mycorrhizal associations and of great ecological and economic importance (Brundrett et al. 1996; Francis and Read 1994; Jeffries et al. 2003; Fitter 2005; Newman and Reddell 1987; Smith et al. 2009).

In terms of geographical distribution and phylogenetic coverage in the plant kingdom, AM is probably one of the most widespread symbioses on earth (Gutjahr and Parniske 2013). Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus (AMF) is an obligate biotroph, which receives carbohydrates from the host plant required to complete its life cycle, in exchange of which it provides the plant with nutrients (i.e., such as nitrogen, phosphate, and sulfur) and water (Smith and Read 2008; Smith and Smith 2011). AM fungi are considered to have originated between the Ordovician and Lower Devonian, 400–500 million years ago, from a common ancestor in *Glomaceae*, based on fossil records (Pirozynski and Dalpé 1989; Simon et al. 1993) and phylogenetic evidences (Remy et al. 1994; Taylor et al. 1995; Redecker et al. 2000; Brundrett 2002; Wang and Qiu 2006).

Currently, the phylogenetic analyses of small subunit (SSU) rRNA gene sequences separated AM fungi from the polyphyletic *Zygomycota* and placed them into a new monophyletic phylum, the *Glomeromycota* (Schüßler et al. 2001). The latest classification of AM fungi (frequently updated on the webpage www.amf-phylogeny.com) contains four orders, 11 families, and 25 genera (Redecker et al. 2013; Schüßler and Walker 2010). More than 240 species have been described so far, primarily on the basis of spore morphology (Redecker and Raab 2006), but increasingly supported by DNA sequence information (Oehl et al. 2011; Krüger et al. 2012). However, molecular studies have suggested that diversity of these fungi may be much greater (Fitter 2005; Rosendahl 2008).

The development of AM symbiosis starts with a reciprocal exchange of diffusible signals between plant roots and AM fungi (Navazio et al. 2007), during preinfection stages (Harrison 2005). The host roots release signal molecules called “branching factors” (BFs) that induce extensive germination and hyphal branching in AM fungi

(Giovannetti et al. 1993; Nagahashi and Douds 2000; Akiyama and Hayashi 2006), and AM fungi have long been postulated to produce signal molecules called "Myc factors" (MFs) that induce the molecular and cellular responses leading to successful root colonization by AM fungi (Maillet et al. 2011). The root nodule symbiosis (RNS) with rhizobacteria and the actinorhizal symbiosis with cyanobacterial endosymbionts (Hocher et al. 2011; Svistoonoff et al. 2013) involve the same signaling pathway as AM, which therefore is referred to as common symbiosis signaling pathway (common SYM pathway; Favre et al. 2014).

AM colonization induced changes in the amount of phytohormones such as cytokinins, jasmonic acid (JA), certain auxins, abscisic acid (ABA), ethylene, salicylic acid (SA), and strigolactones (SL) in roots (reviewed in Hause et al. 2007; Foo et al. 2013; Carbonnel and Gutjahr 2014). In the case of mycorrhizal interactions, the plant roots release strigolactones into the rhizosphere that can stimulate hyphal branching and respiratory metabolism of AM fungi (Akiyama et al. 2005; Besserer et al. 2006). Recent studies in *Petunia* mutants defective for the strigolactone exporter PhPDR1 demonstrated that strigolactone transport is essential for the function of these signals in AM symbiosis (Kretzschmar et al. 2012). Studies showed an important role for strigolactones in the stimulation of the fungus outside the roots and possibly also in the progression of AM fungal hyphae within roots (Akiyama et al. 2005). Reciprocally, AM fungi release compounds that trigger a variety of responses in plant roots, including calcium spiking, changes in gene expression, and lateral root formation (Parniske 2008).

A good performance of this symbiosis implies remarkable changes in the physiology of the host plant (Pozo et al. 2009). The changes span from alterations in the hormonal balance and transcriptional profile to altered primary and secondary metabolism (Hause et al. 2007; Liu et al. 2007; Schliemann et al. 2008; López-Ráez et al. 2010), and many of the changes are related to defense mechanisms (Liu et al. 2007; Fiorilli et al. 2009; López-Ráez et al. 2010; Gallou et al. 2012) likely contributing to the plant maintaining control over the symbiotic partner (Fernández et al. 2014). The AM symbiotic program displayed by mycotrophic host plant roots toward AM fungi is depicted as a chronological series of events including the pre-symbiotic phase, contact, fungal entrance, and intra-radical fungal proliferation (Recorbet et al. 2013) and involving the intracellular accommodation of a microorganism by a living plant cell without causing the death of the host (Recorbet et al. 2013).

Environmental conditions can disturb the establishment of the AM symbiosis, including P (phosphorus) availability, which can inhibit the symbiotic interaction (Smith and Read 2008). Although several nutrients influence AM development (Nouri et al. 2014), most research has focused on the role of Pi (Pi, inorganic phosphate; Carbonnel and Gutjahr 2014). One explanation for suppression of AM development at high Pi could be the repression of common SYM signaling (Carbonnel and Gutjahr 2014). However, recent observations suggest that multiple layers of symbiosis control exist (Breuillin et al. 2010) and that the predominant regulatory mechanisms depend to a large extent on the plant and fungal species under study, as well as on the coculture conditions and mode of P supply.

The protection against soilborne pathogens has been widely reported in mycorrhizal plants (Linderman 1994; Azcon-Aguilar and Barea 1996; Whipps 2004; Barea et al. 2005; Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007; Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008; Saldajeno et al. 2008; Pozo et al. 2009, 2010, 2012). While the exact mechanism of plant protection from the pathogen through the presence of mycorrhizal fungi is not known, it is likely that it results from a combination of better nutrition and effects of the mycorrhiza on inducing plant defense responses (Campos-Soriano et al. 2012; Vos et al. 2012).

A global change of the mycorrhizal plant functions by transcriptome reprogramming has an impact on the plant interaction with the environment, modifying its responses to biotic and abiotic stresses (Pozo et al. 2009; van Wees et al. 2008). The consequences go beyond the individual level as they may influence plant diversity and productivity in terrestrial ecosystems (van der Heijden et al. 2008). Because of this modulation, a mild but effective activation of the plant immune responses seems to occur, not only locally but also systemically (Jung et al. 2012). This modulation may result in preconditioning of the tissues for efficient activation of plant defenses upon a challenger attack.

This phenomenon called "priming" results in a faster and stronger induction of basal resistance mechanisms upon subsequent pathogen attack (reviewed in Conrath et al. 2006; Ahmad et al. 2010; Conrath 2011). This subject, "priming," will be discussed later in a specific topic, within this chapter. In this chapter, we want to discuss the role of mycorrhizal symbiosis in plant disease protection, with special emphasis on the mycorrhiza-induced resistance (MIR).

2 The Innate Immune System of Plants

Plants employ multiple layers of defense to combat pathogens (Jones and Dangl 2006). These defenses include a combination of preformed and inducible mechanisms (Jones and Dangl 2006; Spoel and Dong 2012). An innate immune perception triggers both local and systemic defense responses, allowing a plant to fight off pathogens both in a rapid and localized manner and on an extended scale of time and space (Zipfel 2014).

Harold Flor, early in the twentieth century, showed that inheritance of plant immunity to pathogens, as well as the ability of the pathogen to cause disease, is controlled by corresponding gene pairs (Flor 1971). This plant genetic factor was called the resistance (R) gene, while the pathogen genetic factor that determined the inability to cause disease was referred to as the avirulence (Avr) gene. As a result, the plant will be resistant, and the growth of the pathogen will be arrested only when both genes, R and Avr, are present (Ellis et al. 2000a, b). Therefore, for each R gene, a correspondent Avr gene coexists: this is the basis of the gene-for-gene concept, as suggested by Flor (1971). Initially it was widely thought that products of R genes act as receptors that directly interact with the products of Avr genes (Keen 1990).

This ligand–receptor model was supported by the fact that some Avr gene products are small and co-localize with R gene products, most of which encode receptor-like proteins carrying Leu-rich repeats (LRRs).

Experiments show negative results, among direct ligand–receptor interactions, which led to the formulation of the guard hypothesis, stating that R proteins monitor the state of host components that are targeted by pathogen molecules (Van der Biezen and Jones 1998). This hypothesis recognizes that pathogen molecules have intrinsic functions to promote pathogen virulence, which requires the modulation of host components that have thus become virulence targets (Van der Biezen and Jones 1998; Dangl and Jones 2001). The Guard Model was originally proposed to explain the mechanism of *Pseudomonas syringae* AvrPto perception by the tomato proteins Pto and Prf (Van der Biezen and Jones 1998) and was later generalized to perception of other effector proteins (Dangl and Jones 2001). From the guard hypothesis, the pathogen molecules that were originally referred to as avirulence factors genuinely are virulence factors.

Currently, the term "effector" is commonly used for this type of molecule (Bent and Mackey 2007; Boller and Felix 2009). Simultaneously, to research on gene-for-gene resistance, the existence of inducers of plant defense responses that were not determinants of race or cultivar specificity became evident (Ebel and Cosio 1994). These non-race-specific inducers of defense were termed elicitors and harbored a wide range of different types of molecules (Boller 1995). From the identification of the first elicitor receptor (FLS2) (Gómez-Gómez and Boller 2000), subsequent proof for its role in plant immunity (Zipfel et al. 2004), and identification of microbial effectors that suppress this type of immunity (Hauck et al. 2003), proof that both types of defense contribute to plant immunity, was eventually provided. Subsequently, the coevolution between plants and microbial pathogens has been described as a zigzag model by Jones and Dangl (2006) and can also be applied to deducing the biological activity of elicitors (Wiesel et al. 2014). According to this model, the molecules, termed elicitors or avirulence factors, have more recently been renamed to pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) (Chisholm et al. 2006; Jones and Dangl 2006; Schwessinger and Ronald 2012; Zipfel 2014), microbe-associated molecular patterns (MAMPs) (Boller and Felix 2009; Chisholm et al. 2006; Jones and Dangl 2006; Newman et al. 2013; Schwessinger and Ronald 2012; Zipfel 2014), damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) (Boller and Felix 2009), herbivore-associated molecular patterns (HAMPs) (Erb et al. 2012), and effectors (Bent and Mackey 2007). PAMPs/MAMPS are structural molecules, such as bacterial flagellin, elongation factor Tu (EF-Tu), Ax21 secreted protein, peptidoglycan (PGN), lipopolysaccharides (LPS), oomycete glucans, fungal chitin, and xylanase (Ayers et al. 1976; Felix et al. 1999; Dow et al. 2000; Gust et al. 2007; Ron and Avni 2004; Erbs et al. 2008; Miya et al. 2007; Silipo et al. 2010; Wan et al. 2008). PAMPs are widely conserved across genera, while the effectors are specific to a single or a few related species (Chisholm et al. 2006; Jones and Dangl 2006; Bent and Mackey 2007). MAMPs originate from beneficial microbes, whereas PAMPs specifically describe molecules from phytopathogens (Henry et al. 2012; Newman et al. 2013). PAMPs or MAMPs are often only present in the microbes and

not the hosts (Wu et al. 2014). Thus, PAMPS are a subgroup of MAMPs (Maffei et al. 2012). DAMPs are typically plant derived and are produced after wounding by insects or herbivores as well as degradation or perturbation of host molecules by microbes (Henry et al. 2012; Newman et al. 2013). DAMPs are endogenous molecules, such as Pep peptides (Huffaker et al. 2006; Yamaguchi et al. 2006; Krol et al. 2010; Yamaguchi and Huffaker 2014), cell wall fragment oligogalacturonides (Brutus et al. 2010), and extracellular ATP (Choi et al. 2014) released upon cell damage or pathogen recognition (Boller and Felix 2009; Newman et al. 2013; Zipfel 2014). DAMPs serve as warning signals to trigger or amplify plant defense responses (Yamaguchi and Huffaker 2014; Ma et al. 2013). HAMPs are elicitors from insect oral secretions (OS) at the site of tissue injury (Mithöfer and Boland 2008; Heil 2009). HAMP recognition and signaling, as well as into the diverse defense and tolerance strategies that plants use against herbivore attack (Bonaventure et al. 2011).

In accordance with the zigzag model, the innate immune system of plants consists of two layers of defense (Jones and Dangl 2006). At first recognition of PAMP, MAMPs (Boller and Felix 2009; Boller and He 2009), DAMPs (Boller and Felix 2009; Newman et al. 2013; Zipfel 2014), and HAMPs (Erb et al. 2012) by pattern recognition receptors (PRRs on the surface of the host cell), the pattern-triggered immunity (PTI) is activated (Tsuda and Katagiri 2010). Thus, PRRs can provide resistance to most nonadapted pathogens, as well as contribute to basal immunity during infection (Zipfel 2014). Plant PRRs are either surface-localized receptor kinases (RKs) or receptor-like proteins (RLPs) containing various ligand-binding ectodomains than PAMPs or DAMPs (Zipfel 2014). All of these molecules could universally be described as "patterns that elicit immunity" (PEIs) (Jones and Dangl 2006; Maffei et al. 2012; Newman et al. 2013). In plant the MAMP/PAMP perception by the cognate PRR elicits a cascade of early and late cellular responses and physiological changes (Boller and Felix 2009; Schwessinger and Ronald 2012). Ca^{2+} spike, extracellular alkalinization, membrane potential depolarization, ion effluxes, production of nitric oxide (NO), reactive oxygen species (ROS) and phosphatidic acid (PA), activation of an evolutionarily conserved MAP kinase (MPK) cascade, and ethylene biosynthesis are considered as early PTI responses (Boller and Felix 2009; Schwessinger and Ronald 2012), and the callose deposition and gene transcriptional reprogramming are observed later during PTI (Boller and Felix 2009; Schwessinger and Ronald 2012; Zipfel and Robatzek 2010). PTI confers low-level resistance to virulent pathogens (Vlot et al. 2009). PTI is an ancient form of plant immunity that provides sufficient protection to host-nonadapted pathogens and limited (basal) immunity to host-adapted microbes (Zipfel 2014). PTI (formerly called basal or horizontal resistance) is based on the PRR-mediated recognition of MAMPs and DAMPs, the so-called general elicitors of earlier reviews (Boller 1995; Darvill and Albersheim 1984). Conversely, PTI stimulates ethylene (ET) biosynthesis (Felix et al. 1999). The crosstalk between PTI and ET biosynthesis and signaling has recently been reviewed (Trujillo and Shirasu 2010). These first layers of defense (PTI) are believed to be sufficient to prevent the invasion of a wide range of pathogens (Huang and Zimmerli 2014). However, through

evolution, adapted pathogens have acquired effector proteins that are transferred into the plant cell where they suppress PTI (Block et al. 2008; Göhre et al. 2008; Cunnac et al. 2009), by secreting effectors in the apoplast or directly into the cytoplasm of host cells, leading to effector-triggered susceptibility (ETS) (Jones and Dangl 2006). Gram-negative bacterial pathogens acquired a type III secretion system (TTSS) through either horizontal gene transfer or adaptation of the flagellar apparatus (Chisholm et al. 2006). The evolution of the TTSS enabled bacteria to directly deliver effector proteins into plant cells, suppressing PAMP defense responses (Chisholm et al. 2006). *Pseudomonas syringae* has a type III effector, called AvrPtoB, which functions as an E3 ligase and targets the flagellin receptor FLS2 for degradation through the 26S proteasome (Göhre et al. 2008). *P. syringae* can secrete approximately 20–30 effectors during infection (Chang et al. 2005). Effectors promote pathogenicity, and the TTSS is essential for the development of disease symptoms and bacterial multiplication (Staskawicz et al. 2001). By their collective action, effectors are hypothesized to alter plant physiology in susceptible hosts to sustain pathogen growth (Chisholm et al. 2006). Both fungal and bacterial effector proteins that are delivered to plants can possess enzyme activity (Chisholm et al. 2006).

The second branch of plant immunity is a counter mechanism to ETS (Jones and Dangl 2006); this is called effector-triggered immunity (ETI) (Jones and Dangl 2006; Dodds and Rathjen 2010). In ETI formerly called R-gene-based or vertical resistance), an R gene product, usually residing inside the plant cell, recognizes the corresponding virulence-promoting effector protein(s) delivered by a pathogen (Jones and Dangl 2006). ETI is based on the highly specific, direct or indirect interaction of pathogen effectors (Fu and Dong 2013) and the products of plant R genes according to the gene-for-gene theory (Boller and Felix 2009). ETI is synonymous with pathogen race/host plant cultivar-specific plant disease (Boller and He 2009). ETI in plants is often associated with rapid, localized programmed cell death (PCD) at the infection site, a visible phenotype known as the hypersensitive response (HR) (Caplan et al. 2008; Jones and Dangl 2006), and at inoculation sites and provides effective local resistance to pathogens with a biotrophic or hemibiotrophic lifestyle (Jones and Dangl 2006). ETI employs intracellular immune receptors, which are most nucleotide binding site leucine-rich repeat (NBS-LRR) proteins, to perceive secreted virulence effectors directly or indirectly (Zipfel 2014). Based on features of the deduced domain structures and/or biochemical functions, R proteins can be divided into three classes (Dangl and Jones 2001). The two main classes of R proteins are the nucleotide binding leucine-rich repeat (NB-LRR) and the extracellular LRR (eLRR) resistance proteins (Dangl and Jones 2001).

The NB-LRR class is the most abundant, and members can possess amino-terminal coiled-coil (CC) or Toll-interleukin-1 receptor (TIR) domains (Dangl and Jones 2001; Jones and Dangl 2006). A second major class of R genes encodes extracellular LRR (eLRR) proteins. Three subclasses of eLRRs have been classified according to their domain structures (Fritz-Laylin et al. 2005). These subclasses include RLP (receptor-like proteins, extracellular LRR and transmembrane

[TM] domain), RLK (extracellular LRR, TM domain, and cytoplasmic kinase), and PGIP (polygalacturonase-inhibiting protein, cell wall LRR) (Chisholm et al. 2006). The best characterized RLPs are represented by the tomato *Cf* genes, which confer resistance to infection by the biotrophic leaf-mold pathogen *Cladosporium fulvum* (Jones et al. 1994). ETI triggers the biosynthesis and signals such as salicylic acid (SA), methyl salicylic acid (MeSA), azelaic acid (AzA), glycerol-3-phosphate (G3P), and abietane diterpenoid dehydroabietinal (DA) (Chanda et al. 2011; Chaturvedi et al. 2012; Jung et al. 2009; Malamy et al. 1990; Métraux et al. 1990; Park et al. 2007). The onset of PTI and ETI often triggers an induced resistance (IR) in tissues distal from the site of infection and involves one or more long-distance signals that propagate an enhanced defensive capacity in still undamaged plant parts (Shah and Zeier 2013). Although ETI is associated with stronger local responses than PTI, the signaling networks underlying both resistance forms partially overlap.

In symbiotic systems (e.g., mycorrhizal symbiosis), MAMPs from AM fungi are perceived and elicit a transient defense response, which later is suppressed during induction at early stages of AM (García-Garrido and Ocampo 2002). Due to their ancient origin and long coevolutionary history with plants (Bonfante and Genre 2008), it is also possible that AM associations may have predated the development of the plant innate immune system.

3 Induced Resistance in Plants

PTI and ETI, the basal immunity of the plant, contribute to the slowing down of the colonization process but are generally too weak to prevent disease (Nürnberger and Lipka 2005). The level of basal immunity of the plant can be enhanced through application of appropriate stimuli (Pastor et al. 2014). This is commonly referred to as induced resistance (IR; Kuc 1982; Hammerschmidt and Kúc 1995; Hammerschmidt 2007; Pieterse and Van Wess 2015).

The IR can lead to the direct activation of defenses, but can also lead to the priming of cells, resulting in stronger elicitation of those defenses, or other defenses, following pathogen attack (Goellner and Conrath 2008). It seems likely that most induced resistance phenomena are based on a combination of direct induction and priming (Ahmad et al. 2010). In addition to pathogen attack, resistance can also be induced by treatment with certain natural or synthetic compounds (Ryals et al. 1996; Beckers and Conrath 2007).

It is very well established that certain types of infection (pathogenic and non-pathogenic) or other treatments (e.g., abiotic stress) can induce disease resistance in plants (Cohen 2002; da Rocha and Hammerschmidt 2005; Kohler et al. 2002; Kuc 1982; Hammerschmidt and Kúc 1995; Hammerschmidt 2009; Oostendorp et al. 2001; Sticher et al. 1997; Ryals et al. 1996) and lead to horizontal resistance of the plant against a broad range of pathogenic organisms (Vallad and Goodman 2004). Induced resistance in plants can be divided into systemic acquired resistance (SAR:

reviewed in Sequeira 1983; Kessmann et al. 1994; Sticher et al. 1997; van Loon et al. 1998; Durrant and Dong 2004; Vallad and Goodman 2004; Conrath 2006; Hammerschmidt 2009; Gozzo and Faoro 2013; Fu and Dong 2013; Gruner et al. 2013), induced systemic resistance (ISR: reviewed in van Loon et al. 1998; Pieterse et al. 2001; Pieterse et al. 2014), and β-aminobutyric acid-induced resistance. Induced resistance is a state of enhanced defensive capacity developed by a plant when appropriately stimulated (Van Loon et al. 1998). The IR operates in all plant parts distant from the original locus of inoculation and is therefore called systemic resistance (Durrant and Dong 2004; Hammerschmidt 2007). BABA-IR has emerged in the past decade through the discovery that BABA exogenous application can activate multiple immune responses by potentiating SA-inducible defenses and priming for pathogen-induced callose deposition, independent of salicylic acid and jasmonic acid (Gozzo and Faoro 2013), and confers resistance to biotic and abiotic stresses. The β-aminobutyric acid-induced resistance will not be addressed in this chapter.

3.1 Systemic Acquired Resistance (SAR)

A localized microbial infection of a single or a few leaves can also immunize the rest of the foliage to subsequent infection, a phenomenon known as systemic acquired resistance (SAR; Fu and Dong 2013; Shah and Zeier 2013). This type of IR requires the endogenous plant hormone SA (Métraux et al. 1990; Ryals et al. 1996; Sticher et al. 1997; Durrant and Dong 2004; Van Loon et al. 2006). SA has been implicated as an important signal for the activation of both PTI (DebRoy et al. 2004) and ETI (Dempsey et al. 1999; Durner et al. 1997; Klessig and Malamy 1994; Loake and Grant 2007). SAR is often characterized by localized necrosis, expression of pathogenesis-related (PR; van Loon et al. 2006) protein genes in the no inoculated distal tissue, to protect the rest of the plant from secondary infection and involves the SA pathway (Durrant and Dong 2004). This defense reaction aims to restrict the growth of the intruder and can lead to systemic IR leaving the plant less susceptible to subsequent pathogen attack (Henry et al. 2012). The mechanistic principles leading to SAR induction by different types of bacterial pathogens and the resulting systemic immunization patterns are highly overlapping (Mishina and Zeier 2007; Jing et al. 2011).

The SAR response is initiated by microbes eliciting PTI or ETI at inoculation sites and can also be triggered by localized leaf treatment with purified PAMPs (Gruner et al. 2013). SAR can also be induced by exogenous application of the defense hormone SA or its synthetic analogs 2,6-dichloroisonicotinic acid (INA) and benzothiadiazole *S*-methyl ester (BTH) (Durrant and Dong 2004; Spoel and Dong 2012). Once activated, SAR provides enhanced resistance to a broad range of (hemi-) biotrophic fungal, bacterial, and viral pathogens (Sticher et al. 1997; Durrant and Dong 2004). SAR is activated by local pathogen infection that results in tissue

necrosis, also known as the hypersensitive response (HR; Ward et al. 1991). The HR is a form of PCD that is dependent on, e.g., reactive oxygen species. The resulting small necrotic lesion is involved in preventing the pathogen from spreading any further (Dangl et al. 1996). HR provides resistance to biotrophic pathogens that obtain their energy from living cells (Kumar et al. 2001). Because grafting experiments using the SA-deficient nahG rootstock have shown that SA is required only in the systemic tissue (Gaffney et al. 1993), the initial signal produced at the ETI site is a molecule other than SA (Fu and Dong 2013). These plants express the bacterial salicylate hydroxylase nahG gene, making them incapable of accumulating SA (Gaffney et al. 1993). NahG plants do not show an SAR response (Ryals et al. 1996).

3.2 Long-Distance Signal and SAR Signaling

Plant-derived substances have been proposed to participate in SAR long-distance signaling (Dempsey and Klessig 2012; Shah and Zeier 2013). These involve the putative lipid transfer protein defective in induced resistance1 (DIR1), the methyl ester of SA (MeSA), glycerol-3-phosphate (G3P), the diterpenoid dehydroabietinal, the dicarboxylic acid azelaic acid, and the Lys catabolite Pip (Maldonado et al. 2002; Park et al. 2007; Jung et al. 2009; Chanda et al. 2011; Chaturvedi et al. 2012; Návarová et al. 2012). This signal is unlikely to be effector specific, as different effector-R pairs can trigger SAR and studies have shown that virulence infection could also induce SAR (Attaran et al. 2009; Cameon et al. 1994; Jing et al. 2011). The role of several of these candidate signals for SAR induction in plants appears to depend on external parameters such as the environment light (Attaran et al. 2009; Liu et al. 2011a, b; Návarová et al. 2012).

PTI-inducing compatible *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. *maculicola* ES4326 (Psm) and ETI-inducing PsmavrRpm1 activate a similar systemic responses in *Arabidopsis thaliana*, including systemic accumulation of the SAR immune signals pipecolic acid (Pip) and SA and an increase in the systemic expression of the SAR marker genes such as *pathogenesis-related gene1 (PR1)*, *PR2*, and *PR5* (Mishina and Zeier 2006; Návarová et al. 2012). Pip enhances both its own biosynthesis and downstream signaling in SAR via intensification of ALD1 (*AGD2-like defense response protein1*) and FMO1 (*flavin-dependent monooxygenase1*) expression (Návarová et al. 2012). This suggests that ALD1 and FMO1 are involved in SA-independent signaling upstream of SA biosynthesis, processes that are required for systemic SA accumulation and SAR (Métraux 2002; Song et al. 2004a; Bartsch et al. 2006; Mishina and Zeier 2006). Pip accumulation is critical for SAR and local resistance to bacterial pathogens (Návarová et al. 2012). These authors reported that biologically induced SAR conditions plants to more effectively synthesize the phytoalexin camalexin, Pip, and salicylic acid and primes plants for early defense gene expression, and Pip has a positive regulation of salicylic acid biosynthesis and priming to guarantee effective local resistance induction and the establishment of SAR. Both

genes are not only indispensable for systemic SA accumulation and SAR but are also critical for full PTI and ETI responses at inoculation sites (Song et al. 2004a; Bartsch et al. 2006; Mishina and Zeier 2006; Koch et al. 2006).

SA is a second critical SAR metabolite that is produced in plants from chorismate by isochorismate synthase1 (ICS1; Wildermuth et al. 2001; Métraux 2002). SA induces SAR-related gene expression via the downstream regulator non-expresser of PR genes1 (NPR1; Cao et al. 1994), a transcriptional co-activator and bona fide SA receptor (Wu et al. 2012; Fu and Dong 2013). A cellular redox modulates the regulation of NPR1 (Fu and Dong 2013). It was proved that the exogenous application of SA induces a biphasic (first oxidizing and then reducing) fluctuation in cellular redox, as measured by GSH/GSSG (Mou et al. 2003). In the absence of pathogen challenge, NPR1 is retained in the cytoplasm as an oligomer through redox-sensitive intermolecular disulfide bonds (Fu et al. 2012). After the induction, these disulfide bonds are reduced, releasing NPR1 monomers into the nucleus, where NPR1 acts as a cofactor for transcription factors (TFs), such as TGAs (Dong 2004; Pieterse and Van Loon 2004), to induce defense-related genes (Fu et al. 2012; Kinkema et al. 2000; Mou et al. 2003). In the absence of a functional NPR1 protein, SA-induced transcriptional reprogramming is almost completely blocked (Fu et al. 2012). This suggests that NPR1 is important in regulating and connecting different hormone-dependent induced defense pathways (Dong 2004; Pieterse and van Loon 2004; Pieterse et al. 2009).

Spoel et al. (2009) discovered that NPR1 is constantly degraded in the nucleus by the 26S protein and revealed the underlying significance of this regulation. Degradation of NPR1 after SAR induction appeared to be required for full induction of NPR1 target genes (Fu and Dong 2013). NPR1 degradation occurs both in absence of SA and/or in the presence of high levels of this hormone, that is, during pathogen attack, and is mediated by two NPR1 paralogues, NPR3 and NPR4, that are SA receptors with different binding affinities (Fu et al. 2012). SA promotes the interaction of NPR1–NPR3 and disrupts that between NPR4 and NPR1, thus controlling NPR1 levels (Gozzo and Faoro 2013). In the early stage of infection by a pathogen triggering ETI, high SA levels facilitate NPR3-mediated degradation of NPR1 in the challenged cell, leading to HR (Gozzo and Faoro 2013). This is a mechanism to refresh the initiation complex after each round of transcription (Spoel et al. 2009). The execution of SAR involves transcriptional reprogramming regulated by a cascade of transcriptional events initiated by NPR1 (Fu and Dong 2013). The signal cascade is far from linear, as the TF controlling the NPR1-dependent ER-resident genes (TBF1) is also required for the induction of NPR1 gene expression during plant defense (Fu and Dong 2013). The list of NPR1 direct targets also includes many WRKY TFs, a plant-specific group of TFs that are highly versatile owing to their large number (74 members in *Arabidopsis*) and inducibility by various stresses (Ulker and Somssich 2004). The majority of studies on WRKY transcription factors (TFs) showed that numerous members of this multigene family are involved in the response to biotic stresses and are central components of many aspects of the innate plant immune system (Wang et al. 2014). The important role of WRKY TFs in different plant defense responses has been well established despite

the functional redundancy of this large group of proteins (Pandey and Somssich 2009). WRKY TFs are a large family of regulatory proteins forming such a network (Eulgem and Somssich 2007). They are involved in various plant processes but most notably in coping with diverse biotic and abiotic stresses (Pandey and Somssich 2009). The inducible nature of the WRKY TF encoding genes suggests that the TFs are likely auxiliary in the activation phase of a defense response and repressors in turning off defense when infection subsides (Fu and Dong 2013). Because this phenotype is similar to that of npr1 and because WRKY54 and WRKY70 are target genes of NPR1, it has been hypothesized that NPR1 feedback regulates SA biosynthesis through these WRKY TFs (Wang et al. 2006). SAR is believed to be conferred by a battery of coordinately induced antimicrobial PR proteins whose secretion requires significant enhancement of endoplasmic reticulum (ER) function (Wang and Dong 2011; Wang et al. 2005). Besides inducing SAR, SA is known to inhibit the HR during ETI (Devadas and Raina 2002; Yu et al. 1998), trigger thermogenesis in plants (Raskin et al. 1987, 1989), and inhibit plant growth, chloroplast development, and photosynthesis (Rivas-San Vicente and Plasencia 2011). It is possible that distinct SA signaling pathways control these physiological responses (Fu and Dong 2013). Several studies with transgenic plants constitutively expressing NPR1 have indicated that the NPR1-mediated mechanism is evolutionarily conserved and can be targeted for enhancing resistance against a variety of pathogens in agronomically important plants (Chern et al. 2001; Lin et al. 2004; Makandar et al. 2006; Malnoy et al. 2007; Potlakayala et al. 2007; Quilis et al. 2008; Wally et al. 2009).

SAR confers a fitness advantage under conditions of disease stress (Traw et al. 2007). A recent study indicated that the memory of SAR in *Arabidopsis* is passed on to the next generation, thus benefiting the progeny plants as well (Luna et al. 2012). However, it needs to be tightly regulated since it is an energy-driven process that diverts resources from growth and development (Heidel et al. 2004; Pajerowska-Mukhtar et al. 2012).

3.3 Induced Systemic Resistance (ISR)

Induced systemic resistance is often triggered by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) (Walters et al. 2013) or plant growth-promoting fungi (PGPF; Pieterse et al. 2014), is not associated with necrosis, and involves the jasmonic acid (JA) and ethylene pathways (Henry et al. 2012; Spoel and Dong 2012; Walters and Heil 2007). PGPR and PGPF induce resistance in plants against fungal, bacterial, and viral diseases (Zamioudis and Pieterse 2012). In the early 1990s, plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria were studied for their abilities to elicit ISR, with special focus on *Pseudomonas* spp. It was discovered that when certain biocontrol pseudomonads were applied and kept spatially separated from the pathogen, they still reduced disease, suggesting that the mode of action must be plant mediated (Van Peer et al. 1991; Wei et al. 1991). The involvement of ISR, during the last two

decades, has been recognized as an effective mode of action for a range of bacterial and fungal biological control agents. In *Arabidopsis*, ISR triggered by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* WCS417r is effective against different types of pathogens (Ton et al. 2002), but it is not associated with the activation of *PR* genes (Pieterse et al. 1996).

There is a long and growing list of both biotic and abiotic agents that can protect crops against pathogens by eliciting ISR (for additional information on this topic, see these reviews: Alabouvette et al. 2009; Cameron et al. 2013; Da Rocha and Hammerschmidt 2005; Franken 2012; Jung et al. 2012; Reglinski and Walters 2009; Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007; Van der Ent et al. 2009; van Loon et al. 1998; Walters et al. 2013). The cases of rhizobacteria-mediated ISR in which a role for SA had been functionally tested were reviewed by Van Loon and Bakker (2005). They concluded that the ability to activate an SA-independent ISR pathway is common for beneficial microbes and occurs in a broad range of plant species. Although the terms SAR and ISR are officially synonymous (Hammerschmidt et al. 2001), for pragmatic reasons, SAR is referred to when the induced resistance is triggered by a pathogen or demonstrated to be SA dependent and to ISR when the induced resistance is triggered by a beneficial microbe or demonstrated to be SA independent (Pieterse et al. 2014).

3.4 Early Signaling Events and ISR Signaling

The starting of ISR requires beneficial microbes to efficiently colonize the root system of host plants (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009). MYB72 is also induced in *Trichoderma*-colonized *Arabidopsis* roots and shown to be crucial for *Trichoderma* ISR (Alizadeh et al. 2013), suggesting that MYB72 is a node of convergence in the ISR signaling pathway triggered by different beneficial microbes (Pieterse et al. 2014). In *Arabidopsis thaliana*, the root-specific transcription factor MYB72 is required for the onset of ISR, but is also associated with plant survival under conditions of iron deficiency (De Mortel et al. 2008), pointing to a link between iron homeostasis and the onset of ISR (Zamioudis et al. 2014).

For the establishment of the mutualistic association, host plants and microbes need to respond to reciprocal signals and accordingly prioritize their responses to develop a lifestyle and the main phases of IR (for details, see the review of Pieterse et al. 2014).

In interactions between nonpathogenic rhizosphere microbes and plants, the phytohormones JA, SA, and ET regulate symbiosis and mediate ISR elicited by several groups of nonpathogenic microbes (De Vleesschauwer et al. 2009; Zamioudis and Pieterse 2012). In *Arabidopsis* mutants impaired in JA or ET signaling, it was demonstrated that JA and ET are central players in the regulation of rhizobacteria-mediated ISR (Pieterse et al. 1998). Although ISR by beneficial microbes is often regulated through SA-independent mechanisms, several PGPR have been reported to trigger an SA-dependent type of ISR that resembles pathogen-induced SAR (Pieterse et al. 2014). In plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria,

P. fluorescens P3, overexpressing the SA biosynthesis gene cluster of *P. aeruginosa* PAO1 was demonstrated to elicit SA-dependent SAR (Maurhofer et al. 1998). Many rhizobacteria have the capacity to produce SA; it is usually not the causal agent of the observed systemic resistance, because of the fact that rhizobacteria-produced SA is often not released in the rhizosphere but becomes incorporated into SA moiety-containing siderophores, which makes SA unavailable for triggering the SAR pathway (Audenaert et al. 2002; Bakker et al. 2003).

Depending on microbe species or strain, ISR can be triggered via JA/ET or SA signaling pathways, in which each pathway activates different sets of defense-associated genes (Pangesti et al. 2013). The defense regulatory protein NPR1 plays a key role in SA-dependent SAR, but has also been implicated in JA-/ET-dependent ISR (Dong 2004; Pieterse and Van Loon 2004). Many studies found an antagonistic effect of SA signaling on the JA pathway. However, in several cases JA signaling could suppress the SA pathway as well. A few molecular players have been reported to play a role in this JA–SA crosstalk, such as COI1 and MYC2 (Zheng et al. 2012). Detailed mechanistic knowledge on how the plant immune signaling network functions during multi-organism interactions is fundamental to develop novel strategies for the sustainable protection of our future crops that need to produce more with less input of pesticides and fertilizers (Pieterse and Van Wess 2015).

Crucially, this is distinct from the level of resistance induction in response to the recognition of true pathogens that are potentially capable of causing disease and where recognition would cause resistance mechanism expression that is more costly to the plant but still proportionate to potential disease cost (Walters and Heil 2007).

4 Bioprotective Effect of AM Fungi

Many studies describe particular cases of the bioprotective effect of mycorrhization against biotic stress, and hypothetical modes of action have been postulated (Garcia-Garrido 2009). Depending on the disease and the environmental conditions, any or all mechanism may be involved, such as changes in morphology of host root (Berta et al. 1993), physiological changes in host root (Smith and Gianinazzi-Pearson 1988; Dehne 1982; Dugassa et al. 1996; Dehne et al. 1978; Morandi 1996), changes in root exudates (Graham et al. 1981; Buwalda et al. 1984), enhanced nutritional status of host plants (Azcon-Aguilar and Barea 1996; Smith and Gianinazzi-Pearson 1988; Cooper and Grandison 1987), competition for space and host photosynthates (Azcon-Aguilar and Barea 1996; Linderman 1994), biological interactions in the mycorrhizosphere (Whipps 2004; Barea et al. 2002; St-Arnaud et al. 1995; Linderman 1988), enzyme production (Gianinazzi-Pearson et al. 1996), and molecular mechanisms (Harrison and Dixon 1993; Dumas-Gaudot et al. 2000; Pozo et al. 2002, 2010, 2013; Gianinazzi-Pearson et al. 1996; Zeng 2006; Pozo and

Azcón-Aguilar 2007; Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b). Although some of the suggested hypothetical modes (for review, see Azcon-Aguilar and Barea 1996; Whipps 2004; Zeng 2006; Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007; Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b; Pozo et al. 2010, 2013) might play no role, they are not sufficient to explain all aspects of AM-induced bioprotection (Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007; Jung et al. 2012).

The bioprotection through mycorrhization is the result of a combination of several mechanisms and not of a single mechanism (Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b). Most data about bioprotection due to mycorrhization are available from soilborne fungal pathogens (Singh et al. 2000; Azcon-Aguilar et al. 2002; Xavier and Boyetchko 2004; St-Arnaud and Vujanovic 2007), but examples of control of soil bacterial pathogens, foliar pathogens, root nematodes, and phytophagous insects are known (Garcia-Garrido 2009).

The bioprotective effect against soilborne fungal pathogens seems to depend on several biotic factors such as the host genotype, the AMF isolate, and the degree of mycorrhization (Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b; Garcia-Garrido 2009). The mycorrhizal effects on foliage diseases are contradictory and less conclusive (Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b). AM symbioses have been associated with enhanced susceptibility to biotrophic pathogens including viruses, powdery mildew, and rust fungi (*Blumeria*, *Oidium*, *Uromyces*) (Shaul et al. 1999; Gernns et al. 2001; Whipps 2004) and provides protection against the necrotroph fungus *Alternaria solani* (Fritz et al. 2006) and the shoot pathogenic bacteria *Xanthomonas campestris* (Liu et al. 2007). The bioprotection conferred by AM fungi is not effective for all plant pathogenic fungi, and the level of biological control conferred by AM fungal colonization is plant species and AM fungal isolate specific (Harrier and Watson 2004). The local (Singh et al. 2000; Azcón et al. 2002; Xavier and Boyetchko 2004; St-Arnaud and Vujanovic 2007) and the systemic (Cordier et al. 1998a, b; Pozo et al. 2002; Khaosaad et al. 2007) bioprotectional effect of mycorrhization depends on the degree of AM root colonization (Khaosaad et al. 2007). The effectiveness of AM fungi in biocontrol is dependent on the AM fungus involved, as well as the substrate and host plant (Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008).

The analysis of the published information on AM bioprotection showed that a great number of pathogen and plant species combinations and a smaller number of AM fungal species are involved in the biocontrol (Garcia-Garrido 2009). More than 80 % of the studies on the bioprotectional effect of mycorrhization have been performed with the genus *Glomus* (Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b; Garcia-Garrido 2009). The bioprotection by *Glomus* species indicates that whatever the mechanism(s) of this function, it responds to AM fungal families differently (Harrier and Watson 2004), while poor at pathogen protection, AM fungal species in the family *Gigasporaceae* most benefited the growth of the simple rooted plant species (Sikes et al. 2010). This reflects the natural occurrence of these AM fungal species or, more probably, their generalized use as model species in mycorrhizal studies (Garcia-Garrido 2009). Likewise, most of the studies on protection have been carried out in controlled environmental conditions, and field experiments have been relatively few (Garcia-Garrido 2009). Several studies showed that the mycorrhizal protection

against root fungi pathogens requires a high degree of AM root colonization, whereas intermediate and low levels of AM root colonization showed no bioprotectional effect (Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b). The root colonization by AM fungi induces biochemical changes within host tissues. These include stimulation of the phenylpropanoid pathway (Harrison and Dixon 1993; Morandi et al. 1984, 1996), changes in levels of aliphatic polyamines (El-Ghachtouli et al. 1995), activation of defense-related genes (Franken and Gnadinger 1994; Gianinazzi-Pearson et al. 1992; Harrison and Dixon 1993), and enhancement of certain hydrolase activities (Dumas-Gardot et al. 1992; Spanu et al. 1989). The colonization of root deposition of callose, activation of a distinct β-1,3 glucanase or accumulation of phytoalexins in the case of fungal attacks (Cordier et al. 1998a, b; Pozo et al. 1999; Yao et al. 2003), and the upregulation of several defense-related genes in the case of nematode infestation (Li et al. 2006; Vos et al. 2013). Mycorrhiza-induced chitinase isoforms appear to be a general phenomenon in AM symbiosis (Cordier et al. 1996; Hahn et al. 1989. These chitinases release oligosaccharide elicitors from the chitinous AM fungal cell walls which in turn stimulates the general defense responses of plants (Cordier et al. 1996; Hahn et al. 1989. Localized morphological lignification of endosperm cell walls and biochemical antifungal chitinase alterations in AM mycorrhizal roots increased resistance against wilt in tomato and cucumber (Dehne and Schonbeck 1979; Dehne et al. 1978).

Mycorrhizal roots show increased respiration than non-AM roots (Dehne 1982). The increase on the respiration of AM roots indicates higher metabolic activity which might enable mycorrhizal plants to be more resistant against root pathogens (Baas et al. 1989; Dugassa et al. 1996). AM roots show increased ethylene production and DNA demethylation. A higher demethylation can be related to gene expression for higher resistance of plants against pathogens (Dugassa et al. 1996). It has been observed that salicylic acid needs to be kept at a low level in roots for successful mycorrhization (Blilou et al. 1999), while jasmonate accumulates in mycorrhizal roots (Hause and Schaarschmidt 2009). These changes could play a role in AM-induced bioprotection by compensating root damage caused by the pathogen or by stimulating components of rhizosphere microbiota with antagonistic activity toward certain root pathogens (Azcon-Aguilar and Barea 1996; Barea et al. 2005). The activation of the plant defenses during AM formation does not only occur in the roots but also in the shoots (Liu et al. 2007; Pozo et al. 2010). Accumulation of insect antifeedant compounds (Gange 2006; Pozo et al. 2009) and transcriptional upregulation of defense-related genes (Liu et al. 2007; Pozo et al. 2009) have been described in leaves of mycorrhizal plants (Campos-Soriano et al. 2012).

Recently, Jayaraman et al. (2014) hypothesize that appropriate responses of plants to pathogenic and symbiotic microbes may require a tight integration of both chemical and mechanical stimulations exerted by these microbes, and the plants exhibit varied responses depending on the nature and intensity of these stimuli. Whether mycorrhizal plants are protected against pathogens seems to depend on the lifestyle of the pathogen (Walters et al. 2013). For example, mycorrhizal tomato plants were protected against the necrotrophic fungus *Alternaria solani* (Fritz et al.

2006; De la Noval et al. 2007), whereas pathogens with a biotrophic lifestyle such as powdery mildews appear to perform better in mycorrhizal plants (Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007).

Direct and indirect modes of action have been suggested to be involved in the bioprotective effect of mycorrhization against pathogens, and recent advances regarding signaling processes in mutualistic and pathogenic associations have allowed us to define a specific mechanism of induction of resistance by arbuscular mycorrhizae (MIR; Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007; Garcia-Garrido 2009).

4.1 Priming for Enhanced Defense

To compensate for their sessile life and face a broad range of biotic and abiotic stresses, plants have evolved a wide range of survival and adaptation strategies, and the higher plants are capable of inducing some stress "memory," or "stress imprinting". In plants, the IR is frequently associated with the accumulation of antimicrobial pathogenesis-related (PR) proteins (Van Loon et al. 2006) and with the so-called priming of cells (Kohler et al. 2002). Priming is the phenomenon that enables cells to respond to much lower levels of a stimulus in a more rapid and robust manner than non-primed cells (Conrath et al. 2002, 2006; Conrath 2011). Thus, plants primed by treatments that induce resistance show a faster and/or stronger activation of defense responses when subsequently challenged by pathogens or abiotic stresses (Conrath et al. 2002, 2006). Priming for enhanced defense is an important cellular process in many types of biologically and chemically in IR immunity, including SAR, ISR, and herbivore-induced resistance (Conrath 2011; Pastor et al. 2013). In the absence of such specialized cells, plants maintain immune memory through "priming" (Fu and Dong 2013).

4.1.1 Priming Induced by MIR

Priming seems to be the mechanism underlying the induced systemic resistance (ISR) observed in plants interacting with beneficial microorganisms (reviewed in Conrath et al. 2006; Goellner and Conrath 2008; Van Wees et al. 2008; Pieterse et al. 2014), including the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (reviewed in Pozo et al. 2009; Jung et al. 2012; Campos-Soriano et al. 2012; Cameron et al. 2013; Selosse et al. 2014), plant pathogens (Pastor et al. 2013), or insect herbivores (Rasmann et al. 2012). However, priming can be triggered also chemically, by exogenous application of low doses of SA, JA, or BABA (Conrath et al. 2002, 2006; Conrath 2011) and providing low-cost protection in relatively high stress-pressure conditions. The basal resistance by itself is too weak to protect against virulent pathogens, since it constitutes a residual level of resistance after immune suppression by the pathogen (Pastor et al. 2013). The priming-inducing stimuli can render basal

resistance more effective, particularly when the accelerated defense response precedes immune suppression by the invading pathogen (Ahmad et al. 2010).

4.2 Epigenetic Mechanisms of Molecular Priming

4.2.1 Memory of Plant Immunization

SAR-conferred immune "memory" in plants can last for weeks to months and possibly even the whole growing season (Kuć 1987). Epigenetic mechanisms, such as histone modifications or DNA methylation, have emerged as important regulatory mechanisms in plant immunity (Alvarez et al. 2010). There is evidence that post-translational modifications of histone proteins are influenced by JA-, SA-, and ABA-dependent signaling pathways (Devoto et al. 2002; Walley et al. 2008). Furthermore, exposure to disease, herbivores, and abiotic stresses can have profound impacts on patterns of symmetric and asymmetric DNA methylation (Pavet et al. 2006; Boyko et al. 2010; Verhoeven et al. 2010). It is, therefore, not surprising that priming of defense has been associated with epigenetic regulatory mechanisms (Conrath 2011).

First evidence for an epigenetic basis of defense priming came from Jaskiewicz et al. (2011), who demonstrated that infection of *Arabidopsis* by *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. *maculicola* primes stress-inducible expression of transcription factor genes via NPR1-dependent modifications of histone H3 at their promoter regions.

López et al. (2011) demonstrated that mutants blocked in RNA-directed DNA methylation are primed to activate SA-inducible defense genes, which was associated with H3 modifications marking a facilitated state of gene transcription: acetylation at lysine residue 9 (H3K9ac) and triple methylation at lysine 4. Hence, defense priming is often associated with posttranslational histone modifications at promoter regions of primed defense genes.

Recently, three independent research groups provided evidence that priming of defense can be inherited epigenetically from isogenic plants that had been treated with pathogens, herbivores, or BABA (Luna et al. 2012; Rasmann et al. 2012; Slaughter et al. 2012). These three studies demonstrated that priming for enhanced resistance also extends to next generations and that epigenetic regulatory mechanisms, such as DNA methylation, chromatin remodeling, and small interfering RNAs (siRNAs), play a central role the regulation of these transgenerational plant immune responses (Pieterse 2012).

Although these studies demonstrated an epigenetic component of defense priming, the extent by which epigenetic regulation contributes to long-lasting defense priming within one plant generation remains unknown. Some techniques are now starting to emerge as a promising alternative for sustainable modern pest management in the field, since some pesticides have been shown to actually exert their

known plant health- and yield-increasing effects through priming (Beckers and Conrath 2007).

Recent evidences suggested that priming of SA-inducible genes involves epigenetic regulatory mechanisms, such as posttranslational modifications of histone proteins and the RNA polymerase V (Jaskiewicz et al. 2011; López et al. 2011). This phenomenon is called "transgenerational SAR"; since the resistance in P1 progeny (progeny from *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. *tomato* (*Pst*) DC3000-infected *Arabidopsis*) is effective against (hemi-) biotrophic pathogens, it requires NPR1; and it is associated with priming of SA-inducible defense genes (Luna et al. 2012). This transgenerational SAR is effective against biotrophic pathogens, such as the downy mildew pathogen *Hyaloperonospora arabidopsidis* (Luna and Ton 2012). These authors conclude that transgenerational SAR is transmitted by DNA hypomethylation at CpHpG (Lindroth et al. 2001) sites.

How SAR can be sustained for so long is not clear but epigenetic modifications, such as DNA methylation and chromatin remodeling, seem critical to maintain a SAR signal (Spoel and Dong 2012). The memory associated with the inheritance of SAR is likely to be epigenetic in nature (Luna and Ton 2012; Luna et al. 2012). Hence, plants seem to have the capacity to "memorize" a stressful situation and subsequently immunize not only themselves but also their next generation against future attacks (Pastor et al. 2013). Although these studies have demonstrated an epigenetic component of defense priming, the extent by which epigenetic regulation contributes to long-lasting defense priming within one plant generation remains unknown. For plants growing in an environment with a high disease pressure, the ability to activate SAR confers a fitness advantage that can also benefit subsequent generations (Shah et al. 2014). Despite priming phenomena having been widely described, the molecular mechanisms of defense priming are still unclear (Conrath et al. 2006; Conrath 2011). The fitness benefit of priming was shown to outweigh its cost when under pathogen pressure, suggesting that priming functions as an ecological adaptation of the plant to respond faster to its hostile environment.

In agriculture, epigenetic priming of plant defenses, as has been accomplished with tomato (Rasmann et al. 2012), barley, and tobacco (Kathiria et al. 2010), has the potential to increase productivity without time-consuming breeding approaches. It is clear that, despite recent rapid advances, the importance, mechanisms, and consequences of transgenerational induction of defense for plants and their associated insects and microbes are only beginning to be unraveled. Fine-tuning defenses through priming instead of a direct activation is a cost-efficient mechanism to improve resistance (Selosse et al. 2014). From an ecological point of view, the benefits of priming are clear: rather than leading to the costly and potentially wasteful activation of defenses, a metabolic state of alert is induced after an initial infection, enabling a rapid intense resistance response to subsequent attacks. Thus, this strategy appears promising for crop protection purposes (Walters and Heil 2007).

4.3 Mycorrhiza-Induced Resistance (MIR)

Induced pathogen protection through this mechanism may either be systemic within the plant (Guillon et al. 2002) and/or through root exudation (Lioussanne et al. 2008). The effects of the AM symbiosis on plant interactions with other organisms and, in particular, the induction of resistance against deleterious organisms seem to result from the combination of multiple mechanisms that may operate simultaneously (Jung et al. 2012). A proposed hypothesis is that colonization of roots by AM fungi primes defense mechanisms leading to mycorrhiza-induced resistance (MIR; Cordier et al. 1998a, b; Pozo et al. 2002; Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007; Jung et al. 2012; Cameron et al. 2013; Selosse et al. 2014). The other mechanisms discussed above might also play a role while their contribution might differ (Cameron et al. 2013). They could be operative at the same time (Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007) or might act consecutively (Cameron et al. 2013). MIR includes a priming of defense-related plant genes and shares more elements with the ISR induced by rhizobacteria against necrotrophs via a jasmonate JA-mediated pathway than with salicylic acid-regulated SAR, induced by leaf pathogens via an SA-mediated pathway and directed against biotrophs (Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007; Hayek et al. 2014; Jung et al. 2012; Pieterse et al. 2012).

4.3.1 Mechanisms of Mycorrhiza-Induced Resistance

Different mechanisms have been proposed to explain the role in plant bioprotection by AMF (reviewed in Azcon-Aguilar and Barea 1996; Whipps 2004; Zeng 2006; Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007; Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b; Pozo et al. 2010, 2013), and these include (1) plant nutrition improvement (Berta et al. 1995; Trotta et al. 1996; Singh et al. 2000; Sharma et al. 2007), (2) competition for photosynthates and root colonization sites between an AM fungus and a pathogen (Garcia-Garrido and Ocampo 1989; St-Arnaud et al. 1995; Cordier et al. 1998a, b; Filion et al. 1999; Singh et al. 2000; Azcón-Aguilar et al. 2002; Lerat et al. 2003a, b; Pozo et al. 2002; Xavier and Boyetchko 2004), (3) changes in rhizosphere microbial populations and development of pathogen antagonism (Linderman 1994; Schreiner and Bethlenfalvy 1995; Azcón-Aguilar et al. 2002; Barea et al. 2013a, b), and (4) biochemical and molecular changes in mycorrhizal plants that induce pathogen resistance (Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007; Jung et al. 2012; Cameron et al. 2013). However, Wehner et al. (2009) proposed that the existence of functionally complementary mechanisms of pathogen protection within these assemblages may be a significant driver of these phenomena and consider ways through which AM fungal diversity may influence the outcomes of these interactions. The results of these interactions may be underestimated by studies considering only single AM fungal species (Wehner et al. 2009). Species-rich AM fungal assemblages have been observed to enhance the diversity and productivity of host plants and communities (Maherali and Klironomos 2007).

4.4 Establishment of AM Symbiosis and Hormonal Modulation During MIR

4.4.1 Establishment of AM Symbiosis

The establishment of a symbiotic association usually involves mutual recognition and a high degree of coordination at the morphological and physiological level, which requires a continuous cellular and molecular dialogue between both the partners (Garg and Chandel 2010).

4.4.2 Early Symbiotic Signaling

Before physical contact, diffusible signal molecules (strigolactones and flavonoids) that are secreted by plant roots can be perceived by AM fungi (Akiyama et al. 2005) and root nodule symbiosis rhizobia–legumes (RNS; Maillet et al. 2011). The strigolactone hormones, secreted from plant roots, stimulate hyphal branching and fungal metabolism; fungal short-chain chitin oligomers as well as sulfated and nonsulfated lipochitooligosaccharides (s/nsMyc-LCOs) elicit pre-symbiosis responses in the host (Bucher et al. 2014). Two classes of such compounds were identified recently, both comprising an *N*-acetylglucosamine oligomer backbone: lipochitooligosaccharides called Myc-LCOs, able to stimulate lateral root formation and the colonization of roots by AM fungi (Maillet et al. 2011), and short-chain chitooligosaccharides (Myc-COs) that can trigger nuclear calcium spiking in host plant root cells (Genre et al. 2013).

Rhizobia–legume symbiosis produced specific symbiotic signals called Nod factors (NFs) that are lipochitooligosaccharides (LCOs; Hassan and Mathesius 2012). Nod factors are also lipochitooligosaccharides and have a similar composition (Maillet et al. 2011). It has been suggested that Nod factors developed from Myc factors and that the functions of Myc and Nod factors overlap (Bonfante and Requena 2011). Synthetic LCOs, obtained via bacterial genetic engineering, have been shown to stimulate AM colonization in plant species of diverse families (Fabaceae, Asteraceae, and Umbelliferae) (Maillet et al. 2011). The LCOs are perceived via lysin-motif (LysM; carbohydrate-binding modules found in prokaryotes and eukaryotes) receptors and activate a signaling pathway called the common symbiotic pathway (CSP), which controls both the RL (the rhizobia–legume) and the AM symbioses (Gough and Cullimore 2011). The discovery of Myc-LCO and a LysM receptor required for the AM symbiosis, therefore, not only raises questions of how plants (legume and non legume) discriminate endosymbionts from pathogenic microorganisms using structurally related LCO and CO signals and of how these perception mechanisms have evolved (Gough and Cullimore 2011).

AM and RNS are both regulated by a common set of genes that define the common SYM pathway (Bapaume and Reinhardt 2012). Symbiotic plants retain,

besides their NFRs (Nod factor receptors) and MFRs (Myc factor receptors), potent receptors for microbial cell wall constituents such as chitin and peptidoglycan oligomers, which can trigger defense responses (Shimizu et al. 2010; Willmann et al. 2011).

4.4.3 Root System Changes in Response to Pre-symbiotic Signaling in AM Symbiosis

The genes that encode the components of this signal transduction chain for both AM and RNS are called as the common *SYM* (symbiosis) genes (Kistner and Parniske 2002; Breuillin et al. 2010; Carbonnel and Gutjahr 2014). The SYM pathway is functionally conserved between monocot and dicot species (Chen et al. 2007a, 2008; Gutjahr et al. 2008), suggesting that it evolved in early land plants, and became secondarily recruited into RNS (Breuillin et al. 2010). The perception by host plants of Myc factors produced by AM fungi induces the symbiotic program through the SYM pathway (Catoira et al. 2001). This perception triggers NSP1/NSP2 (*nodulation signaling pathway* 1, 2—GRAS transcription factors) and RAM1/RAM2 (*reduced arbuscular mycorrhization* 1, 2; they also were GRAS-type transcription factors Gobbato et al. 2012). NSP1 is involved in the Myc-LCO signaling pathway (Delaux et al. 2013) and NSP2 is required for nodulation (Gobbato et al. 2013). RAM1 has a specific function in mycorrhizal signaling that regulates the expression of RAM2 (Gobbato et al. 2012), and RAM2 is a glycerol-3-phosphate acyl transferase (GPAT) that promotes cutin biosynthesis to enhance hyphopodia formation on the root surface during mycorrhizal colonization (Gobbato et al. 2012). This suggests that formation of multicomponent GRAS transcription factor complexes is a prerequisite for elicitation of nodulation or mycorrhization (Oldroyd 2013).

The perception by host plants of Myc factors produced by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) induces the symbiotic program through the SYM pathway (DMI "does not make infections"; Catoira et al. 2001). DMI (*DMI1*, *DMI2*, *DMI3*) genes control an NF (Nod factors) signaling pathway leading to nodulation, but are also required for the formation of mycorrhiza, indicating that the symbiotic signaling pathways activated by both the bacterial and the fungal symbionts share common steps (Olah et al. 2005). *DMI1* and *DMI2* were two genes that act upstream of Ca^{2+} spiking as part of the common SYM pathway (Olah et al. 2005). The third common SYM gene *DMI3* that acts to downstream of Ca^{2+} spiking (Maillet et al. 2011) is also required for rhizobial Nod factor-mediated lateral root induction (Olah et al. 2005). Calcium spiking is a rhythmic change in perinuclear calcium concentration, which is perceived and transmitted by calcium- and calmodulin-dependent protein kinase (CCaMK) to induce symbiotic gene expression (Oldroyd and Downie 2006; Singh and Parniske 2012). At downstream of calcium spiking, there is a nuclear calcium and calmodulin-dependent protein kinase (CCaMK) (MtDMI3/LjCCaMK) and a nuclear coiled-coil protein (MtIPD3/LjCYCLOPS) that interacts with the CCaMK to decode calcium spiking for downstream signaling (Gough and Cullimore

2011). A protein of DMI3, called IPD3 in *Medicago truncatula* and CYCLOPS in *Lotus japonicus*, was identified that was shown to be essential for infection thread formation as well as mycorrhizal arbuscule formation in *L. japonicus* (Messinese et al. 2007; Yano et al. 2008). These events lead to a signaling at the cell surface via the production of cutin monomers and the activation of cellular remodeling events in both plant (MSP1, Vapyrin D3; Pumplin et al. 2010; Expansin) and fungal (GinSTE12; Perez-Tienda et al. 2011) partners. Vapyrin (VPY) is a gene essential for intracellular progression of arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis and is also essential for infection by rhizobia in the nodule symbiosis of *Medicago truncatula* (Murray et al. 2011). Pumplin et al. (2010) have proposed that Vapyrin plays a cellular role to enable AM fungal development within plant cells. It has been proposed that the protein VPY could mediate Ca^{2+}-mediated membrane and cytoskeleton rearrangements during initial stages of root cell infection by rhizobia and AM fungi (Ercolin and Reinhardt 2011; Sieberer et al. 2012).

After the activation of cellular remodeling events in both plant (MSP1, Vapyrin D3; Murray et al. 2011, Expansin; Cosgrove et al. 2002; Balestrini et al. 2005) and fungal (GinSTE12; Perez-Tienda et al. 2011) partners. The elevation of VPY transcripts upon application of Nod factors, which we show to be dependent on NFP (*Nod factor perception*; Rival et al. 2012), DMI1, and DMI3, indicates that VPY acts downstream of the common signaling pathway (CSP) (Murray et al. 2011). Rival et al. (2012) suggested that a signal, produced in the epidermis under the control of NFP and DMI3, is responsible for activating DMI3 in the cortex to trigger nodule organogenesis in *Medicago truncatula*.

NFP encodes a receptor-like kinase with three extracellular lysin-motif (LysM) domains and an inactive kinase domain (Arrighi et al. 2006). These lipochitooligosaccharides (LCOs), called Nod factors, are perceived via lysin-motif (LysM) receptors and activate a signaling pathway called the CSP, which controls both the rhizobia–legume (RL) and the AM symbioses (Rival et al. 2012). The expansins are extracellular proteins involved in cell wall loosening and in the growth of plant cells (Cosgrove et al. 2002). These proteins have also been located in AM roots: they are present both in the cell walls of the host cells and in the interface, suggesting that this class of proteins, involved in cell wall loosening, may be crucial in the accommodation process of the fungus inside the cortical cells (Balestrini et al. 2005).

The host plants are able to recognize AMF as potential colonizers through pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) that perceive microbe-associated molecular patterns (MAMPs) (Zhang and Zhou 2010). As a result, a signaling cascade probably involving Rac1-mediated reactive oxygen species (ROS) production (Kiirika et al. 2012) is induced, which results in MAMP-triggered immunity (MTI) through the production of defense-related compounds. In response, to this signaling cascade, AMF developed the capacity to secrete the SP7 protein effector into the plant cytosol, which, upon targeting the nucleus, interacts with the defense-related transcription factor ERF19 to block the ERF19-mediated transcriptional program (Recorbet et al. 2013). The SYM pathway is possibly involved in the suppression of MTI (Siciliano et al. 2007a, b).

4.5 Development and Establishment of AM Symbiosis

The development of AM symbiosis can be separated into distinct steps that are characterized by the level of progression of fungal hyphae during root colonization (Gutjahr and Parniske 2013). At first in the early phase (also referred to as presymbiotic stage), a mutual recognition is characterized by hyphal-branching responses elicited by plant-derived strigolactones (SLs; Akiyama et al. 2005). Later, fungal-signaling molecules (chitooligosaccharides; Kosuta et al. 2003; Kuhn et al. 2010) induce the plant gene expression, which elicit calcium spiking in rhizodermal cells (Genre et al. 2013). After occurs the hyphopodium formation at the root surface which depends on cutin monomers produced by the plant. With the formation of the prepenetration apparatus (PPA) that guides intracellular fungal passage into deeper cell layers (Genre et al. 2008; Gutjahr and Parniske 2013), the fungal hyphae enter the plant host cell, accompanied by high-frequency calcium spiking (Sieberer et al. 2012).

Plants have receptors for chitin and peptidoglycan (Bapaume and Reinhardt 2012) to induce downstream defense reaction against pathogenic fungi and bacteria, and these receptors might also be derived from the ancestors being functional in the AM symbiosis (Parniske 2008). Symbiotic plants retain, besides their NFRs (Nod factor receptors) and MFRs (Myc factor receptors), potent receptors for microbial cell wall constituents such as chitin and peptidoglycan oligomers, which can trigger defense responses (Shimizu et al. 2010; Willmann et al. 2011). Alternatively, upon recognition of AM fungi or rhizobia, plants suppress their defense responses and actively allow symbiotic interactions (Bapaume and Reinhardt 2012). The AM fungal colonization is strictly speaking apoplastic, even if a large percent of intraradical hyphae grow through the cell lumen of epidermal and cortical cells (Genre and Bonfante 2005). The fungus leaves the plant cell and enters the apoplast, where it branches and grows laterally along the root axis (Parniske 2008). Once in the cortex, fungal hyphae progress longitudinally through the apoplast and form branches to initiate arbuscule formation in cortical cells (Genre et al. 2008; Harrison 2012). This results in the establishment of arbuscules (Breuillin et al. 2010). In this root endosymbiosis, the arbuscules serve as an exchange interface between AM fungi and host plant. Arbuscule development is accompanied by plastid proliferation and the formation of a plastidial network in close physical contact with the arbuscule (Strack and Fester 2006). The plastid is involved in numerous biosynthetic activities, including the production of apocarotenoids that specifically accumulate in AM roots (Walter et al. 2007).

Given the involvement of hormones in almost all plant developmental processes, it is thought that hormones have key roles during the development of AM (Parniske 2008). This is still a developing area of research, but abscisic and jasmonic acid have emerged as potential regulators of AM (Herrera-Medina et al. 2007; Hause et al. 2007).

4.6 Hormonal Modulation of Host Plant During MIR

The establishment of functional AM involves a series of steps which are under tight control mainly by the host plant (Breuillin et al. 2010). Plant defense responses are coordinated by small molecules that act as signal transducers (Pieterse et al. 2009). These molecules drive the coordinated expression of genes that code for defense-related proteins and compounds (Ausubel 2005; Jones and Dangl 2006).

Phytohormones also interact to regulate the establishment and functioning of the AM symbiosis (Ludwig-Müller 2010; Foo et al. 2013; Bucher et al. 2014; Gutjahr 2014). Among these molecules, the phytohormones JA, SA, abscisic acid (ABA), ET (Pieterse et al. 2009), strigolactones (SLs), auxin (Foo et al. 2013), and less well-understood gibberellins (GAs) and brassinosteriods (Foo et al. 2013) play a key role not only in the establishment but also in the functioning of the AM symbiosis (Hause et al. 2007; Herrera-Medina et al. 2007; López-Ráez et al. 2010; Ludwig-Müller 2010). Salicylic acid is a phenolic phytohormone (monohydroxybenzoic acid) required in the signal transduction cascades that regulate plant defense mechanisms against biotic and abiotic stresses (Bartoli et al. 2013). Salicylic acid is known to have a major role in plant defense against microorganisms with a biotrophic lifestyle (Pieterse et al. 2009). Jasmonic acid belongs to a group of compounds called oxylipins that are formed via oxygenation of fatty acids (Bartoli et al. 2013). JA-mediated reprogramming of gene expression is perhaps been best characterized in relation to plant–pathogen interactions. Ethylene participates in many aspects of plant biology from germination to dormancy, ripening and senescence, and the regulation of stomatal closure, as well as defenses against biotic and abiotic stresses.

In AM symbiosis, ET and salicylic acid function as negative regulators of mycorrhizal intensity (Gamalero et al. 2008; Ludwig-Müller 2010). The ET content is increased by a deficiency of ABA, which is in contrast necessary for arbuscule formation and is positively correlated to mycorrhizal establishment (Ludwig-Müller 2010; Martín-Rodríguez et al. 2011). The reduced level of ET generally found in AM plants is therefore in agreement with the increased branching of the colonized roots (Fusconi 2014).

In fact, a strong ET inhibitory effect has been observed on early symbiotic gene expression, on fungus entry into roots (Mukherjee and Ané 2011), and on intraradical fungal spread (Martín-Rodríguez et al. 2011). Ethylene and jasmonic acid synergistically activate plant defenses against necrotrophic pathogens (Thomma et al. 1998), while salicylic acid signaling triggers resistance against biotrophic and hemibiotrophic pathogens (Glazebrook 2005). Interestingly, evidence from several distantly related plant species suggests that there can be evolutionarily conserved SA and JA signaling crosstalk resulting in reciprocal antagonism between the SA and JA signaling pathways (Glazebrook 2005; Smith et al. 2009). Several authors suggested that the WRKY transcription factors may play an important role in this antagonistic interaction (Robert-Seilaniantz et al. 2011). As the AtWRKY70, the

protein encoded by this gene had been suggested to act as a positive regulator of the SA-dependent defense and a negative regulator of JA-dependent defense (Bari and Jones 2009). This is possibly adaptive since it could allow plants to fine-tune the balance between different defensive strategies (De Vos et al. 2006; Pieterse and Dicke 2007; Thaler et al. 2012). The dependence of successful mycorrhization on the control of JA and SA signaling would explain the range of protection conferred by this symbiosis (Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007). The cytokinins (CKs) promote resistance against biotrophs by enhancing the SA response through NPR1 (Choi et al. 2010).

Recent studies have shown that CKs might not be involved to any great extent in the regulation of mycorrhizal development (Foo et al. 2013). The higher CK content in AM plants is in line with the reduction in the root/shoot biomass ratio, which occurs when colonization is established (Fusconi 2014). Strigolactones (SLs) are hormones constitutively exuded from higher plant roots and rhizoids of bryophytic gametophytes (Akiyama et al. 2005; Delaux et al. 2012). They induce the metabolic activity of AM fungi and provide a directional cue to guide the fungus to colonizable tissue (Parniske 2005; Besserer et al. 2006). Auxin is involved in the AM host–fungus interaction (Fusconi 2014). Auxin was shown to be required within the host roots for the early stages of AM formation, e.g., during pre-symbiotic signal exchange (Hanlon and Coenen 2011), in part through the control of the SL levels (Foo et al. 2013). The activation of auxin signaling triggers the suppression of SA biosynthesis and SA signaling (Robert-Seilaniantz et al. 2007). Activation of abscisic acid biosynthetic and signaling pathways promotes disease susceptibility to several plant pathogens (Asselbergh et al. 2007; Ton and Mauch-Mani 2004). This balance of hormonal crosstalk strongly influences the outcome of plant–pathogen interactions, including establishment of effective systemic immunity (Robert-Seilaniantz et al. 2011). For example, gibberellic acid causes degradation of the DELLA protein growth repressors, elevating accumulation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and SA and attenuating JA signaling (Achard et al. 2003; Navarro et al. 2008). The brassinosteroid treatment enhances biotroph–hemibiotroph resistance (Nakashita et al. 2003).

Based on the literature data, we can summarize the role of phytohormones on the control of arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis in this way. Salicylates, ethylene, and cytokinins have negative effects at the fungal penetration or root colonization steps (Foo et al. 2013). By contrast, ABA and auxins positively regulate arbuscule development and functionality (Martín-Rodríguez et al. 2011; Etemadi et al. 2014), and positive and negative effects have been described for jasmonates (Wasternack and Hause 2013). As in other plant processes, the impact of hormones on mycorrhizae depends on pathway crosstalk (Pozo et al. 2015). The levels of these hormones seem to be altered in mycorrhizal plants (Hause et al. 2007; López-Ráez et al. 2010), probably affecting plant defense mechanisms (Pozo et al. 2010). Once established, the plant has to regulate the level of fungal proliferation within the roots to prevent excessive colonization and carbon drainage, thus maintaining the interaction at mutualistic levels (Jung et al. 2012).

4.7 Modulation of Plant Defense Responses During MIR

4.7.1 Autoregulation of Mycorrhization

Plant and AM fungi actively engage in the process of colonization, and a tight control of plant defense mechanisms is necessary (Pozo et al. 2010). The plant is able to restrict AMF colonization once plants are already mycorrhizal, a phenomenon known as autoregulation (Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b). The mechanisms operating in such autoregulation may also affect plant interactions with pathogens (Pozo et al. 2012). The bioprotective effect of mycorrhization and the autoregulation of mycorrhization are possibly two sides of the same coin (Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b). It seems plausible that an already mycorrhizal plant develops just one mechanism to repulse further colonization by fungi, not discriminating between AMF and soilborne pathogenic fungi (Vierheilig and Piché 2002; Vierheilig 2004).

Several studies of the autoregulatory mechanism of mycorrhization have excluded plant phosphorus (Vierheilig et al. 2000b) or the competition for carbon (Lerat et al. 2003a, b). Some mechanisms have been proposed for autoregulation of mycorrhization, including the long-distance transport of chemical signals (Staehelin et al. 2011), changes in phosphate levels within the plant (Breuillin et al. 2010), and the reduction in strigolactone biosynthesis (Garcıa-Garrido et al. 2009; López-Ráez et al. 2011). However, the mechanism by which AM symbiosis reduces strigolactone production is unknown (López-Ráez and Pozo 2013). Apart from that, a major transcriptional reprogramming takes place upon mycorrhizal colonization of the roots (Liu et al. 2003, 2007; Güimil et al. 2005; López-Ráez et al. 2010). This reprogramming originates alterations in the primary and secondary metabolism in mycorrhizal plants (Hause et al. 2007; Toussaint 2007; Schliemann et al. 2008). This has led to the identification of the genes, signal transduction pathways, and the chemical structures of components relevant to symbiosis; however, scientific knowledge on the physiology and function of these fungi is still limited (Garg and Chandel 2010). Transcriptional studies have also demonstrated that plant responses to AM fungi (i.e., obligate biotrophs) present similarities with plant responses to biotrophic pathogens (Sanchez et al. 2004; Güimil et al. 2005). Accordingly, all those changes may have special relevance to mycorrhizal effects on plant interactions belowground (Jung et al. 2012). A key factor in the MIR seems to be the extension of root colonization by AM fungi (Pozo et al. 2009). Studies comparing different mycorrhizal colonization levels concluded to the necessity of a well-established AM symbiosis for local and systemic induced resistance (Slezack et al. 2000; Khaosaad et al. 2007).

The presence of AM fungi within the root prior to contact with the soilborne pathogen has also been suggested as an important factor in plant protection (Azcon-Aguilar et al. 2002; Xavier and Boyetchko 2004). This aspect is probably linked with the level of mycorrhizal colonization (Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b). The fungus has to deal with the plant's immune system, contend with the defense mechanisms, and overcome them for successful colonization of the host (Kloppholz et al. 2001; Zamioudis and

Pieterse 2012). The plant responds to colonization by AMF, with a quick but transient increase of endogenous SA that occurs in the roots with accumulation, such as reactive oxygen species, and the activation of the phenylpropanoid and oxylipin pathways (Blilou et al. 1999; Dumas-Gaudot et al. 2000; Fester and Hause 2005; de Román et al. 2011). These reactions are temporally and spatially limited compared to the reaction during plant–pathogen interactions, suggesting a role in the establishment or control of the development of the fungus inside the roots (Pozo et al. 2002; Dumas-Gaudot et al. 2000; García-Garrido and Ocampo 2002).

The mechanisms, which are actually controlling the autoregulatory effect of the mycorrhizal colonization, are still unknown (Vierheilig et al. 2008a, b). Further research is needed to elucidate how the phenomenon of autoregulation during AM symbiosis is regulated and what are the chemical molecules involved (López-Ráez and Pozo 2013).

Beneficial root-inhabiting microbes, such as AM fungi, also hijack the hormone-regulated immune signaling network to establish a prolonged mutualistic association (Pieterse et al. 2012). The concept that MIR is partially determined by resistance-inducing bacteria in the mycorrhizosphere creates a novel impetus to explore the complexity of biotic interactions and chemical signals surrounding mycorrhizal roots (Cameron et al. 2013). Although the molecular basis for the regulation of plant defenses and the priming of the plant immune system during mycorrhization remains mostly unknown (Conrath 2011), a prominent role of jasmonate signaling has been confirmed (Jung et al. 2012). However, the exact contribution of jasmonates in MIR remains unclear (Hause et al. 2007), and the long-distance signals controlling MIR remain to be resolved (Cameron et al. 2013). The same authors presented, in the same article, a novel model of MIR that integrates different aspects of the induced resistance phenomenon. They propose that MIR is a cumulative effect of direct plant responses to mycorrhizal infection and indirect immune responses to ISR-eliciting rhizobacteria in the mycorrhizosphere, but this novel model requires experimental validation, because our knowledge only has demonstrated MIR under strictly axenic conditions (Gallou et al. 2011).

An open question is still why infection by AM fungi does not elicit a defense response in roots (Bapaume and Reinhardt 2012). In general, recognition of a friend versus foe is still incompletely understood in plants (Nishiguchi et al. 2008). The same authors concluded that many of these analyses regarding cultivar-dependent and culture-independent host resistance have been performed in *Arabidopsis*, which does not establish mutualistic associations with nitrogen-fixing rhizobia or with phosphate-acquiring mycorrhizal fungi. The AM fungal cell walls consist mainly of chitin; the perception of chitin fragments by plants could be expected to trigger a defense response that could block symbiosis (Bapaume and Reinhardt 2012).

It is possible that the processes of AM fungal establishment rather than resulting in the constitutive expression of defense, which is costly for the plant, enhance the plant's ability to activate defense mechanisms more efficiently when under attack (Pozo et al. 2009), such as MIR. MIR is a low-cost type of induced resistance which may be among the reasons to explain why root associations with AM fungi have been conserved during evolution and are widespread among species (Pozo et al. 2009).

5 Conclusion and Future Perspective

From the evolutionary point of view, plants developed a latent defense system that can be activated, with the goal of saving energy, contrary to the constitutive resistance that represents a real cost for the plant, since independently of the pathogen presence the plant invests its limited resources in the production of these defense factors. Thus, the induced resistance (IR) under natural conditions will represent cost only in the pathogen presence.

In this context, the mycorrhiza-induced resistance (MIR) has positive effect from the ecological point view, because MIR is a low-cost type of IR. The negative effects on plant productivity usually occur when chemical inducers are used repeatedly or in higher doses, mainly in the absence of the pathogen. We need increased efforts in research to understand the physiological, biochemical, and molecular mechanisms of MIR that will provide the "Rosetta stone" for the development of low-cost and new strategies for crop protection.

References

Achard P, Vriezen WH, Van Der Straeten D, Harberd NP (2003) Ethylene regulates *Arabidopsis* development via the modulation of DELLA protein growth repressor function. Plant Cell 15:2816–2825

Ahmad S, Gordon-Weeks R, Pickett J, Ton J (2010) Natural variation in priming of basal resistance: from evolutionary origin to agricultural exploitation. Mol Plant Pathol 11:817–827

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui MA (2008) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi as potential bioprotectants against plant pathogens. In: Siddiqui ZA, Akhtar S, Futai K (eds) Mycorrhizae: sustainable agriculture and forestry. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 61–98

Akiyama K, Hayashi H (2006) Strigolactones: chemical signals for fungal symbionts and parasitic weeds in plant roots. Ann Bot 97:925–931

Akiyama K, Matsuzaki K, Hayashi H (2005) Plant sesquiterpenes induce hyphal branching in arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Nature 435:824–827

Alabouvette C, Olivain C, Migheli Q, Steinberg C (2009) Microbiological control of soil-borne phytopathogenic fungi with special emphasis on wilt-inducing *Fusarium oxysporum*. New Phytol 184:529–544

Alizadeh H, Behboudi K, Ahmadzadeh M, Zamioudis C, Pieterse CMJ, Bakker PAHM (2013) Induced systemic resistance in cucumber and Arabidopsis thaliana by the combination of *Trichoderma harzianum* Tr6 and *Pseudomonas* sp. Ps14. Biol Control 65:14–23

Alvarez ME, Nota F, Cambiagno DA (2010) Epigenetic control of plant immunity. Mol Plant Pathol 11:563–576

Arrighi JF, Barre A, Ben Amor B, Bersoult A, Soriano LC, Mirabella R, de Carvalho-Niebel F, Journet EP, Ghérardi M, Huguet T, Geurts R, Dénarié J, Rougé P, Gough C (2006) The Medicago truncatula lysine motif-receptor-like kinase gene family includes NFP and new nodule-expressed genes. Plant Physiol 142:265–279

Asselbergh B, Curvers K, Franca SC, Audenaert K, Vuylsteke M, Van Breusegem F, Höfte M (2007) Resistance to *Botrytis cinerea* in sitiens, an abscisic acid-deficient tomato mutant, involves timely production of hydrogen peroxide and cell wall modifications in the epidermis. Plant Physiol 144:1863–1877

Attaran E, Zeier TE, Griebel T, Zeier J (2009) Methyl salicylate production and jasmonate signaling are not essential for systemic acquired resistance in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Cell 21:954–971

Audenaert K, Pattery T, Cornelis P, Hofte M (2002) Induction of systemic resistance to *Botrytis cinerea* in tomato by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 7NSK2: role of salicylic acid, pyochelin, and pyocyanin. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:1147–1156

Ausubel FM (2005) Are innate immune signaling pathways in plants and animals conserved? Nat Immunol 6:973–979

Ayers AR, Ebel J, Finelli F, Berger N, Albersheim P (1976) Host-pathogen interactions: IX. Quantitative assays of elicitor activity and characterization of the elicitor present in the extracellular medium of cultures of *Phytophthora megasperma* var. sojae. Plant Physiol 57:751–759

Azcón C, Jaizme-Vega MC, Calvet C (2002) The contribution of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi to the control of soil-borne plant pathogens. In: Gianinazzi S, Schüepp H, Barea JM, Haselwandter K (eds) Mycorrhizal technology in agriculture. Birkhäuser, Switzerland, pp 187–197

Azcon-Aguilar C, Barea JM (1996) Arbuscular mycorrhizas and biological control of soil borne plant pathogens—an overview of the mechanisms involved. Mycorrhiza 6:457–464

Baas R, van der Werf A, Lambers H (1989) Root respiration and growth in *Plantago major* as affected by vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal infection. Plant Physiol 91:227–232

Bakker PAHM, Ran LX, Pieterse CMJ, Van Loon LC (2003) Understanding the involvement of rhizobacteria-mediated induction of systemic resistance in biocontrol of plant diseases. Can J Plant Pathol 25:5–9

Balestrini R, Cosgrove DJ, Bonfante P (2005) Differential location of α-expansin proteins during the accommodation of root cells to an arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus. Planta 220:889–899

Bapaume L, Reinhardt D (2012) How membranes shape plant symbioses: signaling and transport in nodulation and arbuscular mycorrhiza. Front Plant Sci 3:223–251

Barea JM, Azcon R, Azcon-Aguilar C (2002) Mycorrhizosphere interactions to improve plant fitness and soil quality. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 81:343–351

Barea JM, Pozo MJ, Azcon R, Azcon-Aguilar C (2005) Microbial co-operation in the rhizosphere. J Exp Bot 56:1761–1778

Barea JM, Pozo MJ, Azcón R, Azcón-Aguilar C (2013a) Microbial interactions in the rhizosphere. In: de Bruijn F (ed) Molecular microbial ecology of the rhizosphere. Wiley-Blackwell, Hoboken, NJ, pp 29–44

Barea JM, Pozo MJ, López-Ráez JA, Aroca R, Ruíz-Lozano JM, Ferrol N, Azcón R, Azcón-Aguilar C (2013b) Arbuscular Mycorrhizas and their significance in promoting soil-plant systems sustainability against environmental stresses. In: Rodelas B, Gonzalez-Lopez J (eds) Beneficial plant-microbial interactions: ecology and applications . CRC Press, Taylor and Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL, pp 353–387

Bari R, Jones J (2009) Role of plant hormones in plant defence responses. Plant Mol Biol 69:473–488

Bartoli CG, Casalongué CA, Simontacchi M, Marquez-Garcia B, Foyer CH (2013) Interactions between hormone and redox signalling pathways in the control of growth and cross tolerance to stress. Environ Exp Bot 94:73–88

Bartsch M, Gobbato E, Bednarek P, Debey S, Schultze JL, Bautor J, Parker JE (2006) Salicylic acid-independent ENHANCED DISEASE SUSCEPTIBILITY1 signaling in *Arabidopsis* immunity and cell death is regulated by the monooxygenase FMO1 and the Nudix hydrolase NUDT7. Plant Cell 18:1038–1051

Beckers GJM, Conrath U (2007) Priming for stress resistance: from the lab to the field. Curr Opin Plant Biol 10:425–431

Bent AF, Mackey D (2007) Elicitors, effectors, and R genes: the new paradigm and a lifetime supply of questions. Annu Rev Phytopathol 45:399–436

Berta G, Fusconi A, Trotta A (1993) VA mycorrhizal infection and the morphology and function of root systems. Environ Exp Bot 33:159–173

Berta G, Trotta A, Fusconi A, Hooker JE, Munro M, Atkinson D, Giovannetti M, Morini S, Fortuna P, Tisserant B, Gianinazzi-Pearson V, Gianinazzi S (1995) Arbuscular mycorrhizal induced

changes to plant growth and root system morphology in *Prunus cerasifera*. Tree Physiol 15:281–293
Besserer A, Puech-Pagès V, Kiefer P, Gomez-Roldan V, Jauneau A, Roy S, Portais JC, Roux C, Bécard G, Séjalon-Delmas N (2006) Strigolactones stimulate arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi by activating mitochondria. PLoS Biol 4:e226. doi:10.1371/journal.pbio.0040226
Blilou I, Ocampo JA, Garcia-Garrido JM (1999) Resistance of pea roots to endomycorrhizal fungus or Rhizobium correlates with enhanced levels of endogenous salicylic acid. J Exp Bot 50:1663–1668
Block A, Li G, Fu ZQ, Alfano JR (2008) Phytopathogen type III effector weaponry and their plant targets. Curr Opin Plant Biol 11:396–403
Boller T (1995) Chemoperception of microbial signals in plant cells. Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol 46:189–214
Boller T, Felix G (2009) A renaissance of elicitors: perception of microbe-associated molecular patterns and danger signals by pattern-recognition receptors. Annu Rev Plant Biol 60:379–406
Boller T, He SY (2009) Innate immunity in plants: an arms race between pattern recognition receptors in plants and effectors in microbial pathogens. Science 324:742–744
Bonaventure G, Van Doorn A, Baldwin IT (2011) Herbivore-associated elicitors: FAC signaling and metabolism. Trends Plant Sci 16:294–299
Bonfante P, Genre A (2008) Plants and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi: an evolutionary developmental perspective. Trends Plant Sci 13:492–498
Bonfante P, Perotto S (2000) Outside and inside the roots: cell to-cell interactions among arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi, bacteria and host plants. In: Podila GK, Douds DD (eds) Current advances in mycorrhizae research. APS Press, St. Paul, MN, pp 141–155
Bonfante P, Requena N (2011) Dating in the dark: how roots respond to fungal signals to establish arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Curr Opin Plant Biol 14:451–457
Boyko A, Blevins T, Yao Y, Golubov A, Bilichak A, Ilnytsky Y, Jens Hollander J, Meins F Jr, Kovalchuk I (2010) Transgenerational adaptation of *Arabidopsis* to stress requires DNA methylation and the function of dicer-like proteins. PLoS One 5:e9514. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0009514
Breuillin B, Schramm J, Hajirezaei M, Ahkami A, Favre P, Druege U, Hause B, Bucher M, Kretzschmar T, Bossolini E, Kuhlemeier C, Martinoia ME, Franken P, Scholz U, Reinhardt D (2010) Phosphate systemically inhibits development of arbuscular mycorrhiza in *Petunia hybrida* and represses genes involved in mycorrhizal functioning. Plant J 64:1002–1017
Brundrett MC (1991) Mycorrhizas in natural ecosystems. In: Macfayden A, Begon M, Fitter AH (eds) Advances in ecological research, vol 21. Academic, London, UK, pp 171–313
Brundrett MC (2002) Coevolution of roots and mycorrhizas of land plants. New Phytol 154:275–304
Brundrett MC (2004) Diversity and classification of mycorrhizal associations. Biol Rev 79:473–495
Brundrett M, Bougher N, Dell B, Grove T, Malajczuk N (1996) Working with mycorrhizas in forestry and agriculture, ACIAR Monograph 32. Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research, Canberra, Australia, pp 173–196
Brutus A, Sicilia F, Macone A, Cervone F, De Lorenzo G (2010) A domain swap approach reveals a role of the plant wall-associated kinase1 (WAK1) as a receptor of oligogalacturonides. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:9452–9457
Bucher M, Hause B, Krajinski F, Küster H (2014) Through the doors of perception to function in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbioses. New Phytol 204:833–840
Buwalda JG, Stribley DP, Tinker PB (1984) The development of endomycorrhizal root systems. V. The detailed pattern of development of infection and the control of infection level by host in young leek plants. New Phytol 96:411
Cameon RK, Dixon RA, Lamb CJ (1994) Biologically induced systemic acquired resistance in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Plant J 5:715–726

Cameron DD, Neal AL, Van Wees SCM, Ton J (2013) Mycorrhiza-induced resistance: more than the sum of its parts? Trends Plant Sci 18:539–545

Campos-Soriano L, García-Martínez J, Segundo BS (2012) The arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis promotes the systemic induction of regulatory defence-related genes in rice leaves and confers resistance to pathogen infection. Mol Plant Pathol 13:579–592

Cao H, Bowling SA, Gordon AS, Dong X (1994) Characterization of an Arabidopsis mutant that is nonresponsive to inducers of systemic acquired resistance. Plant Cell 6:1583–1592

Caplan J, Padmanabhan M, Dinesh-Kumar SP (2008) Plant NB-LRR immune receptors: from recognition to transcriptional reprogramming. Cell Host Microbe 3:126–135

Carbonnel S, Gutjahr C (2014) Control of arbuscular mycorrhiza development by nutrient signals. Front Plant Sci 5:462. doi:10.3389/fpls.2014.00462

Catoira R, Timmers AC, Maillet F, Galera C, Penmetsa RV, Cook D, Dénarié J, Gough C (2001) The HCL gene of *Medicago truncatula* controls *Rhizobium*-induced root hair curling. Development 128:1507–1518

Chanda B, Xia Y, Mandal MK, Yu K, Sekine KT, Gao QM, Selote D, Hu Y, Stromberg A, Navarre D, Kachroo A, Kachroo P (2011) Glycerol-3-phosphate is a critical mobile inducer of systemic immunity in plants. Nat Genet 43:421–427

Chang JH, Urbach JM, Law TF, Arnold LW, Hu A, Gombar S, Grant SR, Ausubel FM, Dangl JL (2005) A high-throughput, near-saturating screen for type III effector genes from *Pseudomonas syringae*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102:2549–2554

Chaturvedi R, Venables B, Petros RA, Nalam V, Li M, Wang X, Takemoto LJ, Shah J (2012) An abietane diterpenoid is a potent activator of systemic acquired resistance. Plant J 71:161–172

Chen CY, Gao MQ, Liu JY, Zhu HY (2007) Fungal symbiosis in rice requires an ortholog of a legume common symbiosis gene encoding a Ca^{2+}/calmodulin-dependent protein kinase. Plant Physiol 145:1619–1628

Chen CY, Ane JM, Zhu HY (2008) OsIPD3, an ortholog of the *Medicago truncatula* DMI3 interacting protein IPD3, is required for mycorrhizal symbiosis in rice. New Phytol 180:311–315

Chern MS, Fitzgerald HA, Yadav RC, Canlas PE, Dong X, Ronald PC (2001) Evidence for a disease-resistance pathway in rice similar to the NPR1-mediated signaling pathway in *Arabidopsis*. Plant J 27:101–113

Chisholm ST, Coaker G, Day B, Staskawicz BJ (2006) Host-microbe interactions: shaping the evolution of the plant immune response. Cell 124:803–814

Choi J, Huh SU, Kojima M, Sakakibara H, Paek KH, Hwang I (2010) The cytokinin-activated transcription factor ARR2 promotes plant immunity via TGA3/NPR1-dependent salicylic acid signaling in *Arabidopsis*. Dev Cell 19:284–295

Choi J, Tanaka K, Cao Y, Qi Y, Qiu J, Liang Y, Lee SY, Stacey G (2014) Identification of a plant receptor for extracellular ATP. Science 343:290–294

Cohen YR (2002) β-aminobutyric acid-induced resistance against plant pathogens. Plant Dis 86:448–457

Conrath U (2006) Systemic acquired resistance. Plant Signal Behav 1:179–184

Conrath U (2011) Molecular aspects of defence priming. Trends Plant Sci 16:524–531

Conrath U, Pieterse CMJ, Mauch-Mani B (2002) Priming in plant-pathogen interactions. Trends Plant Sci 7:210–216

Conrath U, Beckers GJ, Flors V, García-Agustín P, Jakab G, Mauch F, Newman MA, Pieterse CM, Poinssot B, Pozo MJ, Pugin A, Schaffrath U, Ton J, Wendehenne D, Zimmerli L, Mauch-Mani B (2006) Priming: getting ready for battle. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:1062–1071

Cooper KM, Grandison GS (1987) Effects of vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on infection of tamarillo (*Cyphomandra betacea*) by *Meloidogyne incognita* in fumigated soil. Plant Dis 71:1101–1106

Cordier C, Gianinazzi S, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (1996) Colonization patterns of root tissues by *Phytophthora nicotianae* var. *parasitica* related to reduced disease in mycorrhizal tomato. Plant Soil 185:223–232

Cordier C, Gianinazzi S, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (1998a) Colonization pattern of root tissue by *Phytophthora nicotianae* var. *parasitica* related to reduced disease in mycorrhizal tomato. Plant Soil 185:223–232

Cordier C, Pozo MJ, Barea JM, Gianinazzi S, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (1998b) Cell defense responses associated with localized and systemic resistance to *Phytophthora parasitica* induced in tomato by an arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 11:1017–1028

Cosgrove DJ, Li LC, Cho HT, Hoffmann-Benning S, Moore RC, Blecker D (2002) The growing world of expansins. Plant Cell Physiol 43:1436–1444

Cunnac S, Lindeberg M, Collmer A (2009) *Pseudomonas syringae* type III secretion system effectors: repertoires in search of functions. Curr Opin Microbiol 12:53–60

Da Rocha AB, Hammerschmidt R (2005) History and perspectives on the use of disease resistance inducers in horticultural crops. Hort Technol 15:518–529

Dangl JL, Jones JDG (2001) Plant pathogens and integrated defence responses to infection. Nature 411:826–833

Dangl JL, Dietrich RA, Richberg MH (1996) Death don't have no mercy. Plant Cell 8:1793–1807

Darvill AG, Albersheim P (1984) Phytoalexins and their elicitors—a defense against microbial infection in plants. Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol 35:243–275

De Mortel JEV, Schat H, Moerland PD, Ver Loren van Themaat E, van der Ent S, Blankestijn H, Ghandilyan A, Tsiatsiani S, Aarts MG (2008) Expression differences for genes involved in lignin, glutathione and sulphate metabolism in response to cadmium in *Arabidopsis thaliana* and the related Zn/Cd-hyperaccumulator *Thlaspi caerulescens*. Plant Cell Environ 31:301–324

De Román M, Fernández I, Wyatt T, Sahrawy M, Heil M, Pozo MJ (2011) Elicitation of foliar resistance mechanisms transiently impairs root association with arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. J Ecol 99:36–45

De Vleesschauwer D, Höfte M, Van Loon LC (2009) Rhizobacteria-induced systemic resistance. In: Van Loon LC (ed) Advances in botanical research. Academic, New York, pp 223–281

De Vos M, Van Zaanen W, Koornneef A, Korzelius JP, Dicke M, Van Loon LC, Pieterse CMJ (2006) Herbivore-induced resistance against microbial pathogens in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Physiol 142:352–363

DebRoy S, Thilmony R, Kwack YB, Nomura K, He SY (2004) A family of conserved bacterial effectors inhibits salicylic acid-mediated basal immunity and promotes disease necrosis in plants. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101:9927–9932

Dehne HW (1982) Interaction between vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and plant pathogens. Phytopathology 72:1115–1119

Dehne HW, Schonbeck F (1979) The influence of endotrophic mycorrhizae on plant disease, I, Colonization of tomato plants by *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*. Phytopathol Z 95:105–109

Dehne HW, Schonbeck F, Baltruchat H (1978) Untersuchungen zumEinfluB-der endotrophen Mykorrhiza auf Pflanzenkrankheiten, III, Chitinase artivitat und ornithinzyklus. Z Pflakrankh Pflschutz 85:666–678

Dela Noval B, Pérez E, Martínez B, León O, Martínez-Gallardo N, Délano-Frier J (2007) Exogenous systemin has a contrasting effect on disease resistance in mycorrhizal tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*) plants infected with necrotrophic or hemibiotrophic pathogens. Mycorrhiza 17:449–460

Delaux PM, Xie X, Timme RE, Puech-Pages V, Dunand C, Lecompte E, Delwiche CF, Yoneyama K, Bécard G, Séjalon-Delmas N (2012) Origin of strigolactones in the green lineage. New Phytol 195:857–871

Delaux PM, Bécard G, Combier JP (2013) NSP1 is a component of the Myc signaling pathway. New Phytol 199:59–65

Dempsey DA, Klessig DF (2012) SOS: too many signals for systemic acquired resistance? Trends Plant Sci 17:538–545

Dempsey DA, Shah J, Klessig DF (1999) Salicylic acid and disease resistance in plants. Crit Rev Plant Sci 18:547–575

Devadas SK, Raina R (2002) Preexisting systemic acquired resistance suppresses hypersensitive response-associated cell death in *Arabidopsis hrl1* mutant. Plant Physiol 128:1234–1244

Devoto A, Nieto-Rostro M, Xie D, Ellis C, Harmston R, Patrick E, Davis J, Sherratt L, Coleman M, Turner JG (2002) COI1 links jasmonate signalling and fertility to the SCF ubiquitin–ligase complex in *Arabidopsis*. Plant J 32:457–466

Dodds PN, Rathjen JP (2010) Plant immunity: towards an integrated view of plant pathogen interactions. Nat Rev Genet 11:539–548

Dong X (2004) NPR1, all things considered. Curr Opin Plant Biol 7:547–552

Dow M, Newman MA, von Roepenack E (2000) The induction and modulation of plant defense responses by bacterial lipopolysaccharides. Annu Rev Phytopathol 38:241–261

Dugassa GD, von Alten H, Schonbeck E (1996) Effect of arbuscular mycorrhiza (AM) on health of *Linum usitatissimum* L. infected by fungal pathogens. Plant Soil 185:173–182

Dumas-Gardot E, Furlan V, Grenier J, Asselin A (1992) New acidic chitinase isoforms induced in tobacco roots by vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Mycorrhiza 1:133–136

Dumas-Gaudot E, Gollotte A, Cordier C, Gianinazzi S, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (2000) Modulation of host defence systems. In: Kapulnick Y, Douds DD Jr (eds) Arbuscular mycorrhizas: physiology and function. Kluwer, Dordrecht, pp 173–200

Durner J, Shah J, Klessig DF (1997) Salicylic acid and disease resistance in plants. Trends Plant Sci 2:266–274

Durrant WE, Dong X (2004) Systemic acquired resistance. Annu Rev Phytopathol 42:185–209

Ebel J, Cosio EG (1994) Elicitors of plant defense responses. Int Rev Cytol 148:1–36

El-Ghachtouli N, Paynot M, Morandi D, Martin-Tanguy L, Gianinazzi S (1995) The effect of polyamines on endomycorrhizal infection of wild type *Pisum sativum* cv. Frisson (nod^+ myc^+) and two mutants (nod^- myc^+ and nod^- myc^-). Mycorrhiza 5:189–192

Ellis J, Dodds P, Pryor T (2000a) The generation of plant disease resistance genes specificities. Trends Plant Sci 5:373–379

Ellis J, Dodds P, Pryor T (2000b) Structure, function and evolution of plant disease resistance genes. Curr Opin Plant Biol 3:278–284

Erb M, Meldau S, Howe GA (2012) Role of phytohormones in insect specific plant reactions. Trends Plant Sci 17:250–259

Erbs G, Silipo A, Aslam S, De Castro C, Liparoti V, Flagiello A, Pucci P, Lanzetta R, Parrilli M, Molinaro A, Newman MA, Cooper RM (2008) Peptidoglycan and muropeptides from pathogens Agrobacterium and Xanthomonas elicit plant innate immunity: structure and activity. Chem Biol 15:438–448

Ercolin F, Reinhardt D (2011) Successful joint ventures of plants: arbuscular mycorrhiza and beyond. Trends Plant Sci 16:356–362

Etemadi M, Gutjahr C, Couzigou JM, Zouine M, Lauressergues D, Timmers A, Audran C, Bouzayen M, Bécard G, Combier JP (2014) Auxin perception is required for arbuscule development in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Plant Physiol 166:281–292

Eulgem T, Somssich IE (2007) Networks of WRKY transcription factors in defense signaling. Curr Opin Plant Biol 10:366–371

Favre P, Bapaume L, Bossolini E, Delorenzi M, Falquet L, Reinhardt D (2014) A novel bioinformatics pipeline to discover genes related to arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis based on their evolutionary conservation pattern among higher plants. BMC Plant Biol 14:333. doi:10.1186/s12870-014-0333-0

Felix G, Duran JD, Volko S, Boller T (1999) Plants have a sensitive perception system for the most conserved domain of bacterial flagellin. Plant J 18:265–276

Fernández I, Merlos M, López-Ráez JA, Martínez-Medina A, Ferrol N, Azcón C, Bonfante P, Flors V, Pozo MJ (2014) Defense related phytohormones regulation in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbioses depends on the partner genotypes. J Chem Ecol 40:791–803

Fester T, Hause G (2005) Accumulation of reactive oxygen species in arbuscular mycorrhizal roots. Mycorrhiza 15:373–379
Filion M, St-Arnaud M, Fortin JA (1999) Direct interaction between the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus intraradices* and different rhizosphere microorganisms. New Phytol 141: 525–533
Fiorilli V, Catoni M, Miozzi L, Novero M, Accotto GP, Lanfranco L (2009) Global and cell-type gene expression profiles in tomato plants colonized by an arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus. New Phytol 184:975–987
Fitter AH (2005) Darkness visible: reflections on underground ecology. J Ecol 93:231–243
Flor HH (1971) Current status of the gene-for-gene concept. Annu Rev Phytopathol 9:275–296
Foo E, Ross JJ, Jones WT, Reid JB (2013) Plant hormones in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbioses: an emerging role for gibberellins. Ann Bot 111:769–779
Francis R, Read DJ (1994) The contributions of mycorrhizal fungi to the determination of plant community structure. Plant Soil 159:11–25
Franken P (2012) The plant strengthening root endophyte *Piriformospora indica*: potential application and the biology behind. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 96:1455–1464
Franken P, Gnadinger E (1994) Analysis of parsley arbuscular endomycorrhiza: infection development and mRNA levels of defence related genes. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 7:612–620
Fritz M, Jakobsen I, Lyngkjaer MF, Thordal-Christensen H, Pons-Kuehnemann J (2006) Arbuscular mycorrhiza reduces susceptibility of tomato to *Alternaria solani*. Mycorrhiza 16:413–419
Fritz-Laylin LK, Krishnamurthy N, Tor M, Sjolander KV, Jones JD (2005) Phylogenomic analysis of the receptor-like proteins of rice and Arabidopsis. Plant Physiol 138:611–623
Fu ZQ, Dong X (2013) Systemic acquired resistance: turning local infection into global defense. Annu Rev Plant Biol 64:839–863
Fu ZQ, Yan S, Saleh A, Wang W, Ruble J, Oka N, Mohan R, Spoel SH, Tada Y, Zheng N, Dong X (2012) NPR3 and NPR4 are receptors for the immune signal salicylic acid in plants. Nature 486:228–232
Fusconi A (2014) Regulation of root morphogenesis in arbuscular mycorrhizae: what role do fungal exudates, phosphate, sugars and hormones play in lateral root formation. Ann Bot 113:19–33
Gaffney T, Friedrich L, Vernooij B, Negrotto D, Nye G, Uknes S, Ward E, Kessmann H, Ryals J (1993) Requirement of salicylic acid for the induction of systemic acquired resistance. Science 261:754–756
Gallou A, Lucero Mosquera HP, Cranenbrouck S, Suárez JP, Declerck S (2011) Mycorrhiza induced resistance in potato plantlets challenged by *Phytophthora infestans*. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 76:20–26
Gallou A, Declerck S, Cranenbrouck S (2012) Transcriptional regulation of defence genes and involvement of the WRKY transcription factor in arbuscular mycorrhizal potato root colonization. Funct Integr Genomics 12:183–198
Gamalero E, Berta G, Massa N, Glick BR, Lingua G (2008) Synergistic interactions between the ACC deaminase-producing bacterium *Pseudomonas putida* UW4 and the AM fungus *Gigaspora rosea* positively affect cucumber plant growth. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 64:459–467
Gange AC (2006) Insect-mycorrhizal interactions: patterns, processes, and consequences. In: Ohgushi T, Craig TP, Price PW (eds) Indirect interaction webs: nontrophic linkages through induced plant traits. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp 124–144
Garcia-Garrido JM (2009) Arbuscular mycorrhizae as defense against pathogens. In: Bennett JW, Lemke PA (eds) Defensive mutualism in microbial symbiosis. CRC Press Taylor & Francis Group, Broken Sound Parkway, NY, pp 183–194
Garcia-Garrido JM, Ocampo JA (1989) Effect of VA mycorrhizal infection of tomato on damage caused by *Pseudomonas syringae*. Soil Biol Biochem 21:65–167
García-Garrido JM, Ocampo JA (2002) Regulation of the plant defence response in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. J Exp Bot 53:1377–1386

Garcıa-Garrido JM, Lendzemo V, Castellanos-Morales V, Steinkellner S, Vierheilig H (2009) Strigolactones, signals for parasitic plants and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Mycorrhiza 19:449–459

Garg N, Chandel S (2010) Arbuscular mycorrhizal networks: process and functions. A review. Agron Sustain Dev 30:581–599

Genre A, Bonfante P (2005) Building a mycorrhizal cell: how to reach compatibility between plants and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. J Plant Interact 1:3–13

Genre A, Chabaud M, Faccio A, Barker DG, Bonfante P (2008) Prepenetration apparatus assembly precedes and predicts the colonization patterns of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi within the root cortex of both *Medicago truncatula* and *Daucus carota*. Plant Cell 20:1407–1420

Genre A, Chabaud M, Balzergue C, Puech-Pagès V, Novero M, Rey T, Fournier J, Rochange S, Bécard G, Bonfante P, Barker DG (2013) Short-chain chitin oligomers from arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi trigger nuclear Ca^{2+} spiking in *Medicago truncatula* roots and their production is enhanced by strigolactone. New Phytol 198:190–202

Gernns H, von Alten H, Poehling HM (2001) Arbuscular mycorrhiza increased the activity of a biotrophic leaf pathogen—is a compensation possible. Mycorrhiza 11:237–243

Gianinazzi-Pearson V, Tahiri-Alaoui A, Antoniw JF, Gianinazzi S, Dumas E (1992) Weak expression of the pathogenesis related PR-b1 gene and localization of related protein during symbiotic endomycorrhizal interactions in tobacco roots. Endocytobiosis Cell Res 8:177–185

Gianinazzi-Pearson V, Dumas-Gaudat E, Gollote A, Tahiri-Alaoui A, Gianinazzi S (1996) Cellular and molecular defence-related root responses to invasion by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. New Phytol 133:45–57

Giovannetti M, Sbrana C, Avio L, Citernesi AS, Logi C (1993) Differential hyphal morphogenesis in arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi during preinfection stages. New Phytol 125:587–593

Glazebrook J (2005) Contrasting mechanisms of defense against biotrophic and necrotrophic pathogens. Annu Rev Phytopathol 43:205–227

Gobbato E, Marsh JF, Vernié T, Wang E, Maillet F, Kim J, Miller JB, Sun J, Bano SA, Ratet P, Mysore KS, Dénarié J, Schultze M, Oldroyd GE (2012) A GRAS-type transcription factor with a specific function in mycorrhizal signaling. Curr Biol 4:2236–2241

Gobbato E, Wang E, Higgins G, Bano SA, Henry C, Schultze M, Oldroyd GE (2013) RAM1 and RAM2 function and expression during arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis and *Aphanomyces euteiches* colonization. Plant Signal Behav 8:e26049

Goellner K, Conrath U (2008) Priming: it's all the world to induced resistance. Eur J Plant Pathol 121:233–242

Göhre V, Spallek T, Häweker H, Mersmann S, Mentzel T, Boller T, de Torres M, Mansfield JW, Robatzek S (2008) Plant pattern-recognition receptor FLS2 is directed for degradation by the bacterial ubiquitin ligase AvrPtoB. Curr Biol 18:1824–1832

Gómez-Gómez L, Boller T (2000) FLS2: an LRR receptor-like kinase involved in the perception of the bacterial elicitor flagellin in *Arabidopsis*. Mol Cell 5:1003–1011

Gough C, Cullimore J (2011) Lipo-chitooligosaccharide signaling in endosymbiotic plant-microbe interactions. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 24:867–878

Gozzo F, Faoro F (2013) Systemic acquired resistance (50 years after discovery): moving from the lab to the field. J Agric Food Chem 61:12473–12491

Graham JH, Leonard RT, Menge JA (1981) Membrane-mediated decrease in root exudation responsible for phosphorus inhibition of vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizae formation. Plant Physiol 68:548–552

Gruner K, Griebel T, Návarová H, Attaran E, Zeier J (2013) Reprogramming of plants during systemic acquired resistance. Front Plant Sci 4:252–279

Guillon C, St-Arnaud M, Hamel C, Jabaji-Hare SH (2002) Differential and systemic alteration of defence-related gene transcript levels in mycorrhizal bean plants infected with *Rhizoctonia solani*. Can J Bot 80:305–315

Güimil S, Chang H-S, Zhu T, Sesma A, Osbourn A, Roux C, Ioannidis V, Oakeley EJ, Docquier M, Descombes P, Briggs SP, Paszkowski U (2005) Comparative transcriptomics of rice reveals

an ancient pattern of response to microbial colonization. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102:8066–8070
Gust AA, Biswas R, Lenz HD, Rauhut T, Ranf S, Kemmerling B, Götz F, Glawischnig E, Lee J, Felix G, Nürnberger T (2007) Bacteria-derived peptidoglycans constitute pathogen-associated molecular patterns triggering innate immunity in *Arabidopsis*. J Biol Chem 282:32338–32348
Gutjahr C (2014) Phytohormone signaling in arbuscular mycorrhiza development. Curr Opin Plant Biol 20:26–34
Gutjahr C, Parniske M (2013) Cell and developmental biology of arbuscular mycorrhiza symbiosis. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 29:593–617
Gutjahr C, Banba M, Croset V, An K, Miyao A, An G, Hirochika H, Imaizumi-Anraku H, Paszkowski U (2008) Arbuscular mycorrhiza specific signaling in rice transcends the common symbiosis signaling pathway. Plant Cell 20:2989–3005
Hahn MG, Bucheli P, Cervone F, Doares SH, O'Neil RA, Darvill A, Albersheim P (1989) Roles of cell wall constituents in plant-pathogen interactions. In: Kosuge T, Nester EW (eds) Plant-microbe interactions: molecular and genetic perspectives. McGraw Hill, New York, pp 131–181
Hammerschmidt R (2007) Introduction: definitions and some history. In: Walters D, Newton A, Lyon G (eds) Induced resistance for plant disease control: a sustainable approach to crop protection. Blackwell, Oxford, pp 1–8
Hammerschmidt R (2009) Systemic acquired resistance. Adv Bot Res 51:173–222
Hammerschmidt R, Kúc J (1995) Induced resistance to disease in plants. Kluwer, Dordrecht
Hammerschmidt R, Métraux JP, Van Loon LC (2001) Inducing resistance: a summary of papers presented at the First International Symposium on induced resistance to plant diseases. Eur J Plant Pathol 107:1–6
Hanlon MT, Coenen C (2011) Genetic evidence for auxin involvement in arbuscular mycorrhiza initiation. New Phytol 189:701–709
Harley JL, Smith SE (1983) Mycorrhizal symbiosis. Academic, London
Harrier LA, Watson CA (2004) The potential role of arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) fungi in the bioprotection of plants against soil-borne pathogens in organic and/or other sustainable farming systems. Pest Manag Sci 60:149–157
Harrison MJ (2005) Signaling in the arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Annu Rev Microbiol 59:19–42
Harrison MJ (2012) Cellular programs for arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Curr Opin Plant Biol 15:691–698
Harrison MJ, Dixon RA (1993) Isoflavonoid accumulation and expression of defense gene transcripts during the establishment of vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal associations in roots of *Medicago truncatula*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 6:643–654
Hassan S, Mathesius U (2012) The role of flavonoids in root-rhizosphere signalling: opportunities and challenges for improving plant-microbe interactions. J Exp Bot 63:3429–3444
Hauck P, Thilmony R, He SY (2003) A *Pseudomonas syringae* type III effector suppresses cell wall-based extracellular defense in susceptible Arabidopsis plants. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:8577–8582
Hause B, Schaarschmidt S (2009) The role of jasmonates in mutualistic symbioses between plants and soil-born microorganisms. Phytochemistry 70:1589–1599
Hause B, Mrosk C, Isayenkov S, Strack D (2007) Jasmonates in arbuscular mycorrhizal interactions. Phytochemistry 68:101–110
Hayek S, Gianinazzi-Pearson V, Gianinazzi S, Franken P (2014) Elucidating mechanisms of mycorrhiza-induced resistance against *Thielaviopsis basicola* via targeted transcript analysis of *Petunia hybrid* Genes. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 88:67–76
Heidel AJ, Clarke JD, Antonovics J, Dong X (2004) Fitness costs of mutations affecting the systemic acquired resistance pathway in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Genetics 168:2197–2206
Heil M (2009) Damaged-self recognition in plant herbivore defence. Trends Plant Sci 14:356–363

Henry G, Thonart P, Ongena M (2012) PAMPs, MAMPs, DAMPs and others: an update the diversity of plant immunity elicitors. Biotechnol Agron Soc Environ 16:257–268

Herrera-Medina MJ, Steinkellner S, Vierheilig H, Ocampo JA, García-Garrido JM (2007) Abscisic acid determines arbuscule development and functionality in the tomato arbuscular mycorrhiza. New Phytol 175:554–564

Hocher V, Alloisio N, Auguy F, Fournier P, Doumas P, Pujic P, Gherbi H, Queiroux C, Da Silva C, Wincker P, Normand P, Bogusz D (2011) Transcriptomics of actinorhizal symbioses reveals homologs of the whole common symbiotic signaling cascade. Plant Physiol 156:700–711

Huang PY, Zimmerli L (2014) Enhancing crop innate immunity: new promising. Front Plant Sci 5:624–631

Huffaker A, Pearce G, Ryan CA (2006) An endogenous peptide signal in *Arabidopsis* activates components of the innate immune response. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:10098–10103

Jaskiewicz M, Conrath U, Peterhänsel C (2011) Chromatin modification acts as a memory for systemic acquired resistance in the plant stress response. EMBO Rep 12:50–55

Jayaraman D, Gilroy S, Jean-Michel A (2014) Staying in touch: mechanical signals in plant–microbe interactions. Curr Opin Plant Biol 20:104–109

Jeffries P, Gianinazzi S, Perotto S, Turnau K, Barea JM (2003) The contribution of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi in sustainable maintenance of plant health and soil fertility. Biol Fert Soils 37:1–16

Jing B, Xu S, Xu M, Li Y, Li S, Ding J, Zhang Y (2011) Brush and spray: a high-throughput systemic acquired resistance assay suitable for large-scale genetic screening. Plant Physiol 157:973–980

Jones JDG, Dangl JL (2006) The plant immune system. Nature 444:323–329

Jones DA, Thomas CM, Hammond-Kosack KE, Balint-Kurti PJ, Jones JD (1994) Isolation of the tomato Cf-9 gene for resistance to *Cladosporium fulvum* by transposon tagging. Science 266:789–793

Jung HW, Tschaplinski TJ, Wang L, Glazebrook J, Greenberg JT (2009) Priming in systemic plant immunity. Science 324:89–91

Jung SC, Medina-Matinez A, Lopez-Raez JA, Pozo MJ (2012) Mycorrhiza-induced resistance and priming of plant defenses. J Chem Ecol 38:651–664

Kathiria P, Sidler C, Golubov A, Kalischuk M, Kawchuk LM, Kovalchuk I (2010) Tobacco mosaic virus infection results in an increase in recombination frequency and resistance to viral, bacterial, and fungal pathogens in the progeny of infected tobacco plants. Plant Physiol 153:1859–1870

Keen NT (1990) Gene-for-gene complementarity in plant-pathogen interactions. Annu Rev Genet 24:447–463

Kessmann H, Staub T, Hofmann C, Maetzke T, Herzog J, Ward E, Uknes S, Ryals J (1994) Induction of systemic acquired disease resistance in plants by chemicals. Annu Rev Phytopathol 32:439–459

Khaosaad T, García-Garrido JM, Steinkellner S, Vierheilig H (2007) Take-all disease is systemically reduced in roots of mycorrhizal barley plants. Soil Biol Biochem 39:727–734

Kiirika LM, Bergmann HF, Schikowsky C, Wimmer D, Korte J, Schmitz U, Niehaus K, Colditz F (2012) Silencing of the Rac1 GTPase MtROP9 in *Medicago truncatula* stimulates early mycorrhizal and oomycete root colonizations but negatively affects rhizobial infection. Plant Physiol 159:501–516

Kinkema M, Fan W, Dong X (2000) Nuclear localization of NPR1 is required for activation of *PR* gene expression. Plant Cell 12:2339–2350

Kistner C, Parniske M (2002) Evolution of signal transduction in intracellular symbiosis. Trends Plant Sci 7:511–518

Klessig DF, Malamy J (1994) The salicylic acid signal in plants. Plant Mol Biol 26:1439–1458

Kloppholz S, Kuhn H, Requena N (2001) A secreted fungal effector of *Glomus intraradices* promotes symbiotic biotrophy. Curr Biol 21:1204–1209

Koch M, Vorwerk S, Masur C, Sharifi-Sirchi G, Olivieri N, Schlaich NL (2006) A role for a flavin-containing mono-oxygenase in resistance against microbial pathogens in *Arabidopsis*. Plant J 47:629–639

Kohler A, Schwindling S, Conrath U (2002) Benzothiazole induced priming for potentiated responses to pathogen infection, wounding, and infiltration of water into leaves requires the NPR1/NIM1 gene in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Physiol 128:1046–1056

Kosuta S, Chabaud M, Lougnon G, Gough C, Dénarié J, Barker DG, Bécard G (2003) A diffusible factor from arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi induces symbiosis-specific MtENOD11 expression in roots of *Medicago truncatula*. Plant Physiol 131:952–962

Kretzschmar T, Kohlen W, Sasse J, Borghi L, Schlegel M, Bachelier JB, Reinhardt D, Bours R, Bouwmeester HJ, Martinoia E (2012) A *Petunia* ABC protein controls strigolactone-dependent symbiotic signalling and branching. Nature 483:341–344

Krol E, Mentzel T, Chinchilla D, Boller T, Felix G, Kemmerling B, Postel S, Arents M, Jeworutzki E, Al-Rasheid KA, Becker D, Hedrich R (2010) Perception of the Arabidopsis danger signal peptide 1 involves the pattern recognition receptor AtPEPR1 and its close homologue AtPEPR2. J Biol Chem 285:13471–13479

Krüger M, Krüger C, Walker C, Stockinger H, Schüßler A (2012) Phylogenetic reference data for systematics and phylotaxonomy of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi from phylum to species level. New Phytol 193:970–984

Kuc J (1982) Induced immunity to plant disease. BioScience 32:854–860

Kuć J (1987) Translocated signals for plant immunization. Ann N Y Acad Sci 494:221–223

Kuhn H, Kúster H, Requena N (2010) Membrane steroid-binding protein 1 induced by a diffusible fungal signal is critical for mycorrhization in *Medicago truncatula*. New Phytol 185:716–733

Kumar J, Hückelhoven R, Beckhove U, Nagarajan S, Kogel KH (2001) A compromised Mlo pathway affects the response of barley to the necrotrophic fungus *Bipolaris sorokiniana* (teleomorph: *Cochliobolus sativus*) and its toxins. Phytopathology 91:127–133

Lerat S, Lapointe L, Gutjahr S, Piche Y, Vierheilig H (2003a) Carbon partitioning in a split-root system of arbuscular mycorrhizal plants is fungal and plant species dependent. New Phytol 157:589–595

Lerat S, Lapointe L, Piché Y, Vierheilig H (2003b) Variable carbon sink strength of different *Glomus mosseae* strains colonizing barley roots. Can J Bot 81:886–889

Li HY, Yang GD, Shu HR, Yang YT, Ye BX, Nishida I, Zheng CC (2006) Colonization by the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus versiforme* induces a defense response against the root-knot nematode Meloidogyne incognita in the grapevine (*Vitis amurensis* Rupr.), which includes transcriptional activation of the class III chitinase gene VCH3. Plant Cell Physiol 47:154–163

Lin WC, Lu CF, Wu JW, Cheng ML, Lin YM, Yang NS, Black L, Green SK, Wang JF, Cheng CP (2004) Transgenic tomato plants expressing the *Arabidopsis* NPR1 gene display enhanced resistance to a spectrum of fungal and bacterial diseases. Transgenic Res 13:567–581

Linderman RG (1988) Mycorrhizal interactions with the rhizosphere microflora: the mycorrhizosphere effect. Phytopathology 78:366–371

Linderman RG (1994) Role of VAM fungi in biocontrol. In: Pfleger FL, Linderman RG (eds) Mycorrhizae and plant health. The American Phytopathological Society, St. Paul, MN, pp 1–27

Lindroth AM, Cao X, Jackson JP, Zilberman D, McCallum CM, Henikoff S, Jacobsen SE (2001) Requirement of CHROMOMETHYLASE3 for maintenance of CpXpG methylation. Science 292:2077–2080

Lioussanne L, Jolicoeur M, St-Arnaud M (2008) Mycorrhizal colonization with Glomus intraradices and development stage of transformed tomato roots significantly modify the chemotactic response of zoospores of the pathogen *Phytophthora nicotianae*. Soil Biol Biochem 40:2217–2224

Liu J, Blaylock LA, Endre G, Cho J, Town CD, Vandenbosch KA, Harrison MJ (2003) Transcript profiling coupled with spatial expression analyses reveals genes involved in distinct developmental stages of an arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Plant Cell 15:2106–2123

Liu J, Maldonado-Mendoza I, Lopez-Meyer M, Cheung F, Town CD, Harrison MJ (2007) Arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis is accompanied by local and systemic alterations in gene expression and an increase in disease resistance in the shoots. Plant J 50:529–544

Liu PP, von Dahl CC, Klessig DF (2011a) The extent to which methyl salicylate is required for signaling systemic acquired resistance is dependent on exposure to light after infection. Plant Physiol 157:2216–2226

Liu W, Kohlen W, Lillo A, Op den Camp R, Ivanov S, Hartog M, Limpens E, Jamil M, Smaczniak C, Kaufmann K, Yang WC, Hooiveld GJ, Charnikhova T, Bouwmeester HJ, Bisseling T, Geurts R (2011b) Strigolactone biosynthesis in *Medicago truncatula* and rice requires the symbiotic GRAS-type transcription factors NSP1 and NSP2. Plant Cell 23:3853–3865

Loake G, Grant M (2007) Salicylic acid in plant defence—the players and protagonists. Curr Opin Plant Biol 10:466–472

López A, Ramírez V, Garcıa-Andrade J, Flors V, Vera P (2011) The RNA silencing enzyme RNA polymerase V is required for plant immunity. PLoS Genet 7:e1002434. doi:10.1371/journal.pgen.1002434

López-Ráez JA, Pozo MJ (2013) Chemical signalling in the arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis: biotechnological applications. In: Aroca R (ed) Symbiotic endophytes. Springer, Berlin, pp 215–232

López-Ráez JA, Verhage A, Fernández I, García JM, Azcón-Aguilar C, Flors V, Pozo MJ (2010) Hormonal and transcriptional profiles highlight common and differential host responses to arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and the regulation of the oxylipin pathway. J Exp Bot 61: 2589–2601

López-Ráez JA, Pozo MJ, García-Garrido JM (2011) Strigolactones: a cry for help in the rhizosphere. Botany 89:513–522

Ludwig-Müller J (2010) Hormonal responses in host plants triggered by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. In: Koltai H, Kapulnik Y (eds) Arbuscular mycorrhizas: physiology and function. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 169–190

Lugtenberg B, Kamilova F (2009) Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:541–556

Luna E, Ton J (2012) The epigenetic machinery controlling transgenerational systemic acquired resistance. Plant Signal Behav 7:615–618

Luna E, Bruce TJA, Roberts MR, Flors V, Ton J (2012) Next generation systemic acquired resistance. Plant Physiol 158:844–853

Ma Y, Zhao Y, Walker RK, Berkowitz GA (2013) Molecular steps in the immune signaling pathway evoked by plant elicitor peptides: Ca^{2+}-dependent protein kinases, nitric oxide, and reactive oxygen species are downstream from the early Ca^{2+} signal. Plant Physiol 163:1459–1471

Maffei ME, Arimura GI, Mithoefer A (2012) Natural elicitors, effectors and modulators of plant responses. Nat Prod Rep 29:1288–1303

Maherali H, Klironomos J (2007) Influence of phylogeny on fungal community assembly and ecosystem functioning. Science 316:1746–1748

Maillet F, Poinsot V, André O, Puech-Pagès V, Haouy A, Gueunier M, Cromer L, Giraudet D, Formey D, Niebel A, Martinez EA, Driguez H, Becard G, Dénarié J (2011) Fungal lipochitooligosaccharide symbiotic signals in arbuscular mycorrhiza. Nature 469:58–63

Makandar R, Essig JS, Schapaugh MA, Trick HN, Shah J (2006) Genetically engineered resistance to *Fusarium* head blight in wheat by expression of *Arabidopsis* NPR1. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:123–129

Malamy J, Carr JP, Klessig DF, Raskin I (1990) Salicylic acid: a likely endogenous signal in the resistance response of tobacco to viral infection. Science 250:1002–1004

Maldonado AM, Doerner P, Dixon RA, Lamb CJ, Cameron RK (2002) A putative lipid transfer protein involved in systemic acquired resistance signalling in *Arabidopsis*. Nature 419: 399–403

Malnoy M, Jin Q, Borejsza-Wysocka EE, He SY, Aldwinckle HS (2007) Overexpression of the apple MpNPR1 gene confers increased disease resistance in *Malus domestica*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 20:1568–1580

Martín-Rodríguez JA, León-Morcillo R, Vierheilig H, Ocampo JA, Ludwig-Müller J, García-Garrido JM (2011) Ethylene-dependent/ethylene-independent ABA regulation of tomato plants colonized by arbuscular mycorrhiza fungi. New Phytol 190:193–205

Maurhofer M, Reimmann C, Schmidli-Sacherer P, Heeb SD, Défago G (1998) Salicylic acid biosynthesis genes expressed in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain P3 improve the induction of systemic resistance in tobacco against tobacco necrosis virus. Phytopathology 88:678–684

Messinese E, Mun JH, Yeun LH, Jayaraman D, Rougé P, Barre A, Lougnon G, Schornack S, Bono JJ, Cook DR, Ané JM (2007) A novel nuclear protein interacts with the symbiotic DMI3 calcium- and calmodulin-dependent protein kinase of *Medicago truncatula*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 20:912–921

Métraux JP (2002) Recent breakthrough in the study of salicylic acid biosynthesis. Trends Plant Sci 7:332–334

Métraux JP, Signer H, Ryals J, Ward E, Wyss-Benz M, Gaudin J, Raschdorf K, Schmid E, Blum W, Inverardi B (1990) Increase in salicylic acid at the onset of systemic acquired resistance in cucumber. Science 250:1004–1006

Mishina TE, Zeier J (2006) The Arabidopsis flavin-dependent monooxygenase FMO1 is an essential component of biologically induced systemic acquired resistance. Plant Physiol 141:1666–1675

Mishina TE, Zeier J (2007) Pathogen-associated molecular pattern recognition rather than development of tissue necrosis contributes to bacterial induction of systemic acquired resistance in *Arabidopsis*. Plant J 50:500–513

Mithöfer A, Boland W (2008) Recognition of herbivory-associated molecular patterns. Plant Physiol 146:825–831

Miya A, Albert P, Shinya T, Desaki Y, Ichimura K, Shirasu K, Narusaka Y, Kawakami N, Kaku H, Shibuya N (2007) CERK1, a LysM receptor kinase is essential for chitin elicitor signaling in *Arabidopsis*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:19613–19618

Morandi D (1996) Occurrence of phytoalexins and phenolic compounds in endomycorrhizal interactions and their potential role in biological control. Plant Soil 185:241–251

Morandi D, Bailey JA, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (1984) Isoflavonoid accumulation in soybean roots infected with vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Physiol Plant Pathol 24:357–364

Mou Z, Fan W, Dong X (2003) Inducers of plant systemic acquired resistance regulate NPR1 function through redox changes. Cell 113:935–944

Mukherjee A, Ané JM (2011) Germinating spore exudates from arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi: molecular and developmental responses in plants and their regulation by ethylene. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 24:260–270

Murray JD, Duvvuru Muni R, Torres-Jerez I, Tang Y, Allen S, Andriankaja M, Li G, Laxmi A, Cheng X, Wen J, Vaughan D, Schultze M, Sun J, Charpentier M, Oldroyd G, Tadege M, Ratet P, Mysore KS, Chen R, Udvardi MK (2011) Vapyrin, a gene essential for intracellular progression of arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis, is also essential for infection by rhizobia in the nodule symbiosis of Medicago truncatula. Plant J 65:244–252

Nagahashi G, Douds DD (2000) Partial separation of root exudate compounds and their effects upon the growth of germinated spores of AM fungi. Mycol Res 104:1453–1464

Nakashita H, Yasuda M, Nitta T, Asami T, Fujioka S, Arai Y, Sekimata K, Takatsuto S, Yamaguchi I, Yoshida S (2003) Brassinosteroid functions in a broad range of disease resistance in tobacco and rice. Plant J 33:887–898

Návarová H, Bernsdorff F, Döring AC, Zeier J (2012) Pipecolic acid, an endogenous mediator of defense amplification and priming, is a critical regulator of inducible plant immunity. Plant Cell 24:5123–5141

Navarro L, Bari R, Achard P, Lison P, Nemri A, Harberd NP, Jones JD (2008) DELLAs control plant immune responses by modulating the balance of jasmonic acid and salicylic acid signaling. Curr Biol 18:650–655

Navazio L, Moscatiello R, Genre A, Novero M, Baldan B, Bonfante P, Mariani P (2007) A diffusible signal from arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi elicits a transient cytosolic calcium elevation in host plant cells. Plant Physiol 144:673–681

Newman EI, Reddell P (1987) The distribution of mycorrhizas among families of vascular plants. New Phytol 106:745–751

Newman MA, Sundelin T, Nielsen JT, Erbs G (2013) MAMP (microbe-associated molecular pattern) triggered immunity in plants. Front Plant Sci 4:139–152

Nishiguchi MK, Hirsch AM, Devinney R, Vedantam G, Riley MA, Mansky LM (2008) Deciphering evolutionary mechanisms between mutualistic and pathogenic symbioses. Vie Milieu Paris 58:87–106

Nouri E, Breuillin-Sessoms F, Feller U, Reinhardt D (2014) Phosphorus and nitrogen regulate arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis in *Petunia hybrida*. PLoS One 9:e90841. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0090841

Nürnberger T, Lipka V (2005) Non-host resistance in plants: new insights into an old phenomenon. Mol Plant Pathol 6:335–345

Oehl F, Sieverding E, Palenzuela J, Ineichen K, da Silva GA (2011) Advances in Glomeromycota taxonomy and classification. IMA Fungus 2:191–199

Olah B, Briere C, Bécard G, Dénarié J, Gough C (2005) Nod factors and a diffusible factor from arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi stimulate lateral root formation in *Medicago truncatula* via the DMI1/DMI2 signalling pathway. Plant J 44:195–207

Oldroyd GE (2013) Speak, friend, and enter: signalling systems that promote beneficial symbiotic associations in plants. Nat Rev Microbiol 11:252–263

Oldroyd GED, Downie JA (2006) Nuclear calcium changes at the core of symbiosis signalling. Curr Opin Plant Biol 9:351–357

Oostendorp M, Kunz W, Dietrich B, Staub T (2001) Induced disease resistance in plants by chemicals. Eur J Plant Pathol 107:19–28

Pajerowska-Mukhtar KM, Wang W, Tada Y, Oka N, Tucker CL, Fonseca JP, Dong X (2012) The HSF-like transcription factor TBF1 is a major molecular switch for plant growth to defense transition. Curr Biol 22:103–112

Pandey SP, Somssich IE (2009) The role of WRKY transcription factors in plant immunity. Plant Physiol 150:1648–1655

Pangesti N, Pineda A, Pieterse CMJ, Dicke M, van Loon JJA (2013) Two-way plant mediated interactions between root-associated microbes and insects: from ecology to mechanisms. Front Plant Sci 4:414. doi:10.3389/fpls.2013.00414

Park SW, Kaimoyo E, Kumar D, Mosher S, Klessig DF (2007) Methyl salicylate is a critical mobile signal for plant systemic acquired resistance. Science 318:113–116

Parniske M (2005) Plant-fungal associations: cue for the branching connection. Nature 435:750–751

Parniske M (2008) Arbuscular mycorrhiza: the mother of plant root endosymbioses. Nat Rev Microbiol 6:763–775

Pastor V, Luna E, Mauch-Mani B, Ton J, Flors V (2013) Primed plants do not forget. Environ Exp Bot 94:46–56

Pastor V, Balmer A, Gamir J, Flors V, Mauch-Mani B (2014) Preparing to fight back: generation and storage of priming compounds. Front Plant Sci 5:295–306

Pavet V, Quintero C, Cecchini NM, Rosa AL, Alvarez ME (2006) *Arabidopsis* displays centromeric DNA hypomethylation and cytological alterations of heterochromatin upon attack by *Pseudomonas syringae*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:577–587

Perez-Tienda J, Testillano PS, Balestrini R, Fiorilli V, Azcon-Aguilar C, Ferrol N (2011) GintAMT2, a new member of the ammonium transporter family in the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus intraradices*. Fungal Genet Biol 48:1044–1055

Pieterse CMJ (2012) Prime time for transgenerational defense. Plant Physiol 158:545

Pieterse CMJ, Dicke M (2007) Plant interactions with microbes and insects: from molecular mechanisms to ecology. Trends Plant Sci 12:564–569

Pieterse CMJ, Van Loon LC (2004) NPR1: the spider in the web of induced resistance signaling pathways. Curr Opin Plant Biol 7:456–464

Pieterse CMJ, Van Wess SCM (2015) Induced disease resistance. In: Lugtenberg B (ed) Principles of plant-microbe interactions: microbes for sustainable agriculture. Springer, Gewerbestrasse, Switzerland, pp 123–134

Pieterse CMJ, Van Wees SCM, Hoffland E, Van Pelt JA, Van Loon LC (1996) Systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis* induced by biocontrol bacteria is independent of salicylic acid accumulation and pathogenesis-related gene expression. Plant Cell 8:1225–1237

Pieterse CMJ, Van Wees SCM, Van Pelt JA, Knoester M, Laan R, Gerrits H, Weisbeek PJ, van Loon LC (1998) A novel signaling pathway controlling induced systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Cell 10:1571–1580

Pieterse CMJ, Van Pelt JA, Van Wees CMS, Ton J, Leon-Kloosterziel KM, Joost JB, Keurentjes JJB, Verhagen WMB, Knoester M, Van der Sluis L, Bakker AHMP, Van Loon LC (2001) Rhizobacteria-mediated induced systemic resistance: triggering, signalling and expression. Eur J Plant Pathol 107:51–61

Pieterse CMJ, Leon-Reyes A, Van der Ent S, Van Wees SCM (2009) Networking by small-molecule hormones in plant immunity. Nat Chem Biol 5:308–316

Pieterse CMJ, Van der Does D, Zamioudis C, Leon-Reyes A, Van Wees SCM (2012) Hormonal modulation of plant immunity. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 28:489–521

Pieterse CMJ, Zamoudis C, Berendsen RL, Weller DM, Van Wees CMS, Bakker AHMP (2014) Induced systemic resistance by beneficial microbes. Annu Rev Phytopathol 52:347–375

Pirozynski KA, Dalpé Y (1989) Geological history of the Glomaceae with particular reference to mycorrhizal symbiosis. Symbiosis 7:1–36

Potlakayala SD, DeLong C, Sharpe A, Fobert PR (2007) Conservation of non-expressor of pathogenesis-related genes 1 function between *Arabidopsis thaliana* and *Brassica napus*. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 71:174–183

Pozo MJ, Azcón-Aguilar C (2007) Unravelling mycorrhiza-induced resistance. Curr Opin Plant Biol 10:393–398

Pozo MJ, Azcon-Aguilar C, Dumas-Gaudot E, Barea JM (1999) β-1,3-glucanase activities in tomato roots inoculated with arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and/or *Phytophthora parasitica* and their possible involvement in bioprotection. Plant Sci 141:149–157

Pozo MJ, Cordier C, Dumas-Gaudot E, Gianinazzi S, Barea JM, Azcon-Aguilar C (2002) Localized versus systemic effect of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on defence responses to *Phytophthora* infection in tomato plants. J Exp Bot 53:525–534

Pozo MJ, Verhage A, García-Andrade J, García JM, Azcón-Aguilar C (2009) Priming plant defences against pathogens by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. In: Azcón-Aguilar C, Barea JM, Gianinazzi S, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (eds) Mycorrhizas: functional processes and ecological impact. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 137–149

Pozo MJ, Jung SC, López-Ráez JA, Azcón-Aguilar C (2010) Impact of arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis on plant response to biotic stress: the role of plant defence mechanisms. In: Koltai H, Kapulnik Y (eds) Arbuscular mycorrhizas: physiology and function, 2nd edn. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 193–207

Pozo MJ, Martinéz-Medina A, Jung SC, Fernandez I, López-Ráez JA, Azcón-Aguilar C (2012) Priming plant defences by beneficial soil fungi. In: Rodrigues FA, Alessandro Antônio Fortunato AA (eds) Indução de resistência em plantas a patógenos—Anais da IV Reunião Brasileira Sobre Indução de Resistência em Plantas a Patógenos, 1st edn. Departamento de Fitopatologia, UFV, Viçosa, pp 139–175

Pozo MJ, Jung SC, Martínez-Medina A, López-Ráez JA, Azcón-Aguilar C, Barea JM (2013) Root allies: arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi help plants to cope with biotic stresses. In: Aroca R (ed) Symbiotic endophytes. Springer, Berlin, pp 289–307

Pozo MJ, López-Ráez JA, Azcón-Aguilar C, García-Garrido JM (2015) Phytohormones as integrators of environmental signals in the regulation of mycorrhizal symbioses. New Phytol 205:1431–1436

Pumplin N, Mondo SJ, Topp S, Starker CG, Gantt JS, Harrison MJ (2010) *Medicago truncatula* Vapyrin is a novel protein required for arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Plant J 61:482–494

Quilis J, Penas G, Messeguer J, Brugidou C, San Segundo B (2008) The *Arabidopsis* AtNPR1 inversely modulates defense responses against fungal, bacterial, or viral pathogens while on ferring hypersensitivity to abiotic stresses in transgenic rice. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 21:1215–1231

Raskin I, Ehmann A, Melander WR, Meeuse BJ (1987) Salicylic acid: a natural inducer of heat production in *Arum lilies*. Science 237:1601–1602

Raskin I, Turner IM, Melander WR (1989) Regulation of heat production in the inflorescences of an *Arum* lily by endogenous salicylic acid. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 86:2214–2218
Rasmann S, De Vos M, Casteel CL, Tian D, Halitschke R, Sun JY, Agrawal AA, Felton GW, Jander G (2012) Herbivory in the previous generation primes plants for enhanced insect resistance. Plant Physiol 158:854–863
Recorbet G, Abdallah C, Renaut J, Wipf D, Dumas-Gaudot E (2013) Protein actors sustaining arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis: underground artists break the silence. New Phytol 199:26–40
Redecker D, Raab P (2006) Phylogeny of the Glomeromycota (arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi): recent developments and new gene markers. Mycologia 98:885–895
Redecker D, Kodner R, Graham LE (2000) Glomalean fungi from the Ordovician. Science 289:1920–1921
Redecker D, Schüßler A, Stockinger H, Stürmer SL, Morton JB, Walker C (2013) An evidence-based consensus for the classification of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (Glomeromycota). Mycorrhiza 23:515–531
Reglinski T, Walters D (2009) Induced resistance for plant disease control. In: Walters D (ed) Disease control in crops. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford, UK, pp 62–92
Remy W, Taylor TN, Hass H, Kerp H (1994) Four hundred-million year-old vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizae. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 91:11841–11843
Rival P, de Billy F, Bono JJ, Gough C, Charles Rosenberg C, Bensmihen S (2012) Epidermal and cortical roles of NFP and DMI3 in coordinating early steps of nodulation in *Medicago truncatula*. Development 139:3383–3391
Rivas-San Vicente M, Plasencia J (2011) Salicylic acid beyond defence: its role in plant growth and development. J Exp Bot 62:3321–3338
Robert-Seilaniantz A, Navarro L, Bari R, Jones JD (2007) Pathological hormone imbalances. Curr Opin Plant Biol 10:372–379
Robert-Seilaniantz A, Grant M, Jones JD (2011) Hormone crosstalk in plant disease and defense: more than just jasmonate-salicylate antagonism. Annu Rev Phytopathol 49:317–343
Ron M, Avni A (2004) The receptor for the fungal elicitor ethylene-inducing xylanase is a member of a resistance-like gene family in tomato. Plant Cell 16:1604–1615
Rosendahl S (2008) Communities, populations and individuals of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. New Phytol 178:253–266
Ryals JA, Neuenschwander UH, Willits MG, Molina A, Steiner H-Y, Hunt MD (1996) Systemic acquired resistance. Plant Cell 8:1808–1819
Saldajeno MG, Chandanie WA, Kubota M, Hyakumachi M (2008) Effects of interactions of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and beneficial saprophytic mycoflora on plant growth and disease protection. In: Siddiqui ZA, Akhtar MS, Futai K (eds) Mycorrhizae: sustainable agriculture and forestry. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 211–226
Sanchez L, Weidmann S, Brechenmacher L, Batoux M, van Tuinen D, Lemanceau P, Gianinazzi S, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (2004) Common gene expression in Medicago truncatula roots in response to *Pseudomonas fluorescens* colonization, mycorrhiza development and nodulation. New Phytol 161:855863
Schliemann W, Ammer C, Strack D (2008) Metabolite profiling of mycorrhizal roots of *Medicago truncatula*. Phytochemistry 69:112–146
Schreiner RP, Bethlenfalvy GJ (1995) Mycorrhizal interactions in sustainable agriculture. Crit Rev Biotechnol 15:271–287
Schüßler A, Walker C (2010) The Glomeromycota: a species list with new families and genera. The Royal Botanic Garden, Edinburgh and Kew, UK. http://www.amf-phylogeny.com. Accessed 22 Aug 2015
Schüßler A, Schwarzott D, Walker C (2001) A new fungal phylum, the Glomeromycota: phylogeny and evolution. Mycol Res 105:1413–1421
Schwessinger B, Ronald PC (2012) Plant innate immunity: perception of conserved microbial signatures. Annu Rev Plant Biol 63:451–482

Selosse MA, Bessis A, Pozo MJ (2014) Microbial priming of plant and animal immunity: symbionts as developmental signals. Trends Microbiol 22:607–613

Sequeira L (1983) Mechanisms of induced resistance in plants. Annu Rev Microbiol 37:51–79

Shah J, Zeier J (2013) Long-distance communication and signal amplification in systemic acquired resistance. Front Plant Sci 4:30–45

Shah J, Chaturvedi R, Chowdhury Z, Venables B, Petros RAS (2014) Signaling by small metabolites in systemic acquired resistance. Plant J 79:645–658

Sharma MP, Gaur A, Mukerji KG (2007) Arbuscular mycorrhiza mediated plant pathogen interactions and the mechanisms involved. In: Sharma MP, Gaur A, Mukerji KG (eds) Biological control of plant diseases. Haworth Press, Binghamton, pp 47–63

Shaul O, Galili S, Volpin H, Ginzberg I, Elad Y, Chet I, Kapulnik Y (1999) Mycorrhiza induced changes in disease severity and PR protein expression in tobacco leaves. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 12:1000–1007

Shimizu T, Nakano T, Takamizawa D, Desaki Y, Ishii-Minami N, Nishizawa Y, Minami E, Okada K, Yamane H, Kaku H, Shibuya N (2010) Two LysM receptor molecules, CEBiP and OsCERK1, cooperatively regulate chitin elicitor signaling in rice. Plant J 64:204–214

Siciliano V, Genre A, Balestrini R, Cappellazzo G, deWit PJ, Bonfante P (2007a) Transcriptome analysis of arbuscular mycorrhizal roots during development of the prepenetration apparatus. Plant Physiol 144:1455–1466

Siciliano V, Genre A, Balestrini R, Dewit PJ, Bonfante P (2007b) Pre-penetration apparatus formation during AM infection is associated with a specific transcriptome response in epidermal cells. Plant Signal Behav 2:533–535

Sieberer BJ, Chabaud M, Fournier J, Timmers AC, Barker DG (2012) A switch in Ca^{2+} spiking signature is concomitant with endosymbiotic microbe entry into cortical root cells of *Medicago truncatula*. Plant J 69:822–830

Sikes BA, Powell JR, Rillig MC (2010) Deciphering the relative contributions of multiple functions within plant-microbe symbioses. Ecology 91:1591–1597

Silipo A, Erbs G, Shinya T, Dow JM, Parrilli M, Lanzetta R, Shibuya N, Newman MA, Molinaro A (2010) Glycoconjugates as elicitors or suppressors of plant innate immunity. Glycobiology 20:406–419

Simon L, Bousquet J, Lévesque C, Lalone M (1993) Origin and diversification of endomycorrhizal fungi and coincidence with vascular land plants. Nature 363:67–69

Singh S, Parniske M (2012) Activation of calcium- and calmodulin-dependent protein kinase (CCaMK), the central regulator of plant root endosymbiosis. Curr Opin Plant Biol 15:444–453

Singh R, Adholega A, Mukerji KG (2000) Mycorrhiza in control of soil borne pathogens. In: Mukerji KG, Chamola BP, Singh J (eds) Mycorrhizal biology. Kluwer, New York, pp 173–196

Slaughter A, Daniel X, Flors V, Luna E, Hohn B, Mauch-Mani B (2012) Descendants of primed *Arabidopsis* plants exhibit resistance to biotic stress. Plant Physiol 158:835–843

Slezack S, Dumas-Gaudot E, Paynot M, Gianinazzi S (2000) Is a fully established arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis required for bioprotection of *Pisum sativum* roots against *Aphanomyces euteiches*? Mol Plant Microbe Interact 13:238–241

Smith SE, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (1988) Physiological interactions between symbionts in vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal plants. Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol 39:221–244

Smith SE, Read DJ (2008) Mycorrhizal symbiosis. Academic, London

Smith SE, Smith FA (2011) Roles of arbuscular mycorrhizas in plant nutrition and growth: new paradigms from cellular to ecosystem scales. Annu Rev Plant Biol 62:227–250

Smith JL, De Moraes CM, Mescher MC (2009) Jasmonate- and salicylate-mediated plant defense responses to insect herbivores, pathogens and parasitic plants. Pest Manag Sci 65:497–503

Song JT, Lu H, McDowell JM, Greenberg JT (2004) A key role for ALD1 in activation of local and systemic defenses in *Arabidopsis*. Plant J 40:200–212

Spanu P, Boller T, Ludwig A, Wiemken A, Faccio A, Bonfante FP (1989) Chitinase in roots of mycorrhizal *Allium porrum*: regulation and localization. Planta 177:447–455

Spoel SH, Dong X (2012) How do plants achieve immunity? Defence without specialized immune cells. Nat Rev Immunol 12:89–100

Spoel SH, Mou ZL, Tada Y, Spivey NW, Genschik P, Dong XNA (2009) Proteasome-mediated turnover of the transcription coactivator NPR1 plays dual roles in regulating plant immunity. Cell 137:860–872

Staehelin C, Xie ZP, Illana A, Vierheilig H (2011) Long-distance transport of signals during symbiosis: are nodule formation and mycorrhization autoregulated in a similar way? Plant Signal Behav 6:372–377

St-Arnaud M, Vujanovic V (2007) Effect of the arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis on plant diseases and pests. In: Hamel C, Plenchette C (eds) Mycorrhizae in crop production: applying knowledge. Haworth Press, Binghampton, NY, pp 67–122

St-Arnaud M, Hamel C, Vimard B, Caron M, Fortin JA (1995) Altered growth of *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *chrysanthemi* in an *in vitro* dual culture system with the vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus intraradices* growing on *Daucus carota* transformed roots. Mycorrhiza 5:431–438

Staskawicz BJ, Mudgett MB, Dangl JL, Galan JE (2001) Common and contrasting themes of plant and animal diseases. Science 292:2285–2289

Sticher LB, Mauch-Mani B, Metraux JP (1997) Systemic acquired resistance. Annu Rev Phytopathol 35:235–270

Strack D, Fester T (2006) Isoprenoid metabolism and plastid reorganization in arbuscular mycorrhizal roots. New Phytol 172:22–34

Svistoonoff S, Benabdoun FM, Nambiar-Veetil M, Imanishi L, Vaissayre V, Cesari S, Diagne N, Hocher V, de Billy F, Bonneau J, Wall L, Ykhlef N, Rosenberg C, Bogusz D, Franche C, Gherbi H (2013) The independent acquisition of plant root nitrogen-fixing symbiosis in fabids recruited the same genetic pathway for nodule organogenesis. PLoS One 8:e64515. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0064515

Taylor TN, Remy W, Hass H, Kerp H (1995) Fossil arbuscular mycorrhizae from the early Devonian. Mycologia 87:560–573

Thaler JS, Humphrey PT, Whiteman NK (2012) Evolution of jasmonate and salicylate signal crosstalk. Trends Plant Sci 17:260–270

Thomma B, Eggermont K, Penninckx I, Mauch-Mani B, Vogelsang R, Cammue B, Broekaert W (1998) Separate jasmonate-dependent and salicylate-dependent defense-response pathways in Arabidopsis are essential for resistance to distinct microbial pathogens. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95:15107–15111

Ton J, Mauch-Mani B (2004) β-amino-butyric acid-induced resistance against necrotrophic pathogens is based on ABA-dependent priming for callose. Plant J 38:119–130

Ton J, Van Pelt JA, Van Loon LC, Pieterse CMJ (2002) Differential effectiveness of salicylate-dependent and jasmonate/ethylene-dependent induced resistance in *Arabidopsis*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:27–34

Toussaint JP (2007) Investigating physiological changes in the aerial parts of AM plants: what do we know and where should we be heading? Mycorrhiza 17:349–353

Traw MB, Kniskern JM, Bergelson J (2007) SAR increases fitness of Arabidopsis thaliana in the presence of natural bacterial pathogens. Evolution 61:2444–2449

Trotta A, Vanese GC, Gnavi E, Fascon A, Sampo S, Berta G (1996) Interaction between the soilborne root pathogen *Phytophthora nicotianae* Var *parasitica* and the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus mosseae* in tomato plant. Plant Soil 185:199–209

Trujillo M, Shirasu K (2010) Ubiquitination in plant immunity. Curr Opin Plant Biol 13:402–408

Tsuda K, Katagiri F (2010) Comparing signaling mechanisms engaged in pattern-triggered and effector-triggered immunity. Curr Opin Plant Biol 13:459–465

Ulker B, Somssich IE (2004) WRKY transcription factors: from DNA binding towards biological function. Curr Opin Plant Biol 7:491–498

Vallad GE, Goodman RM (2004) Systemic acquired resistance and induced systemic resistance in conventional agriculture. Crop Sci 44:1920–1934

Van der Biezen EA, Jones JD (1998) Plant disease-resistance proteins and the gene-for-gene concept. Trends Biochem Sci 23:454–456

Van der Ent S, Van Wees SCM, Pieterse CMJ (2009) Jasmonate signaling in plant interactions with resistance-inducing beneficial microbes. Phytochemistry 70:1581–1588
van der Heijden MGA, Bardgett RD, van Straalen NM (2008) The unseen majority: soil microbes as drivers of plant diversity and productivity in terrestrial ecosystems. Ecol Lett 11:296–310
Van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM (2005) Induced systemic resistance as a mechanism of disease suppression by rhizobacteria. In: Siddiqui ZA (ed) PGPR: biocontrol and biofertilization. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 39–66
Van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM, Pieterse CMJ (1998) Systemic resistance induced by rhizosphere bacteria. Annu Rev Phytopathol 36:453–483
Van Loon LC, Rep M, Pieterse CMJ (2006) Significance of inducible defense-related proteins in infected plants. Annu Rev Phytopathol 44:135–162
Van Peer R, Niemann GJ, Schippers B (1991) Induced resistance and phytoalexin accumulation in biological control of *fusarium* wilt of carnation by *Pseudomonas* sp. Strain WCS417r. Phytopathology 81:728–734
Van Wees SC, Van der Ent S, Pieterse CMJ (2008) Plant immune responses triggered by beneficial microbes. Curr Opin Plant Biol 11:443–448
Verhoeven KJF, Jansen JJ, Van Dijk PJ, Biere A (2010) Stress-induced DNA methylation changes and their heritability in asexual dandelions. New Phytol 185:1108–1118
Vierheilig H (2004) Further root colonization by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi in already mycorrhizal plants is suppressed after a critical level of root colonization. J Plant Physiol 161:339–341
Vierheilig H, Piché Y (2002) Signalling in arbuscular mycorrhiza: facts and hypotheses. In: Buslig B, Manthey J (eds) Flavonoids in cell function. Kluwer, New York, pp 23–39
Vierheilig H, Maier W, Wyss U, Samson J, Strack D, Piché Y (2000) Cyclohexenone derivative- and phosphate-levels in split-root systems and their role in the systemic suppression of mycorrhization in precolonized barley plants. J Plant Physiol 157:593–599
Vierheilig H, Steinkellner S, Khaosaad T, Garcia-Garrido JM (2008a) The biocontrol effect of mycorrhization on soilborne fungal pathogens and the autoregulation of the AM symbiosis: one mechanism, two effects. In: Varma A (ed) Mycorrhiza. Springer, Berlin, pp 307–320
Vierheilig H, Steinkellner S, Khaosaad T, Garcia-Garrido JM (2008b) The biocontrol effect of mycorrhization on soil-borne fungal pathogens and the autoregulation of the AM symbiosis: one mechanism, two effects? In: Varma A (ed) Mycorrhiza: genetics and molecular biology, eco-function, biotechnology, eco-physiology, structure and systematics. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 307–320
Vlot AC, Dempsey DA, Klessig DF (2009) Salicylic acid a multifaceted hormone to combat disease. Annu Rev Phytopathol 47:177–206
Vos CM, Tesfahun AN, Panis B, de Waele D, Elsen A (2012) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi induce systemic resistance in tomato against the sedentary nematode Meloidogyne incognita and the migratory nematode Pratylenchus penetrans. Appl Soil Ecol 61:1–6
Vos C, Schouteden N, van Tuinen D, Chatagnier O, Elsen A, De Waele D, Panis B, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (2013) Mycorrhiza-induced resistance against the root-knot nematode *Meloidogyne incognita* involves priming of defense gene responses in tomato. Soil Biol Biochem 60:45–54
Walley JW, Rowe HC, Xiao Y, Chehab EW, Kliebenstein DJ, Wagner D, Dehesh K (2008) The chromatin remodeler SPLAYED regulates specific stress signaling pathways. PLoS Pathog 4(12):e1000237. doi:10.1371/journal.ppat.1000237
Wally O, Jayaraj J, Punja ZK (2009) Broad-spectrum disease resistance to necrotrophic and biotrophic pathogens in transgenic carrots (*Daucus carota* L.) expressing an Arabidopsis NPR1 gene. Planta 231:131–141
Walter MH, Floss DS, Hans J, Fester T, Strack D (2007) Apocarotenoid biosynthesis in arbuscular mycorrhizal roots: contributions from methylerythritol phosphate pathway isogenes and tools for its manipulation. Phytochemistry 68:130–138
Walters D, Heil M (2007) Costs and trade-offs associated with induced resistance. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 71:3–17

Walters DR, Ratse J, Havis ND (2013) Controlling crop diseases using induced resistance: challenges for the future. J Exp Bot 64(1263):1280

Wan J, Zhang XC, Neece D, Ramonell KM, Clough S, Kim SY, Stacey MG, Stacey G (2008) A LysM receptor-like kinase plays a critical role in chitin signaling and fungal resistance in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Cell 20:471–481

Wang D, Dong X (2011) A highway for war and peace: the secretory pathway in plant-microbe interactions. Mol Plant 4:581–587

Wang B, Qiu YL (2006) Phylogenetic distribution and evolution of mycorrhizas in land plants. Mycorrhiza 16:299–363

Wang D, Weaver ND, Kesarwani M, Dong X (2005) Induction of protein secretory pathway is required for systemic acquired resistance. Science 308:1036–1040

Wang D, Amornsiripanitch N, Dong X (2006) A genomic approach to identify regulatory nodes in the transcriptional network of systemic acquired resistance in plants. PLoS Pathog 2(11):e123. doi:10.1371/journal.ppat.0020123

Wang M, Alessandro Vannozzi A, Wang G, Liang Y-H, Tornielli GB, Zenoni S, Cavallini E, Pezzotti M, Zong-Ming Cheng Z-M (2014) Genome and transcriptome analysis of the grapevine (*Vitis vinifera* L.) WRKY gene family. Hortic Res 16:1–16

Ward ER, Uknes SJ, Williams SC, Dincher SS, Wiederhold DL, Alexander DC, Ahl-Goy P, Métraux JP, Ryals JA (1991) Coordinate gene activity in response to agents that induce systemic acquired resistance. Plant Cell 3:1085–1094

Wasternack C, Hause B (2013) Jasmonates: biosynthesis, perception, signal transduction and action in plant stress response, growth and development. An update to the 2007 review in Annals of Botany. Ann Bot 111:1021–1058

Wehner J, Antunes PM, Powell J, Mazukatow J, Rillig MC (2009) Plant pathogen protection by arbuscular mycorrhizas: a role for fungal diversity? Pedobiologia. doi:10.1016/j.pedobi.2009.10.002

Wei G, Kloepper JW, Tuzun S (1991) Induction of systemic resistance of cucumber to *Colletotrichum orbiculare* by select strains of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Phytopathology 81:1508–1512

Whipps JM (2004) Prospects and limitations for mycorrhizas in biocontrol of root pathogens. Can J Bot 82:1198–1227

Wiesel L, Newton AC, Elliott I, Booty D, Gilroy EM, Birch PRJ, Hein I (2014) Molecular effects of resistance elicitors from biological origin and their potential for crop protection. Front Plant Sci 5:655. doi:10.3389/fpls.2014.00655

Wildermuth MC, Dewdney J, Wu G, Ausubel FM (2001) Isochorismate synthase is required to synthesize salicylic acid for plant defence. Nature 414:562–565

Willmann R, Lajunen HM, Erbs G, Newman MA, Kolb D, Tsuda K, Katagiri F, Fliegmann J, Bono JJ, Cullimore JV, Jehle AK, Götz F, Kulik A, Molinaro A, Lipka V, Gust AA, Nürnberger T (2011) *Arabidopsis* lysin-motif proteins LYM1 LYM3 CERK1 mediate bacterial peptidoglycan sensing and immunity to bacterial infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:19824–19829

Wu Y, Zhang D, Chu JY, Boyle P, Wang Y, Brindle ID, De Luca V, Després C (2012) The Arabidopsis NPR1 protein is a receptor for the plant defense hormone salicylic acid. Cell Rep 1:639–647

Wu S, Shan L, He P (2014) Microbial signature-triggered plant defense responses and early signaling mechanisms. Plant Sci 228:118–126

Xavier LJC, Boyetchko SM (2004) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi in plant disease control. In: Arora DK (ed) Fungal biotechnology in agricultural, food, and environmental applications. Dekker, New York, pp 183–194

Yamaguchi Y, Huffaker A (2014) Endogenous peptide elicitors in higher plants. Curr Opin Plant Biol 14:351–357

Yamaguchi Y, Pearce G, Ryan CA (2006) The cell surface leucine-rich repeat receptor for AtPep1, an endogenous peptide elicitor in *Arabidopsis*, is functional in transgenic tobacco cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:10104–10109

Yano K, Yoshida S, Müller J, Singh S, Banba M, Vickers K, Markmann K, White C, Schuller B, Sato S, Asamizu E, Tabata S, Murooka Y, Perry J, Wang TL, Kawaguchi M, Imaizumi-Anraku

H, Hayashi M, Parniske M (2008) CYCLOPS, a mediator of symbiotic intracellular accommodation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:20540–20545

Yao MK, Desilets H, Charles MT, Boulanger R, Tweddell RJ (2003) Effect of mycorrhization on the accumulation of rishitin and solavetivone in potato plantlets challenged with Rhizoctonia solani. Mycorrhiza 13:333–336

Yu IC, Parker J, Bent AF (1998) Gene-for-gene disease resistance without the hypersensitive response in *Arabidopsis dnd1* mutant. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95:7819–7824

Zamioudis C, Pieterse CMJ (2012) Modulation of host immunity by beneficial microbes. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 25:139–150

Zamioudis C, Hanson J, Pieterse CM (2014) β-Glucosidase BGLU42 is a MYB72-dependent key regulator of rhizobacteria-induced systemic resistance and modulates iron deficiency responses in *Arabidopsis roots*. New Phytol 204:368–379

Zeng RS (2006) Disease resistance in plants through mycorrhizal fungi induced allelochemicals. In: Inderjit, Mukerji KG (eds) Allelochemicals: biological control of plant pathogens and diseases. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 181–192

Zhang J, Zhou JM (2010) Plant immunity triggered by microbial molecular signatures. Mol Plant 3:783–793

Zheng XY, Spivey NW, Zeng W, Liu PP, Fu ZQ, Klessig DF, He SY, Dong X (2012) Coronatine promotes Pseudomonas syringae virulence in plants by activating a signaling cascade that inhibits salicylic acid accumulation. Cell Host Microbe 11:587–596

Zipfel C (2014) Plant pattern-recognition receptors. Trends Immunol 35:345–351

Zipfel C, Robatzek S (2010) Pathogen-associated molecular pattern-triggered immunity: veni, vidi…? Plant Physiol 154:551–554

Zipfel C, Robatzek S, Navarro L, Oakeley EJ, Jones JD, Felix G, Boller T (2004) Bacterial disease resistance in *Arabidopsis* through flagellin perception. Nature 428:764–767

Zuccaro A, Lahrmann U, Langen G (2014) Broad compatibility in fungal root symbioses. Curr Opin Plant Biol 20:135–145

Response of PGPR and AM Fungi Toward Growth and Secondary Metabolite Production in Medicinal and Aromatic Plants

Mallappa Kumara Swamy, Mohd Sayeed Akhtar, and Uma Rani Sinniah

Abstract Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPRs) are a group of naturally occurring beneficial soil bacteria that colonize with the plant root system and promote growth by triggering the production of growth-regulating substances and facilitate the plants in the uptake of essential nutrients from the surrounding environments. Similarly, arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) fungi also enhanced the growth, water and nutrient uptake, and especially available phosphate through their specialized hyphae. In addition, PGPR and AM fungi are known to stimulate the accumulation of secondary metabolites in plants. For several years, they are commonly employed to increase the plant yield and productivity especially in agricultural practices. The medicinal and aromatic plants are gaining popularity worldwide due to high therapeutic properties with negligible toxic side effects. To fulfill the global demand and supply gap for medicinal and aromatic plants and their products, farmers are encouraged to cultivate these plants on a large scale. However, there is a need to understand and implement a better cultivation practices in order to improve the quality of medicinal and aromatic plants. In this regard, the utilization of PGPRs and AM fungi as biofertilizers instead of chemical fertilizers could be a promising approach to the development of medicinal and aromatic plants under the sustainable production system. The aim of this chapter is to describe the potentiality of PGPRs and AM fungi to improve growth and development of medicinal and aromatic plants and accumulation of secondary metabolites having high therapeutic worth and also pave a way in the development of new biotechnological products as biofertilizers.

Keywords Plant metabolites • Rhizobacteria • Bioinoculants • Crop productivity • Signal molecules

---

The original version of this chapter was revised: The spelling of the second author's name was corrected. The erratum to this chapter is available at 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_19

M.K. Swamy (✉) • U.R. Sinniah (✉)
Department of Crop Science, Faculty of Agriculture, Universiti Putra Malaysia,
43400 Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia
e-mail: swamy.bio@gmail.com; umarani@upm.edu.my

M.S. Akhtar (✉)
Department of Botany, Gandhi Faiz-E-Aam College,
Shahjahanpur 242001, Uttar Pradesh, India
e-mail: sayeedbot@gmail.com

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_7

1 Introduction

Medicinal and aromatic plants (MAPs) are the chief component of the flora, which provides biologically active phytochemicals used in pharmaceuticals, cosmetics, fragrance, flavor, and perfumery industry (Swamy et al. 2012; Efferth and Greten 2012; Mohanty et al. 2015). They are well utilized in various traditional medicinal practices by the indigenous peoples all over the world for treating various human ailments (Akhtar et al. 2014; Swamy and Sinniah 2015). At present synthetic drug research has much progressed toward the development of new molecules for treating various human health problems. The potential of plant metabolites are better exploited considerably using biotechnology to make new chemical drugs having greater biological activities (Gandhi et al. 2015). However, medicinal plants and their products are still considered as the major sources of medicine to treat various health problems. Throughout the world, many pharmaceutical industries are screening natural products based on plants collected mainly from developing countries which are located in tropical and subtropical regions of the globe where rich biodiversity exists. Currently, more popularity is gained by medicinal and aromatic plants because of their wide application in the preparation of various medicaments and manyfold increase in the interest toward phytotherapy research and its biodynamic studies. This is due to the fact that plant-based drugs being more efficient are very safe and cause no side effects during the treatment of various common diseases and a number of chronic illnesses (Canter 2005; Akhtar et al. 2014; Mohanty et al. 2014). The presence of various phytochemicals, referred as secondary metabolites such as phenolics, tannins, flavonoids, alkaloids, and essential oils in different compositions, is said to impart biological activities to medicinal and aromatic plants (Okigbo et al. 2009; Swamy et al. 2011; Akhtar et al. 2014; Gezahegn et al. 2015). Moreover, occurrence of few other chemical constituents can also either mediate to check the possible detrimental adverse cause of the main active ingredient or aid in the absorption of the chemical ingredient. Nowadays, many medicinal and aromatic plants are medically exploited by employing their several secondary metabolites simultaneously against single or multiple target sites which are related to physiological route (Gandhi et al. 2015).

Based on the traditional knowledge of medicinal practices, about 25 % of the modern medicines are mainly derived from MAPs (Sucher and Carles 2008; Kosalge and Fursule 2009; Sudipta et al. 2011; Pan et al. 2013; Swamy et al. 2015). Traditional system of medicine is very well practiced, in South Asia, Africa, and Europe. Traditional systems of medicine make use of several thousands of plant species to cure stomach ulcers, malaria, and many more diseases in China, India, and many other countries in South and East Asia. Ayurvedic system of medicine dates back to 5000 BC in China, India, and many other countries in South and East Asia (Swamy and Sinniah 2015). In these countries, there is a continuous support from the public to protect and promote cultural and spiritual values of traditional medical systems. About 90 % of the ingredients exploited in medicinal practices such as Ayurveda, Unani, Siddha, and homeopathy medicines are plant based, and approximately 25 %

of modern allopathic medicines constitute herbal sources. It has been also reported that about 80 % of the world's populations utilize plant-based traditional medicine to fulfill their primary healthcare needs (Swamy et al. 2011; Pan et al. 2013; Sudipta et al. 2014; Gezahegn et al. 2015; Swamy et al. 2015). More than 65 % of the rural population in India still uses traditional herbal preparation to treat various health problems. Over 1600 flowering plant species are employed in the preparation of herbal medicine in India, and the majority (90 %) of these species occur in the alpine and subalpine region of Himalaya (Uniyal et al. 2002; Raut and Karuppayil 2014). More than 9000 native plants have been identified and recorded for their curative properties, and about 1500 species are known for their aroma and flavor. In 2006, the demand for plant-based drugs in the global market was about US$ 20 billion. An approximate estimation for camptothecin (an anticancer drug) market globally was about US$ 1,000 million and predicted that plant derived drug market share to increase up to US$ 5 trillion by 2050 (Pan et al. 2013; Kaushik et al 2015).

Aromatic plants have odorous volatile essential oils, gum exudates, balsam, and oleoresins in various plant parts such as roots, woods, barks, stems, foliages, flowers, and fruits. Several spices are considered under aromatic plants as they possess a characteristic fragrance in whole, in broken, or in ground forms which adds pleasure to consume foods and beverages (Chandarana et al. 2005; Djilani and Dicko 2012). The occurrence of different chemical substances adds characteristic aroma to the essential oil. There is a rapid growth in the world demand for essential oil and natural aroma chemicals used in drug synthesis, food flavoring, fragrances, perfumes, cosmetics, and related products. Today around 3000 types of plant essential oils are traded (about 40,000–60,000 tons/annum), and their commercial market value is estimated to be US$ 700 million indicating huge global consumption of essential oils (Djilani and Dicko 2012; Raut and Karuppayil 2014). India is one of the rich countries having very rich repository of aromatic plant species with global importance. Since, engagement of science toward multipurpose utilization of MAPs is causing a threat to species abundance as well as local extinction (Aneesh et al. 2009).

As global demand is increasing, medicinal and aromatic plant population are depleting due to irrational collection and overexploitation of the flora. The rural populations of South Asian countries collect unscientifically and trade these medicinal and aromatic plants to make their income. It is observed that from a single district of Pithoragarh in Uttarakhand state of India, people collect and trade more than 1300 tons of MAPs and most of them are done illegally. These factors make these wild species to become extinct or endangered (Amujoyegbe et al. 2012). Therefore, proper utilization of the medicinal and aromatic plant plays an important role in conserving floral species and improving biodiversity in the region. The governments of many developing nations have initiated many programs and regulations to conserve the threatened plant species in their natural habitats. Farmers are also encouraged to cultivate economically important medicinal and aromatic plants to meet the global supply of raw materials. This will improve the financial stability among the rural population and indirectly maintains environmental sustainability (Kala et al. 2006; Kala 2009).

Small-scale cultivation of MAPs requires less financial inputs, but can generate income by selling at local markets. However, when its cultivation is domesticated in various farming practices, it can offer extra income to the rural family. Growing medicinal plant in home gardens is increasingly encouraged to make use of plant sources to cure very common health problems (Kumar and Nair 2004). On the other hand, large-scale cultivation of medicinal and aromatic plants depends on various factors such as selection of suitable seeds or planting materials and good cultivation practices, and management strategies such as irrigation, fertilization, and control against weeds, pests, and diseases should be adopted to obtain a better yield and good quality of the raw material. Harvesting, processing, and commercialization of processes also contribute to product yield. Therefore, large-scale cultivation of medicinal and aromatic plants requires much more attention in order to meet the global pharmaceutical demand for high-quality raw materials (Lubbe and Verpoorte 2011).

Plant-based supply of raw materials for pharmaceutical industries prefers cultivated plant materials than a wild collection because it has less chemical variation and the supply could be easily controlled. Likewise, a major problem like contamination or adulteration of materials can also be completely eliminated, and its quality remains the same as their cultivation is monitored under growing conditions. However, large-scale cultivation is hampered due to the supply of platelets, which are usually more expensive, and requires more initial investments. Moreover, most of the plant species are difficult to cultivate under different growing conditions (Schippmann et al. 2006; Lubbe and Verpoorte 2011). Even then, cultivation offers to modify some of the biologically valuable plant metabolites by manipulating the growing conditions or using conventional breeding techniques or the latest molecular biological tools and biotechnological approaches. Therefore, it is essential to improve or adopt various cultivation practices in order to produce plant-based products to meet the supply demand from the pharmaceutical industries around the world. Large-scale propagation to obtain higher yield in MAPs can be achieved by applying chemical fertilizers in farming. However, these chemicals are expensive and cause environmental pollution despite diminishing soil health and its productivity. Therefore, this necessitates adopting sustainable agricultural practices such as organic farming or makes use of PGPRs as biofertilizers to improve plant growth and development. One of the biotechnological approaches to improve the quality and yield of MAPs is by employing PGPRs or AM fungi in the cultivation practices (Malusa et al. 2012). The aim of this chapter is to describe the potentiality of PGPRs and AM fungi to improve growth and development of MAPs and accumulation of secondary metabolites having high therapeutic worth and also pave a way in the development of new biotechnological products as biofertilizers.

2 Interaction of PGPR with MAPs

PGPRs are a group of naturally occurring beneficial soil bacteria which are known to colonize with a plant root system to promote growth and development by triggering the production of growth hormones as well as facilitating an efficient uptake of

nutrients from the surrounding and release inhibitor compounds against pathogens. There are various reports on the positive synergistic effect of PGPRs and nitrogen-fixing bacteria on improvement of plant growth and yield (Jahanian et al. 2012; Ipek et al. 2014). The presence of various chemical compounds in root exudates such as proteins and polysaccharides facilitates the bacterial colonization with plant roots (Rodriguez-Navarro et al. 2007; Compant et al. 2010). PGPRs greatly influence on the plant physiology, in particular compete to colonize the roots (Barriuso et al. 2008; Akhtar and Siddiqui 2010; Akhtar et al. 2010). The secretion of root exudates by the plants directly or indirectly helps recycling of nutrients in the soil and controls the occurrence of diseases. For instance, secretions of flavonoids from leguminous plants may stimulate the growth of nitrogen-fixing bacteria and root nodule formation. However, it may also act as allelochemicals (Solaiman and Anawar 2015). Some of the PGPRs found in the rhizosphere, rhizoplane, associated with roots cortex include *Azotobacter*, *Caulobacter*, *Allorhizobium*, *Azorhizobium*, *Bradyrhizobium*, *Chromobacterium*, *Agrobacterium*, *Mesorhizobium*, and *Frankia* species (Gray and Smith 2005; Solaiman and Anawar 2015).

Plants inoculated with PGPRs are benefited with increased vigor indexes such as germination rate, dry matter production, radical growth, leaf area, chlorophyll content, disease control, drought resistance, shoot weight, and other microbial activities (Lucy et al. 2004; Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008a,b; Akhtar and Panwar 2013; Akhtar and Azam 2014). Presently, PGPRs are widely utilized to improve plant growth in various fields, including agriculture, horticulture, forestry, environmental restoration, and more recently in the cultivation of MAPs. The application of many PGPRs belonging to different genera has been commercialized for agricultural usages. The growing problems of MAPs on a large scale can be solved by identifying and selecting appropriate beneficial microbes to be used as biofertilizers which improves plant growth without harming the environment (Ipek et al. 2014). Moreover, PGPRs can enhance the production of biologically active secondary metabolites in MAPs. In recent years, more research works are emphasized toward the application of PGPRs in the cultivation of MAPs to improve plant productivity (Karthikeyan et al. 2013).

3 Interaction of AM Fungi with MAPs

AM fungi have the ability to enhance the plant growth and productivity. AM fungi are known to improve the nutrient and water uptake (Gosling et al. 2006; Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008c Akhtar and Panwar 2011; Vafadar et al. 2014). Another important advantage of AM fungi is that they benefit the plants by acting as a connection between plants and rhizosphere and scavenge the available phosphate from the soil through their hyphae (Liu et al. 2000). It is reported that more than 80 % of land plant species are associated with AM fungi which helps plants to utilize phosphate from the soil (Akhtar et al. 2011; Akhtar and Abdullah 2014; Solaiman and Anawar 2015). Similarly, AM fungi when inoculated to MAPs have

shown to improve plant growth by increasing soil fertility and photosynthesis (Antunes et al. 2006; Charles et al. 2006; Vafadar et al. 2014). Likewise, AM fungi can also increase plant productivity with higher accumulation of valuable secondary metabolites (polyphenols, terpenoids, alkaloids, flavonoids, phytosterols, stilbenes, vitamins, lignans, etc.) which are beneficial for human heath (Nell et al. 2010; Zitterl-Eglseer et al. 2015). AM fungi leach compounds which play an important role in providing tolerance to plants against abiotic and biotic stresses (Gosling et al. 2006; Gianinazzi et al. 2010; Akhtar et al. 2015).

4 Impact of PGPRs and AM Fungi with MAPs: An Insight Approach

4.1 Effect of PGPRs and AM Fungi on the Growth and Development of MAPs

The plant roots provide anchorage, nutrient absorption, and water uptake and also involved in the various types of biochemical interactions taking place at belowground level. The rhizosphere is very complex in nature, and various microorganisms present in this region form with the plant root system (Mukerji et al. 2006; Badri et al. 2009; Yadav et al. 2015). This codependent benefit improved the plant growth and development through various complex phenomenons like fixing atmospheric N_2, increasing the surface area of root, and building other useful symbiotic relationships with the host plant (Vessey 2003). The direct effects of PGPR include the secretion of plant growth promoters (indoleacetic acid, cytokinins, gibberellic acid, and ethylene), fixing of atmospheric nitrogen through the symbiotic association to form root nodules, and helping in the solubilization of phosphate in the soil. In an indirect way, PGPRs reduce or completely prevent the possible harmful effect of one or more plant pathogens by competing with nutrients, produce siderophore, and induce resistance in the plant (Stefan et al. 2012). It is observed that PGPRs promote plant growth and development through high yield, enhanced chlorophyll, and other enzyme activities (Mia et al. 2010; Akhtar and Panwar 2013). The plants and microbes have adopted various strategies, for example, secreting organic acids and phosphatases into the rhizosphere soil, thereby helping in mineralization of organic phosphate. The symbiotic association of rhizobacterial strains and mycorrhizal fungi increases P uptake (Smith and Read 2008), and therefore these PGPRs can be applied in the cultivation of MAPs to increase the availability of phosphate as well as its uptake (Solaiman and Anawar 2015). Currently, many investigations on the plant improvement using rhizospheric microbes and their mechanisms involved are ever-increasing rapidly for the selection of the best bacterial strain to be used as a biofertilizer commercially (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012; Ipek et al. 2014; Solaiman and Anawar 2015). These efforts are also observed in medicinal and aromatic plants as they are the key source for herbal medicine, and presently many research reports have confirmed the significantly increased

production of some of the industrially important secondary metabolites by rhizobacterial inoculation (Koeberl et al. 2013). The influence of PGPRs and AM fungi in increasing the growth and development of the medicinal and aromatic plants is summarized in Table 1.

The medicinal plants associate with various rhizospheric microbes and hence are required to isolate, characterize, and explore their use in formulating an eco-friendly biofertilizer or as biocontrol invent (Vasudha et al. 2013). Arora et al. (2001) isolated the soil root nodule-forming bacteria, *Rhizobium meliloti* from *Mucuna pruriens*, an important medicinal plant, and the bacteria improved the plant growth by producing siderophores. According to Giri et al. (2003), application of AM fungi (*G. fasciculatum* and *G. macrocarpum*) either alone or in combination enhanced the plant growth and nutrient uptake of *Acacia auriculiformis.* However, the study on the effect of *G. mosseae* on *Atractylodes lancea* showed a significant increase in plant height, number of leaves, leaf area and plant biomass, and NPK concentrations in AM fungi-inoculated plants compared to control treatments (Guo et al. 2006). Similarly, in the Chinese medicinal tree, *Camptotheca acuminata* (known for anticancer compound, camptothecin), it was found that seedlings inoculated with *G. diaphanum*, *G. manihot*, *G. etunicatum*, *G. versiforme*, *Acaulospora laevis*, and *A. mellea* significantly increased the growth and uptake of N and P through alteration in physiological attributes (Zhao and Yan 2006).

An experiment on the effect of PGPRs on growth parameters and the production of ajmalicine in *Catharanthus roseus* clearly indicated that *P. fluorescens* had a significant influence on the improvement of plant growth, number of leaves, and fresh and dry weights and root length under drought stress (Jaleel et al. 2007). Application of biofertilizer (*Azospirillum brasilienses*, *A. chroococcum*, *Bacillus polymyxa*, and *B. circulans*) on the plant growth, yield, and essential oil composition of *Majorana hortensis* L. revealed that the treatment of biofertilizers along with compost developed a better plant growth traits, yield, as well as essential oil composition when compared to control or chemical fertilizers (Gharib et al. 2008). Similarly, inoculation of *G. mosseae* significantly improved shoot weight and root weights up to 60 % in *Ocimum basilicum* (Toussaint et al. 2008). However, there was an existence of a close relationship between the medicinal plant, *Agathosma betulina*, and the yeast, *Cryptococcus laurentii*. This association was symbiotic and significantly improved the plant growth in nutrients deficit soil (Cloete et al. 2009; 2010).

Nevertheless, Banchio et al. (2008) observed the effect of root-colonizing PGPRs on *Origanum majorana* biomass, quality, and quantity and stated that among the tested PGPRs only *Bradyrhizobium* sp. and *P. fluorescens* significantly increased all the growth parameters such as shoot weight, shoot length, nodal number, leaf number, and dry weight of root when compared to control plants. Similarly, the promontory effects of mycorrhizal inoculation (*Acaulospora bireticulata*, *A. scrobiculata*, *Gigaspora margarita*, *G. aggregatum*, *G. mosseae*, *G. geosporum*, *Scutellospora heterogama*) were also reported in *Plectranthus amboinicus* (Rajeshkumar et al. 2008). They concluded that the shoot height and root biomass of *P. amboinicus* were improved by colonization of roots by AM fungi, which may increase nutrient availability to the plant. There was

Table 1 Effect of rhizospheric microorganisms on the growth and development of medicinal and aromatic plants

Medicinal and aromatic plants	Rhizospheric microorganisms	Growth promoting response	References
Mucuna pruriens	*Rhizobium meliloti*	Improved plant growth by producing siderophores	Arora et al. (2001)
Acacia auriculiformis	*G. fasciculatum*, *G. macrocarpum*	Increased the net photosynthesis though the production of growth promoting substances	Giri et al. (2003)
Atractylodes lancea	*G. mosseae*	Significantly improved plant length and biomass by improved nutrient uptake	Guo et al. (2006)
Camptotheca acuminata	*G. diaphanum*, *G. manihot*, *G. etunicatum*, *G. versiforme*, *Acaulospora laevis*, *A. mellea*	Significantly increased the plant growth, nitrogen, and phosphorus uptake through physiological changes	Zhao and Yan (2006)
Catharanthus roseus	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*	Significantly increased the plant growth, number of leaves, fresh and dry biomass of plant	Jaleel et al. (2007)
Origanum majorana	*Bradyrhizobium* sp., *P. fluorescens*	Significantly increased shoot and root dry weight, nodal segments, and leaf numbers	Banchio et al. (2008)
Majorana hortensis	*Azospirillum brasilienses*, *A. chroococcum*, *Bacillus polymyxa*, *B. circulans*	Enhanced plant growth and total yield	Gharib et al. (2008)
Plectranthus amboinicus	*A. bireticulata*, *A. scrobiculata*, *Gigaspora margarita*, *G. aggregatum*, *G. mosseae*, *G. geosporum*, *Scutellospora heterogama* *P. amboinicus*	Increased nutrient availability to the plant	Rajeshkumar et al. (2008)
Ocimum basilicum	*G. mosseae*	Improved the shoot and root weight up to 60 % compared to control treatment	Toussaint et al. (2008)
Agathosma betulina	*Cryptococcus laurentii*	Significantly improved the plant growth in soil with poor nutrients	Cloete et al. (2009)
Clitoria ternatea *Plumbago zeylanica* *Psoralea corylifolia*	*G. intraradices*, *G. mosseae*, *A. scrobiculata*	Enhanced the dry matter yield of plants from 0.19–422.0 % in different soils	Chandra et al. (2010)
Salvia officinalis	*G. intraradices*	Improved plant growth and dry biomass	Geneva et al. (2010)
Pelargonium graveolens	*B. subtilis*, *P. fluorescens*	Significantly enhanced the plant growth and biomass	Mishra et al. (2010)

Medicinal and aromatic plants	Rhizospheric microorganisms	Growth promoting response	References
Piper longum	*G. fasciculatum*, *G. etunicatum* *G. clarum*, *G. mosseae*, *Glomus* sp., *G. versiforme*	Treatment with various AM fungi increased he plant growth, biomass, and uptake of phosphorus and potassium contents	Gogoi and Singh (2011)
Ocimum basilicum	*Pseudomonas* sp., *B. lentus*	Significantly increased proline, total carbohydrate, chlorophyll contents under water stress	Heidari et al. (2011)
Solanum viarum	*Bacillus coagulans*, *G. aggregatum*, *Trichoderma harzianum*	Greatly improved plant height and dry weight	Hemashenpagam and Selvaraj (2011)
Mentha viridis, *Origanum onites*	*Glomus etunicatum*, *G. lamellosum*	Increased plant growth due to improved nutrient absorption from the soil	Karagiannidisa et al. (2011)
Angelica dahurica	*G. claroideum*, *G. intraradices*	Promoted plant growth and biomass	Zhao and He (2011)
Stevia rebaudiana	*Burkholderia gladioli*, *B. gladioli*, *Enterobacter aerogenes*, *Serratia marcescens*	Improved the plant growth	Gupta et al. (2011)
Coleus forskohlii	*G. fasciculatum*, *Achromobacter xylosoxidans*, *A. lipoferum*	Increased the plant growth	Sakthivel and Karthikeyan (2012)
Pogostemon cablin	*Azotobacter chroococcum*, *G. intraradices*, *P. fluorescens*	Improved shoot and root biomass	Singh et al. (2012)
Plectranthus tenuiflorus	*B. megaterium*, *B. pumilus*, *B. licheniformis*, *Paenibacillus* sp., *Pseudomonas* sp.,	Improved the plant growth	El-Deeb et al. (2013)
Hyoscyamus niger	*P. putida*, *P. fluorescens*	Increase the plant growth and vigor index	Ghorbanpour et al. (2013)
Acorus calamus, *Aloe vera*, *Andrographis paniculata* *Aquilegia vulgaris*, *Mimosa pudica*, *Ocimum sanctum*, *Tagetes erecta*, *Withania somnifera*	*Pantoea* sp., *Bacillus* sp., *Pseudomonas* sp.	Enhanced germination rate, plant growth, and vigor index of all the tested medicinal and aromatic plants	Malleswari and Bagyanarayana (2013)

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Medicinal and aromatic plants	Rhizospheric microorganisms	Growth promoting response	References
Bacopa monnieri	*B. pumilus*, *Exiguobacterium oxidotolerans*	The plants performed well in terms of growth as well as yield attributes	Murugappan et al. (2013)
Coleus forskohlii	*G. fasciculatum* *P. monteilii*	Considerably increased plant height	Singh et al. (2013)
Panax ginseng	*Streptomyces pactum*	Improved the plant yield	Zhang et al. (2013)
Stevia rebaudiana	*Glomus*, *Bacillus*, *Azotobacte*r, and *Pseudomonas* sp.	Improved the plant growth	Vafadar et al. (2014)

an increased dry matter of the medicinal plants such as *Abelmoschus moschatus*, *Clitoria ternatea*, *Plumbago zeylanica*, *Psoralea corylifolia*, and *Withania somnifera* when they were inoculated with mycorrhizal fungi (Chandra et al. 2010). They found that inoculation of *G. intraradices*, *G. mosseae*, and *Acaulospora scrobiculata* produced higher dry matter in all the plant species investigated. The dependency of plants on the AM fungi was in the following order: *W. somnifera* > *P. corylifolia* > *P. cerneatea* > *P. zeylanica* > *A. moschatus*. Similarly, Nisha and Rajeshkumar (2010) have reported that inoculation of *A. delicata*, *G. aggregatum*, *G. feugianum*, *G. fasciculatum*, *G. rubiforme*, *G. margarita*, and *Scutellospora heterogama* significantly stimulated the growth of *Wedelia chinensis*. There was an increased plant growth, biomass, and nutrition uptake of plants inoculated with fungal strains compared to non-inoculated plants. Among all the tested mycorrhizal fungi, *G. fasciculatum* was found best in improving the total seedling biomass and nutrition uptake. Karagiannidisa et al. (2011) have also reported that when medicinal plants (*Mentha viridis* and *Origanum onites*) are inoculated with *G. etunicatum* and *G. lamellosum*, increase in plant growth due to improved nutrient was observed in mycorrhizal plants compared to non-mycorrhizal plants.

In an interesting experiment, Mishra et al. (2010) have reported that the production of ammonia by the rhizobacterial strains (*B. subtilis* and *P. fluorescens*) isolated from an aromatic herb *Pelargonium graveolens* L. Herit. significantly increased the plant growth and biomass. Gogoi and Singh (2011) observed that inoculation of all the tested AM fungi, namely, *G. fasciculatum*, *G. versiforme*, *G. clarum*, *Glomus* sp., *G. mosseae*, and *G. etunicatum* appreciably improved the biomass and nutrient uptake of *Piper longum* L. compared to control. However, the results of Zhao and He (2011) showed that inoculation of *G. claroideum* (BEG 180), *G. intraradices* (BEG 193), and native AM fungi to *Angelica dahurica* plants promoted the plant growth and biomass. A field experiment was conducted by Heidari et al. (2011) to study the effect of PGPRs on physiology and uptake of minerals (proline, carbohydrates, chlorophyll, and mineral contents) in *Ocimum basilicum* L. under water stress. They concluded that *Pseudomonas* sp. and *B. lentus* significantly increased proline, total carbohydrate, chlorophyll, and nutrient uptake under water stress. Gupta et al. (2011) evaluated the prospective uses of phosphate-solubilizing bacterial strains such as *Burkholderia gladioli*, *B. gladioli*, *Enterobacter aerogenes*, and *Serratia marcescens* to utilize Mussoorie rock phosphate and to improve the growth of *Stevia rebaudiana* and secondary metabolites (stevioside and rebaudioside A). They concluded that a significant increase in plant growth and metabolite production (stevioside and rebaudioside A) was recorded in the plants treated with combination of bacterial strains grown in Mussoorie rock phosphate amended soil compared to unamended soil.

Hemashenpagam and Selvaraj (2011) studied the effect of *G. aggregatum*, *B. coagulans*, and *Trichoderma harzianum* on growth, nutrition, and secondary metabolite production in the seedlings of *Solanum viarum*. The results showed that inoculation of these microbes significantly improved the plant fresh and dry biomass. Likewise, maximum root colonization and higher P, Zn, K, Mn, Cu, and Fe contents of a leaf were observed in the plants treated with *G. aggregatum*, *B. coagulans*, and *T. harzianum*. However, Arun et al. (2012) stated that the application of PGPRs significantly

augmented the growth of *Cassia occidentalis* and could also be used as an alternative to chemical fertilization to obtain a better agricultural crop yield. Similarly, Sakthivel and Karthikeyan (2012) have reported the increased plant height due to inoculation of *G. fasciculatum* and rhizobacterial strains in *Coleus forskohlii*. Moreover, Singh et al. (2012) revealed the improvement in shoot and root biomass of nursery cuttings of *Pogostemon cablin* Benth., treated with bioinoculants (*A. chroococcum*, *G. intraradices*, and *P. fluorescens*). In another study, Singh et al. (2013) have also found that the inoculation with *G. fasciculatum* and *P. monteilii* significantly increased tuber yields by enhancing nutrient uptake in the inoculated plant compared to control under field conditions. Malleswari and Bagyanarayana (2013) isolated a total of 219 isolates from various MAPs (*Coleus forskohlii*, *Withania somnifera*, *Ocimum sanctum*, *Andrographis paniculata*, *Mentha spicata*, *Aloe vera*, *Tagetes erecta*, *Artemisia vulgaris*, *Acorus calamus*, and *Mimosa pudica*) and screened all these isolates for their plant growth-promoting traits, production of ammonia, indoleacetic acid, hydrogen cyanide, phosphate solubilization, and antifungal properties. They concluded that out of 219 isolates, 201 isolates produced ammonia, 186 isolates produced indoleacetic acid, 43 isolates solubilized phosphate, 58 isolates produced hydrogen cyanide, and 43 isolates showed antifungal activity against the pathogen, *Macrophomina phaseolina*. This clearly indicated the multiple rhizobacterial significance on the seed germination under in vitro environment. This allowed the selection of efficient PGPRs such as *Pantoea* sp., *Bacillus* sp., and *Pseudomonas* sp. on the basis of their exhibited traits and enhancement of germination rate, growth of the plant, and its vigor index. Similarly, El-Deeb et al. (2013) have isolated 28 different rhizobacterial strains from different parts of the medicinal herb, *Plectranthus tenuiflorus*. All the isolated rhizobacterial strains, *Bacillus* sp. (*B. megaterium*, *B. pumilus*, *B. licheniformis*), *Paenibacillus* sp., and *Pseudomonas* sp., improved the plant growth and production of a secondary metabolites. However, Murugappan et al. (2013) reported that the application of *B. pumilus* enhanced the growth of *Ocimum sanctum*, while the inoculation of *B. pumilus* and *Exiguobacterium oxidotolerans* to Brahmi (*Bacopa monnieri*) increased the plant growth 26 % and 50 %, respectively, compared to control plants (Bharti et al. 2013). Vafadar et al. (2014) reported that the use of *Glomus* and *Bacillus* or *Azotobacter* and *Pseudomonas* consortium significantly improved the shoot and root biomass, chlorophyll content, and NPK content in *Stevia rebaudiana* Bertoni, which is commonly used as antidiabetic plant.

4.2 Effect of PGPRs on the Production of Secondary Metabolites from MAPs

In the present world, herbal products are gaining more importance as they are the major source of pharmacological and therapeutical uses. The essential oils produced from the aromatic plants are widely used in flavor and fragrance industries. Plants are used in the ancient medicinal practices, and currently, about 80 % of modern medicines are plant based (Swamy et al. 2011; Akhtar et al. 2014). Hence, the

ever-increased demand for plant-based phytochemicals in the modern world has forced the cultivation of MAPs on a large scale by adopting better agricultural practices. There are many reports on the advantageous effect of PGPRs and AM fungi when applied to MAPs. These PGPRs influenced the plant growth, nutrient utilization, and production of various medicinally useful plant chemical metabolites like flavonoids, phenols, saponins, alkaloids, and tannins (Egamberdieva and da Silva 2015). Similarly, AM fungi symbioses with various medicinally important plants enhanced the production of several secondary metabolites useful for treating various human ailments (Zeng et al. 2013; Lingua et al. 2013) (Table 2).

Gupta et al. (2002) reported that the inoculation of *G. fasciculatum* to *Mentha arvensis* increased the plant yield and oil content. Ponce et al. (2004) compared the effect of inoculation of *G. intraradices* on the root and shoot flavonoid contents in *Trifolium repens*. They observed the different flavonoid content from roots and shoots of *T. repens* inoculated with mycorrhizal fungus increased the root colonization of AM fungi, which may alter the plant metabolism to secrete different flavone derivatives such as 4′,5,6,7,8-pentahydroxy-3-methoxyflavone and 5,6,7,8-tetrahyd roxy-3-methoxyflavone and 3,7-dihydroxy-4′-metho-xyflavone. Moreover, the AM fungi-inoculated roots also produced quercetin, rhamnetin, and acacetin. Sailo and Bagyaraj (2005) have reported that inoculation of *G. bagyarajii* and *Scutellospora calospora* to *Coleus forskohlii* increased the accumulation of forskolin content which is widely used in treating glaucoma, heart diseases, asthma, and cancer. According to Khaosaad et al. (2006), root colonization by *G. mosseae* with *Origanum vulgare* has shown no significant effect on the composition of essential oil. Copetta et al. (2006) studied the effects of *G. mosseae*, *Gigaspora margarita*, and *G. rosea* on the yield of essential oil in *Ocimum basilicum* L. var. Genovese. They concluded that among the tested AM fungi, *G. rosea* cause a significant increase in root and shoot biomass, root branching, root length, and the essential oil mainly α-terpineol content compared to other treatments. This improved yield of oil is said to be associated with increased number of glandular trichomes present in the zones of basal and central leaves. Catford et al. (2006) studied the suppression of isoflavonoids and their effects on stimulating nodule formation and mycorrhizal association in split root systems in *Medicago sativa*. They found that inoculation with *Sinorhizobium meliloti* or *G. mosseae* or nod factor altered the secretion of flavonoids (formononetin and ononin). According to Liu et al. (2007), triterpenoid saponin (glycyrrhizic acid) content increased with the mycorrhizal symbiosis in *Glycyrrhiza uralensis*. However, the inoculation of *G. mosseae* in *O. basilicum* had no effect on the phytoconstituents, rosmarinic acids, and caffeic acids or essential oil yield (Toussaint et al. 2008).

In the medicinal plant, *Catharanthus roseus*, the inoculation of *P. fluorescens* has improved the synthesis of alkaloids such as ajmalicine, catharanthine, tabersonine, serpentine, and vindoline and also increased the accumulation of tabersonine, serpentine, and vindoline contents in roots (Jaleel et al. 2007). Morone-Fortunato and Avato (2008) reported that the essential oil content increased when the *G. viscosum* was inoculated with micropropagated plants of *Origanum vulgare* L. However, the colonization of PGPRs improved the qualitative and quantitative composition of

Table 2 Influence of rhizospheric microorganisms in the production of metabolites in medicinal and aromatic plants

Medicinal and aromatic plants	Rhizosphere microbes	Plant metabolites/essential oil components	References
Mentha arvensis	*Glomus fasciculatum*	Increased essential oil contents	Gupta et al. (2002)
Trifolium repens	*G. intraradices*	Increased the flavonoid contents and produced 4,5,6,7,8-pentahydroxy-3-methoxy-flavone and 5,6,7,8-tetrahydroxy-3-methoxyflavone, 3,7-dihydroxy-4′-methoxy-flavone, quercetin, rhamnetin and acacetin	Ponce et al. (2004)
Coleus forskohlii	*G. bagyarajii Scutellospora calospora*	Increased the accumulation of the forskolin in roots	Sailo and Bagyaraj (2005)
Medicago sativa	*Sinorhizobium meliloti* *G. mosseae*	Suppressed the production of formononetin and ononin	Catford et al. (2006)
Ocimum basilicum	*G. mosseae*, *Gigaspora rosea*, *G. margarita*	Significantly increased the essential oil with higher α-terpineol and eugenol contents	Copetta et al. (2006)
Catharanthus roseus	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*	Significantly increased the biosynthesis of alkaloids such as ajmalicine, catharanthine, tabersonine, serpentine, and vindoline	Jaleel et al. (2007)
Origanum vulgare	*G. mosseae*	Significantly increased essential oil production	Khaosaad et al. (2006)
Glycyrrhiza uralensis	*G. mosseae* *G. veriforme*	Increased glycyrrhizic acid accumulation	Liu et al. (2007)
Origanum majorana	*P. fluorescens* *Bradyrhizobium* sp.	Showed increased essential oil yield up to 24-fold and significantly increased terpinene- 4-ol, cis-sabinene hydrate, trans-sabinene hydrate, and a-terpineol	Banchio et al. (2008)
Origanum vulgare	*G. viscosum*	Increased essential oil contents	Morone-Fortunato and Avato (2008)
Ocimum basilicum	*G. mosseae*	No significant effect on the phytoconstituents, rosmarinic acids, and caffeic acids or essential oil yield	Toussaint et al. (2008)
Echinacea purpurea	*G. intraradices*	Significantly increased phenolic concentrations mainly cynarine and cichoric, caftaric, and chlorogenic acids	Araim et al. (2009)
Allium sativum	*G. fasciculatum*	Increased the alliin contents	Borde et al. (2009)
Salvia officinalis	*G. mosseae*, *G.intraradices*	Significantly increased the accumulation of rosmarinic acids	Nell et al. (2009)
Cynara cardunculus	*G.intraradices*, *G. mosseae*	Markedly increased the total phenolic contents	Ceccarelli et al. (2010)

Medicinal and aromatic plants	Rhizosphere microbes	Plant metabolites/essential oil components	References
Salvia officinalis	*G. intraradices*	Significantly accumulated higher 1,8-cineole, bornyl acetate, camphor, α-thujone, and β-thujones contents in the oil	Geneva et al. (2010)
Arnica montana	*G. intraradices*	Increased the concentrations of phenolic acids and sesquiterpene lactone	Jurkiewicz et al. (2010)
Catharanthus roseus	*Bacillus* sp., *Azotobacter* sp., *Pseudomonas* sp.	Significantly increased alkaloid content compared, significantly enhanced the production of antineoplastic alkaloid	Karthikeyan et al. (2010)
Valeriana officinalis	*G. mosseae*, *G. intraradices*	Promoted the secretion of sesquiterpenic acids	Nell et al. (2010)
Inula ensifolia	*G. intraradices*, *G. clarum*	Increased the production of all the thymol derivatives	Zubek et al. (2010)
Solanum viarum	*G. aggregatum*, *B. coagulans*, *T. harzianum*	Improved the accumulation of total phenols, ortho dihydroxy phenols, alkaloids, saponins, flavonoids, and tannins	Hemashenpagam and Selvaraj (2011)
Andrographis paniculata	*Gigaspora albida*	Significantly increased the accumulation of andrographolide	Radhika and Rodrigues (2011)
Catharanthus roseus	*Glomus sp.*	Significantly increased total phenolic compounds and vinblastine contents	Rosa-Mera et al. (2011)
Mentha piperita	*P. fluorescens*, *B. subtilis* *Azospirillum brasilense*	Increased the production of pulegone and menthone	Santoro et al. (2011)
Angelica dahurica	*G. claroideum*, *G. intraradices*	Significant increased total coumarin and imperatorin contents	Zhao and He (2011)
Hypericum perforatum	*Rhizophagus intraradices*, *Funneliformis mosseae*, *F. constrictum* *F. geosporum*	Significantly increased the hypericin and pseudohypericin contents	Zubek et al. (2012)
Bacopa monnieri	*B. pumilus Exiguobacterium oxidotolerans*	Increased the accumulation of the bacoside A content	Bharti et al. (2013)
Hyoscyamus niger	*P. putida* *P. fluorescens*	Produced higher hyoscyamine and scopolamine contents	Ghorbanpour et al. (2013)
Stevia rebaudiana	*P. putida*, *B. polymyxa* *Azotobacter chroococcum*, *G. intraradices*	Significantly increased the production of the stevioside contents	Vafadar et al. (2014)
Angelica archangelica	*G. mosseae*, *G. intraradices* AMF mixture Symbivit^{R}	Markedly increased the monoterpenoids and coumarins	Zitterl-Eglseer et al. (2015)

essential oils in *O. majorana*. Moreover, inoculation of *P. fluorescens* and *Bradyrhizobium* sp. has showed an increase (>1000-fold) in the essential chemical constituents compared to control plants (Banchio et al. 2008). The alliin content of *Allium sativum* increased after inoculation of *G. fasciculatum* under field condition (Borde et al. 2009). According to Nell et al. (2009), there was significant difference in the accumulation of rosmarinic acid in *Salvia officinalis* plant roots. Inoculation of *G. intraradices* has shown higher secretion of phenolics in *Echinacea purpurea* (Araim et al. 2009) and *Arnica montana* (Jurkiewicz et al. 2010). Similarly, Nell et al. (2010) reported that the *G. mosseae* and *G. intraradices* have promoted the secretion of sesquiterpenic acid in *Valeriana officinalis*. Likewise, inoculation of AM fungi (*G. intraradices* and *G. clarum*) increased the production of thymol derivative in *Inula ensifolia* (Zubek et al. 2010). PGPRs such as *Bacillus*, *Azotobacter*, and *Pseudomonas* when inoculated to *Catharanthus roseus* either individually or in combination had significantly increased the plant height, root length, as well as secondary metabolite compared to the non-inoculated control plants and also increased the nutrient (N, P, K, Ca, and Mg) concentration (Karthikeyan et al. 2010). *Salvia officinalis* when inoculated with *G. intraradices* produced higher yield of the essential oil as well as its quality. There was an increased antioxidant metabolite content and significant accumulation of 1,8-cineole, bornyl acetate, camphor, α-thujone, and β-thujone chemical components in the essential oil (Geneva et al. 2010).

From the field and greenhouse experiments, it was observed that the association of mycorrhizal symbiosis with the *Cynara cardunculus* L. alone or in combination markedly increased the total phenolic content and antioxidant property compared to control plants (Ceccarelli et al. 2010). In another study, Meng and He (2011) found the mycorrhizal plant significantly increased the soluble sugar, soluble protein, proline, total nitrogen, and flavonoid contents in both shoots and roots of *Salvia miltiorrhiza* under drought condition. Likewise, Zhao and He (2011) found a significant increase of total coumarin as well as imperatorin content in different plant parts of *Angelica dahurica* inoculated with the AM fungus. The results showed that the plant growth, chlorophyll, carotenoids, soluble sugar, soluble protein, SOD, and POD activity were higher in AM fungus-inoculated plants compared to control treatments. However, the contents of MDA and proline decreased, but inoculation of AM fungi significantly increased the total coumarin and imperatorin content. Radhika and Rodrigues (2011) investigated the influence of different AM fungi on the accumulation of andrographolide (secondary metabolite) in *Andrographis paniculata* and reported that among the tested AM fungi, *Gigaspora albida* caused a significant increase in the concentrations of andrographolide. However, in an interesting experiment, Rosa-Mera et al. (2011) evaluated the effect of AM fungi on the accumulation of antineoplastic alkaloids such as vinblastine in *C. roseus* and confirmed the positive effect on production of total phenolic compounds, total antioxidant activity, and vinblastine contents in the leaves. The production of secondary metabolites such as total phenols, ortho dihydroxy phenols, alkaloids, saponins, flavonoids, and tannins in the leaves and fruits of *Solanum viarum* was found maximum when plants were inoculated with *G. aggregatum*, *B. coagulans*, and *T. harzianum* (Hemashenpagam and Selvaraj 2011).

PGPRs such as *P. fluorescens*, *B. subtilis*, and *Azospirillum brasilense* increased essential oil composition in *Mentha piperita* with the twofold increase of monoterpene production {(+)pulegone and (−)menthone} in *P. fluorescens*-inoculated plants (Santoro et al. 2011). Zubek et al. (2012) stated that the AM fungi has increased the hypericin and pseudohypericin contents significantly in *Hypericum perforatum* used for the treatment of HIV. Tropane alkaloids such as hyoscyamine and scopolamine production in Black henbane (*Hyoscyamus niger*) under water-deficit stress conditions were increased by the application of *P. putida* and *P. fluorescens* (Ghorbanpour et al. 2013). The plants treated with *P. putida* under water stress condition had an increased root area and thus resulted in higher hyoscyamine and scopolamine production. Their results suggest that the plants are stimulated by the inoculation of *P. putida* and *P. fluorescens* to produce more antioxidant enzymes and proline accumulation. However, *B. monnieri* (Brahmi) inoculated with *B. pumilus* and *E. oxidotolerans* increased the yield up to 138 % and bacoside A content up to 376 % higher under saline condition. Under salinity regime, the inoculated plants showed an increased level of proline content and lipid peroxidation. Increased catalase and ascorbate peroxidase activity was also observed in the plants inoculated with PGPRs in comparison to the control plants (Bharti et al. 2013). Recently, Vafadar et al. (2014) found that inoculation of PGPRs (*P. putida*, *B. polymyxa*, and *Azotobacter chroococcum*) and AM fungus (*G. intraradices*) caused a significant increase in chlorophyll contents, nutrient uptake, and production of stevioside contents in tissue culture-raised plantlets of *Stevia rebaudiana* Bertoni. However, Zitterl-Eglseer et al. (2015) reported that monoterpenoid and coumarin contents were increased in two genotypes of *Angelica archangelica*, when inoculated with *G. mosseae* and *G. intraradices* of the AMF mixture Symbivit^{R}.

5 Conclusions and Future Prospects

Exploitation of PGPRs and AM fungi for the cultivation of MAPs is a promising approach. The use of these bioinoculants improved the host physiology, stimulated the accumulation of secondary metabolites and nutrient acquisition, and overall improved the plant health desired for sustainable agricultural practices. Nowadays, more efforts should be made toward maximizing the potential of these bioinoculants for the commercial cultivation of MAPs all over the world. Moreover, the research should focus on identification of novel and useful isolates for understanding the mechanisms of their association with the host plant and biochemical and molecular changes that regulate and stimulate the signaling pathways of molecules to enhance plant secondary metabolites. However, still interaction of these bioinoculants with MAPs is not well understood under different agroecological conditions. Therefore, more attention should be focused on the future studies related to gene expression and their regulatory mechanisms involved in controlling the secretion of these chemical exudates by these microorganisms through genomic as well as proteomic approaches. The mechanisms could reveal the molecular mechanisms of MAPs

responding to various environmental conditions. However, application of biotechnological tools to develop transgenic MAPs by incorporating useful genes from rhizospheric microbes is a trusted area of future research. This approach would enable the commercialization of MAPs under stressed environmental conditions and also improved the production of biologically active metabolites for their therapeutic purposes toward the development of new drugs.

References

Akhtar MS, Abdullah SNA (2014) Mass production techniques of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi: major advantages and disadvantages. Biosci Biotechnol Res Asia 11:1199–1204

Akhtar MS, Azam T (2014) Effect of PGPR and antagonistic fungi on the growth, enzyme activity and fusarium root-rot of pea. Arch Phytopathol Plant Protect 47:138–148

Akhtar MS, Panwar J (2011) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and opportunistic fungi: Efficient root symbionts for the management of plant parasitic nematodes. Adv Sci Eng Med 3:165–175

Akhtar MS, Panwar J (2013) Efficacy of root-associated fungi and the growth of *Pisum sativum* (Arkil) and reproduction of root-knot nematode *Meloidogyne incognita*. J Basic Microbiol 53:318–326

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2008a) Biocontrol of a root-rot disease complex of chickpea by *Glomus intraradices, Rhizobium* sp. and *Pseudomonas straita*. Crop Prot 27:410–417

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2008b) Glomus intraradices, Pseudomonas alcaligenes. Bacillus pumilus as effective biocontrol agents for the root-rot disease complex of chickpea (Cicer arietinum L). J Gen Plant Pathol 74:53–60

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2008c) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi as potential biprotectants against plant pathogens. In: Siddiqui ZA, Akhtar MS, Futai K (eds) Mycorrhizae: Sustainable agriculture and forestry. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 61–98

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2010) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in biocontrol of plant diseases and sustainable agriculture. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Plant growth and health promoting bacteria, vol 18, Microbiology monographs. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp 157–196

Akhtar MS, Shakeel U, Siddiqui ZA (2010) Biocontrol of *Fusarium* wilt by *Bacillus pumilus*, *Pseudomonas alcaligenes* and *Rhizobium* sp. on lentil. Turk J Biol 34:1–7

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA, Wiemken A (2011) Arbuscular Mycorrhizal fungi and *Rhizobium* to control plant fungal diseases. In: Lichtfouse E (ed) Alternative farming systems, biotechnology, drought stress and ecological fertilisation, vol 6, Sustainable agriculture reviews. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 263–292

Akhtar MS, Birhanu G, Demisse S (2014) Antimicrobial activity of Piper nigrum L. and Cassia didymobotrya L. leaf extract on selected food borne pathogens. Asian Pac J Trop Dis 4:S911–S919

Akhtar MS, Panwar J, Abdullah SNA, Siddiqui Y, Swamy MK, Ashkani S (2015) Biocontrol of plant parasitic nematodes by fungi: efficacy and control strategies. In: Meghvanshi MK, Varma A (eds) Organic amendments and soil suppressiveness in plant disease management, vol 46, Soil biology. Springer International Publishing, Switzerland, pp 219–247

Amujoyegbe BJ, Agbedahunsi JM, Amujoyegbe OO (2012) Cultivation of medicinal plants in developing nations: means of conservation and poverty alleviation. Int J Med Arom Plants 2:345–353

Aneesh TP, Hisham M, Sekhar MS, Madhu M, Deepa TV (2009) International market scenario of traditional Indian herbal drugs-India declining. Int J Green Pharm 3:184–190

Antunes PM, Ade V, Zhang T, Goss MJ (2006) The tripartite symbiosis formed by indigenous arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi, *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* and soybean under field conditions. J Agron Crop Sci 19:373–378

Araim G, Saleem A, Arnason JT, Charest AC (2009) Root colonization by an arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) fungus increases growth and secondary metabolism of purple coneflower. *Echinacea purpurea* L Moench. J Agric Food Chem 57:2255–2258

Arora NK, Kang SC, Maheshwari DK (2001) Isolation of siderophore producing strains of *Rhizobium meliloti* and their biocontrol potential against *Macrophomina phaseolina* that causes charcoal rot of groundnut. Curr Sci 81:673–677

Arun B, Gopinath B, Sharma S (2012) Plant growth promoting potential of bacteria isolated on N free media from rhizosphere of *Cassia occidentalis*. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:2849–2857

Badri DV, Weir TL, van der Lelie D, Vivanco JM (2009) Rhizosphere chemical dialogues: plant–microbe interactions. Curr Opin Biotechnol 20:642–650

Banchio E, Bogino PC, Zygadlo J, Giordano W (2008) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria improve growth and essential oil yield in *Origanum majorana* L. Biochem Syst Ecol 36:766–771

Barriuso J, Solano BR, Lucas JA, Lobo AP, García-Villaraco A, Mañero FJG (2008) Ecology, genetic diversity and screening strategies of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR). Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co. KGaA, Weinheim

Bharti N, Yadav D, Barnawal D, Maji D, Kalra A (2013) Exiguobacterium oxidotolerans, a halotolerant plant growth promoting rhizobacteria, improves yield and content of secondary metabolites in *Bacopa monnieri* (L.) Pennell under primary and secondary salt stress. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 29:379–387

Bhattacharyya P, Jha D (2012) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): Emergence in agriculture. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:1327–1350

Borde M, Dudhane M, Jite PK (2009) Role of bioinoculant (AM fungi) increasing in growth, flavor content and yield in *Allium sativum* L. under field condition. Not Bot Horti Agrobo 37:124–128

Canter PH (2005) Bringing medicinal plants into cultivation. Focus Alter Complement Therap 10:167–168

Catford JG, Staehelin C, Larose G, Piche Y, Vierheilig H (2006) Systemically suppressed isoflavonoids and their stimulating effects on nodulation and mycorrhization in alfalfa split-root systems. Plant Soil 285:257–266

Ceccarelli N, Curadi M, Martelloni L, Sbrana C, Picciarelli P, Giovannetti M (2010) Mycorrhizal colonization impacts on phenolic content and antioxidant properties of artichoke leaves and flower heads two years after field transplant. Plant Soil 335:311–323

Chandarana H, Baluja S, Chand SV (2005) Comparison of antibacterial activities of selected species of Zingiberaceae family and some synthetic compounds. Turk J Biol 29:83–97

Chandra KK, Kumar N, Chand G (2010) Studies on mycorrhizal inoculation on dry matter yield and root colonization of some medicinal plants grown in stress and forest soils. J Environ Biol 31:975–979

Charles P, Raj ADS, Kiruba S (2006) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi in the reclamation and restoration of soil fertility. Mycorrhiza News 18:13–14

Cloete KJ, Valentine AJ, Stander MA, Blomerus LM, Botha A (2009) Evidence of symbiosis between the soil yeast *Cryptococcus laurentii* and a Sclerophyllous medicinal shrub, *Agathosma betulina* (Berg.) Pillans. Microb Ecol 57:624–632

Cloete KJ, Przybylowicz WJ, Mesjasz-Przybylowicz J, Barnabas AD, Valentine AJ, Botha A (2010) Micro-particle-induced X-ray emission mapping of elemental distribution in roots of a Mediterranean type sclerophyll, *Agathosma betulina* (Berg.) Pillans, colonized by *Cryptococcus laurentii*. Plant Cell Environ 33:1005–1015

Compant S, Clément C, Sessitsch A (2010) Plant growth-promoting bacteria in the rhizo-and endosphere of plants: their role, colonization, mechanisms involved and prospects for utilization. Soil Biol Biochem 42:669–678

Copetta A, Lingua G, Berta G (2006) Effects of three AM fungi on growth, distribution of glandular hairs, and essential oil production in *Ocimum basilicum* L. var. Genovese. Mycorrhiza 16:485–494

Djilani A, Dicko A (2012) The therapeutic benefits of essential Oils. In: Nutrition, well-being and health. InTech, Croatia, pp 155–178

Efferth T, Greten HJ (2012) Medicinal and aromatic plant research in the 21st century. Med Arom Plants 1, e110

Egamberdieva D, da Silva JAT (2015) Medicinal Plants and PGPR: A new frontier for phytochemicals. In: Egamberdieva D, Shrivastava S, Varma A (eds) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) and medicinal plants. Springer International Publishing, Cham, Switzerland, pp 287–303

El-Deeb B, Fayez K, Gherbawy Y (2013) Isolation and characterization of endophytic bacteria from *Plectranthus tenuiflorus* medicinal plant in Saudi Arabia desert and their antimicrobial activities. J Plant Interact 8:56–64

Gandhi SG, Mahajan V, Bedi YS (2015) Changing trends in biotechnology of secondary metabolism in medicinal and aromatic plants. Planta 241:303–317

Geneva MP, Stancheva IV, Boychinova MM, Mincheva NH, Yonova PA (2010) Effects of foliar fertilization and arbuscular mycorrhizal colonization on *Salvia officinalis* L. growth, antioxidant capacity, and essential oil composition. J Sci Food Agric 90:696–702

Gezahegn Z, Akhtar MS, Woyessa D, Tariku Y (2015) Antibacterial potential of Thevetia peruviana leaf extracts against food associated pathogens. J Coastal Life Med 3:150–157

Gharib FA, Moussa LA, Massoud ON (2008) Effect of compost and bio-fertilizers on growth, yield and essential oil of sweet Marjoram (*Majorana hortensis*) plant. Int J Agri Biol 10:381–387

Ghorbanpour M, Hatami M, Khavazi K (2013) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria on antioxidant enzyme activities and tropane alkaloid production of *Hyoscyamus niger* under water deficit stress. Turk J Biol 37:350–360

Gianinazzi S, Gollotte A, Binet MN, Van Tuinen D, Redecker D, Wipf D (2010) Agroecology: the key role of arbuscular mycorrhizas in ecosystem services. Mycorrhiza 20:519–530

Giri B, Kapoor R, Mukerji KG (2003) Influence of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and salinity on growth, biomass, and mineral nutrition of *Acacia auriculiformis*. Biol Fertil Soils 38:170–175

Gogoi P, Singh RK (2011) Differential effect of some arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on growth of *Piper longum* L. (Piperaceae). Indian J Sci Technol 4:119–125

Gosling P, Hodge A, Goodlass G, Bending GD (2006) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and organic farming. Agric Ecosyst Environ 113:17–35

Gray EJ, Smith DL (2005) Intracellular and extracellular PGPR: Commonalities and distinctions in the plant-bacterium signaling processes. Soil Biol Biochem 37:395–412

Guo LP, Wang HG, Huang LQ, Jiang YX, Zhu YG, Kong WD, Chen BD, Chen ML, Lin SF, Fang ZG (2006) Effects of Arbuscular mycorrhizae on growth and essential oil of *Atractylodes lancea*. China J Chin Mater Med 31:1491–1496

Gupta ML, Prasad A, Ram M, Kuma S (2002) Effect of the vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal (VAM) fungus *Glomus fasciculatum* on the essential oil yield related characters and nutrient acquisition in the crops of different cultivars of menthol mint (*Mentha arvensis*) under field conditions. Bioresour Technol 81:77–79

Gupta M, Bisht S, Singh B, Gulati A, Tewari R (2011) Enhanced biomass and steviol glycosides in *Stevia rebaudiana* treated with phosphate-solubilizing bacteria and rock phosphate. Plant Growth Regul 65:449–457

Heidari M, Mosavinik SM, Golpayegani A (2011) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) effect on physiological parameters and mineral uptake in basil (*Ociumum basilicm* L.) under water stress. ARPN J Agric Biol Sci 6:6–11

Hemashenpagam N, Selvaraj T (2011) Effect of arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) fungus and plant growth promoting rhizomicroorganisms (PGPR's) on medicinal plant *Solanum viarum* seedlings. J Environ Biol 32:579–583

Ipek M, Pirlak L, Esitken A, Figen Dönmez M, Turan M, Sahin F (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) increase yield, growth and nutrition of strawberry under high-calcareous soil conditions. J Plant Nutr 37:990–1001

Jahanian A, Chaichi MR, Rezaei K, Rezayazdi K, Khavazi K (2012) The effect of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on germination and primary growth of artichoke (*Cynara scolymus*). Int J Agric Crop Sci 4:923–929

Jaleel CA, Manivannan P, Sankar B, Kishorekumar A, Gopi R, Somasundaram R, Panneerselvam R (2007) *Pseudomonas fluorescens* enhances biomass yield and ajmalicine production in *Catharanthus roseus* under water deficit stress. Colloids Surf B 60:7–11

Jurkiewicz A, Ryszka P, Anielska T, Waligórski P, Białońska D, Góralska K, Tsimilli-Michael M, Turnau K (2010) Optimization of culture conditions of *Arnica montana* L.: Effects of mycorrhizal fungi and competing plants. Mycorrhiza 20:293–306

Kala CP (2009) Medicinal plants conservation and enterprise development. Med Plants 1:79–95

Kala CP, Dhyani PP, Sajwan BK (2006) Developing the medicinal plants sector in northern India: challenges and opportunities. J Ethnobiol Ethnomed 2:32

Karagiannidisa N, Thomidisa T, Lazarib D, Panou-Filotheoua E, Karagiannidoua C (2011) Effect of three greek arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi in improving the growth, nutrient concentration and production of essential oils of oregano and mint plants. Sci Hort 129:329–334

Karthikeyan B, Joe MM, Jaleel CA, Deiveekasundaram M (2010) Effect of root inoculation with plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on plant growth, alkaloid content and nutrient control of *Catharanthus roseus* (L.) G. Don. Nat Croat 1:205–212

Karthikeyan B, Sakthivel U, Narayanan JS (2013) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria for commercially grown medicinal plants. In: Maheshwari DK, Saraf M, Aeron A (eds) Bacteria in agrobiology: crop productivity. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, pp 65–76

Kaushik PS, Swamy MK, Balasubramanya S, Anuradha M (2015) Rapid plant regeneration, analysis of genetic fidelity and camptothecin content of micropropagated plants of *Ophiorrhiza mungos* Linn.-a potent anticancer Plant. J Crop Sci Biotechnol 18:1–8

Khaosaad T, Vierheilig H, Nell M, Zitterl-Eglseer K, Novak J (2006) Arbuscular mycorrhiza alters the concentration of essential oils in Oregano (*Origanum* sp., Lamiaceae). Mycorrhiza 16:443–446

Koeberl M, Schmidt R, Ramadan EM, Bauer R, Berg G (2013) The microbiome of medicinal plants: diversity and importance for plant growth, quality, and health. Front Microbiol 4:400

Kosalge SB, Fursule RA (2009) Investigation on ethnomedicinal claims of some plants used by tribals of Satpuda Hills in India. J Ethanopharmacol 121:456–461

Kumar BM, Nair PR (2004) The enigma of tropical home gardens. Agroforest Syst 61:135–152

Lingua G, Bona E, Manassero P, Marsano F, Todeschini V, Cantamessa S, Copetta A, D'Agostino G, Gamalero E, Berta G (2013) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and plant growth-promoting Pseudomonads increases anthocyanin concentration in Strawberry fruits (Fragaria × ananassa var. selva) in conditions of reduced fertilization. Int J Mol Sci 14:16207–16225

Liu A, Hamel C, Hamilton RI, Ma BL, Smith DL (2000) Acquisition of Cu, Zn, Mn, and Fe by mycorrhizal maize (*Zea mays* L.) grown in soil at different P and micronutrient levels. Mycorrhiza 9:331–336

Liu J, Wu L, Wei S, Xiao X, Su C, Jiang P, Song J, Wang T, Yu Z (2007) Effects of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on the growth, nutrient uptake and glycyrrhizin production of licorice (*Glycyrrhiza uralensis* Fisch). Plant Growth Regul 52:29–39

Lubbe A, Verpoorte R (2011) Cultivation of medicinal and aromatic plants for specialty industrial materials. Ind Crop Prod 34:785–801

Lucy M, Reed E, Glick BR (2004) Applications of free living plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 86:1–25

Malleswari D, Bagyanarayana G (2013) *In vitro* screening of rhizobacteria isolated from the rhizosphere of medicinal and aromatic plants for multiple plant growth promoting activities. J Microbiol Biotechol Res 3:84–91

Malusa E, Sas-Paszt L, Ciesielska J (2012) Technologies for beneficial microorganisms inocula used as biofertilizers. Sci World J 2012:491206

Meng JJ, He XL (2011) Effects of AM fungi on growth and nutritional contents of *Salvia miltiorrhiza* Bge. under drought stress. J Agric Univ Hebei 34:51–61

Mia MAB, Shamsudin ZH, Wahab Z, Marziah M (2010) Effect of plant growth promoting rhizobacterial (PGPR) inoculation on growth and nitrogen incorporation of tissue-cultured musa plantlets under nitrogen-free hydroponics condition. Aust J Crop Sci 4:85–90

Mishra M, Kumar U, Mishra PK, Prakash V (2010) Efficiency of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria for the enhancement of *Cicer arietinum* L. growth and germination under salinity. Adv Biol Res 4:92–96

Mohanty SK, Mallappa K, Godavarthi A, Subbanarasiman B, Maniyam A (2014) Evaluation of antioxidant, in vitro cytotoxicity of micropropagated and naturally grown plants of *Leptadenia reticulata* (Retz.) Wight & Arn.-an endangered medicinal plant. Asian Pac J Trop Med 7:S267–S271

Mohanty SK, Swamy MK, Middha SK, Prakash L, Subbanarashiman B, Maniyam A (2015). Analgesic, anti-inflammatory, anti-lipoxygenase activity and characterization of three bioactive compounds in the most active fraction of Leptadenia reticulata (Retz.) Wight & Arn.–A valuable medicinal plant. Iran J Pharm Res 14(3):933–942

Morone-Fortunato I, Avato P (2008) Plant development and synthesis of essential oils in micropropagated and mycorrhiza inoculated plants of *Origanum vulgare* L. ssp. Hirtum (Link) Ietswaart. Plant Cell Tiss Organ Cult 93:139–149

Mukerji KG, Manoharachary C, Singh J (2006) Microbial activity in the rhizosphere, vol 7, Soil Biology. Springer, Berlin

Murugappan RM, Begum SB, Roobia RR (2013) Symbiotic influence of endophytic *Bacillus pumilus* on growth promotion and probiotic potential of the medicinal plant *Ocimum sanctum*. Symbiosis 60:91–99

Nell M, Votsch M, Vierheilig H, Steinkellner S, Zitterl-Eglseer K, Franz C, Novak J (2009) Effect of phosphorus uptake on growth and secondary metabolites of garden (*Salvia officinalis* L.). J Sci Food Agric 89:1090–1096

Nell M, Wawrosch C, Steinkellner S, Vierheilig H, Kopp B, Lössl A, Franz C, Novak J, Zitterl-Eglseer K (2010) Root colonization by symbiotic arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi increases sesquiterpenic acid concentrations. Planta Med 76:393–398

Nisha MC, Rajeshkumar S (2010) Effect of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on growth and nutrition of *Wedilia chinensis* (Osbeck) Merril. Ind J Sci Technol 3:676–678

Okigbo RN, Anuagasi CL, Amadi JE (2009) Advances in selected medicinal and aromatic plants indigenous to Africa. J Med Plants Res 3:86–95

Pan SY, Zhou SF, Gao SH, Yu ZL, Zhang SF, Tang MK, Sun JN, Ma DL, Han YF, Fong WF, Ko KM (2013) New perspectives on how to discover drugs from herbal medicines: CAM's outstanding contribution to modern therapeutics. J Evid Based Complement Alternat Med 2012:25

Ponce MA, Scervino JM, Erra BR, Ocampo JA, Godeas A (2004) Flavonoids from shoots and roots of *Trifolium repens* (white clover) grown in presence or absence of the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus intraradices*. Phytochemistry 65:1925–1930

Radhika KP, Rodrigues BF (2011) Influence of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on andrographolide concentration in *Andrographis paniculata*. Aust J Med Herbal 23:34–36

Rajeshkumar S, Nisha MC, Selvaraj T (2008) Variability in growth, nutrition and phytochemical constituents of *Plectranthus amboinicus* (Lour) Spreng. as influenced by indigenous arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Mj Int J Sci Tech 2:431–439

Raut JS, Karuppayil SM (2014) A status review on the medicinal properties of essential oils. Ind Crops Prod 62:250–264

Rodriguez-Navarro DN, Dardanelli MS, Ruiz-Sainz JE (2007) Attachment of bacteria to the roots of higher plants. FEMS Microbiol Lett 272:127–136

Rosa-Mera CJDA, Ferrera-Cerrato R, Alarcon A, Sanchez-Colın MDJ, Munoz-Muniz OD (2011) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium bicarbonate enhance the foliar content of the vinblastine alkaloid in *Catharanthus roseus*. Plant Soil 349:367–376

Sailo GL, Bagyaraj DJ (2005) Influence of different AM-fungi on the growth, nutrition and forskolin content of *Coleus forskohlii*. Mycol Res 109:795–798

Sakthivel U, Karthikeyan B (2012) Effect of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria for the growth and yield of *Coleus forskohlii*. Int J Curr Adv Res 1:39–43

Santoro MV, Zygadlo J, Giordano W, Banchio E (2011) Volatile organic compounds from rhizobacteria increase biosynthesis of essential oils and growth parameters in peppermint (*Mentha piperita*). Plant Physiol Biochem 49:1177–1182

Schippmann U, Leaman D, Cunningham AB (2006) A Comparison of cultivation and wild collection of medicinal and aromatic plants under sustainability aspects. In: Bogers RJ, Craker LE, Lange D (eds) Medicinal and aromatic plants: agricultural, commerical, ecological, legal, pharmacological and social aspects. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 75–96

Singh R, Divya S, Awasthi A, Kalra A (2012) Technology for efficient and successful delivery of vermicompost colonized bioinoculants in *Pogostemon cablin* (Patchouli) Benth. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:323–333

Singh R, Soni SK, Kalra A (2013) Synergy between Glomus fasciculatum and a beneficial Pseudomonas in reducing root diseases and improving yield and forskolin content in *Coleus forskohlii* Briq. under organic field conditions. Mycorrhiza 23:35–44

Smith SE, Read DJ (2008) Mycorrhizal symbiosis, 3rd edn. Elsevier, New York

Solaiman ZM, Anawar HM (2015) Rhizosphere microbes interactions in medicinal plants. In: Egamberdieva D, Shrivastava S, Varma A (eds) Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) and medicinal plants. Springer International Publishing, Switzerland, pp 19–41

Stefan M, Munteanu N, Dunca S (2012) Plant-microbial interactions in the rhizosphere–strategies for plant growth-promotion. Analele Stiintifice ale Universitatii "Alexandru Ioan Cuza" din Iasi Sec. II a. Genetica si Biologie Moleculara 13:87–96

Sucher NJ, Carles MC (2008) Genome-based approaches to the authentication of medicinal plants. Planta Med 74:603–623

Sudipta KM, Swamy MK, Balasubramanya S, Anuradha M (2011) Cost effective approach for *in vitro* propagation of (*Leptadenia reticulata* Wight & Arn.)-a threatened plant of medicinal importance. J Phytol 3:72–79

Sudipta KM, Swamy MK, Ashok G, Balasubramanya S, Anuradha M (2014) Evaluation of antioxidant, in vitro cytotoxicity of micropropagated and naturally grown plants of *Leptadenia reticulata* (Retz.) Wight & Arn.-an endangered medicinal plant. Asian Pac J Trop Med 7S:267–271

Swamy MK, Sinniah UR (2015) A comprehensive review on the phytochemical constituents and pharmacological activities of *Pogostemon cablin* Benth.: An aromatic medicinal plant of industrial importance. Molecules 20:8521–8547

Swamy MK, Sinniah UR, Akhtar MS (2015). In vitro pharmacological activities and GC-MS analysis of different solvent extracts of Lantana camara leaves collected from tropical region of Malaysia. Evid-Based Compl Alt Med. 2015:1–9. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1155/2015/506413

Swamy MK, Pokharen N, Dahal S, Anuradha M (2011) Phytochemical and antimicrobial studies of leaf extract of *Euphorbia neriifolia*. J Med Plants Res 5:5785–5788

Swamy MK, Sudipta KM, Lokesh P, Neeki MA, Rashmi W, Bhaumik SH, Darshil SH, Vijay R, Kashyap SSN (2012) Phytochemical screening and in vitro antimicrobial activity of *Bougainvillea spectabilis* flower extracts. Int J Phytomed 4:375–379

Toussaint JP, Kraml M, Nell M, Smith SE, Smith FA, Steinkellner S, Schmiderer C, Vierheilig H, Novak J (2008) Effect of *Glomus mosseae* on concentrations of rosmarinic and caffeic acids and essential oil compounds in basil inoculated with *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. basilici. Plant Pathol 57:1109–1116

Uniyal SK, Awasthi A, Rawat GS (2002) Current status and distribution of commercially exploited medicinal and aromatic plants in upper Gori valley, Kumaon Himalaya, Uttaranchal. Curr Sci 82:1246–1252

Vafadar F, Amooaghaie R, Otroshy M (2014) Effects of plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus on plant growth, stevioside, NPK, and chlorophyll content of *Stevia rebaudiana*. J Plant Interact 9:128–136

Vasudha S, Shivesh S, Prasad SK (2013) Harnessing PGPR from rhizosphere of prevalent medicinal plants in tribal areas of Central India. Res J Biotechnol 8:76–85

Vessey JK (2003) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria as biofertilizers. Plant Soil 255:571–586

Yadav BK, Akhtar MS, Panwar J (2015) Rhizospheric plant microbe interactions: a key factor to soil fertility and plant nutrition. In: Arora NK (ed) Plant microbe symbiosis-applied facests. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 127–145

Zeng Y, Guo LP, Chen BD, Hao ZP, Wang JY, Huang LQ, Yang G, Cui XM, Yang L, Wu ZX, Chen ML, Zhang Y (2013) Arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis and active ingredients of medicinal plants: current research status and prospectives. Mycorrhiza 23:253–265

Zhang HY, Xue QH, Shen GH, Wang DS (2013) Effects of actinomycetes agent on ginseng growth and rhizosphere soil microflora. J Appl Ecol 24:2287–2293

Zhao JL, He XL (2011) Effects of AM fungi on drought resistance and content of chemical components in *Angelica dahurica*. Acta Agric Bor Occi Sin 20:184–189

Zhao X, Yan XF (2006) Effects of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on the growth and absorption of nitrogen and phosphorus in *Camptotheca acuminata* seedlings. J Plant Ecol 30:947–953

Zitterl-Eglseer K, Nell M, Lamien-Meda A, Steinkellner S, Wawrosch C, Kopp B, Zitterl W, Vierheilig H, Novak J (2015) Effects of root colonization by symbiotic arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on the yield of pharmacologically active compounds in *Angelica archangelica* L. Acta Physiol Plant 37:1–11

Zubek S, Stojakowska A, Anielska T, Turnau K (2010) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi alter thymol derivative contents of *Inula ensifolia* L. Mycorrhiza 20:497–504

Zubek S, Mielcarek S, Turnau K (2012) Hypericin and pseudohypericin concentrations of a valuable medicinal plant *Hypericum perforatum* L. are enhanced by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Mycorrhiza 22:149–156

Interaction Among Rhizospheric Microbes, Soil, and Plant Roots: Influence on Micronutrient Uptake and Bioavailability

Vivek Kumar, Manoj Kumar, Neeraj Shrivastava, Sandeep Bisht, Shivesh Sharma, and Ajit Varma

Abstract Soils resulting in micronutrient deficiency in agricultural land and pastureland are increasing globally. Such micronutrient deficiency is due to lower nutrient availability, lower nutrient mobility, and lower capacity of plants to take up nutrients from the rhizosphere. The rhizosphere extends up to a few millimeters from the root surface into the surrounding soil and is rich in microbial activity and diversity. The activity and types of microbes and the soil characteristics influence the uptake and transport of micronutrients in the roots. From the root zone, mobilization of micronutrients in the edible part of plants and their bioavailability is another question. The availability and uptake of various micronutrients in the rhizosphere is again influenced by soil properties and plant root exudates, and depends on microbial interactions with plant roots. The micronutrient transfer dynamics from the microbial cell to the plant cell is also influenced by the physiology of plant–microbe interactions. For diffusion-supplied micronutrients, if a large diffusion gradient exists between the root surfaces and the soil, a large amount could be shipped toward the roots. Conversely, when the capacity of root cells to take up micronutrients exceeds the rate of nutrient replenishment in the root zone, the uptake rate is regulated by nutrient availability rather than the capacity of plant roots to absorb nutrients. Plants exude a wide range of organic compounds and inorganic ions into the rhizosphere, changing the micro-chemical and biological zone of the rhizosphere and enhancing acclimatization or modification toward a

V. Kumar (✉) • M. Kumar • N. Shrivastava • A. Varma
Amity Institute of Microbial Technology, Amity University, Noida, Uttar Pradesh, India
e-mail: vivekbps@gmail.com

S. Bisht
Department of Molecular Biology and Biotechnology, VCSG College of Horticulture and Forestry, Uttarakhand University of Horticulture and Forestry, Bharsar, Uttarakhand, India

S. Sharma
Department of Biotechnology, MLN National Institute of Technology, Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh, India

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_8

particular biotic and abiotic environment. Absolute understanding of the multifaceted and intricate interactions dominating the relationship among plants, microbes, and soil that influence the composition of root exudates is still far off. Understanding of the plant–microbe–soil interaction mechanism for the uptake and mobilization of micronutrients and their bioavailability in the edible part of plants will open an avenue in biological science which could help solve the problem of micronutrient deficiency in consumers.

Keywords Bioavailability • Micronutrients • Microbes • Rhizosphere

1 Introduction

The rhizosphere is the region of soil that surrounds plant roots. The root zone acts as a source of excretion of various organic compounds into the sink that is the rhizosphere; therefore, the rhizosphere contains solution-phase, volatile, and gas-phase compounds (Belnap et al. 2003). From the microbial point of view, the rhizosphere is a rich zone of nutrients. The real and active zone of the rhizosphere is not defined, but it ranges up to few millimeters and depends on the type of soil and roots. The study of microbes in the rhizosphere and their interaction with plant roots is not a simple task compared with the study of microbes and microbial communication in bulk soil. A multifaceted microbial community could be present on soil mass, in the form of a biofilm, or on a segment of the exterior or interior of a root hair, where border is difficult or complicated to define (Belnap et al. 2003).

On the other hand, physically removing microbes from soil aggregate is not easy, and it is extremely difficult, in particular, to remove them from intact rhizosphere. Modern improved and sophisticated molecular biology tools to characterize and categorize soil microbes have resulted in our jumping from beyond merely culturing soil microorganisms to the study of their community interaction and diversity. Plant types may also play an important role in determining the bacterial and fungal community structure in the rhizosphere and in bulk soil (Yang et al. 2001). The microbial community of a plant is influenced by the plant age, genotype, and phenotypic characters, abiotic and biotic stress (Smith et al. 1999), the nutrient status of the plant (Yang and Crowley 2000), physiological abnormalities due to pathogen infection (Yang et al. 2001), and colonization by arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) fungi (Gadkar et al. 2001). In the root systems, the microorganism population can vary in the various zones (Yang and Crowley 2000), and the microbial community varies as the root elongates and enters the bulk soil (Marilley and Aragno 1999). The region of root elongation has been reported to harbor the largest number of microbes (Jaeger et al. 1999).

The rhizosphere is very complex and it also supports a varied microbial community. The effect of microorganisms in the rhizosphere is habitually mutualistic. Therefore, it will be more ecologically significant and important to understand and

study microbes at the community level. The characterization of the microbial community and its structure is generally related to those microbes which we know best, such as plant-growth-promoting microbes (PGPMs) such as members of *Azotobacter*, pseudomonads (Noori and Saud 2012), phosphate solubilizers (Kumar and Narula 1999; Yazdani et al. 2009), or AM fungi (Sabannavar and Lakshman 2009). The microbial community diversity and beneficial aspects have been studied mainly in economically important agricultural crops; namely, wheat, rice, maize, oilseeds, vegetables, and medicinal and aromatic plants (Solanki et al. 2011; Kumar et al. 2013).

2 Micronutrient Uptake

Micronutrients are essential for plant growth and production; they also play a vital and significant role in balanced crop nutrition and physiological functions. The common micronutrients which are important for overall plant growth and metabolic activities are iron, copper, zinc, boron, nickel, manganese, molybdenum, and chloride. Although plants do not require as much micronutrients, or trace nutrients, they are as necessary for plant nutrition as primary and secondary nutrients are. Deficiency of any one of the micronutrients in the soil could check plant growth and production, even if all other macronutrients or micronutrients are present in sufficient quantity (Yu and Renegal 1999). Most of the soils in world are deficient in micronutrients for many reasons. Some reasons limiting the incidental addition of micronutrients include harvesting of micronutrients from the soil by the growing of high-yield crops, increased use of NPK fertilizers containing lesser amounts of micronutrients, developments in fertilizer technology decreasing the residual addition of micronutrients, less use of organic matter, and the desire to achieve bumper production.

On the other hand, deficiency of important micronutrients such as iron and zinc leads to brain development impairment and wound healing and the person becomes immune compromised to common infectious diseases such as pneumonia, diarrhea, and malaria (Prasad 2013). Moreover, iron deficiency causes poor physical development, poor learning ability, and poor intellectual maturity among children, and leads to anemia and poor reproductivity (Black 2003). Mostly, the zinc and iron deficiencies are caused by a diet deficient in micronutrients or their nonbioavailability (Welch and Graham 2004).

3 Micronutrient Uptake Mechanism

The active root exudates of plants are able to decide and establish the microbial organization on the root by repressing or stimulating a particular type of microbial community (Doornbos et al. 2012). Kamilova et al. (2006) studied the root exudates

of seed, seedlings, and roots of tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum*), cucumber (*Cucumis sativus*), and sweet pepper (*Capsicum annuum*), and reported that the major organic acids were citric acid, succinic acid, and malic acid. In vitro growth of rhizobacteria on citric acid as the sole carbon source seems to be associated with the root-establishing capability. This suggests that a particular plant species can choose a particular microbe by producing explicit and particular root exudates. Berg and Smalla (2009) found using stable isotope probing techniques that for plants grown under $^{13}CO_2$, bacteria could assimilate the root exudates. Low molecular weight phytochemicals such as organic acids, phenolics, amino acids, sugars, and other secondary metabolites form the bulk of root exudates and can protect the plant from invasion by pathogens. Generally, root exudates such as phenolics and terpenoids have strong external antimicrobial qualities (Bais et al. 2006). Phenolic metabolites produced by root exudates also function proficiently in attracting some rhizospheric and bulk soil microbes and can successfully manipulate the resident soil microbial population (Brimecombe et al. 2001).

Therefore, these micronutrients are imperative for usual and natural functioning of plant metabolism, productivity, seed viability, chlorophyll synthesis, fruit development, and nutrient and water uptake and transportation. They are essential for amino acid structure and enzymatic activities. Deficiency of any one micronutrient affects the plant normal growth and function, which gives an opportunity for pathogenic fungi, viruses, and bacteria to attack the plant. For many reasons (dry or flooded soil, lack or low availability, soil texture, trend of fertilizer application) micronutrients are not sufficient in soil or their availability is low. Plant roots are not as efficient in taking up an adequate amount of all essential trace elements as they are in taking up water and macroelements. Because of the low efficiency of plant roots for micronutrient uptake, microbes can help in the uptake and transport of vital nutrients using many uptake mechanisms.

These micronutrients are used in metalloproteins or cofactors to protect the organism from toxic effects of excess metals. These metals are present in ionic forms with variable oxidation states and take part in most cellular redox reactions according to biological needs. Thus, for healthy plant growth and development, a range of transition metals must be acquired from the soil, transported around the plant, and distributed and compartmentalized within different tissues and cells. Clearly membrane transport systems likely play a key role in these events (Guerinot 2000; Hall and Williams 2003; Grotz and Guerinot 2006; Krämer et al. 2007; Smith and Smith 2011; Barberon et al. 2011). Symbiotic mutualistic interactions of AM fungi with plants resulted in increased nutrient uptake, especially supply of low-mobility mineral nutrients; for example, phosphorus and other micronutrients such as zinc and copper. The hyphal networks AM fungi develop in the soil enhance the surface area of soil contact, movement of nutrients into the environment, and storage capacity, and thus increase nutrient availability to plants by up to four times. By reducing the distance required for diffusion, mycorrhizal hyphae more efficiently take up phosphorus (up to four times higher) as compared with the plant root system, and in return the plant provides carbon compounds to the fungus (Smith and Smith 2011).

4 Role of Transporters in Nutrient Acquisition

The selectively permeable nature of the plasma membrane ensures the entry of crucial metals and metabolites into the cell and also maintains intracellular homeostasis of the cytoplasm. The structural components of membranes are primarily phospholipid bilayers with transmembrane proteins; they helps in the trafficking of metals, ions, water, and metabolites across the membrane and maintenance of a cytosolic pH. Generally, O_2 and CO_2 can permeate phospholipid bilayers, but inorganic ions and other hydrophilic solutes, such as sucrose and amino acids, cannot permeate them. Therefore, certain specific proteins facilitate the entry of protons, inorganic ions, and organic solutes the through plasma membrane, and these are called "transporters." The recent cloning of the genes for a large number of transport proteins and the availability of knockout mutants make it possible to dissect transport processes in greater detail and to begin to understand the interactions between ion uptake processes that have often been observed at the organ level (Grotz and Guerinot 2006; Krämer et al. 2007). Plants associated with mycorrhizal fungi follow two pathways for nutrient uptake. The plant root epidermis and hairs possess high-affinity phosphorus and nitrogen transporters, which are responsible for uptake of nutrients; this is the direct pathway. These transporters are downregulated in a mycorrhizal symbiotic root association. In the mycorrhizal pathway, mycorrhiza-inducible phosphorus and nitrogen transporters present in the periarbuscular membrane are involved in uptake of nutrients. This is main pathway for nutrient uptake in a symbiotic or mutualistic association (Guerinot 2000; Hall and Williams 2003; Smith and Smith 2011).

Metal uptake, metal distribution, and metal delivery to various plant cell types and organs, conjugation with the required protein, and storage and remobilization require the operation of efficient metal transporters. Higher accumulation can lead to toxicity in plants, thus, high precision and specificity is required in metal transport and its regulation (Krämer et al. 2007; Smith et al. 2004; Smith and Smith 2011; Barberon et al. 2011). Transport of micronutrients and other metabolite metals in plants is mediated by some specific protein families: for example, the iron-regulated transporter protein (ZIP) family, zinc-regulated transporter, the subfamily of P-type ATPases, the natural-resistance-associated macrophage protein (NRAMP) family, the yellow stripe like 1 (YSL1) subfamily of the oligopeptide transporter (OPT) superfamily, the copper transporter (COPT) family, the Ca^{2+}-sensitive cross complementer 1 (CCC1) family, the iron-regulated protein (IREG) family, ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters, ABC transporters of the mitochondria (ATM), and pleiotropic drug resistance (PDR) transporters (Barberon et al. 2011; Montanini et al. 2007; Hall and Williams 2003).

5 ZIP Transporters

The ZIP family of transporters has been characterized universally, including in bacteria, fungi, plants, insects, and mammals, and plays important roles in metal uptake and transport. ZIP proteins consist of 309–476 amino acid residues with

eight potential transmembrane domains, and generally contribute to metal ion homeostasis by transporting divalent cations, including Fe^{2+}, Zn^{2+}, Mn^{2+}, and Cd^{2+}, from microorganisms such as yeast into the cytoplasm. Transmembrane domains 3 and 4 contain N and C terminals on the plasma membrane surface, with variable regions between both domains. These transmembrane domains possess a potential metal-binding domain rich in histidine residues frequently located in the variable region between the domains 3 and 4. Transmembrane domain 4 of the ZIP family proteins is the most conserved region, and forms an amphipathic helix rich in histidine residues. The adjacent polar residue and this histidine-rich region may form part of an intramembranous heavy metal binding site that is part of the transport pathway (Curie et al. 2000; Guerinot 2000; Eide 2011). ZIP transporter activity is regulated by both transcriptional and posttranscriptional control mechanisms.

6 Cation Diffusion Facilitator Family

The cation diffusion facilitator (CDF) family is responsible for cation homeostasis in bacteria, fungi, plants, and animals. Members of this family facilitate the transportation of micronutrients such as zinc, cobalt, nickel, and copper. The protein structure reveals six transmembrane domains with two significant regions: an N-terminal signature sequence and a C-terminal cation-binding domain. They are also rich in histidine, between the N and/or C termini. Such histidine-rich regions are predicted to function as potential metal-binding domains. Some of the CDFs play important role in homooligomeric complexes or heterooligomeric complexes, and this may lead to regulation of the activity of other proteins bound to metals. CDF family members transport principal metals: Zn^{2+}, Mn^{2+}, or Fe^{2+}/Zn^{2+}. These proteins are responsible for the transport of more than one metal. CDFs create an electrochemical gradient by using H^+ or K^+ ions and transport the metals against a concentration gradient (Podar et al. 2012; Grotz and Guerinot 2006; Montanini et al. 2007; Gustin et al. 2011; Desbrosses-Fonrouge et al. 2005; Kobae et al. 2004)

The proteins range in size from 280 and 740 residues. In *Arabidopsis thaliana*, 12 CDF transporter genes were reported, and one of them was named Z*INC TRANSPORTER OF ARABIDOPSIS THALIANA (ZAT*), or *METAL TOLERANCE PROTEIN 1* (*MTP1*) *MPT1* is expressed constitutively throughout the plant and was induced by increased zinc concentrations. MTP1 is present in all tissues, and the uptake of zinc is limited by the expression of *MPT1*. Overexpression of the gene leads to resistance of toxic levels of zinc. Increased sequestration rather than efflux of zinc is the main reason for such resistance. Since MTP1 has been localized to the vacuolar membrane of plants, it also supports zinc transportation in vacuoles, which are highly sensitive to zinc concentrations in plants.

7 ABC Transporters

The ABC transporters are the largest protein family, present in microbes to specialized human cells, and are actively engaged in active transport process by gaining energy from ATP hydrolysis. The energy released is used by the phosphorylated intermediates of ABC family members and pumps metals or large organic molecules across the plasma membrane of the cell. ABC transporters act as proton cotransporters and proton antiporters involved in, similarly to the P-type ATPases, and associated with metal deposition in vacuoles, where detoxification of heavy metals follows (Morel et al. 2009). An ABC transporter from tonoplasts has been identified and named "HMT1." It is a heavy metal phytochelatin complex (Garmory and Titball 2004; Vert et al. 2002). Song et al. (2010) identified the plant vacuolar phytochelatin transporters. The reason why these transporters remained undiscovered for such a long time is that two ABCC proteins, AtABCC1 and AtABCC2, exhibit a redundant function, rendering reverse genetic approaches unsuitable for their identification. Two other ABC transporters, AtABCC1 and AtABCC2, contribute to Cd^{2+} and Hg^{2+} tolerance. AtABCC1 plays a significant role in tolerance to the divalent heavy metals in the absence of AtABCC2. In plants, final detoxification processes occur in vacuoles with the help of ABC proteins, which are responsible for metal/metalloid deposition in vacuoles, where detoxification occurs (Kang et al. 2011; Garmory and Titball 2004).

8 NRAMP Family

The NRAMP family is a ubiquitous metal transport family from bacteria to humans which participates in metal ion homeostasis. Members of the NRAMP family help in Zn^{2+}, Cu^{2+}, Fe^{2+}, Cd^{2+}, Ni^{2+}, Mn^{2+}, and Co^{2+} transport. They also have highly conserved protein sequences and show 28 % (yeast), 40 % (plant), and 55 % (fly) sequence identity with the mammalian proteins (46 %, 58 %, and 73 % similarity respectively). The NRAMP/SLC11 transmembrane proteins constitute a ubiquitous family of metal transporters important for host–microbe interactions and responsible for competitive acquisition for divalent cations (Grotz and Guerinot 2006). One member, divalent-metal transporter 1, is responsible for dietary iron absorption. Three (AtNRAMP1, AtNRAMP3, and AtNRAMP4) of seven members of the NRAMP family identified from the model organism *Arabidopsis thaliana* mediate the transport of iron. When iron deficiency occurs in soil, the messenger RNA of the corresponding genes accumulated in roots (*ATNRAMP1*, *ATNRAMP3*, and *ATNRAMP4*) and shoots (*ATNRAMP4*). At toxic iron concentrations, overexpression of *ATNRAMP1* increases the resistance of plants by excess transportation of iron into the plastids to prevent toxicity. Overexpression of *ATNRAMP3* increases the iron concentration in the cytosol, and in response *IRT1* and *FRO2* messenger RNA (accumulated during iron deficiency) is downregulated and localizes to the vascular system of the roots and shoots of *Arabidopsis* (Lin et al. 2009, Cellier 2012; Nevo and Nelson 2006).

9 P-Type ATPases

A superfamily of transporters, P-type ATPases posses unique signature motifs and have been identified in prokaryotes and eukaryotes, including yeasts, insects, plants, and mammals. As the name suggests, formation of a phosphoenzyme intermediate, in which one phosphate is transferred to highly conserved DKTGT motif, is a unique character of this superfamily. P-type ATPases catalyze heavy metal transport, and this transport activity is characterized by a Cys-Pro-Xaa (or Xaa-Pro-Cys) motif, where Xaa is Cys, Ser, or His, in the sixth transmembrane helix (Okkeri and Haltia 2006; Hussain et al. 2006). This superfamily is divided into subgroups with distinct substrate specificities involved in heavy metal transport across cellular membranes. For example, some subfamilies include H^+-ATPases (type 3A) in plants and fungi, Na^+/K^+-ATPases (types 2C and 2D) in animals, Ca^{2+}-ATPases (types 2A and AB), and heavy-metal-transporting ATPases (type 1B). Two types of coppers transporters, RAN1 (also called "HMA7") and PAA1 (P-type ATPase 1 of *Arabidopsis*) have also been identified in plants and are responsible for the delivery of copper to the plastid. Members of HLA alleles also play essential roles in the homeostasis of zinc in *Arabidopsis* (Argüello 2003; Argüello et al. 2007; Wu 2006; Lewinson et al. 2009)

10 Rhizospheric Microbial Interaction

Rhizospheric communication is essential and critical for almost all sorts of interactions and led to evolution of plant–microbe interactions. Molecular signaling systems, especially in bacteria, have been well identified. Bacteria can sense the biomolecules excreted by the plant roots. Many rhizospheric microbes, especially bacteria, also secrete phytohormones (Kumar et al. 2000, 2001), which influences plant growth. Additionally, there is also competition and communication among various types of microbes in the rhizosphere, which also modulates the rhizosphere, influencing plant growth and the biome (Faure et al. 2009). The best known plant–microbe interaction is symbiotic association of a *Rhizobium* and legume plant, where legume roots secrete betaines and flavonoids (Franche et al. 2009). On the other hand, other signaling biomolecules play an important role in the legume–*Rhizobium* communication that leads to a mutualism (Faure et al. 2009). AM fungi also excrete strigolactones, which are a group of sesquiterpene lactones which act as signaling molecules between roots and AM fungi (Akiyama and Hayashi 2006; Paszkowski 2006). The low concentrations of sesquiterpene strigolactones encourage and persuade the widespread hyphal branching in the germinating spores of the AM fungus *Gigaspora margarita* (Bouwmeester et al. 2007). Phosphate deficiency enhances strigolactone release in plants infected with AM fungi (Yoneyama et al. 2008), whereas excess of phosphate leads to nongermination of fungal spores. The identification of novel plant microbe communicating signals leads to an understanding of the precise basis of AM fungus–plant interactions.

Various biotic interactions also occur in the rhizosphere that may influence the type and organization of the microbial population on the root surface. These include interactions of roots with mycorrhizal fungi and root pathogens, root–bacteria interactions, interactions within the microbial community, and interactions of mesofauna with the microbial community. Biotic interactions are typically commoner in the rhizosphere than in bulk soil and in many cases may equal or exceed the importance of abiotic factors in determining microbial community composition. During the course of plant root generation and growth, the root passes through soil particles and activates the indigenous microbial community there, through its exudates, which leads to competition among microbes for food and space, which results in the final determination of the rhizospheric community. During this course of development, microbes may intermingle with each other through detection and excretion of organic molecules. In the process of chemical interactions, bacteria sense a quorum, which leads to a change in gene expression and therefore bacterial activities (Loh et al. 2002). The kind of chemical indicator or signal is precise for a particular microorganism; closely related microbes share a common type of indicator or signal (Loh et al. 2002). The Gram-negative bacteria signals are commonly acyl homoserine lactones, and for Gram-positive bacteria, they are modified polypeptides. One receptor has been reported in most soil bacteria that sense a particular signal and a synthase that produces a signal or indicator, but there are reports that some rhizospheric bacteria are known to produce many types of signal molecules.

Additionally, plant hormones, such as jasmonic acid and salicylic acid (defense-related plant hormones), can intercede in or modulate the composition of root exudates (Carvalhais et al. 2013). Pieterse et al. (2009) proposed that alterations in the protection- or resistance-related hormones, as observed for the period of insect and pathogen damage of leaf tissues, could potentially manipulate the chemical composition of the root exudates and also the microbial community in the rhizosphere. On the other hand, chemical initiation of plant resistance by foliar application of salicylic acid and jasmonic acid did not considerably influence the rhizosphere microbiome (López et al. 2008). Therefore, use of precise and responsive microbial profiling methods is essential to notice active alterations or changes in the plant microbial community.

11 Micronutrient Uptake and Mobilization

A normal human requires 49 nutrients to meet his/her metabolic demands. Insufficient intake of even one of these nutrients will lead to metabolic disorders. This will lead to poor and underdeveloped health, especially in children. The health of an adult person is also affected by micronutrient deficiency, which ultimately negatively affects the efficiency and economic costs of a society (Calton 2010). Prominently, the chief resource of all micronutrients comes from agricultural produce. If agricultural produce does not supply sufficient quantities of all micronutrients, then the population will suffer from deficiency diseases and people will not

have healthy lives. Regrettably, this is the case for most of the agricultural systems in many developing countries (Govindaraj and Kannan 2011). Micronutrient deficiencies in the soil influence crop production, and ultimately reduce the quality of the produce. It has been estimated that more than three billion people experience micronutrient deficiency and about two billion of these have iron deficiency, and the numbers are increasing (Hennessy et al. 2014). To augment the accumulation of various micronutrients in crop produce, biofortification is a viable and feasible choice. On the other hand, the quality of crop produce biofortification depends on the chemical properties of the soli, crop genotypes, agricultural management practices, and climatic factors (Schulin et al. 2009). Biofortification is the process of augmenting the bioavailable concentrations of necessary and vital elements in edible portions of crop plants through agronomic practices or genetic methods.

Many research organizations worldwide are investing hugely and investigating the genetic potential of crop plants to enhance micronutrient bioavailability in common staple food crops such as wheat, rice, beans, and oilseeds (Cakmak et al. 2010). For micronutrient biofortification, plant breeding approaches facilitate enhancement of the amount of a number of minerals concurrently in edible tissues of food without any consequences for growth and yield parameters, whereas transgenic approaches depend on improving nutrient mobilization from the soil, uptake from the rhizosphere, transport to the shoot and leaf, and buildup of mineral elements in bioavailable forms in edible tissues (Borrill et al. 2014). The plant breeding approach to increase micronutrient uptake by plant roots is tedious, and results take a long time; on the other hand, the transgenic approach is costly. The use of potential PGPMs could be a better choice to increase micronutrient uptake by roots.

This underlines the promise of the use of PGPMs as a simple, effortless, and economically encouraging method for biofortification. The PGPM attributes could facilitate in crop plants the growth of deep root systems in nutrient-deficient soils and the excretion of ligands/siderophores or acids/alkalis to mobilize micronutrients. Many researchers have reported the uptake of micronutrients by a variety of crops using microorganisms. Ardakani et al. (2011) reported the higher uptake of iron, manganese, zinc, and copper in wheat using *Azospirillum* and mycorrhizae compared with nonmicrobial inoculation. Inoculation of roots with AM fungi increased zinc uptake and mobilization and growth of rice (Purakayastha and Chhonkar 2001). AM fungi inoculation has been shown to increase wheat and maize growth along with higher zinc uptake in zinc-deficient soils where zinc was applied as a fertilizer (Kothari et al. 1990). Yildirim et al. (2011) investigated the effects of root inoculations with *Bacillus cereus* (N_2 fixing), *Brevibacillus reuszeri* (phosphorus solubilizing), and *Rhizobium rubi* (both N_2 fixing and phosphorus solubilizing) on plant growth, nutrient uptake, and yield of broccoli in comparison with manure (control) and mineral fertilizer application under field conditions. Bacterial inoculations with manure compared with the control significantly increased yield, plant weight, head diameter, chlorophyll content, and nitrogen, potassium, calcium, sulfur, phosphorus, magnesium, iron, manganese, zinc, and copper content of broccoli. Senthilkumar et al. (2014) observed that the combination of fertigation and a consortium of biofertilizers in banana significantly enhanced accumulation of secondary nutrients and micronutrients (Fe, Zn, and

Mn) in the leaves, pseudostem, and fruits at harvest. Goteti et al. (2013) screened ten strains for zinc solubilization, and tested them on a maize crop in a short-term pot culture experiment and observed that seed bacterization with zinc solubilizing *Pseudomonas* sp. (strain P29) the P29 strain significantly enhanced the concentrations of macronutrients and micronutrients such as manganese (60 ppm) and zinc (278.8 ppm) compared with the uninoculated control.

Li et al. (2007) investigated in a hydroponic experiment with different concentrations of cadmium and zinc the effects of bacteria (*Burkholderia cepacia*) on metal uptake by the hyperaccumulating plant *Sedum alfredii*. It was observed that inoculation with bacteria significantly enhanced plant growth (up to 110 % with zinc treatment), phosphorus uptake (up to 56.1 % with cadmium treatment), and metal uptake (up to 243 % and 96.3 % with cadmium and zinc treatment respectively) in shoots, the tolerance index (up to 134 % with zinc treatment), and translocation of metals (up to 296 % and 135 % with cadmium and zinc treatment respectively) from root to shoot. Kuffner et al. (2008) studied ten rhizospheric isolates (*Pseudomonas*, *Janthinobacterium*, *Serratia*, *Flavobacterium*, *Streptomyces*, and *Agromyces*) from heavy-metal-accumulating willows. These isolates were analyzed for plant growth promotion and zinc and cadmium uptake in *Salix caprea* plantlets grown in sterilized, zinc–cadmium–lead-contaminated soil. *Agromyces* AR33 increased plant growth and also enhanced the total amount of zinc and cadmium extracted from soil. In an additional study, three bacterial strains–namely, BC, AX, and AB—isolated from a zinc-deficient rice–wheat field belonging to the genera *Burkholderia* and *Acinetobacter* were investigated for growth promotion and zinc uptake in rice plants. Bacterial inoculations also significantly enhanced the total zinc uptake per pot (52.5 %) as well as grain methionine concentration (38.8 %). The effect of bacterial treatments on the bioavailability of zinc was assessed by estimation of the levels of phytic acid in grains. A reduction of nearly 38.4 % in the phytate-to-zinc ratio in grains was observed under bacterial inoculations (Vaid et al. 2014). Zaidi et al. (2006) reported that inoculation with *Bacillus subtilis* (SJ-101) not only prevented the plant from experiencing nickel toxicity but also enhanced the growth of *Brassica juncea* in metal rich soil. Tariq et al. (2007) reported that mobilization of aboriginal soil zinc in rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) rhizosphere was observed with plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria and compared the effect with that obtained with an available form of a chemical zinc source as Zn-EDTA. Application of plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria mitigated the zinc deficiency symptoms and enhanced the total biomass (23 %), grain yield (65 %), and zinc concentration in the grain. Microbial inoculation had a positive impact on zinc uptake and mobilization efficiency compared with no inoculation, and microbially inoculated rice plants were more efficient in taking up zinc compared with noncolonized plants. Sharma et al. (2003) reported that the plant-growth-promoting bacterium *Pseudomonas* sp. strain GRP3 influences iron acquisition in mung bean (*Vigna radiata* L. Wilzeck). Root colonization by AM fungi resulted in increased uptake of comparatively stationary metal micronutrients, such as copper in white clover (Li et al. 1991), copper, zinc, manganese, and iron in *Zea mays* (Liu et al. 2000), and zinc in field pea crops without influencing yield or phosphorus uptake (Ryan and Angus 2003).

12 Micronutrient Bioavailability

Nutritional value is a vital and significant limiting aspect to sufficient diet in many resource-limited regions. One of the important features of food value is the bioavailability of nutrients present in a given food; this availability could be enhanced by biofortification. Biofortification is a method in which plants take up the macroelements and microelements (e.g., Fe and Zn) from the soil and transport them in the grains so that these elements become bioavailable to humans or to produce nutritionally rich grains that maintain the nutritional requirement of the consumer. This approach has been proved to be viable, comparatively cost-effective, and effectual (Hotz and Gibson 2007). Regarding bioavailability of micronutrients in the edible part of a crop, most research has been done on iron and zinc because these two elements are very essential and significant for normal metabolism and enzymatic activities and influence the overall health of a human. Because of this, the following discussion on bioavailability of micronutrients will focus on iron and zinc. Ryan et al. (2008) reported that the zinc concentration of wheat grain decreased by 33–39 % in response to phosphorus fertilizer. Phosphorus fertilizer also increased the concentrations of grain phosphorus by 17 % and grain phytic acid by 19 % but had little effect on the concentrations of calcium, iron, and polyphenols. The bioavailability of grain zinc, as shown by the phytic acid to zinc and calcium times phytic acid to zinc molar ratios, mostly reflected zinc concentration and was low in all treatments. After milling, the phytic acid to zinc molar ratio suggested low zinc bioavailability for flour from wheat grown with phosphorus fertilizer after canola or fallow. In a greenhouse and field experiment it has been demonstrated that mycorrhizal symbiosis facilitates the availability of both iron and zinc in maize. The relation between these two micronutrients may aid in increased mobilization of iron and zinc, which are eventually translocated into developing grains. AM fungi inoculation helped in biofortification of grains with trace minerals besides mitigating the effect of antinutritional factors present in grains (Balakrishnan and Subramanian 2012). Imran et al. (2014) reported that soil microbial communities play a vital role in enhancing bioavailability of zinc to plants in soil matrix. Similarly, application of a consortium of *Azospirillum lipoferum* JCM-1270, *Azospirillum lipoferum* ER-20, *Pseudomonas* sp. K-1, *Pseudomonas* sp. 96-51, and *Agrobacterium* sp. Ca-18 has been reported by Tariq et al. (2007) to promote zinc availability to rice plants (*Oriza sativa*) and substantially increase root weight, length, and volume and zinc uptake in straw and grain. Similarly, Biari et al. (2008) reported on the bioavailability of iron, copper, manganese, and zinc in *Zea mays* promoted by *Azotobacter chroococcum* and *Azospirillum brasilense* under field conditions. Nyoki and Ndakidemi (2014) reported on zinc, iron, manganese, and copper uptake in cowpea pods promoted by *Bradirhizobium japonicum*.

13 Future Aspects and Concluding Remarks

This is an exciting research field in rhizospheric microbial ecology. The advancement of innovative approaches for studying the integral rhizosphere is just like entering another world. In this chapter we have discussed current progress in rhizospheric microbial interaction, the role of rhizospheric microbial communities in uptake of micronutrients and their bioavailability. The rhizosphere is very different from bulk soil in mineral composition, pH, organic matter content, redox potential, and gaseous exchange. These parameters control and regulate the uptake and mobility of micronutrients, which results in different biogeochemistry of these nutrients in the rhizosphere compared with bulk soil. The future research direction should be to enhance the many aspects of plant root and rhizospheric systems and also to augment our concept of scavenging of microbial microelements from the rhizosphere and their transport into plant parts. One also has to keep the following things in mind; the root morphology, its biomass, physiology, and exact mode of adsorption, microbe–root association and interaction, micronutrient uptake and mobilization through plant root exudates, production of chelating agents by roots and microbes, and consumption and degradation of root exudates by microbes for trace element uptake and mobilization enhancement. Better understanding of rhizospheric microbial interaction will help us to comprehend the uptake of micronutrients for better plant growth. Development of molecular biology and genetic engineering technology for better understanding of microbe–plant–root association and inoculation with suitable potential microbes will help to remove more microelements.

Employment of a range of bacterial and fungal inoculants to plant roots, seeds, and soil had produced promising results in terms of improving the levels of micronutrients in soil, plant tissues, and the sink, and thereby improving overall yield. Regardless of the reality that research related to the influence of these microbial inoculants on increasing uptake of trace elements from soil to the plant edible parts is incomplete and restricted, the promise of such potential bioinoculants has not been greatly investigated, and only a few microbes have been tested under field conditions, there are still some realistically and convincingly excellent reports about the significance of these microbial inoculants in improving the micronutrient bioavailability fraction from soil and reducing micronutrient deficiency in edible crop plants and also decreasing the need for costly fertilizers. For that reason, potential microbes with greater micronutrient scavenging ability and greater ability to transport these micronutrients into the edible part of the plant should be developed. Additionally, focus on the genes responsible for or involved in micronutrient uptake and mobilization is very important so that more competent microbial strains can be developed and formulated. There could be a further possibility of transferring the genes responsible for micronutrient mobilization into a bioavailable form from microbes into the plant. This will be highly useful and advantageous to solve the dependency of plant roots on any external agency for micronutrient mobilization into a bioavailable form.

References

Akiyama K, Hayashi H (2006) Strigolactones: chemicals signals for fungal symbionts and parasitic weeds in plant roots. Ann Bot 97:925–931

Ardakani MR, Mazaheri D, Shirani Rad AH, Mafakheri S (2011) Uptake of micronutrients by wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) in a sustainable agroecosystem. Middle-East J Sci Res 7(4):444–451

Argüello JM (2003) Identification of ion-selectivity determinants in heavy-metal transport P1B-type ATPases. J Membr Biol 195:93–108

Argüello JM, Eren E, González-Guerrero M (2007) The structure and function of heavy metal transport P1B-ATPases. Biometals 20:233–248

Bais HP, Weir TL, Perry LG, Gilroy S, Vivanco JM (2006) The role of root exudates in the rhizosphere interactions with plants and other organisms. Annu Rev Plant Biol 57:233–266

Balakrishnan N, Subramanian KS (2012) Mycorrhizal symbiosis and bioavailability of micronutrients in maize grain. Maydica 57:129–138

Barberon M, Zelazny E, Robert S, Conéjéro G, Curie C, Friml J, Vert G (2011) Monoubiquitin dependent endocytosis of the IRON-REGULATED TRANSPORTER 1 (IRT1) transporter controls iron uptake in plants. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108(32):E450–E458

Belnap J, Hawkes CV, Firestone MK (2003) Boundaries in miniature: two examples from soil. Bioscience 53:739–749

Berg G, Smalla K (2009) Plant species and soil type cooperatively shape the structure and function of microbial communities in the rhizosphere. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 68:1–13

Biari A, Gholami A, Rahmani HA (2008) Growth promotion and enhanced nutrient uptake of maize (Zea mays L.) by application of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in arid region of Iran. J Biol Sci 8(6):1015–1020

Black R (2003) Micronutrient deficiency: an underlying cause of morbidity and mortality. Bull World Health Organ 81(2):79–79

Borrill P, Connorton JM, Balk J, Miller AJ, Sanders D, Uauy C (2014) Biofortification of wheat grain with iron and zinc: integrating novel genomic resources and knowledge from model crops. Front Plant Sci 5:1–8

Bouwmeester HJ, Roux C, Lopez-Raez JA, Becard G (2007) Rhizosphere communication of plants, parasitic plants and AM fungi. Trends Plant Sci 12:224–230

Brimecombe MJ, de Leij FA, Lynch JM (2001) The effect of root exudates on rhizosphere microbial populations. In: Pinton E, Varanini Z, Nanniperi R (eds) The rhizosphere: biochemistry and organic substances at the soil-plant interface. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 95–140

Cakmak I, Pfeiffer WH, Clafferty BM (2010) Biofortification of durum wheat with zinc and iron. Cereal Chem 87(1):10e20

Calton JB (2010) Prevalence of micronutrient deficiency in popular diet plans. J Int Soc Sports Nutr 7:24–32

Carvalhais LC, Dennis PG, Badri DV, Tyson GW, Vivanco JM, Schenk PM (2013) Activation of the jasmonic acid plant defense pathway alters the composition of rhizosphere bacterial communities. PLoS One 8(3), e56457

Cellier MFM (2012) Nramp: from sequence to structure and mechanism of divalent metal import. Curr Top Membr 69:249–293

Curie C, Alonso JM, Jean ML, Ecker JR, Briat JF (2000) Involvement of NRAMP1 from *Arabidopsis thaliana* in iron transport. Biochem J 347:749–755

Desbrosses-Fonrouge AG, Voigt K, Schroder A, Arrivault S, Thomine S, Kramer U (2005) *Arabidopsis thaliana* MTP1 is a Zn transporter in the vacuolar membrane which mediates Zn detoxification and drives leaf Zn accumulation. FEBS Lett 579:4165–4174

Doornbos RF, van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM (2012) Impact of root exudates and plant defense signaling on bacterial communities in the rhizosphere. Agron Sustain Dev 32:227–243

Eide DJ (2005) The Zip family of zinc transporters. In: Iuchi S, Kuldell N (eds) Zinc finger proteins: from atomic contact to cellular function.. Molecular biology intelligence unit. Springer, New York, pp 261–264

Faure D, Vereecke D, Leveau JHJ (2009) Molecular communication in the rhizosphere. Plant Soil 321:279–303. doi:10.1007/s1104-008-9839-2
Franche C, Lindström K, Elmerich C (2009) Nitrogen-fixing bacteria associated with leguminous and non-leguminous plants. Plant Soil 321:35–59. doi:10.1007/s11104-0089833-8
Gadkar V, David-Schwartz R, Kunik T, Kapulnik Y (2001) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal colonization. Factors involved in host recognition. Plant Physiol 127(4):1493–1499
Garmory HS, Titball RW (2004) ATP-binding cassette transporters are targets for the development of antibacterial vaccines and therapies. Infect Immun 72(12):6757–6763
Goteti PK, Emmanuel LDA, Desai S, Shaik MHA (2013) Prospective zinc solubilising bacteria for enhanced nutrient uptake and growth promotion in maize (*Zea mays* L.). Int J Microbiol. ID 869697, doi.org/10.1155/2013/869697
Govindaraj M, Kannan AP (2011) Implication of micronutrients in agriculture and health with special reference to iron and zinc. Int J Agric Manage Dev 1(4):207–220
Grotz N, Guerinot ML (2006) Molecular aspects of Cu, Fe and Zn homeostasis in plants. Biochim Biophys Acta 1763:595–608
Guerinot ML (2000) The ZIP family of metal transporters. Biochim Biophys Acta 1465:190–198
Gustin JL, Zanis MJ, Salt DE (2011) Structure and evolution of the plant cation diffusion facilitator family of ion transporters. BMC Evol Biol 11:76–87
Hall JL, Williams LE (2003) Transition metal transporters in plants. J Exp Bot 54(393):2601–2613
Hennessy A, Walton J, McNulty B, Nugent A, Gibney M, Flynn A (2014) Micronutrient intakes and adequacy of intake in older adults in Ireland. Proc Nutr Soc 73(OCE2):E9
Hotz C, Gibson RS (2007) Traditional food-processing and preparation practices to enhance the bioavailability of micronutrients in plant-based diets. J Nutr 137(4):1097–1100
Hussain D, Haydon MJ, Wang Y, Wong E, Sherson SM, Young J, Camakaris J, Harper JF, Cobbett CS (2006) P-type ATPase heavy metal transporters with roles in essential zinc homeostasis in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Cell 16(5):1327–1339
Imran M, Arshad M, Khalid A, Kanwal S, Crowley DE (2014) Perspectives of rhizosphere microflora for improving Zn bioavailability and acquisition by higher plants. Int J Agric Biol 16:653–662
Jaeger CH, Lindow SE, Miller S, Clark E, Firestone MK (1999) Mapping of sugar and amino acid availability in soil around roots with bacterial sensors of sucrose and tryptophan. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:2685–2690
Kamilova F, Kravchenko LV, Shaposhnikov AI, Azarova A, Makarova N, Lugtenberg B (2006) Organic acids, sugars, and L-tryptophane in exudates of vegetables growing on stonewool and their effects on activities of rhizosphere bacteria. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19(3):250–256
Kang J, Park J, Choi H, Burla B, Kretzschmar T, Lee Y, Martinoia E (2011) Plant ABC transporters. Arabidopsis Book 9, e0153
Kobae Y, Uemura T, Sato MH, Ohnishi M, Mimura T, Nakagawa T, Maeshima M (2004) Zinc transporter of *Arabidopsis thaliana* AtMTP1 is localized to vacuolar membranes and implicated in zinc homeostasis. Plant Cell Physiol 45:1749–1758
Kothari SK, Marschner H, Romheld V (1990) Direct and indirect effects of VA mycorrhizal fungi and rhizosphere microorganisms on acquisition of mineral nutrients by maize (*Zea mays*) in a calcareous soil. New Phytol 116:637–645
Krämer U, Talke IN, Hanikenne M (2007) Transition metal transport. FEBS Lett 581(12):2263–2272
Kuffner M, Puschenreiter M, Wieshammer G, Gorfer M, Sessitsch A (2008) Rhizosphere bacteria affect growth and metal uptake of heavy metal accumulating willows. Plant Soil 304:35–44
Kumar V, Narula N (1999) Solubilization of inorganic phosphates and growth emergence of wheat as affected by *Azotobacter chroococcum* mutants. Biol Fertil Soil 28(3):301–305
Kumar V, Bisht S, Teotia P, Sharma S, Solanki AS (2013) Interaction between *G. fasciculatum* and *A. chroococcum* for yield, nutrients uptake and cost economy of *Lepidium sativum* in Indian arid region. Thai J Agric Sci 46(1):21–28

Lewinson O, Lee AT, Rees DC (2009) A P-type ATPase importer that discriminates between essential and toxic transition metals. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106(12):4677–4682

Li XL, Marschner H, Romheld V (1991) Acquisition of phosphorus and copper by VA mycorhizal hyphae and root to shoot transport in white clover. Plant Soil 136:49–57

Li WC, Ye ZH, Won MH (2007) Effects of bacteria on enhanced metal uptake of the Cd/Zn-hyperaccumulating plant, *Sedum alfredii*. J Expt Bot 58(15-16):4173–4182

Lin Z, Fernández-Robledo JA, Cellier MFM, Vast GR (2009) Metals and membrane metal transporters in biological systems: the role(s) of Nramp in host-parasite interactions. J Argent Chem Soc 97:210–225

Liu A, Hamel C, Hamilton RI, Ma BL, Smith DL (2000) Acquisition of Cu, Zn, Mn and Fe by mycorrhizal maize (*Zea mays* L.) grown in soil at different P and micronutrient levels. Mycorrhiza 9:331–336

Loh J, Pierson EA, Pierson LS, Stacey G, Chatterjee A (2002) Quorum sensing in plant associated bacteria. Curr Opin Plant Biol 5:285–290

López MA, Bannenberg G, Castresana C (2008) Controlling hormone signaling is a plant and pathogen challenge for growth and survival. Curr Opin Plant Biol 11(4):420–427

Marilley L, Aragno M (1999) Phylogenetic diversity of bacterial communities differing in degree of proximity of *Lolium perenne* and *Trifolium repens* roots. App Soil Ecol 13:127–136

Montanini B, Blaudez D, Jeandroz S, Sanders D, Chalot M (2007) Phylogenetic and functional analysis of the cation diffusion facilitator (CDF) family: improved signature and prediction of substrate specificity. BMC Genomics 8:107–112

Morel M, Crouzet J, Gravot A, Auroy P, Leonhardt N, Vavasseur A, Richaud P (2009) AtHMA3, a P1B-ATPase allowing Cd/Zn/Co/Pb vacuolar storage in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Physiol 149:894–904

Nevo Y, Nelson N (2006) The NRAMP family of metal-ion transporters. Biochim Biophys Acta 1763(7):609–620

Noori MSS, Saud HM (2012) Potential plant growth promoting activity of *Pseudomonas* sp isolated from paddy soil in Malaysia as biocontrol agent. Plant Pathol Microbiol 3(2):1–4

Nyoki D, Ndakidemi PA (2014) Influence of *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* and phosphorus on micronutrient uptake in cowpea. A case study of zinc (Zn), iron (Fe), copper (Cu) and manganese (Mn). Am J Plant Sci 5:427–435

Okkeri J, Haltia T (2006) The metal-binding sites of the zinc-transporting P-type ATPase of *Escherichia coli*. Lys^{693} and Asp^{714} in the seventh and eighth transmembrane segments of ZntA contribute to the coupling of metal binding and ATPase activity. Biochim Biophys Acta 1757(7):1485–1495

Paszkowski U (2006) Mutualism and parasitism: the yin and yang of plant symbioses. Curr Opin Plant Biol 9:364–370

Pieterse CM, Leon-Reyes A, Van der Ent S, Van Wees SC (2009) Networking by small-molecule hormones in plant immunity. Nat Chem Biol 5(5):308–316

Podar D, Scherer J, Noordally Z, Herzyk P, Nies D, Sanders D (2012) Metal selectivity determinants in a family of transition metal transporters. J Biol Chem 287:3185–3196

Prasad AS (2013) Discovery of human zinc deficiency: its impact on human health and disease. Adv Nutr 4:176–190

Purakayastha TJ, Chhonkar PK (2001) Influence of vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (*Glomus etunicatum* L.) on mobilization of Zn in wetland rice (*Oryza sativa* L.). Biol Fertil Soil 33:323–327

Ryan MH, Angus JF (2003) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi increase zinc uptake but do not influence yield or P uptake of field crops in SE Australia. Plant Soil 250:225–239

Ryan MH, McInerney JK, Record IR, Angus JF (2008) Zinc bioavailability in wheat grain in relation to phosphorus fertiliser, crop sequence and mycorrhizal fungi. J Sci Food Agric 88:1208–1216

Sabannavar SJ, Lakshman HC (2009) Effect of rock phosphate solubilization using mycorrhizal fungi and phosphobacteria on two high yielding varieties of *Sesamum indicum* L. World J Agric Sci 5(4):470–479

Schulin R, Khoschgoftarmanesh A, Afyuni M, Nowack B, Frossard E (2009) Effects of soil management on zinc uptake and its bioavailability in plants. In: Banuelos GS, Lin ZQ (eds) Development and use of biofortified agricultural products. CRC , Boca Raton, pp 95–114

Senthilkumar M, Ganesh S, Srinivas K, Panneerselvam P (2014) Enhancing uptake of secondary and micronutrients in banana Cv. Robusta (AAA) through intervention of fertigation and consortium of biofertilizers. Sch Acad J Biosci 2(8):472–478

Sharma A, Johri BN, Sharma AK, Glick BR (2003) Plant growth-promoting bacterium *Pseudomonas* sp. strain GRP3 influences iron acquisition in mung bean (*Vigna radiate* L. Wilzeck). Soil Biol Biochem 35:887–894

Smith SE, Smith FA (2011) Roles of arbuscular mycorrhizas in plant nutrition and growth: new paradigms from cellular to ecosystems scales. Annu Rev Plant Biol 63:227–250

Smith KP, Handelsman J, Goodman RM (1999) Genetic basis in plants for interactions with disease- suppressive bacteria. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 96:4786–4790

Smith SE, Smith FA, Jakobsen I (2004) Functional diversity in arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) symbioses: the contribution of the mycorrhizal P uptake pathway is not correlated with mycorrhizal responses in growth or total P uptake. New Phytol 162:511–524

Solanki AS, Kumar V, Sharma S (2011) AM fungi, *A. chroococcum*, yield, nutrient uptake and economics of *Chlorophytum borivillianum* in Indian arid region. J Agric Technol 7(4):983–991

Song WY, Park J, Mendoza-Cozatl D, Suter-Grotemeyer M, Shim D, Hortensteiner S, Geisler M, Weder B, Rea P, Rentsch D, Schroder J, Lee Y, Martinoia E (2010) Arsenic tolerance in *Arabidopsis* is mediated by two ABCC-type phytochelatin transporters. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:21187–21192

Tariq M, Hameed S, Malik KA, Hafeez FY (2007) Plant root associated bacteria for zinc mobilization in rice. Pak J Bot 39:245–253

Vaid SK, Kumar B, Sharma A, Shukla AK, Srivastava PC (2014) Effect of Zn solubilizing bacteria on growth promotion and Zn nutrition of rice. J Soil Sci Plant Nutri 14(4):889–910

Vert G, Grotz N, Dedaldechamp F, Gaymard F, Guerinot M, Briat J, Curie C (2002) IRT1, an *Arabidopsis* transporter essential for iron uptake from the soil and for plant growth. Plant Cell 14:1223–1233

Welch RM, Graham RD (2004) Breeding for micronutrients in staple food crops from a human nutrition perspective. J Exp Bot 55:353–364

Wu CC (2006) The cadmium transport sites of CadA, the Cd^{2+}-ATPase from *Listeria monocytogenes*. J Biol Chem 281:29533–29541

Yang C-H, Crowley DE (2000) Rhizosphere microbial community structure in relation to root location and plant iron nutritional status. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:345–351

Yang CH, Crowley DE, Menge JA (2001) 16S rDNA fingerprinting of rhizosphere bacterial communities associated with healthy and Phytophthora infected avocado roots. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 35:129–136

Yazdani M, Bahmanyar MA, Pirdashti H, Esmaili MA (2009) Effect of phosphate solubilization microorganisms (PSM) and plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on yield and yield components of corn (Zea mays L.). Proc World Sci Eng Technol 37:90–92

Yildirim E, Karlidag H, Turan M, Dursun A, Goktepe F (2011) Growth, nutrient uptake, and yield promotion of broccoli by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria with manure. Hort Sci 46(6):932–936

Yoneyama K, Xie X, Sekimoto H, Takeuchi Y, Ogasawara S, Akiyama K, Hayashi H, Yoneyama K (2008) Strigolactones, host recognition signals for root parasitic plants and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi, from Fabaceae plants. New Phytol 179:484–494

Yu Q, Renegal Z (1999) Micronutrient deficiency influences plant growth and activities of superoxide dismutases in narrow leafed *Lupins*. Ann Bot 83:175–182

Zaidi S, Usmani S, Singh BR, Musarrat J (2006) Significance of *Bacillus subtilis* strain SJ-101 as a bioinoculant for concurrent plant growth promotion and nickel accumulation in *Brassica juncea*. Chemosphere 64:991–997

Bacterial Determinants and Plant Defense Induction: Their Role as Biocontrol Agents in Sustainable Agriculture

Stuti Patel, Riyaz Z. Sayyed, and Meenu Saraf

Abstract In an environment consisting of harmful microorganisms, survival of plants mainly depends on efficient microbial recognition and rapid defense mechanisms. After infection with a necrotizing pathogen, many plants develop resistance against attack by phytopathogens. This resistance is regarded as systemic acquired resistance, which is a key portion of plant defense against pathogen infection. Induction of acquired resistance in plants occurs mainly by enhancement of the levels of pathogenesis-related proteins and salicylic acid. Some groups of plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria are involved in an indirect mechanism, either by their antagonistic effect against phytopathogens or by induced systemic resistance (ISR) mechanisms in plants. ISR has been studied with respect to the underlying signaling pathways and to its application in crop protection. The signaling pathway regulating ISR functions independently of salicylic acid, and is mainly dependent on the plant hormones jasmonic acid and ethylene. Apart from these, NPR1, a defensive regulatory protein, is also involved in both systemic and acquired resistance in plants. In this chapter, the molecular and genetic relationship between basal resistance and induced resistance is highlighted.

Keywords Biocontrol • Induced systemic resistance • Systemic acquired resistance

S. Patel • M. Saraf (✉)
Department of Microbiology, University School of Sciences, Gujarat University, Ahmedabad, Gujarat 380009, India
e-mail: sarafmeenu@gmail.com

R.Z. Sayyed (✉)
Department of Microbiology, PSGVP Mandal's Arts, Science and Commerce College, Shahada, Nandurbar, Maharashtra 425409, India
e-mail: sayyedrz@gmail.com

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_9

1 Introduction

Plant diseases have always been major problems. Various abiotic and biotic factors affect plant productivity worldwide. Biotic factors such as viroids and higher organisms are plant pathogen parasites that cause diseases. Plant disease resistance is a prerequisite for modern agriculture; the dynamics of plant–microbe interaction has an immense and positive effect worldwide for the management and control of plant diseases. Since the twentieth century, it has been reported that plants have an innate ability to combat infection, recover from diseases, and evade future infections (Chester 1933). Colonization on host plants and thereby utilization of the reserves of plant stores are the features of phytopathogens. Detection of pathogens and the defensive response of the plant is in the form of secretion of antimicrobial compounds and other stress responses. The abilities of a pathogen to induce a disease in a host plant is usually the exception as plants are capable of recognizing the invading pathogens and establishing a successful defense mechanism. In contrast, some pathogens can successfully produce diseases in plants as they are able to evade suppression of the host defense mechanism (Borrás-Hidalgo 2004). Plant–pathogen interaction results either in a disease condition in the host plant or in a resistance mechanism which prevents the spread and multiplication of the nonhost pathogen. Plants depend on an innate immunity to defend themselves. Innate immunity includes two interrelated branches: pathogen-associated molecular pattern (PAMP)/microbe-associated molecular pattern (MAMP)-triggered immunity and effector-triggered immunity (Euglem and Somssich 2007). PAMPs/MAMPs are identified by host cell-surface-localized pattern recognition receptors and activate plant immunity. PAMP-triggered immunity restricts pathogen proliferation. Since the last decade, plant–pathogen association has been known to lead to the development of multiple mechanisms of surveillance in plants (Zhang and Zhou 2010). By delivering virulence effector proteins into host cells, pathogens adapt themselves into the host plant on inhibiting PAMP-triggered immunity (Abramovitch et al. 2006). To overcome this, plants developed immune receptors known as resistance proteins, which either directly or indirectly detect pathogen-specific effector protein activities inside the plant cell and trigger disease resistance, which results in effector-triggered immunity, which is very specific and mostly leads to hypersensitive responses (Tsuda et al. 2009).

There are mainly two possible kinds of plant resistance mechanisms: active and passive. The active resistance mechanism of the plant depends on the defense mechanism induced only after an attack by a pathogen, whereas the passive resistance mechanism relies only on constitutively expressed defenses. Active defense against an incompatible pathogen is in the form of induced resistance that is categorized by a highly localized defense expression such as the hypersensitive response and phytoalexins (Hammerschmidt and Nicholson 1999). Induced resistance, depending on the mode of expression, can be of two types: local and systemic. Local induced resistance means resistance is induced only in the specific tissue where the attack by the pathogen occurs, whereas systemic induced resistance occurs in a part of a plant that is spatially separated by an induction point (Hammerschmidt 1999). Local systemic

resistance involves induction of certain pathogenesis-related (PR) proteins to stop the proliferation of the challenging pathogen; in the case of systemic resistance, the induction of cells away from the induction site occurs, which permits the cells to defend themselves against the challenge by what is called "priming" (Conrath et al. 2002). On the basis of the type of inducing agent and the host signaling pathways, induced resistance is characterized into two forms: systemic acquired resistance (SAR) and induced systemic resistance (ISR) (van Loon et al. 1998). SAR develops subsequent to a localized necrosis, and is dependent on salicylic acid (SA) signaling and on the expression of PR proteins. ISR develops systemically because of plant root colonization by plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) and plant-growth-promoting fungi. Moreover, besides induced resistance in plants, rhizobacteria are also known to be involved in an indirect mechanism by acting as biocontrol agents (Akhtar and Siddiqui 2010; Glick 2012). Biocontrol activity include nutrient competition, exclusion of niches, and production of antifungal metabolites (lytic enzymes) as chief modes of the mechanism (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009) against phytopathogens.

2 Indirect Mechanisms

2.1 Role of PGPR in Suppression of Disease Caused by Phytopathogens

There are several biocontrol methods for the control of soilborne phytopathogens and plant diseases. These methods involve an attempt either to increase soil antagonist activity with pathogens (Gamliel et al. 2000) or to protect plants by the use of bioinoculants (Compant et al. 2005; Akhtar and Siddiqui 2009; Akhtar et al. 2010). Increasing the soil fertility may also reduce the efficacy of bioinoculants, whose niches may be reduced (Hoitink and Boehm 1999). The mechanisms by which PGPR control the damage to plants resulting from pathogen invasion include siderophore secretion, physical displacement, and production of antibiotics, enzymes, and a variety of molecules that inhibit phytopathogen growth (Niranjan Raj et al. 2006). One of the major mechanisms that can control the proliferation of phytopathogens is the production of siderophores with a very much higher affinity for iron than fungal pathogens (Siddiqui et al. 2007; Sayyed and Chincholkar 2009; Sayyed and Patel 2011; Glick 2012; Sayyed et al. 2013; Shaikh et al. 2014; Shaikh and Sayyed 2015). Another effective mechanism is the production of antibiotics, which are deleterious to the metabolism or growth of other pathogens (Doornbos et al. 2012). A large number of antibiotics have been identified, produced by members of *Pseudomonads*, *Bacillus*, *Stenotrophomonas*, and *Streptomyces* (Compant et al. 2005).

Soilborne microorganisms are capable of producing extracellular enzymes such as cellulases chitinases, lipases, β-1-3-glucanases, and proteases, thereby hydrolyzing a wide variety of polymeric compounds, including proteins, chitin, hemicelluloses, and cellulose, which hinders the growth of pathogens (Markovich and Kononova 2003). These enzymes together with antibiotics play an important role in

the defense against phytopathogenic fungi as a antagonistic effect (Fogliano et al. 2002). PGPR that produce such enzymes have been shown to have a biocontrol effect against fungi, including *Sclerotium rolfsii*, *Botrytis cinerea*, *Phytophthora* spp., *Fusarium oxysporum*, *Pythium ultimum*, and *Rhizoctonia solani* (Glick 2012).

2.2 Systemic Acquired Resistance

On primary invasion by pathogens in plants, tissue necrosis at the site of infection by pathogens is activated by SAR (Ryals et al. 1996). SAR is known to be associated with a PR gene expression which results in accumulation of PR proteins involved in antimicrobial action and thereby induces resistance. Expression of the PR-1 protein is a molecular marker for SAR induction. The PR-1 proteins are usually appear as a result of SA accumulation (van Loon et al. 2006). It was demonstrated that a transgenic plant expressing the bacterial salicylate hydroxylase gene (*nahG*) was incapable of accumulating SA. Plants expressing *nahG* do not show an SAR response as they convert SA to inactive catechol (Lawton et al. 1996). Likewise, the SA-production-deficient mutants sid1 and sid2 do not show SAR after infection with a necrotizing pathogen, which indicates that SA is necessary and sufficient for the induction of SAR (Verhagen et al. 2006). However, SA action requires the protein NPR1, also known as "NIM1," an ankyrin repeat family protein structurally (Cao et al. 1997). In the presence of SA, oligomers of NPR1 in the cytoplasm are reduced to monomers by redox reactions and interact with specific TGA transcription factors for the expression of gene codings for PRs (Dong 2004). NPR1 is a master regulatory protein identified through genetic screens for SAR-compromised mutants in *Arabidopsis thaliana* (Dong 2004; Pieterse and van Loon 2004). It significantly increases the binding of TGA2 to SA promoter elements in the *Arabidopsis* PR-1 gene (Despres et al. 2000). Subramaniam et al. (2001) showed interactions between NPR1 and TGA2 by using a protein fragment complementation assay in vivo, and demonstrated that the SA-induced interaction is strictly localized in the nucleus. The steps involved in SAR signaling are shown in Fig. 1.

2.3 Induced Systemic Resistance

In the last three decades, various reports have confirmed a beneficial effect of root-colonizing bacteria such as PGPR on plant development and disease resistance (Kloepper et al. 1980). A specific recognition factor between the plant and the systemic-resistance-inducing rhizobacteria is needed for the induction of resistance. For instance, *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and *Pseudomonas putida* perform differently on different host species, as *Arabidopsis* responds to *P. putida*, whereas carnation and radish do not (van Wees et al. 1997). Conversely, radish is responsive to *P. fluorescens*, whereas *Arabidopsis* is not (Leeman et al. 1995a). Plant-growth-promoting activities

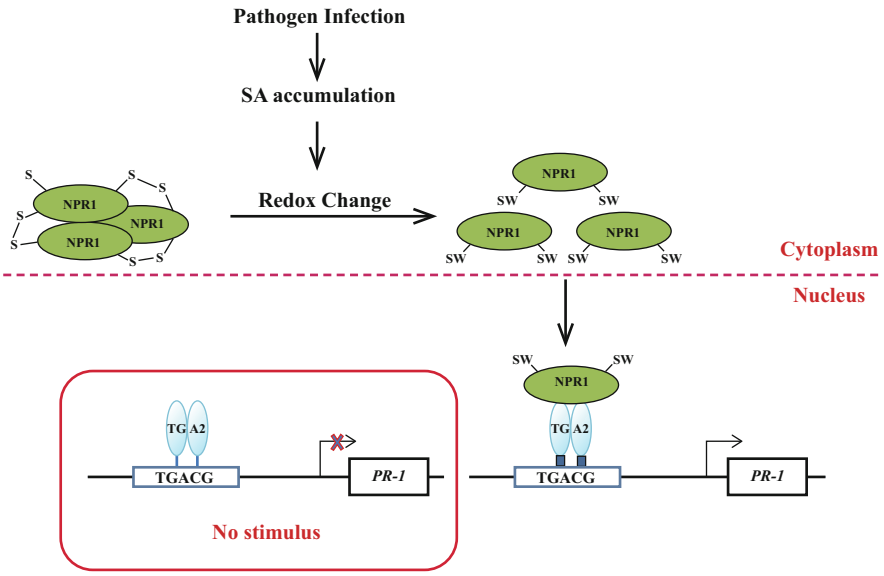


Fig. 1 SAR signaling induced by Phytopathogens in plants (modified from Pieterse and Van Loon 2004)

of PGPR can directly affect plant growth but are mostly related to a biocontrol activity of soil microorganisms which can be depend on a few mechanisms, including nutrient competition, siderophore-mediated competition for iron, and antibiotic production (Patel et al. 2012). Van Peer et al. (1991) demonstrated that PGPR also reduce pathogen infections on aboveground parts of plants such as stems and leaves. Some biochemical compounds of PGPR affect the complementary receptors on the plant surface for the successful elicitation of systemic resistance. Root colonization of ISR-triggering bacteria results in a discriminating level of resistance against a wide range of pathogens, and no defense mechanisms are frequently triggered in aboveground plant tissues on the recognition of the resistance-inducing signal. The phenomenon of expressing the basal defense responses faster on pathogen attack on the tissues is known as "priming" (Conrath et al. 2002). Priming shows efficient resistance strategies that assist the plant to efficiently react to any invader by enhancing infection-induced cellular defense responses (Beckers and Conrath 2007). Pieterse et al. (2000) demonstrated that in *Arabidopsis*, *P. fluorescens* WCS417r-mediated ISR functions require components of the jasmonic acid (JA) and ethylene response pathways but not SA. Like SAR, *P. fluorescens* WCS417r-mediated ISR relies on NPR1.

It is well known that only a few PGPR strains trigger ISR by ethylene-, JA-, and NPR1-dependent pathways. Rhizobacteria-mediated systemic resistance is actively efficient against a vast range of fungal phytopathogens in many plant species (van Loon et al. 1998). Certain bacterial-derived compounds have been implicated in elicitation of ISR (van Loon and Bakker 2006). Bacterial cell wall determinants such as flagella and lipopolysaccharides (LPS), secondary metabolites such as siderophores and antibiotics (Bakker et al. 2003; Iavicoli et al. 2003), and a bacterial

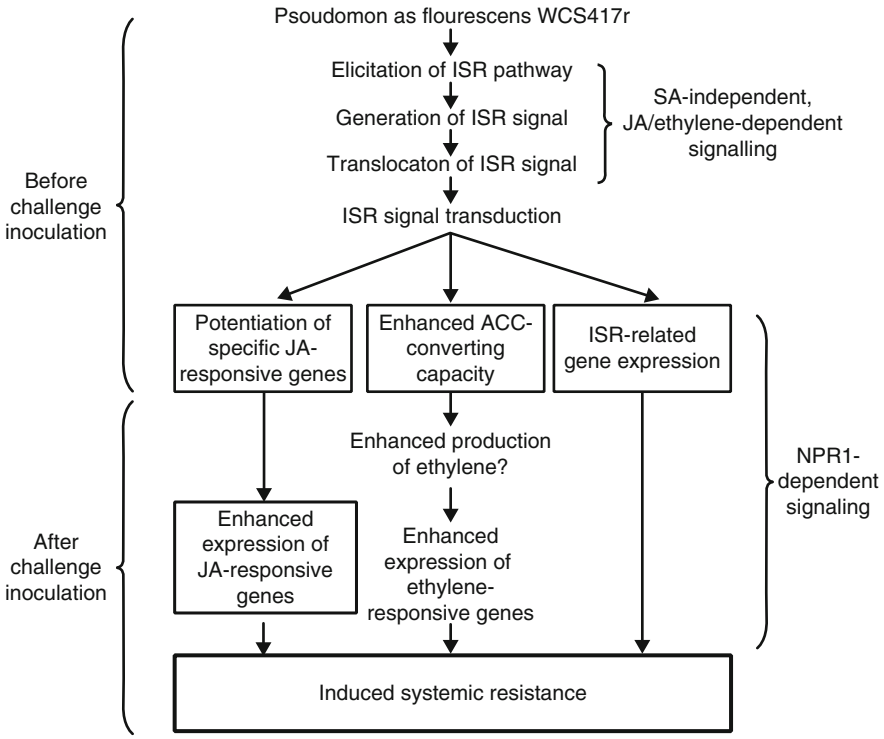


Fig. 2 ISR signaling mediated by Rhizobacteria in plants (adapted from Pieterse et al. 2001)

flagellin receptor have been recognized as bacterial elicitors (Gómez-Gómez and Boller 2000). The prominent homologies with recognition mechanisms for PAMPs in the innate immune response of plants demonstrated that rhizobacteria are recognized as general immunity mechanisms (Nurnberger et al. 2004). The important steps involved in the ISR mechanisms are summarized in Fig. 2.

3 Signaling in Rhizobacteria-Mediated ISR

3.1 SA-Independent Signaling

It has been found that there is no connection between resistance induced by *P. fluorescens* WCS417r (the Dutch reference strain) and accumulation of messenger RNA of certain PR genes ensures SAR and SA action (van Wees et al. 1997). It is known that ISR is not related to changes in endogenous SA content (Pieterse et al. 2000). ISR mediated by *P. fluorescens* WCS417 in SA-nonaccumulating *Arabidopsis nahG* transformants (van Wees et al. 1997) is an independent mechanism and is regulated by signaling pathways different from those for pathogen-induced SAR. The

Arabidopsis ethylene mutant *etr1* and JA mutant *jar1* were studied for their capacity to mount ISR. Both root-colonizing mutant strains of *P. fluorescens* WCS417r failed to induce systemic resistance against *P. syringae* pv. *tomato* (Pieterse et al. 1998), showing ISR signaling is dependent on these phytohormones. Certain well-identified ethylene-signaling mutants do not show enhanced resistance on root treatment with *P. fluorescens* WCS417r against *P. syringae* pv. *tomato* (Knoester et al. 1999), indicating that an ethylene signaling response is necessary for the development of ISR, whereas on leaf infiltration by *P. fluorescens* WCS417r, systemic resistance was observed, indicating ethylene is required for rhizobacterial induction (Knoester et al. 1999). Moreover, it is known that the activation of ISR in the host by *P. fluorescens* WCS417r depends on the responsiveness to ethylene and JA but not an increased level of these defense regulators. The sensitivity to ethylene and JA is enhanced as a result of ISR elicitation. This has been supported by two hypotheses. The first is that in plants showing ISR the ability to convert 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) to ethylene is significantly enhanced, providing an ability to produce ethylene on pathogen invasion (Hase et al. 2003). The expression of ethylene and JA responsive genes is greater in induced plants than in noninduced plants after pathogen attack (Pozo et al. 2008). Thus, it seems that induced plants are more sensitive to the recognition of pathogen-induced ethylene and JA, thus resulting in an enhanced and potent response to subsequent pathogen invasion (Conrath et al. 2006). However, elucidation of the ISR signal-transduction pathway resulted in the conclusion that NPR1 acts downstream of the JA- and ethylene-dependent steps (Pieterse et al. 1998).

3.2 SA-Dependent Signaling

It has become clear that only a few rhizobacteria triggering ISR are facilitated by ethylene/JA, although it has been found that rhizobacteria-facilitated systemic resistance is not regulated by SA. The role of SA was first reported in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 7NSK2 and its mutant producing SA. Induction of SA-dependent resistance by *Pseudomonas* strains is similar to the resistance response of *Tobacco mosaic virus*, which is not expressed in *nahG* tobacco (De Meyer et al. 1999), whereas resistance to *B. cinerea* cannot be triggered in *nahG* tomato (Audenaert et al. 2002). Systemic resistance induced by some *Bacillus* strains requires SA but not JA and NPR1, although some strains of *Bacillus* sp. operate through an ethylene/JA-dependent mechanism and require NPR1 similarly to *P. fluorescens* WCS417r (Barriuso et al. 2008). ISR in *Arabidopsis* against *Verticillium dahliae* in response to root treatment with *Paenibacillus alvei* K165 requires an SA-dependent mechanism of resistance (Tjamos et al. 2005). Similarly, Domenech et al. (2007) reported an SA- and ethylene-dependent pathway in *Bacillus* strain N1137 induces systemic resistance to *Xanthomonas campestris* in *Arabidopsis*. However, Djavaheri (2007) also reported that ISR against *Turnip crinkle virus* in *Arabidopsis* is SA and NPR1 dependent in *P. fluorescens*.

4 Expression of ISR in Plants

After challenge introduction of a pathogen, expression of ISR is almost similar to that of SAR, in which the severity of disease is decreased with reduced pathogen growth and colonization of induced tissues, confirming that the plant is able to fight the pathogen (van Loon 2000). However, a decrease in disease incidence may protect the plant and increase the yield of the crop. Induced proteins on induction of systemic resistance can be taken as reliable markers for the induced state (van Wees et al. 1999).

There was an increase in the activities of stress-related enzymes such as peroxidase, glucanase, polyphenol oxidase, chitinase, and phenylalanine ammonia-lyase (PAL) as well as total phenolic compounds in PGPR-treated plants (van Loon and van Strien 1999). PAL is an important phenolic biosynthesis enzyme, and oxidative enzymes such as polyphenoloxidase and peroxidase have a vital role in lignification of tissue (Barcelo 1997). The activities of PAL, peroxidase, and phenolic content are responsive to changes in the environment and stresses; these changes often occur as a result of rhizobacterial treatments. Root colonization of cucumber by ISR-mediating *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* O6 against *Corynespora cassiicola* causes leaf spot, and effective accumulation of transcripts of six distinct genes on challenge inoculation was found (Kim et al. 2004). Induction was not by *P. chlororaphis* O6 colonization alone but became evident only after pathogen inoculation.

5 PGPR-Mediated ISR for Disease Suppression Under Field Conditions

Besides laboratory and greenhouse evidence, some experimental evidence indicates that systemic resistance by PGPRs can also be useful for plant protection under field conditions (Nandakumar 1998). *Serratia marcescens* strain 90-166, *P. putida* 89B-27, and *Flavimonas oryzihabitans* strain INR-5 showed ISR against angular leaf spot disease and bacterial wilt in field trials (Kloepper et al. 1993). Several PGPRs on application as bacterization of seed, alone, or as seed treatment plus soil drenching at the time of transplantation have protected cucumber plants against anthracnose, angular leaf spot, and bacterial wilt (Zehnder et al. 2001). In rice, treatment with PGPR strain mixtures of *P. fluorescens* strains Pf1 and PB2 reduces rice sheath blight disease penetration and increases yield under field trials (Nandakumar 1998). Thus, mixture of strains would be more effective than a single strain against a broad range of pathogens and pests (Raupach and Kloepper 2000; Akhtar and Siddiqui 2010).

6 Rhizobacterial Determinant Help in Indirect Mechanisms

A number of bacterial determinants are involved in the ISR by PGPR as summarized in the following sections.

6.1 Siderophores

The presence of iron is the limiting condition for both plant and microorganism growth. Disease suppression is performed by rhizobacteria against soilborne pathogens by the release of iron chelators known as "siderophores" in the rhizosphere for competition. Besides competition for ferric iron, siderophore production also triggers ISR and plays a dual role in disease suppression (Hofte and Bakker 2007). Leeman et al. (1996) reported that pseudobactin, a siderophore, produced by *P. fluorescens* strain WCS374 was responsible for ISR in radish against *Fusarium* wilt and not the LPS. Application of purified pseudobactin from *P. fluorescens* strain WCS374 to the roots of radish induces systemic resistance. Pseudobactins from *P. putida* strain WCS358 were tested for *Ralstonia solanacearum* suppression in *Eucalyptus urophylla*, *Erwinia carotovora* suppression in tobacco, and *B. cinerea* suppression in tomato. In all three cases, the purified pseudobactin 358 was as effective as the wild type (van Loon et al. 2008). Some bacteria also produce SA-containing siderophores, which means their SA secretion is the precursor for SA-containing siderophores such as pseudomonine and pyochelin produced by *P. fluorescens* WCS374r and *P. aeruginosa* 7NSK2 respectively. SA is not excreted by bacteria under iron-limiting conditions, but is channeled into the production of SA-containing siderophores. Audenaert et al. (2002) described that induction of systemic resistance does not depend on SA produced by *P. aeruginosa* 7NSK2; rather it depends on the synergistic interaction between the siderophore and pyochelin derived from SA (De Vleesschauwer and Hofte 2009). It has been observed that all the siderophores are not involved in induction of systemic resistance as all siderophores possess different chemical structures produced from various bacterial sources (Höfte 1993).

6.2 Lipopolysaccharides

LPS are made up of three different components: lipid A, core oligopolysaccharide, and an O-linked polysaccharide. LPS have an important function in stabilizing the outer membrane structure of gram-negative bacteria and also play another role of interacting with the outer membrane of the eukaryotic hosts. LPS are important to plants in preventing the hypersensitive response induced in plants by a virulent or nonhost bacterial adhesion to the plasma membrane receptors of plants such as tobacco, pepper, turnips, and *Arabidopsis* (Dow et al. 2000) referred to as a "localized induced response." Plant pathogenic LPS have also been proven to induce the rapid burst of NO which is responsible for innate immunity in plants. Besides, LPS present in the outer membranes of cells are the major component of ISR in certain PGPRs. LPS from *Burkholderia cepacia* with which tobacco leaves were pretreated was associated with the accumulation of PR proteins (Coventry and Dubery 2001) and phosphorylation of ERK-like mitogen-activated protein kinase (Piater et al. 2004) against *Phytophthora nicotianae*, whereas, in tobacco cell suspensions, it has been observed that LPS enhances a rapid flux of Ca^{2+} ion in aequorin-transformed cells, which is correlated with the production of reactive

oxygen and nitrogen species, alkalinization of the extracellular culture medium, and fast phosphorylation of certain proteins (Gerber et al. 2004) due to signaling and regulatory defense mechanism (Gerber et al. 2006) and changes in the expression of several genes (Sanabria and Dubery 2006). LPS from *P. fluorescens* strains WCS374 and WCS417 induces resistance in radish against *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *raphani* (Leeman et al. 1995b). Whereas the mutant of *P. fluorescens* strain WCS417 lacking the O-antigen side chain of LPS does not induce resistance in radish, the O-antigen side chain triggers a defense in radish plants. LPS from *P. putida* WCS358, which has the O-antigen side chain, does not show ISR in radish. Van Wees et al. (1997) showed the O-antigen side chain of *P. fluorescens* WCS417r elicits a defense mechanism in *Arabidopsis*. This shows that LPS from rhizobacteria differs with different host plants and it is not the only trait defining the ISR.

6.3 Exopolysaccharides

Exopolysaccharides (EPS) are high molecular weight polysaccharides that are secreted by most bacteria. EPS help in colonization of the bacteria within the host tissue as well as on the plant surface (Denny 1995). Jones et al. (2008) suggested that EPS can be used as signaling molecules for the developmental response in plants or to suppress host defense response for, for example, EPS secreted by the alfalfa-symbiotic bacterium *Sinorhizobium meliloti* (Mendrygal and González 2000). EPS produced by *Pantoea agglomerans* YAS34 was associated with plant growth promotion of sunflower (Alami et al. 2000). EPS from plant pathogenic *Pantoea agglomerans* elicited a quick flux of active oxygen species in tobacco, parsley, wheat, and rice cell culture (Conrath et al. 2006). However, elicitation of ISR by EPS from PGPR has not been reported. EPS from *Burkholderia gladioli* IN-26, a strain of PGPR, can induce systemic resistance to *Colletotrichum orbiculare* in cucumber when it infiltrates leaves or is applied via seed soaking at a concentration of 200 ppm (Park et al. 2008). However, Ipper et al. (2008) reported that EPS from *Serratia* strain Gsm01 at a concentration of 200 ppm on tobacco leaves affected with *Cucumber mosaic virus* results in accumulation of peroxidase, PAL, and phenols, and an increased level of PR-1b protein expression.

6.4 Antibiotics

Antibiotics are low molecular weight compounds produced by a few microorganisms, and are harmful to the growth and metabolism of other microorganisms. A large diversity of antibiotics exists (e.g., 2,4-diacetylophloroglucinol, pyrrolnitrin, pyoluteorin, and phenazines), and their involvement in biocontrol has been well studied (Haas and Défago 2005). 2,4-Diacetylophloroglucinol is an elicitor of systemic resistance against *Hyaloperonaspora parasitica* induced by *P. fluorescens*

CHA0, whereas its mutant strain does not show any ISR effect (Iavicoli et al. 2003). Moreover, Siddiqui and Shaukat (2003) have demonstrated that *P. fluorescens* CHA0 producing 2,4-diacetylophloroglucinol induces resistance in tomato against root-knot nematode *Meloidogyne javanica*, whereas its mutant strain does not have the capacity to induce resistance. Resistance induced by 2,4-diacetylophloroglucinol follows a signaling route that induces ethylene signaling (Iavicoli et al. 2003). Another antibiotic, pyocyanin (an N-containing heterocyclic blue phenanzine pigment), is also considered a bacterial determinant eliciting ISR (Britigan et al. 1997). Pyocyanin production by *P. aeruginosa* 7NSK2 along with SA-derivative pyochelin triggered ISR in beans and tomato against *B. cinerea* (Audenaert et al. 2002). De Vleesschauwer et al. (2006) reported the dual role of pyocyanin in *P. aeruginosa* 7NSK2-triggered ISR, acting as a positive regulator of resistance to *Magnaporthe oryzae* while also rendering ornamental plants hypersusceptibile to *Rhizoctonia solani*.

6.5 Flagella

The protein flagellin is the building block of the flagellum, a motility organ. It is recognized by most plants, an indication that detection of flagellin is evolutionarily ancient (Boller and Felix 2009), and is required for root colonization by rhizobacteria (De Weger et al. 1987). Conserved peptides of flagellin are observed in Toll-like receptor-like kinase FLS2 in *Arabidopsis* (Gómez-Gómez et al. 2001) and in tomato (Robatzek et al. 2007). Flagella from *P. putida* WCS358 have been widely studied in *Arabidopsis*, bean, and tomato plants (Meziane et al. 2005) but it was shown that its mutant strain lacking flagella also induced resistance; hence, it was concluded that flagella do not play a role in induction of systemic resistance by *P. putida* WCS358. Therefore, there must be other bacterial determinants involved in induction of systemic resistance by *P. putida* WCS358. Plant cells have some receptors which recognize the stretching of 15–22 amino acids of flg22 in a conserved domain, which is a potent elicitor in cell culture of certain plant species such as *Arabidopsis*, tobacco, potato, and tomato. In tomato, flg22 receptor is active at a concentration of 1 pM and has half-maximal resistance at a concentration of 30 pM (Felix et al. 1999). Chinchilla et al. (2006) reported that flagellin is identified through its interaction with FLS2 in *Arabidopsis*. Thereafter, it was identified in *Nicotiana benthamiana*, tomato, *Brassica* sp., and rice (Takai et al. 2008). FLS2 present on the plasma membrane was internalized on flg22 stimulation (Robatzek et al. 2006).

6.6 Volatile Metabolites

Chemically diverse, volatile metabolites are produced by plants and microorganisms, such as terpenes, indoles, fatty acid derivatives, and molecules from other chemical families (Pare and Tumlinson 1999). Ryu et al. (2004) reported that

volatile organic compounds (VOCs) released from PGPR trigger ISR in *Arabidopsis* using an in vitro Petri plate method against the necrotrophic pathogen *Pectobacterium carotovorum* subsp. *carotovorum* using the PGPR strains GB03 and IN937a. The VOCs which were involved were analyzed by gas chromatography–mass spectrometry and were found to be 2,3-butanediol and its precursor 3-hydroxy-2-butanone (Farag et al. 2013). However, it is yet to be investigated whether recognition of VOCs is by aboveground or belowground parts and how plants recognize VOC signals (Pare et al. 2005). Heil and Ton (2008) postulated that in the presence VOCs, changes in transmembrane channels lead to enhanced gene activity.

6.7 Other Compounds

Biosurfactants, most specifically cyclic lipopeptides, act as ISR signaling molecules in plants. Cyclic lipopeptides such as members of the fengycin, iturin, and surfactin families from *Bacillus* sp. are known to induce resistance mechanisms in plants (Ongena and Jacques 2008). Pure fengycin and surfactins provided ISR-mediated protection in beans against *B. cinerea* similarly to that induced by *B. subtilis* S499 (Ongena et al. 2007). Massitolide A cyclic lipopeptide, a member of the viscoin group from *P. fluorescens* strain SS101, shows direct antagonisms and not ISR, but massitolide A when applied alone reduces lesion areas in tomato but not disease incidence, whereas its mutant strain does not show any such effect (Tran et al. 2007).

Certain compounds, such as *N*-acyl homoserine lactones (AHL), a class of bacterial quorum-sensing signals from *Pseudomonas*, assist bacterial cells to regulate gene expression in shoots and roots, and modulate defense and cell growth responses, depending on the population density (Jha and Saraf 2012). *P. putida* strain IsoF producing four different 3-oxo-AHL molecules with acyl side chains showed marked reduction in tomato damage when plants were challenged with *Alternaria*, whereas the mutant strain was 50 % as effective as the wild-type strain. A microarray analysis of defense gene expression of tomato leaves on application of *N*-hexanoyl and *N*-butanoyl homoserine lactones to the roots showed enhanced production of PR proteins and acidic chitinase (Schuhegger et al. 2006). Pure benzylamine at a concentration of 1 μM induced systemic resistance in plants such as beans and cucumber, indicating that the amino group is involved in the resistance (De Vleesschauwer et al. 2008). *N*-Dimethyl-*N*-tetradecyl-*N*-benzylammonium released by *P. putida* BTP1 seems to be the bacterial determinant of systemic resistance in cucumber (Ongena et al. 2008).

7 Conclusions and Future Prospects

Induction of resistance in plants has opened a new horizon in disease maintenance and plant protection. It is a promising tool for ecofriendly disease control and sustainable agricultural practices. PGPR help the plant by plant growth promotion mechanisms, biocontrol, and inducing systemic resistance in host plants. SA-dependent and SA-independent pathways are both involved in systemic signaling for defense responses. The variety of rhizobacterial determinants shows their vital role in ISR and their regulation in the rhizosphere against multiple pathogens attacking crops. The various bacterial determinants and their regulation in the rhizosphere to explore the fundamentals of plant–microbe interactions will a hot topic of future research because it may offer an opportunity to use the above-mentioned attributes of PGPR in crop management strategies.Acknowledgments We thank the Department of Microbiology, Gujarat University, for encouraging us and helping us with the required facilities and British Petroleum International for financial support.

References

Abramovitch RB, Anderson JC, Martin GB (2006) Bacterial elicitation and evasion of plant immunity. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 7:601–611

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2009) Use of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria for the biocontrol of root-rot disease complex of chickpea. Aust Plant Pathol 38:44–50

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2010) Role of Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in biocontrol of plant diseases and sustainable agriculture. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Plant growth and health promoting bacteria, vol 18, Microbiology monographs. Springer, Berlin, pp 157–196

Akhtar MS, Shakeel U, Siddiqui ZA (2010) Biocontrol of Fusarium wilt by *Bacillus pumilus*, *Pseudomonas alcaligenes* and *Rhizobium* sp. on lentil. Turk J Biol 34:1–7

Alami Y, Achouak W, Marol C, Heulin T (2000) Rhizosphere soil aggregation and plant growth-promotion of sunflowers by an exopolysaccharide-producing *Rhizobium* sp. strain isolated from sunflower roots. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:3393–3398

Audenaert K, Pattery T, Cornelis P, Hofte M (2002) Induction of systemic resistance to *Botrytis cinerea* in tomato by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 7NSK2: role of salicylic acid, pyochelin, and pyocyanin. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:1147–1156

Bakker PAHM, Ran LX, Pieterse CMJ, van Loon LC (2003) Understanding the involvement of rhizobacteria-mediated induction of systemic resistance in biocontrol of plant diseases. Can J Plant Pathol 25:5–9

Barcelo AR (1997) Lignification in plant cell walls. Int Rev Cytol 176:87–132

Barriuso J, Ramos Solano B, Manero Gutierrez FJ (2008) Protection against pathogen and salt stress by four plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria isolated from *Pinus* spp. on *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Phytopathology 98:666–672

Beckers GJM, Conrath U (2007) Priming for stress resistance: from the lab to the field. Curr Opin Plant Biol 10:425–431

Boller T, Felix G (2009) A renaissance of elicitors: perception of microbe-associated molecular patterns and danger signals by pattern-recognition receptors. Annu Rev Plant Biol 60:379–406

Borrás-Hidalgo O (2004) Basic insight in plant-pathogen interaction. Biotecnol Apl 21:1–4

Britigan BE, Rasmussen GT, Cox CD (1997) Augmentation of oxidant injury to human pulmonary epithelial cells by the *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* siderophore pyochelin. Infect Immun 65:1071–1076

Cao H, Glazebrook J, Clarke JD, Volko S, Dong X (1997) The Arabidopsis *NPR1*gene that controls systemic acquired resistance encodes a novel protein containing ankyrin repeats. Cell 88:57–63
Chester KS (1933) The problem of acquired physiological immunity in plants. Q Rev Biol 8:275–324
Chinchilla D, Bauer Z, Regenass M, Boller T, Felix G (2006) The *Arabidopsis* receptor kinase FLS2 binds flg22 and determines the specificity of flagellin perception. Plant Cell 18:1–12
Compant S, Duffy B, Nowak J, Clément C (2005) Use of plant growth-promoting bacteria for biocontrol of plant diseases: principles, mechanisms of action and future prospects. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:4951–4959
Conrath U, Pieterse CMJ, Mauch-Mani B (2002) Priming in plant–pathogen interactions. Trends Plant Sci 7:210–216
Conrath U, Beckers GJM, Flors V, Garcia-Agustin P, Jakab G, Mauch F, Newman MA, Pieterse CMJ, Poinssot B, Pozo MJ, Pugin A, Schaffrath U, Ton J, Wendehenne D, Zimmerli L, Mauch-Mani B (2006) Priming: getting ready for battle. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:1062–1071
Coventry HS, Dubery IA (2001) Lipopolysaccharides from *Burkholderia cepacia* contributes to an enhanced defense capacity and the induction of pathogenesis-related proteins in *Niocotiana tobacum*. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 58:149–158
De Meyer G, Audenaert K, Hofte M (1999) *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 7NSK2-induced systemic resistance in tobacco depends on in planta salicylic acid accumulation but is not associated with PR1a expression. Eur J Plant Pathol 105:513–517
De Vleesschauwer D, Hofte M (2009) Rhizobacteria-induced systemic resistance. Adv Bot Res 51:223–281
De Vleesschauwer D, Cornelis P, Höfte M (2006) Redox-active pyocyanin secreted by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 7NSK2 triggers systemic resistance to *Magnaporthe grisea* but enhances *Rhizoctonia solani* susceptibility in rice. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:1406–1419
De Vleesschauwer D, Djavaheri M, Bakker PAHM, Hofte M (2008) *Pseudomonas fluorescens* WCS374r-induced systemic resistance in rice against *Magnaporthe oryzae* is based on pseudobactin-mediated priming for a salicylic acid-repressible multifaceted defense response. Plant Physiol 148:1996–2012
De Weger LA, van der Vlugt CIM, Wijfjes AHM, Bakker PAHM, Schippers B, Lugtenberg BJJ (1987) Flagella of a plant growth stimulating *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain are required for colonization of potato roots. J Bacteriol 169:2769–2773
Denny TP (1995) Involvement of bacterial polysaccharides in plant pathogenesis. Annu Rev Phytopathol 33:173–197
Despres C, DeLong C, Glaze S, Liu E, Fobert PR (2000) The Arabidopsis NPR1/NIM1 protein enhances the DNA binding activity of a subgroup of the TGA family of bZIP transcription factors. Plant Cell 12:279–290
Djavaheri M (2007) Iron-regulated metabolites of plant growth-promoting *Pseudomonas fluorescens* WCS374: their role in induced systemic resistance. PhD thesis, Utrecht University
Domenech J, Ramos SB, Probanza A, Lucas GJA, Gutierrez MFJ (2007) Elicitation of systemic resistance and growth promotion of *Arabidopsis thaliana* by PGPRs from *Nicotiana glauca*: a study of the putative induction pathway. Plant Soil 290:43–50
Dong X (2004) NPR1, all things considered. Curr Opin Plant Biol 7:547–552
Doornbos RF, van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM (2012) Impact of root exudates and plant defense signaling on bacterial communities in the rhizosphere. Agron Sustain Dev 32:227–243
Dow M, Newman MA, Von Roepenack E (2000) The induction and modulation of plant defense responses by bacterial lipopolysaccharides. Annu Rev Phytopathol 38:241–261
Euglem T, Somssich IE (2007) Networks of WRKY transcription factors in defense signaling. Curr Opin Plant Biol 10:366–371
Farag MA, Zhang H, Ryu CM (2013) Dynamic chemical communication between plants and bacteria through airborne signals: induced resistance by bacterial volatiles. J Chem Ecol 39:1007–1018
Felix G, Duran JD, Volko S, Boller T (1999) Plants have a sensitive perception system for the most conserved domain of bacterial flagellin. Plant J 18:265–276
Fogliano V, Ballio A, Gallo M, Woo SL, Scala F, Lorito M (2002) *Pseudomonas* lipopeptides and fungal cell wall degrading enzymes act synergistically in biocontrol. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:323–333

Gamliel A, Austerweil M, Kritzman G (2000) Non-chemical approach to soil borne pest management–organic amendments. Crop Prot 19:847–853

Gerber IB, Zeidler D, Durner J, Dubery IA (2004) Early perception responses of *Nicotiana tabacum* cells in response to lipopolysaccharides from *Burkholderia cepacia*. Planta 218:647–657

Gerber IB, Laukens K, Witters E, Dubery IA (2006) Lipopolysaccharide-responsive phosphoproteins in *Nicotiana tabacum* cells. Plant Physiol Biochem 44:369–379

Glick BR (2012) Plant growth promoting bacteria: mechanisms and applications. Scientifica 2013:15

Gómez-Gómez L, Boller T (2000) FLS2: an LRR receptor-like kinase involved in the perception of the bacterial elicitor flagellin in *Arabidopsis*. Mol Cell 5:1003–1012

Gómez-Gómez L, Bauer Z, Boller T (2001) Both the extracellular leucine-rich repeat domain and the kinase activity of FSL2 are required for flagellin binding and signaling in Arabidopsis. Plant Cell 13:1155–1163

Haas D, Défago G (2005) Biological control of soil-borne pathogens by fluorescent pseudomonads. Nat Rev Microbiol 3:307–319

Hammerschmidt R (1999) Induced disease resistance: how do induced plants stop pathogens. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 55:77–84

Hammerschmidt R, Nicholson RL (1999) A survey of plant defense responses to pathogens. In: Agrawal A, Tuzun S (eds) Induced plant defenses against pathogens and herbivores. APS Press, St Paul, pp 55–71

Hase S, Van Pelt JA, Van Loon LC, Pieterse CMJ (2003) Colonization of Arabidopsis roots by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* primes the plant to produce higher levels of ethylene upon pathogen infection. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 62:219–226

Heil M, Ton J (2008) Long-distance signalling in plant defence. Trends Plant Sci 13:264–272

Höfte M (1993) Classes of microbial siderophores. In: Barton LL, Hemming BC (eds) Iron chelation in plants and soil microorganisms. Academic, San Diego, pp 3–26

Hofte M, Bakker PAHM (2007) Competition for iron and induced systemic resistance by siderophores of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. In: Varma A, Chincholkar SB (eds) Microbial siderophores. Springer, Berlin, pp 121–133

Hoitink HAJ, Boehm MJ (1999) Biocontrol within the context of soil microbial communities: a substrate-dependent phenomenon. Annu Rev Phytopathol 37:427–446

Iavicoli A, Boutet E, Buchala A, Metraux JP (2003) Induced systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis thaliana* in response to root inoculation with *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 16:851–858

Ipper NS, Cho S, Lee SH, Cho JM, Hur JH, Lim CK (2008) Antiviral activity of the exopolysaccharide produced by *Serratia* sp. strain Gsm01 against cucumber mosaic virus. J Microbiol Biotechnol 18:67–73

Jha CK, Saraf M (2012) Hormonal signaling by PGPR improves plant health under stress conditions. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Bacteria in agrobiology: stress management. Springer, Berlin, pp 119–140

Jones KM, Sharopova N, Lohar DP, Zhang JQ, Vanden Bosch KA, Walker GC (2008) Differential response of the plant *Medicago truncatula* to its symbiont *Sinorhizobium meliloti* or an exopolysaccharide-deficient mutant. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:704–709

Kim MS, Kim YC, Cho BH (2004) Gene expression analysis in cucumber leaves primed by root colonization with *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* O6 upon challenge-inoculation with *Corynespora cassiicola*. Plant Biol 6:105–108

Kloepper JW, Leong J, Teintze M, Schroth MN (1980) Enhanced plant growth by siderophores produced by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Nature 286:885–886

Kloepper JW, Tuzun S, Liu L, Wei G (1993) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria as inducers of systemic disease resistance. In: Lumsden RD, Waughn JL (eds) Pest management: biologically based technologies. American Chemical Society Books, Washington, pp 156–165

Knoester M, Pieterse CMJ, Bol JF, van Loon LC (1999) Systemic resistance in Arabidopsis induced by rhizobacteria requires ethylene-dependent signaling at the site of application. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 12:720–727

Lawton KA, Friedrich L, Hunt M, Weymann K, Delanay T, Staub T, Ryals J (1996) Benzothiadiazole induces disease resistance in *Arabidopsis* by activation of systemic acquired resistance signal transduction pathway. Plant J 10:71–82

Leeman M, Van Pelt JA, Den Ouden FM, Heinsbroek M, Bakker PAHM, Schippers B (1995a) Induction of systemic resistance against *Fusarium* wilt of radish by lipopolysaccharides of *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Phytopathology 85:1021–1027

Leeman M, Van Pelt JA, Den Ouden FM, Heinsbroek M, Bakker PAHM, Schippers B (1995b) Induction of systemic resistance by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* in radish cultivars differing insusceptibility to Fusarium wilt, using a novel bioassay. Eur J Plant Pathol 101:655–664

Leeman M, den Ouden FM, van Pelt JA, Dirkx FPM, Steijl H, Bakker PHAM, Schippers B (1996) Iron availability affects induction of systemic resistance to *Fusarium* wilt of radish by *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Phytopathology 86:149–155

Lugtenberg B, Kamilova F (2009) Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:541–556

Markovich NA, Kononova GL (2003) Lytic enzymes of *Trichoderma* and their role in plant defense from fungal diseases. Appl Biochem Microbiol 39:341–351

Mendrygal KE, González JE (2000) Environmental regulation of exopolysaccharide production in *Sinorhizobium meliloti*. J Bacteriol 82:599–606

Meziane H, Van der Sluis I, van Loon LC, Höfte M, Bakker PAHM (2005) Determinants of *Pseudomonas putida* WCS358 involved in inducing systemic resistance in plants. Mol Plant Pathol 6:177–185

Nandakumar R (1998) Induction of systemic resistance in rice with fluorescent pseudomonads for the management of sheath blight disease. MSc thesis, Tamil Nadu Agriculture University, Coimbatore

Niranjan Raj S, Shetty HS, Reddy MS (2006) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria potential green alternative for plant productivity. In: Siddiqui ZA (ed) PGPR: biocontrol and biofertilization. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 197–216

Nurnberger T, Brunner F, Kemmerling B, Piater L (2004) Innate immunity in plants and animals: striking similarities and obvious differences. Immunol Rev 198:249–266

Ongena M, Jacques P (2008) Bacillus lipopeptides: versatile weapons for plant disease biocontrol. Trends Microbiol 16:115–125

Ongena M, Jourdan E, Adam A, Paquot M, Brans A, Joris B, Arpigny JL, Thonart P (2007) Surfactin and fengycin lipopeptides of *Bacillus subtilis* as elicitors of induced systemic resistance in plants. Environ Microbiol 9:1084–1090

Ongena M, Jourdan E, Adam A, Schäfer M, Budzikiewicz H, Thonart P (2008) Amino acids, iron, and growth rate as key factors influencing production of the *Pseudomonas putida* BTP1 benzylamine derivative involved in systemic resistance induction in different plants. Microb Ecol 55:280–292

Pare PW, Tumlinson JH (1999) Plant volatiles as a defense against insect herbivores. Plant Physiol 121:325–331

Pare PW, Farag MA, Zhang H, Ryu CM, Kloepper JW (2005) Elicitors and priming agents initiate plant defense responses. Photosynth Res 85:149–159

Park MR, Kim YC, Park JY, Han SH, Kim KY, Lee SW, Kim LS (2008) Identification of an ISR related metabolite produced by *Pseudomonas chlororaphid* O6 against the wild fire pathogen *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. *tabaci* in tobacco. J Microbiol Biotechnol 18:1659–1662

Patel D, Jha CK, Tank N, Saraf M (2012) Growth enhancement of chickpea in saline soils using plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. J Plant Growth Regul 31:53–62

Piater LA, Nurnberger T, Dubery IA (2004) Identification of a lipopolysaccharides responsive erk-like MAP kinase in tobacco leaf tissue. Mol Plant Pathol 5:331–341

Pieterse CMJ, van Loon LC (2004) NPR1: the spider in the web of induced resistance signaling pathways. Curr Opin Plant Biol 7:456–464

Pieterse CMJ, van Wees SCM, van Pelt JA, Knoester M, Laan R, Gerrits H, Weisbeek PJ, van Loon LC (1998) A novel signaling pathway controlling induced systemic resistance in Arabidopsis. Plant Cell 10:1571–1580

Pieterse CMJ, Van Pelt JA, Ton J, Parchmann S, Mueller MJ, Buchala AJ, Metraux JP, van Loon LC (2000) Rhizobacteria mediated induced systemic resistance (ISR) in Arabidopsis requires sensitivity to jasmonate and ethylene but is not accompanied by an increase in their production. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 57:123–134

Pozo MJ, Van der Ent S, Van Loon LC, Pieterse CMJ (2008) Transcription factor MYC2 is involved in priming for enhanced defense during rhizobacteria-induced systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. New Phytol 180:511–523

Raupach GS, Kloepper JW (2000) Biocontrol of cucumber diseases in the field by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria with and without methyl bromide fumigation. Plant Dis 84:1073–1075

Robatzek S, Chinchilla D, Boller T (2006) Ligand induced endocytosis of the pattern recognition receptor FLS2 in *Arabidopsis*. Genes Dev 20:537–542

Robatzek S, Bittel P, Chinchilla D, Kochner P, Felix G, Shiu SH, Boller T (2007) Molecular identification and characterization of the tomato flagellin receptor LeFLS2, an orthologue of *Arabidopsis* FLS2 exhibiting characteristically different perception specificities. Plant Mol Biol 64:539–547

Ryals JA, Neuenschwander UH, Willits MG, Molina A, Steiner HY, Hunt MD (1996) Systemic acquired resistance. Plant Cell 8:1808–1819

Ryu CM, Farag MA, Hu CH, Reddy MS, Kloepper JW, Paré PW (2004) Bacterial volatiles induce systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Physiol 134:1017–1026

Sanabria NM, Dubery IA (2006) Differential display profiling of the *Nicotiana* response to LPS reveals elements of plant basal resistance. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 344:1001–1007

Sayyed RZ, Chincholkar SB (2009) Siderophore producing *A. feacalis* more biocontrol potential vis-à-vis chemical fungicide. Curr Microbiol 58:47–51

Sayyed RZ, Patel PR (2011) Biocontrol potential of siderophore producing heavy metal resistant *Alcaligenes* sp. and *Pseudomonas* sp. vis-à-vis organophosphorus fungicide. Indian J Microbiol 51:266–272

Sayyed RZ, Chincholkar SB, Reddy MS, Gangurde NS, Patel PR (2013) Siderophore producing PGPR for crop nutrition and phytopathogen suppression. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Bacteria in agrobiology: disease management. Springer, Berlin, pp 449–471

Schuhegger R, Ihring A, Gantner S, Bahnweg G, Knappe C, Vogg G, Hutzler P, Schmid M, Van Breusegem F, Eberl L, Hartmann A, Langebartels C (2006) Induction of systemic resistance in tomato by *N*-acyl-L-homoserine lactone-producing rhizosphere bacteria. Plant Cell Environ 29:909–918

Shaikh SS, Sayyed RZ (2015) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria and their formulation in biocontrol of plant diseases. In: Arora NK (ed) Plant microbes symbiosis: applied facets. Springer, New Delhi, pp 337–351

Shaikh SS, Patel PR, Patel SS, Nikam SD, Rane TU, Sayyed RZ (2014) Production of biocontrol traits by banana field fluorescent pseudomonads and their comparison with chemical fungicides. Indian J Exp Biol 52:917–920

Siddiqui IA, Shaukat SS (2003) Plant species, host age and host genotype effects on *Meloidogyne incognita* biocontrol by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain CHA0 and its genetically-modified derivatives. J Phytopathol 151:231–238

Siddiqui ZA, Baghel G, Akhtar MS (2007) Biocontrol of *Meloidogyne javanica* by *Rhizobium* and plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria on lentil. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 23:435–441

Subramaniam R, Desveaux D, Spickler C, Michnick SW, Brisson N (2001) Direct visualization of protein interactions in plant cells. Nat Biotechnol 19:769–772

Takai R, Isogai A, Takayama S et al (2008) Analysis of flagellin perception mediated by flg22 receptor OsFLS2 in rice. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 21:1635–1642

Tjamos SE, Flemetakis E, Paplomatas EJ, Katinakis P (2005) Induction of resistance to *Verticillium dahliae* in *Arabidopsis thaliana* by the biocontrol agent K-165 and pathogenesis related proteins gene expression. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 18:555–561

Tran H, Ficke A, Assimwe T, Hofte M, Raaijmakers JM (2007) Role of cyclic Massetolide A inbiological control of *Phytophthora infestans* in colonization of tomato plants by *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. New Phytol 175:731–742

Tsuda K, Sato M, Stoddard T, Glazebrook J, Katagiri F (2009) Network properties of robust immunity in plants. PLoS Genet 5:e1000772

van Loon LC (2000) Systemic induced resistance. In: Slusarenko AJ, Fraser RSS, Van Loon LC (eds) Mechanisms of resistance to plant diseases. Kluwer, Dordrecht, pp 521–574

van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM (2006) Induced systemic resistance as a mechanism of disease suppression by rhizobacteria. In: Siddiqui ZA (ed) PGPR: biocontrol and biofertilization. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 39–66

van Loon LC, van Strien EA (1999) The families of pathogenesis-related proteins, their activities, and comparative analysis of PR-1 type proteins. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 55:85–97

van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM, Pieterse CMJ (1998) Systemic resistance induced by rhizosphere bacteria. Annu Rev Phytopathol 36:453–483

van Loon LC, Rep M, Pieterse CMJ (2006) Significance of inducible defense-related proteins in infected plants. Annu Rev Phytopathol 44:135–162

van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM, Van der Heijat WHW, Wendehenne D, Pugin A (2008) Early responses of tobacco suspension cells to rhizobacterial elicitors of Induced Systemic resistance. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 21:1609–1621

van Peer R, Niemann GJ, Schippers B (1991) Induced resistance and phytoalexin accumulation in biological control of *Fusarium wilt* of carnation by *Pseudomonas* sp. strain WCS417r. Phytopathology 81:728–734

van Wees SCM, Pieterse CMJ, Trijssenaar A, Van't Westende Y, Hartog F, van Loon LC (1997) Differential induction of systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis* by biocontrol bacteria. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 10:716–724

van Wees SCM, Luijendijk M, Smoorenburg I, van Loon LC, Pieterse CMJ (1999) Rhizobacteria-mediated induced systemic resistance (ISR) in Arabidopsis is not associated with a direct effect on expression of known defense-related genes but stimulates the expression of the jasmonate-inducible gene Atvsp upon challenge. Plant Mol Biol 41:537–549

Verhagen BWM, van Loon LC, Pieterse CMJ (2006) Induced disease resistance signaling in plants. In: Floriculture, ornamental and plant biotechnology, vol 3. Global Science Books, Ikenobe, pp 334–343

Zehnder GW, Murphy JF, Sikora EJ, Kloepper JW (2001) Application of rhizobacteria for induced resistance. Eur J Plant Pathol 107:39–50

Zhang J, Zhou JM (2010) Plant immunity triggered by microbial molecular signatures. Mol Plant Adv 3:783–793

Occurrence, Distribution, and Molecular Identification of Phytoplasma-associated Diseases in Ornamental Plants

Akil Ahmad Khan, Shoeb Ahmad, and Mohd Sayeed Akhtar

Abstract Phytoplasma is recognized as the serious constraints for the many economically ornamental plants all around the world. It may reduce the quality and yield of ornamental plants and is recognized internationally because of its unspecific symptoms, severe losses, and diverse epidemiology. The epidemics of these diseases have compelled the withdrawal of many ornamental plant species such as gladiolus, lily, chrysanthemum, and rose from cultivation. So far, more than 42 ornamental plant species were reported as infected by phytoplasma. The general symptom includes flower malformation, growth abnormalities, yellowing or decline of leaves, elongation and etiolation of internodes, witches' broom, stunting, little leaf, and virescence. The knowledge on the diversity and identification of phytoplasma has been explored with the molecular tools and techniques showing that phytoplasma infecting the ornamental plant *Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris belongs to a major 16Srl group. The other known groups of phytoplasmas are 16Srll, 16Srlll, 16SrV, 16SrVl, 16SrVll, 16SrlX, 16SrX, 16SrXll, 16SrXlll, and 16SrXV. For the detection of phytoplasma in the infected plant parts or tissues, the 16S rRNA gene fragments were amplified using phytoplasma universal primer pairs P1/P7 in a polymerase chain reaction (PCR) followed by primer pairs R16F2n/R16R2 in the nested PCR. Nevertheless, for the finer detection of phytoplasma-related *Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris, DNA samples were used to extend the *RP* and *Tuf* gene fragments by PCR using aster yellows group-specific primer pairs RP(l)F1A/RP(l)R1A and fTufAy/rTufAy, respectively. However, the restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) analysis of *RP* gene fragments digested with AluI, MseI, and Tsp5091 restriction enzymes indicates the presence of aster yellows group. The aim of the present chapter is to provide an overview of the phytoplasma-associated diseases in ornamental plants, their mode of transmission, and the molecular techniques employed to detect the phytoplasma in the infected plant parts or tissues.

Keywords *Candidatus* • PCR • RFLP • Transmission • Aster yellows disease

A.A. Khan (✉)• S. Ahmad • M.S. Akhtar (✉)
Department of Botany, Gandhi Faiz-E-Aam College,
Shahjahanpur 242001, Uttar Pradesh, India
e-mail: sayeedbot@gmail.com; akil_nbri@yahoo.com

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_10

1 Introduction

Phytoplasmas are strangely small obligate parasites found in the phloem tissues of the plants. They are filamentous in shape with a very small genome. Phytoplasmas vary in size ranging from 200 to 800 nm and usually characterized by a lack of a cell wall. Doi et al. (1967) were the first to report that the aster yellows symptoms in mulberry are caused by cell wall-less prokaryotes not the plant viruses. They named these etiological agents as "mycoplasma-like organisms" (MLOs). Later, in 1994, these microorganisms were renamed as phytoplasma by the International Organization for Mycoplasmology (Hogenhout et al. 2008). Phytoplamas are the group of plant-pathogenic wall-less, non-helical bacteria associated with diseases in several plant species worldwide (Harrison et al. 2009; Marcone 2014). These disorders are characterized by flower malformation, growth abnormalities, yellowing or decline of leaves, elongation and etiolation of internodes, witches' broom, stunting, little leaf, and virescence (Bertaccini 2007; Bertaccini and Duduk 2009). These disorders affect directly the plant health and reduced the quality and yield in the infected plants. Mostly phytoplasmas are host dependent, but sometimes also occur through transovarian transmission (Hanboonsong et al. 2002; Tedeschi et al. 2006).

Phytoplasma-associated diseases are transmitted in a persistent manner by insects belonging to the families Cicadellidae, Cixiidae, Psyllidae, Delphacidae, and Derbidae (Weintraub and Beanland 2006). Molecular data on phytoplasma has provided considerable insights into their diversity and genetic interrelationships that are the basis for several comprehensive studies on phytoplasma phylogeny and taxonomy (Hogenhout et al. 2008). Some investigations, particularly sequence analysis of 16S rDNA, have shown that phytoplasmas constitute a coherent, genus-level taxon. In the monophyletic phytoplasma clade, groups and subgroups were delineated, many of which are now considered as species under the provisional status '*Candidatus*' for incompletely described prokaryotes (Murray and Stackebrandt 1995). Several provisional species have been described to date and rules for future putative species delineation have been defined (IRPCM 2004). The first comprehensive phytoplasma classification scheme based on restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) analysis of PCR-amplified 16S rRNA was proposed by Lee et al. (1998). It is a reliable technique for the differentiation of a wide array of sensitive phytoplasma. The accurate detection of these microorganisms is a prerequisite for the management of phytoplasma-associated diseases. Phytoplasma-associated diseases are associated with more than 600 plant species, including many important food, vegetable, and fruit crops, ornamental plants, timbers, and shade trees. The list of diseases caused by phytoplasma continues to grow with many newly emerging diseases of uncertain etiology and with diverse disease distribution being identified. The aim of the present chapter is to provide an overview of the phytoplasma-associated diseases in ornamental plants, their mode of transmission, and the molecular techniques employed to detect the phytoplasma in the infected plant parts or tissues.

2 Phytoplasma as Plant Pathogens

Phytoplasmas or mollicutes are associated with diseases in several plant species and cause serious economic losses in ornamental plants (Chaturvedi et al. 2010a; Singh et al. 2011). The epidemics of phytoplasmas have been compelled the withdrawal of many ornamental varieties from cultivation. General yellowing and stunted growth of plants, proliferation of shoots, phyllody, virescence, and reduced size of flowers and reddening of leaves are the most common symptoms observed in ornamental plants. The common symptoms in ornamental plants associated with phytoplasma are yellowing of *Aster* leaves; virescence in *Hydrangea*, *Gladiolus*, and *Lilium*; and stunted growth in *Lilium*. Plant diseases associated with the presence of phytoplasma typically exhibit a number of symptoms that are suggestive of disturbances in the normal balance of plant hormones (Schneider et al. 2005). These symptoms include virescence, phyllody, proliferation of auxiliary shoots resulting in witches' broom, sterility of flowers, compact growth at the end of stems, yellowing, phloem necrosis, and dieback of branches in woody plants (Mc Coy et al. 1989; Bertaccini 2007). Phytoplasmas are known to cause considerable losses in ornamentals including *Asclepias curassavica* (Griffiths et al. 1994), *Tanacetum parthenium* (Barros et al. 1998), *Limonium sinuatum* (Kaminska et al. 1999; Shiomi et al. 1999), *Tagetes patula* and *T. erecta* (Wang and Hiruki 2001), and *Gomphocarpus physocarpus* (d'Aquillo et al. 2002).

Natural occurrences of little-leaf disease in several *C. morifolium* plants were observed in gardens and nurseries at Lucknow, India (Raj et al. 2007a, b). The symptoms were excessive proliferation, tiny narrow leaves, and shortening of internodes, which altogether gives rise to witches' broom appearance. Since, *Chrysanthemum* are propagated through suckers or cuttings and the phytoplasma is known to be transmitted by vegetative propagation through cuttings, the identification of the causal agent of the little-leaf disease of *C. morifolium* was attempted (Raj et al. 2007a). However, Singh et al. (2011) have identified phytoplasma infection in five ornamental species grown in the gardens of Uttar Pradesh and Uttarakhand, India, showing suspected phytoplasma symptoms through nested-PCR assays. Based on sequence identities and phylogenetic relationships, the new phytoplasma strains identified have been classified as related to *Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris (16SrI group). Recently, Sichani et al. (2014) detected phytoplasma-related *Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris in several annual field crops, vegetables, ornamentals, oilseed crops, and weeds.

3 Phytoplasma-associated Diseases on Ornamental Plants

Phytoplasmas cause diseases in several ornamentals and resulted in serious threats to alternative natural hosts belonging to various economically important plants (Chaturvedi et al. 2010a, b). Phytoplasmas causes premature germination of corn kernels in *Gladiolus* (Bertaccini and Duduk 2009); chlorosis, stunted growth, and

virescence in tulip (Bertaccini and Duduk 2009); phyllody and virescence in *Ranunculus* plants (Parrella et al. 2008); virescence in *Hydrangea macrophylla* (Hiruki et al. 1994) and *Cyclamen* (Bertaccini 1990); and dieback, rose rosette, witches' broom, and bud proliferation in rose (Kaminska and Sliwa 2003, 2004). Table 1 summarizes the various phytoplasma-associated diseases and the symptoms appearing in different plant families.

Table 1 Summary of phytoplasma diseases and their symptoms associated within various plant families

Diseases	Symptoms	Plant families	References
Periwinkle little leaf	Little leaf	Apocynaceae	Davis et al. (1990)
Aster yellows	Yellowing	Asteraceae	Lee et al. (1992)
Spiraea stunt	Stunting	Rosaceae	Griffiths et al. (1994))
Alstroemeria dieback	Deformation, absence of pigmentation in leaves, and dieback of floral stems	Amaryllidaceae	Bertaccini et al. (1996) and Cervantes-Diaz et al. (2004)
European aster yellows	Yellowing	Asteraceae	Vibio et al. (1994, 1996)
Gladiolus aster yellows	Yellowing	Iridaceae	
Chrysanthemum witches' broom	Downward curling, yellowing, and witches' broom	Asteraceae	Okuda et al. (1997)
Dahlia cultorum	Stunted growth and shoot proliferation	Asteraceae	Marzachi et al. (1999)
Abnormal proliferation of cladodes	Severe proliferation of cladodes with lack of flower, fruit, and spine production	Cactaceae	Tessitori et al. (2006)
Chrysanthemum indicum hybridum	Virescence and abnormal flower proliferation	Asteraceae	Duduk et al. (2006)
Little leaf	Reduced leaf size	Portulacaceae	Ajayakumar et al. (2007)
Jasminum witches' broom	Curling of leaves, stunting, yellowing, and witches' broom	Oleaceae	Al-Zadjali et al. (2007)
Chrysanthemum little leaf	Little leaf	Asteraceae	Raj et al. (2007a)
Little leaf of rose	Little leaf	Rosaceae	Raj et al. (2007b)
Purple coneflower	Phyllody	Echinacea	Lee et al. (2008)
Little leaf	Bud proliferation, downward curling, stunting and yellowing, rosettes and proliferation, witches' broom	Portulacaceae	Samad et al. (2008)
Rose little leaf	Little leaf and chlorosis	Rosaceae	Chaturvedi et al. (2009a)
Little leaf of *Catharanthus*	Little-leaf phyllody	Apocynaceae	Chaturvedi et al. (2009b)

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Diseases	Symptoms	Plant families	References
Lethal decline	Lethal decline, large number of reddish brown leaves in the mid-crown, wilting, necrosis of the youngest leaf	Arecaceae	Harrison et al. (2009)
Malformation of floral spikes	Flower yellowing, malformation, stunting, small corms, poor root	Iridaceae	Raj et al. (2009)
Leaf roll	Leaf roll, little-leaf symptoms	Sapindaceae	Zhang et al. (2009)
Hibiscus little leaf	Leaf roll, little-leaf symptoms	Malvaceae	Chaturvedi et al. (2010b)

The symptoms include general chlorosis, leaf bronzing or reddening, dieback, abnormal production of secondary shoots, upright growth habit, and flower malformation. The flowers are sterile, reduced in size with necrotic petals (Kaminska and Malinowski 1996). However, free-branching production, reported in *Euphorbia pulcherrima*, was also associated with phytoplasma (Lee et al. 1997). In *Silene nicaeensis*-phytoplasma infected plants showed narrow leaves, shortened internodes, reddish brown discoloration of leaves and stems, proliferation of auxiliary shoots, and phyllody (Cozza et al. 2008). Moreover, *Alstroemeria*, *Calendula*, and *Digitalis lanata* Ehrh with virescence in flowers and *Asclepias physocarpa* with plant malformation and growth stunting were also linked with phytoplasma (Bellardi et al. 2007; Bertaccini and Duduk 2009; Chaturvedi et al. 2010a).

3.1 Diseases in Dicentra

Dicentra spectabilis produces fleshy tuberous roots, but is frequently listed in perennial plants than bulbous crops. It is propagated by cutting tubers into pieces, by shoot and leaf cuttings, or from seeds. Kaminska et al. (2004) have reported the phytoplasma disease on this plant in Poland.

3.2 Diseases in Lily

It is not clear when aster yellows-type disease was described for the first time in lilies. Most probably the earliest description of aster yellows-type disease in lilies in the United States was by Ogilvie and Guterman (1929). They have described a disease on *Lilium longiflorum*, characterized by stunted growth, leaf chlorosis, and malformation and flower distortion. Later on, the PCR amplification of 16S rDNA and RFLP analysis proved that stunted growth and flower bud deficiency symptoms in hybrids Casablanca were associated with infection with aster yellows phytoplasma and viruses (Bertaccini et al. 2006).

3.3 *Diseases in Magnolia*

The genus *Magnolia* comprises about 80 species of trees and shrubs, naturally distributed throughout Eastern North America and Southeastern Asia. Magnolias are relatively free of pest and diseases. A new severe phytoplasma disease, designated as Magnolia stunt and yellows, was observed in magnolia grown in some gardens and nurseries in Poland (Kaminska et al. 2001a, b).

3.4 *Diseases in Rose*

Rose is the most common garden plant and important commercial-cut flower cultivated under cover several viruses like diseases worldwide. The first record of the rose wilt was found in Australia in 1908, but the symptoms were lately described by Grieve (1931) and Fry and Hammett (1971) in New Zealand. It is also known as a rose witches' broom. This disease is endemic in Southeast, South Central, and North Central United States. In 1976 rose leaf curl (Slack et al. 1976), which resembles that of rose wilt disease, and rose spring dwarf were described in the United States. Due to the similarity in the mentioned diseases, Thomas (1981) named them rose degeneration syndrome.

3.5 *Diseases in* Catharanthus

Detection of phytoplasma in *C. roseus* has been reported throughout the world (Jimenez and Montano 2010). *C. roseus* is the best host for phytoplasma; thus, an extensive research has been carried out to understand their interaction with hosts on this particular plant. Molecular cloning and detection of DNA of clover proliferation and little-leaf disease in *C. roseus* were also carried out (Deng and Hiruki 1990). However, Musetti et al. (2007) observed the effects of fungal endophytes in *C. roseus* tissues infected with phytoplasma disease.

3.6 *Diseases in* Chrysanthemum

Phytoplasma disease on *Chrysanthemum* sp. was reported by Pettersson and Tomenius (1979)in Sweden, by Verhoyen et al. (1979) in Belgium, by Shiomi and Sugiura (1983) in Japan, by Israel et al. (1988) in the United States, and by Duduk et al. (2006) in Serbia.

3.7 Diseases in Chinese Aster

Chinese aster is one of the species where phytoplasmas were first detected (Doi et al. 1967). Haggis and Sinha (1978) observed MLOs in the petiole tissues of affected Chinese aster plants with the help of scanning electron microscopy (SEM). However, Hemmati and Mc Lean (1980) observed ovoid polymorphic and pleomorphic bodies in Chinese aster infected with aster yellows. Similarly, Wang and Hiruki (2001) detected and estimated the genetic diversity of phytoplasma associated with the Chinese aster yellows with heteroduplex mobility assay (HMA) in Canada.

3.8 Diseases in Phlox

Zajak (1979) observed MLOs in sieve tubes of *Phlox paniculata* with symptoms of phyllody. Similarly, Misra et al. (1985) detected these prokaryotes in phloem sieve tubes of *Phlox drummondii* in Rajasthan, India.

3.9 Diseases in Syringa

Hibben et al. (1986) and Griffiths et al. (1999) detected the presence of MLOs in phloem sieve tubes of *Syringa* plant infected with lilac witches' broom. However, Hibben and Franzen (1989) reported susceptibility of *Syringa* to these prokaryotes in the United States.

3.10 Diseases in Portulaca

Ajayakumar et al. (2007) and Samad et al. (2008) described a phytoplasma disease associated with little leaf of *Portulaca grandiflora* in Lucknow, India.

3.11 Diseases in Other Ornamental Plants

Lange et al. (1978) described four diseases of unknown etiology of *Anemone nemorosa* in Denmark. Similarly, Ulrychova et al. (1983) observed yellows-type disease in Czech Republic. However, Marwitz et al. (1984) observed virescence and phyllody in *Primula denticulata* and *P. vulgaris* in Germany, while Behncken (1984) reported a new vector of a little-leaf disease in *Ipomoea* in Australia. Sharma et al. (1985) described phyllody of marigold in India. Hiruki and Rocha (1986) reported little-leaf disease on *Brugmansia candida* in Australia. Bellardi and

Bertaccini (1990) observed spheroid or elongated MLOs in the phloem of virescent *Sinningia speciosa* in Italy. However, Rojas-Martinez et al. (2003) identified phytoplasma associated with *Cosmos bipinnatus* plants by RFLP analysis of 16S rDNA in Mexico. Similarly, Cervantes-Diaz et al. (2004) reported the molecular detection of phytoplasma associated with *Alstroemeria* in Mexico. However, Hong et al. (2005) detected and identified phytoplasmas associated with witches' broom disease in *Cassia surattensis* in China. A new phytoplasma was identified as infecting *Cassia italica* in Oman (Al-Saady et al. 2008). Siddique (2006) reported phyllody on *Gerbera jamesonii* in Australia, while Ribeiro et al. (2006) reported shoot proliferation in *Begonia* in Brazil. Jones and Arocha (2006) reported yellowing and little-leaf disease on *Veronica scutellata* in the United Kingdom.

Al-Zadjali et al. (2007) identified and molecularly characterized the phytoplasma associated with *Jasminum sambac* witches' broom in Oman. Sobolev et al. (2007) described phytoplasma symptoms in *Mirabilis jalapa* plant in Israel. Nicolaisen and Christensen (2007) reported changes in gene expression in *E. pulcherrima* due to phytoplasma infection. Habili et al. (2007) detected for the first time *Candidatus* Phytoplasma australiense in *Liquidambar styraciflua* in Australia. Davino et al. (2007) detected phytoplasma presence in *Matthiola incana* by applying PCR/RFLP techniques. Mafia et al. (2007) reported witches' broom disease on *Tabebuia pentaphylla* in Brazil. Kaminska and Sliwa (2008) reported mixed infection of apple proliferation and aster yellows phytoplasmas in dahlia plants. Lee et al. (2008) reported purple coneflower phyllody associated with aster yellows phytoplasmas (16SrIB) in Maryland. Harrison and Helmick (2008) reported for the first time *Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris-related strain associated with the little-leaf disease of *Helianthus debilis* in Florida. However, Harju et al. (2008) identified an X-disease (16SrIII) group phytoplasma infecting *Delphinium* sp. in the United Kingdom, while Zhang et al. (2009) reported aster yellows group phytoplasma associated with a leaf roll disease in shiny leaf yellowhorn in China. Similarly, Chaturvedi et al. (2010b) reported the little-leaf disease in *Hibiscus rosa-sinensis* in Gorakhpur. However, Singh et al. (2011) observed the presence of phytoplasmas in five ornamental plants, namely, *Alstroemeria*, *Duranta*, *Streblus*, *Petunia*, and *Zenia*, from the gardens of Uttar Pradesh and Uttarakhand.

4 Mode of Transmission of Phytoplasma

Phytoplasma transmission occurs through sap-sucking insect vectors belonging to families Cicadellidae (leafhoppers) and Fulgoridae (plant hoppers). It could also be spread through vegetative propagation techniques such as grafting of infected plant onto healthy plant, cutting, micropropagation, or other techniques. A number of insect vectors were responsible for the transmission of phytoplasma in ornamental plants (Kaminska 2008; Favali et al. 2008; Chung 2008). For instance, the causal agent of aster yellows disease in *Gladiolus* is transmitted by the leafhopper *Macrosteles sexnotatus* (Fraitag and Tompkins 1963). However, aster yellows phytoplasmas in diseased lilies and roses were experimentally transmitted by grafting

the *Cuscuta* to *C. roseus* and *Alstroemeria* seedlings (Kaminska and Korbin 2000; Kaminska et al. 2001a). The agent of *Chrysanthemum* yellows phytoplasma was inoculated by multiplying with diverse leafhopper species (Bosco et al. 2007). Similarly, Bertaccini et al. (1993) detected the virescence symptom in *Hydrangea* sp. by grafting it onto healthy plants, while the grafting of different phytoplasma exhibited diverse branch-inducing abilities in poinsettia (Pondrelli et al. 2002).

Aster yellows and apple proliferation phytoplasmas were successfully transmitted by grafting from diseased magnolias to *C. roseus* (Sliwa and Kaminska 2004). However, Epstein and Hill (1995) reported that the pathogen of rose rosette disease was transmitted by *Phyllocoptes fructiphilus*. Artificial transmission of phytoplasma from host plants to *C. roseus* and vice versa was successfully done by Carraro et al. (2004) by grafting with *Cuscuta*. However, it has been also demonstrated that *Cuscuta* transmits different phytoplasma to periwinkle with diverse efficiency due to their pathogenic effects on the vectors (Carraro et al. 1991; Musetti et al. 1992). Bressan et al. (2005) reported that the flavescence dorée phytoplasma greatly reduced the longevity and fecundity of leafhoppers. However, studies on the reproduction of *M. quadrilineatus* increased considerably when this leafhopper was reared on either AY phytoplasma-infected *Arabidopsis thaliana* (Sugio et al. 2011). They concluded that when plants are infected with phytoplasmas, adults live longer and lay eggs and the nymphs are hatched after 15 days from eggs.

5 Phytoplasma Detection and Identification

Plants infected by the phytoplasma exhibited various degrees of symptoms on their hosts, which may be correlated with imbalance in quantities in the presence of growth hormones (Lee and Davis 1992). The most characteristic symptoms caused by phytoplasma in ornamental plants are virescence or phyllody, flower sterility, witches' broom, and abnormal internode elongation. The generalized symptoms include stunted growth, yellowing, little leaf, phloem necrosis, chlorosis, crinkling, shoot proliferation, leaf burn, and death of the plant (Mc Coy et al. 1989). The symptom of phytoplasma disease in lily appears as fasciation such as flattening of the stem, bunchy appearance of apical of stems, and shortening of internodes resulting in multiple flowers (Chung and Jeong 2003). Similarly, Chung (2008) reported the stunting, yellowing, leaf cupping, and vein clearing symptoms in *Chrysanthemum* infected by phytoplasma. However, Kaminska (2008) observed the rose dieback symptoms at the end of winter or early in the spring. Favali et al. (2008) reported the most characteristic symptoms on *C. roseus* plants are yellowing of the leaves, virescence, phyllody and proliferation, witches' broom induced by the premature development of axillary buds, and inhibition of root growth. Most of the phytoplasmas infecting ornamental plants were detected on the basis of symptoms, DAPI staining, electron microscopy, PCR/RFLP analysis, and phylogenetic relatedness. However, the recent studies on the phylogeny based on the mentioned less-conserved genes were nearly matching with that inferred by 16S rDNA sequence analysis, indicating similar interrelatedness among phytoplasma taxa (Fabre et al. 2011; Durante et al. 2012; Valiunas et al. 2013).

5.1 Microscopy and Staining Technique

In the past the phytoplasmas were detected on the basis of microscopic observations and DNA-specific 6-diamidino-2-phenylindole (DAPI) staining techniques. The microscopic methods include transmission electron microscopy (TEM) and light microscopy (LM). Compared to TEM and LM, DAPI is the most sensitive technique. Shin and La (1984) have used Dienes' stains, while, Hiruki and Rocha (1986) have used DAPI stain to detect the MLOs in *C. roseus*. However, electron microscopy was used to detect the phytoplasma in *Aster*, *Gladiolus*, *Ranunculus*, *Cyclamen*, and *Lilium* (Doi et al. 1967; Hemmati and Mc Lean 1980; Bertaccini and Marani 1982; Bertaccini et al. 1988, 1990a, b), while Conti et al. (1988) have detected the presence of this disease-causing microorganism in *Chrysanthemum frutescens*. Moreover, bio-imaging methods require sensitive, specific, and nontoxic fluorescent dyes and the use of confocal or multiphoton microscopy for the identification of phytoplasma in the living host tissues (Christensen et al. 2004). These microscopic methods have also limitations and they didn't identify the pathogen if the infection is in low titer host tissues (Rao et al. 2012).

5.2 PCR/RFLP Assays and Phylogenetic Relationships

The identification of phytoplasma in diseased plants relied on symptoms that already appeared, but sometimes occurrence of peculiar symptoms in infected plants makes it difficult to identify the diseases associated with phytoplasma. In this regard, molecular identification has provided significant acumen on their genetic diversity and interrelationships and could serve as the basis for the comprehensive phylogenic and taxonomic studies (Hogenhout et al. 2008). The investigations on the sequence analysis of 16S rDNA have shown that phytoplasma constitute a coherent, genus-level taxon. The first comprehensive phytoplasma classification scheme was based on restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) analysis of polymerase chain reaction (PCR)-amplified 16S rDNA (Lee et al. 2000). This approach provided a reliable tool for broad differentiation among phytoplasmas. This system has classified phytoplasma into 19 groups and more than 40 subgroups and recognized as the most comprehensive and widely accepted phytoplasma classification system (Arocha et al. 2005; Al-Saady et al. 2008). Sensitive and accurate detection of these microorganisms is a prerequisite for the study and management of phytoplasma-associated diseases. After their discovery, phytoplasmas were initially difficult to detect due to their low concentration, especially in woody hosts, and their erratic distribution in the sieve tubes of infected plants (Berges et al. 2000).

Dot and Southern blot hybridization assays were used as the molecular tools for phytoplasma detection in the last few years, but nowadays, they have been replaced by the PCR assays using universal primers. Several universal and group-specific

primers have been designed for the detection of phytoplasma by the past researchers (Lee et al. 1993; Lorenz et al. 1995; Smart et al. 1996; Gundersen and Lee 1996; Khadhair et al. 1998; Berges et al. 2000). The nested-PCR assay using the group-specific primers was the most sensitive and specific technique for the detection of the phytoplasma. Application of the nested-PCR assay to detect the phytoplasma-associated disease in ornamental plant has greatly assisted in the identification of a varied range of phytoplasma in ornamental plants (Chung 2008; Favali et al. 2008; Mertelik et al. 2008). This approach is adept to sense the manifestation of dual or multiple phytoplasma in the infected plant tissues or mixed infection (Lee et al. 1995). Therefore, this technique is more valuable in the amplification of the phytoplasma from samples having low titers or inhibitors (Heinrich et al. 2001). For amplification rDNA of phytoplasma, the universal primer pairs P1/P7, P4/P7, and P1/P6 are being used to amplify 16S ribosomal region, plus spacer region (Deng and Hiruki 1991; Schneider et al. 1995). However, Gundersen and Lee (1996) used the 16S rRNA primer pairs R16F2n/R16R2 to detect the phytoplasma using RFLP. Since then, this primer pair has been more popular for the detection of phytoplasma. The major benefit to this approach is that the PCR products could be sequenced directly from amplicons. These sequences were used to determine the genetic relatedness of the phytoplasma. The taxonomic and molecular classification of phytoplasma detected in ornamental plants has been summarized in Table 2.

Table 2 Molecular characterization of phytoplasma stains based on RFLP analysis detected in ornamental plants

Phytoplasma strains	16Sr group to subgroup	Accession number	References
CY	16SrI-B	EF634457	Bertaccini et al. (1990b)
AY1	16SrI-B	L33767	Lee et al. (1992)
GLY	16SrI-B	–	Vibio et al. (1994, 1996)
AUSGU	16SrXII-B	L76865	Davis et al. (1997)
PpYC	16SrII-D	Y10097	White et al. (1998)
JHP	16SrXII-D	AB010425	Sawayanagi et al. (1999)
HibWB26	16SrXV-A	AF147708	Montano et al. (2001)
CnWB	16SrXIX-A	AB054986	Jung et al. (2002)
PD1	16SrX-C	AJ542543	Seemüller and Schneider (2004)
PAY	16SrXVII-A	AY725234	Arocha et al. (2005)
APPTW12-NE	16SrXVIII-A	DQ174122	Lee et al. (2006)
THP	nd	EF199549	Arocha et al. (2007)
IM-1	16SrXXIX-A	EF666051	Al-Saady et al. (2008)
SCWB1	16SrXXX-A	FJ432664	Zhao et al. (2009)
SoySTc1	16SrXXXI-A	HQ225630	Lee et al. (2011)
16SrVI-I	PassWB-Br3	GU292081	Davis et al. (2012)
MaPV	16SrXXXII-A	EU371934	Nejat et al. (2013)
LYDM-178	16SrXXII-A	KF751387	Harrison et al. (2014)

6 Conclusions and Future Prospects

In this modern era, attention has been paid for the development of floriculture, particularly for the benefit of small farming businesses to produce seedlings of ornamental plants for the domestic market as well as foreign export. Likewise, in other sections of agricultural economics, this trade is also susceptible by plant diseases particularly phytoplasma. The infestation of ornamental plants by phytoplasma is too much severe and is the burning topic of research worldwide because of unspecific symptoms, severe losses, and diverse epidemiology. Epidemics of these diseases have compelled the withdrawal of many ornamental plant species such as gladiolus, lily, chrysanthemum, and rose from cultivation. Nowadays, the diversity of phytoplasma has been explored with the help of the sophisticated molecular tools and techniques. Several factors have been identified in the past few decades throughout the world for the transmission of this disease at a grave extent, but still this unique etiological agent required more attention for the exploration of new possibilities. However, detection of various alternative hosts, which may carry the identical phytoplasma and their mode of transmission, will be addressed in the near future by planned and strict management strategy.

References

Ajayakumar PV, Samad A, Shasany AK, Gupta MK, Alam M, Rastogi S (2007) First record of a *Candidatus phytoplasma* associated with little leaf disease of *Portulaca grandiflora*. Australas Plant Dis Notes 2:67–69

Al-Saady NA, Khan AJ, Calari A, AlSubhi AM, Bertaccini A (2008) *Candidatus* Phytoplasma omanense, a phytoplasma associated with witches broom of *Cassia italica* (Mill.) Lam. in Oman. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 58:461–466

Al-Zadjali AD, Natsuaki T, Okunda S (2007) Detection, identification and molecular characterization of a phytoplasma associated with Arabian jasmine (*Jasminum sambac* L.) witches broom in Oman. J Phytopathol 155:211–219

Arocha Y, Lopez M, Pinol B, Fernandez M, Picornell B, Almeida R, Palenzuela I, Wilson MR, Jones P (2005) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma graminis' and '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma caricae', two novel phytoplasmas associated with diseases of sugarcane, weeds and papaya in Cuba. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 55:2451–2463

Arocha Y, Antesana O, Montellano E, Franco P, Plat G, Jones P (2007) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma lycopersici', a phytoplasma associated with 'hoja de perejil' diseases in Bolivia. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:1704–1710

Barros TSL, Kitajama EW, Resende RO (1998) Diversidade de isolados brasileiros de fitoplasmas atraves da analise do 16S rDNA. Fitopathol Bras 23:459–465

Behncken GM (1984) *Orosius lotophagorum* subsp. ryukyuensis (Hemiptera: Cicadellidae), a new vector of a little leaf disease in Australia. Australas Plant Pathol 13:35–36

Bellardi MG, Bertaccini A (1990) Electron microscopy of virescent *Gloxinia* plants. Acta Hortic 266:509–515

Bellardi MG, Benni A, Trinieri SP, Bertaccini A (2007) A severe disease induced by '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma arteries' in *Digitalis lantana*. Bull Insectol 60:275–276

Berges R, Rott M, Seemuller E (2000) Range of phytoplasma concentrations in various host plants as determined by competitive polymerase chain reaction. Phytopathology 90:1145–1152

Bertaccini A (1990) Cyclamen: a new host of mycoplasma-like organisms. Phytopathol Medit 29:213–214

Bertaccini A (2007) Phytoplasmas: diversity, taxonomy, and epidemiology. Front Biosci 12:673–689

Bertaccini A, Duduk B (2009) Phytoplasma and phytoplasma diseases: a review of recent research. Phytopathol Medit 48:355–378

Bertaccini A, Marani F (1982) Electron microscopy of two viruses and mycoplasma-like organism in lilies with deformed flowers. Phytopathol Medit 21:8–14

Bertaccini A, Marani F, Rapetti F (1988) Phyllody and virescence in *Ranunculus hybrids*. Acta Hortic 234:123–128

Bertaccini A, Davis RE, Lee IM (1990a) Distinctions among mycoplasma like organisms (MLOs) in *Gladiolus, Ranunculus, Brassica* and *Hydrangea* through detection with non radioactive cloned DNA probes. Phytopathol Medit 29:107–113

Bertaccini A, Davis RE, Lee IM, Conti M, Dally EL, Douglas SM (1990b) Detection of *Chrysanthemum* yellows mycoplasma-like organisms (MLO) by dot-hybridization and Southern blot analysis. Plant Dis 74:40–43

Bertaccini A, Bellardi MG, Vibio M (1993) La virescenza dell'ortensia. Informa Fitopatol 7–8:12–16

Bertaccini A, Vibio M, Bellardi MG (1996) Virus diseases of ornamental shrubs. X. *Euphorbia pulcherrima* Willd. Infected by viruses and phytoplasmas. Phytopathol Medit 35:129–132

Bertaccini A, Bellardi MG, Botti S, Paltrinieri S, Restuccia P (2006) Phytoplasma infection in *Asclepias physocarpa*. Acta Hortic 722:229–234

Bosco D, Galetto L, Leoncine P, Saracco P, Raccah B, Marzachi C (2007) Pattern of *Chrysanthemum* yellows phytoplasma multiplication in three leafhopper vector species (*Cicadellidae deltocephalinae*). Bull Insectol 60:227–228

Bressan A, Girolami V, Boudon-Padieu E (2005) Reduced fitness of the leafhopper vector *Scaphoideus titanus* exposed to Flavescence dorée phytoplasma. Entomol Exp Appl 115:283–290

Carraro L, Osler R, Loi N, Favali MA (1991) Transmission characteristics of the clover phyllody agent by dodder. J Phytopathol 133:15–22

Carraro L, Ermacora P, Loi N, Osler R (2004) The recovery phenomenon in apple proliferation infected apple trees. J Plant Pathol 86:141–146

Cervantes-Diaz L, Zavaleta-Mejia E, Rojas-Martinez RI, Alanis-Martinez I, Ochoa-Martinez DL, Sanchez-Garcia P (2004) First report of phytoplasma occurrence in *Alstroemeria* sp. plants in Mexico. Rev Mex Fitopatol 22:134–139

Chaturvedi Y, Singh M, Rao GP, Snehi SK, Raj SK (2009a) First report of association of '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris' (16SrI group) with little leaf disease of rose (*Rosa alba*) in India. Plant Pathol 58:788

Chaturvedi Y, Tewari AK, Upadhyaya PP, Prabhuji SK, Rao GP (2009b) Association of '*Candidatus phytoplasma asteris'* with little leaf and phyllody disease of *Catharanthus roseus* in Eastern Uttar Pradesh, India. Med Plant 1:103–108

Chaturvedi Y, Rao GP, Tiwari AK, Duduk B, Bertaccini A (2010a) Phytoplasma on ornamentals: detection, diversity and management. Acta Phytopathol Entomol Hung 45:31–69

Chaturvedi Y, Singh M, Snehi SK, Raj SK, Rao GP (2010b) Association of '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris' (16SrI group) with yellows and little leaf disease of *Hibiscus rosa-sinensis* in India. Plant Pathol 59:796

Christensen N, Nicolaisen M, Hansen M, Schulz A (2004) Distribution of phytoplasma in infected plants as revealed by real-time PCR and bioimaging. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 17:1175–1184

Chung BN (2008) Phytoplasma detection in Chrysanthemum and lily. In: Harrison NA, Rao GP, Marcone C (eds) Characterization, diagnosis and management of phytoplasmas. Studium Press LLC, Houston, TX, pp 175–194

Chung BN, Jeong MI (2003) Detection and molecular characterization of a Stolbur phytoplasma in *Lilium* oriental hybrids. Plant Pathol J 19:106–110

Conti M, D'Agostino G, Casetta A, Mela L (1988) Some characteristics of *Chrysanthemum* yellows disease. Acta Hortic 234:129–136

Cozza R, Bernardo L, Calari A, Silvestro G, Duduk B, Bertaccini A (2008) Molecular identification of '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris' inducing histological anomalies in *Silene nicaeensis*. Phytoparasitica 36:290–293

d'Aquillo M, Boarino A, Bozzano G, Marzachi C, Roggero P, Boccardo G (2002) First report of phytoplasmas infecting swan plants (*Gomphocarpus physocarpus*) in Liguria, Italy. Plant Pathol 51:796

Davino S, Calari A, Davino M, Tessitori M, Bertaccini A, Bellardi MG (2007) Virescence of ten weeks stock associated to phytoplasma infection in Sicily. Bull Insectol 60:279–280

Davis RE, Lee IM, Douglas SM, Dally EL (1990) Molecular cloning and detection of chromosomal and extrachromosomal DNA of the mycoplasma like organism associated with little leaf disease in periwinkle (*Catharanthus roseus*). Phytopathology 80:789–793

Davis RE, Dally EL, Gundersen DE, Lee IM, Habili N (1997) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma australiense', a new phytoplasma taxon associated with Australian grapevine yellows. Int J Syst Bacteriol 47:262–269

Davis RE, Zhao Y, Dally EL, Jomantiene R, Lee IM, Wei W, Kitajima EW (2012) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma sudamericanum', a novel taxon, and strain PassWB-Br4, a new subgroup 16SrIII-V phytoplasma, from diseased passion fruit (*Passiflora edulis* f. *flavicarpa* Deg.). Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 62:984–989

Deng SJ, Hiruki C (1990) Molecular cloning and detection of DNA of the mycoplasma like organism associated with clover proliferation. Can J Plant Pathol 12:383–388

Deng S, Hiruki C (1991) Amplification of 16S rRNA genes from culturable and nonculturable Mollicutes. J Microbiol Methods 14:53–61

Doi Y, Teranaka M, Yora K, Asuyama H (1967) Mycoplasma or PLT group-like micro-organisms found in the phloem elements of plants infected with mulberry dwarf, potato witches broom, aster yellow or Paulownia witches broom. Ann Phytopathol Soc Japan 33:259–266

Duduk B, Dukic N, Bulajic A, Krstic B, Bertaccini A (2006) Stolbur phytoplasmas infecting *Chrysanthemum* plants in Serbia. Pesticide Phytomed 21:107–112

Durante G, Casati P, Clair D, Quaglino F, Bulgari D, Boudon-Padieu E, Bianco PA (2012) Sequence analyses of S10-spc operon among 16SrV group phytoplasmas: phylogenetic relationships and identification of discriminating single nucleotide polymorphisms. Ann Appl Biol 161:234–246

Epstein AH, Hill J (1995) The biology of rose rosette disease: a mite-associated disease of uncertain etiology. J Phytopathol 143:353–360

Fabre A, Danet JL, Foissac X (2011) The stolbur phytoplasma antigenic membrane protein gene stamp is submitted to diversifying positive selection. Gene 472:37–41

Favali MA, Fossati F, Toppi LSD, Musetti R (2008) *Catharanthus roseus* phytoplasmas. In: Harrison NA, Rao GP, Marcone C (eds) Characterization, diagnosis and management of phytoplasmas. Studium Press LLC, Houston, TX, pp 195–218

Fraitag JM, Tompkins CM (1963) Corkscrew symptoms caused by western aster yellows virus on *Gladiolus*. Plant Dis Rep 47:617–621

Fry PR, Hammett KRW (1971) Rose wilt virus in New Zealand. J Agric Res 14:735–743

Grieve BJ (1931) Rose wilt and dieback. A virus disease occurring in Australia. Aust J Exp Biol Med Sci 8:107–121

Griffiths HM, Gundersen DE, Sinclair WA, Lee IM, Davis RE (1994) Mycoplasma-like organisms from milk weed, golden rod, and Spirea represent two new 16S rRNA sub-groups and three new strain sub clusters related to peach X-disease MLOs. Can J Plant Pathol 16:255–260

Griffiths HM, Sinclair WA, Smart CD, Davis RE (1999) The phytoplasma associated with ash yellows and lilac witches broom: *Candidatus phytoplasma fraxini*. Int J Syst Bacteriol 49:1605–1614

Gundersen DE, Lee IM (1996) Ultra sensitive detection of phytoplasmas by nested-PCR assays using two universal primer pairs. Phytopathol Medit 35:144–151

Habili N, Farrokhi N, Randles JW (2007) First detection of '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma australiense' in *Liquidambar styraciflua* in Australia. Plant Pathol 56:346

Haggis GH, Sinha RC (1978) Scanning electron microscopy of mycoplasma like organisms after freeze fracture of plant tissues affected with clover phyllody and aster yellows. Phytopathology 68:677–680

Hanboonsong Y, Choosai C, Panyim S, Damak S (2002) Transovarial transmission of sugarcane white leaf phytoplasma in the insect vector *Matsumuratettix hiroglyphicus* (Matsumura). Insect Mol Biol 11:97–103

Harju VA, Skelton AL, Monger WA, Jarvis B, Mumford RA (2008) Identification of an X-disease (16SrIII) group phytoplasma (*Candidatus* Phytoplasma pruni) infecting delphiniums in the UK. Plant Pathol 57:769

Harrison NA, Helmick EE (2008) First report of a '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris' related strain associated with little leaf disease of *Helianthus debilis* in Florida, USA. Plant Pathol 57:772

Harrison NA, Helmick EE, Elliott ML (2009) First report of a phytoplasma-associated lethal decline of Sabal palmetto in Florida, USA. Plant Pathol 58:792

Harrison NA, Davis RE, Oropeza C, Helmick EE, Narváez M, Eden-Green S, Dollet M, Dickinson M (2014) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma palmicola', associated with a lethal yellowing-type disease of coconut (*Cocos nucifera* L.) in Mozambique. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 64:1890–1899

Heinrich M, Botti S, Caprara L, Arthofer W, Strommer S, Hanzer V, Katinger H, Bertaccini A, Laimer da Câmara Machado M (2001) Improved detection methods for fruit tree phytoplasmas. Plant Mol Biol Rep 19:169–179

Hemmati K, Mc Lean DL (1980) Ultrastructure and morphological characteristics of mycoplasma-like organisms associated with Tulelake aster yellows. J Phytopathol 99:146–154

Hibben CR, Franzen LM (1989) Susceptibility of lilacs to mycoplasma-like organisms. J Environ Hortic 7:163–167

Hibben CR, Lewis CA, Costello JD (1986) Mycoplasma-like organisms, cause of lilac witches broom. Plant Dis 70:342–345

Hiruki C, Rocha ADA (1986) Histochemical diagnosis of mycoplasma infections in *Catharanthus roseus* by means of a fluorescent DNA-binding agent, 4-6-diamidino-2-phenylindole-2 HCl (DAPI). Can J Plant Pathol 8:185–188

Hiruki C, Romg XD, Deng SJ (1994) *Hydrangea virescence*, a disease associated with mycoplasma like organisms in Canada. Acta Hortic 377:325–333

Hogenhout SA, Oshima K, Ammar ED, Kakizawa S, Kingdom HN, Namba S (2008) Phytoplasmas: bacteria that manipulate plants and insects. Mol Plant Pathol 9:403–423

Hong CAI, Xiolin LI, Baohoa K, Hairu C (2005) Detection and identification of phytoplasma associated with sunshine tree witches broom. Acta Phytopathol Sin 35:19–23

IRPCM (2004) *Candidatus* Phytoplasma a taxon for the wall less, non helical prokaryotes that colonise plant phloem and insects. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 54:1243–1255

Israel HW, Horst RK, Mcgovern RJ, Kawamoto SO, Weaber KF, Bucci SJ, Paduch-Cichal E (1988) *Chrysanthemum* phloem necrosis: microscopy of the putative pathogen. Acta Hortic 234:145–155

Jimenez NZA, Montano HG (2010) Detection of phytoplasma in desiccated tissue of *Momordica charantia*, *Catharanthus roseus* and *Sechium edule*. Trop Plant Pathol 35:381–384

Jones P, Arocha Y (2006) A natural infection of Hebe is associated with an isolate of *Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris causing a yellowing and little-leaf disease in the UK. New Dis Rep 13:22

Jung HY, Sawayanagi T, Kakizawa S, Nishigawa H, Miyata SI, Oshima K, Ugaki M, Lee JT, Hibi T, Namba S (2002) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma castaneae', a novel phytoplasma taxon associated with chestnut witches' broom disease. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 52:1543–1549

Kaminska M (2008) Phytoplasma in ornamental plants. In: Harrison NA, Rao GP, Marcone C (eds) Characterization, diagnosis and management of phytoplasmas. Studium Press LLC, Houston, TX, pp 195–218

Kaminska M, Korbin M (2000) Phytoplasma infection in *Lilium* sp. plants. Phytopathol Pol 20:45–57

Kaminska M, Malinowski T (1996) Etiology of yellows and witches broom symptoms in some ornamental plants. Acta Hortic 432:96–106
Kaminska M, Sliwa H (2003) Effect of antibiotics on the symptoms of stunting disease of *Magnolia liliiflora* plants. J Phytopathol 151:59–63
Kaminska M, Sliwa H (2004) First report of phytoplasma belonging to apple proliferation group in roses in Poland. Plant Dis 88:1283
Kaminska M, Sliwa H (2008) Mixed infection of dahlia in Poland with apple proliferation and aster yellows phytoplasmas. Plant Pathol 57:363
Kaminska M, Rudzinska-Langwald A, Korbin M (1999) Occurrence and identification of aster yellows related phytoplasma in Gladiolus in Poland. Acta Physiol Plant 21:419–425
Kaminska M, Dziekanowska D, Rudzinska-Langwald A (2001a) Detection of phytoplasma infection in rose, with degeneration symptoms. J Phytopathol 149:3–10
Kaminska M, Sliwa H, Rudzinska-Langwald A (2001b) The association of phytoplasma with stunting, leaf necrosis and witches broom symptoms in Magnolia plants. J Phytopathol 149:719–724
Kaminska M, Sliwa H, Rudzinska-Langwald A (2004) First report of shoot proliferation of bleeding heart (*Dicentra spectabilis*) in Poland associated with phytoplasma infection. Plant Pathol 53:801
Khadhair AH, Kawchuk LM, Taillon RC, Botar G (1998) Detection and molecular characterization of an aster yellows phytoplasma in Parsley. Can J Bot 20:55–61
Lange L, Lange B, Lange M (1978) Four imperfectly known diseases of *Anemone nemorosa*. Bot Tidsskr 73:112–123
Lee IM, Davis RE, Chen TA, Chiykowski LN, Fletcher J, Hiruki C, Schaff DA (1992) A genotype-based system for identification and classification of mycoplasma-like organisms (MLOs) in aster yellows MLO strain cluster. Phytopathology 82:977–986
Lee IM, Davis RE (1992) Mycoplasmas which infect plants and insects. In: Maniloff J, McElhaney RN, Finch LR, Baseman JB (eds) Mycoplasmas: molecular biology and pathogenesis. American Society for Microbiology, Washington, DC, pp 379–390
Lee IM, Hammond RW, Davis RE, Gundersen DE (1993) Universal amplification and analysis of pathogen 16S rDNA for classification and identification of mycoplasmas-like organisms. Phytopathology 83:834–842
Lee IM, Bertaccini A, Vibio M, Gundersen DE (1995) Detection of multiple phytoplasmas in perennial fruit trees with decline symptoms in Italy. Phytopathology 85:728–735
Lee IM, Klopmeyer M, Bartoszyk IM, Gundersen-Rindal DE, Chou TS, Thomson KL, Eisenreich R (1997) Phytoplasma induced free-branching in commercial *Poinsettia* cultivars. Nat Biotechnol 15:178–182
Lee IM, Gundersen-Rindal DE, Davis RE, Bartoszyk M (1998) Revised classification scheme of phytoplasmas based on RFLP analyses of 16S rRNA and ribosomal protein gene sequences. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 48:1153–1169
Lee IM, Davis RE, Gundersen-Rindal DE (2000) Phytoplasma: phytopathogenic mollicutes. Annu Rev Microbiol 54:221–255
Lee IM, Bottner KD, Secor G, Rivera-Varas V (2006) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma americanum', a phytoplasma associated with a potato purple top wilt disease complex. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 56:1593–1597
Lee IM, Bottner KD, Dally EL, Davis RE (2008) First report of purple cone flower phyllody associated with a 16SrI-B phytoplasma in Maryland. Plant Dis 92:654
Lee IM, Bottner-Parker KD, Zhao Y, Villalobos W, Moreira L (2011) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma costaricanum' a novel phytoplasma associated with an emerging disease in soybean (Glycine max). Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 61:2822–2826
Lorenz KH, Schneider B, Ahrens U, Seemuller E (1995) Detection of the apple proliferation and pear decline phytoplasmas by PCR amplification of ribosomal and non ribosomal DNA. Phytopathology 85:771–776
Mafia RG, Barreto RW, Vanetti CA, Hodgetts J, Dickinson M, Alfenas AC (2007) A phytoplasma associated with witches broom disease of *Tabebuia pentaphylla* in Brazil. New Dis Rep 15:49

Marcone C (2014) Molecular biology and pathogenicity of phytoplasmas. Ann Appl Biol 165:199–221

Marwitz R, Peterzold H, Kuhne H (1984) Mycoplasmas in primulas. Report on new types of disease symptom. Gb + Gw 84:608–612

Marzachi C, Alma A, d'Aquilio M, Minuto G, Boccardo G (1999) Detection and identification of phytoplasmas infecting cultivated and wild plants in *Liguria* (Italian Riviera). J Plant Pathol 81:127–136

Mc Coy RE, de Leeuw GTN, Marwitz R, Chen TA, Cousin MT, Sinha RC, Petzold H, Chiykowski LN, Caudwell A, Chang CJ, Dale JL, Golino D, Kirkpatrick B, Sugiura M, Whitcomb RF, Yang IL, Zhu BM, Seemuller E (1989) Plant diseases associated with mycoplasma-like organisms. In: Whitcomb RF, Tully JG (eds) The mycoplasmas, vol 5. Academic, San Diego, pp 545–640

Mertelik J, Navratil M, Kloudova K, Valova P, Safarova D (2008) Phytoplasma in rhododendron. In: Harrison NA, Rao GP, Marcone C (eds) Characterization, diagnosis and management of phytoplasmas. Studium Press LLC, Houston, TX, pp 195–218

Misra S, Sharma AK, Cousin MT (1985) Phyllody disease of *Phlox drummondii* Hook in Rajasthan, India, associated with mycoplasma like organism study on thin thick sections. Int J Trop Plant Dis 3:7–14

Montano HG, Davis RE, Dally EL, Hogenhout S, Pimentel JP, Brioso PST (2001) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma brasiliense', a new phytoplasma taxon associated with hibiscus witches' broom disease. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 51:1109–1118

Murray RG, Stackebrandt E (1995) Taxonomic note implementation of the provisional status *Candidatus* for incompletely described prokaryotes. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 45:186–187

Musetti R, Favali MA, Carraro L, Osler R (1992) An attempt to differentiate by microscopic methods two plant mycoplasma-like organisms. Cytobios 72:71–82

Musetti R, Polizzotto R, Grisan S, Martini M, Borselli S, Carraro L, Osler R (2007) Effects induced by fungal endophytes in *Catharanthus roseus* tissues infected by phytoplasmas. Bull Insectol 60:293–294

Nejat N, Vadamalai G, Davis RE, Harrison NA, Sijam K, Dickinson M, Abdullah SNA, Zhao Y (2013) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma malaysianum', a novel taxon associated with virescence and phyllody of Madagascar periwinkle (*Catharanthus roseus*). Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 63:540–548

Nicolaisen M, Christensen NM (2007) Phytoplasma induced changes in gene expression in *Poinsettia*. Bull Insectol 60:215–216

Ogilvie L, Guterman CEF (1929) A mosaic disease of the easter lily. Phytopathology 19:311–316

Okuda S, Prince JP, Davis RE, Dally EL, Lee IM, Mogen B, Kato S (1997) Two groups of phytoplasmas from Japan distinguished on the basis of amplification and restriction analysis of 16S rDNA. Plant Dis 81:301–305

Parrella G, Paltrinieri S, Botti S, Bertaccini A (2008) Molecular identification of phytoplasmas from virescent Ranunculus plants and from leafhoppers in Southern Italian crops. J Plant Pathol 90:537–543

Pettersson ML, Tomenius K (1979) Mycoplasma-like organisms in marguerite, *Chrysanthemum frutescens* hybr. Vaxtskyddsnotiser 43:95–99

Pondrelli M, Caprara L, Bellardi MG, Bertaccini A (2002) Role of different phytoplasmas in inducing *Poinsettia* branching. Acta Hortic 568:169–176

Raj SK, Khan MS, Kumar S (2007a) Molecular identification of '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris' associated with little leaf disease of *Chrysanthemum morifolium*. Australas Plant Dis Notes 2:21–22

Raj SK, Khan MS, Snehi SK (2007b) Association of '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris' with little leaf disease of desert rose. Plant Pathol 56:1040

Raj SK, Snehi SK, Kumar S, Banerji BK, Dwivedi AK, Roy RK, Goel AK (2009) First report of *Candidatus* phytoplasma asteris (16SrI group) associated with colour-breaking and malformation of floral spikes of *Gladiolus* in India. Plant Pathol 58:1170

Rao GP, Mall S, Marcone C (2012) Recent biotechnological approaches in diagnosis and management of sugarcane phytoplasma disease. Funct Plant Sci Biotechnol 6:19–29

Ribeiro LFC, de Oliveira Amaral Mello AP, Bedendo IP, Gioria R (2006) Phytoplasma associated with shoot proliferation in Begonia. Sci Agric 63:475–477

Rojas-Martinez RI, Zavaleta-Mejia E, Martinez-Soriano JP, Lee IM (2003) Identification of the phytoplasma associated with Cosmos (*Cosmos bipinnatus* cav.) phyllody and classification by RFLP analysis of 16S rDNA. Rev Mex Fitopathol 21:83–86

Samad A, Ajaykumar PV, Shasany AK, Gupta MK, Alam M, Rastogi S (2008) Occurrence of a clover proliferation (16SrVI) group phytoplasma associated with little leaf disease of *Portulaca grandiflora* in India. Plant Dis 92:832

Sawayanagi T, Horikoshi N, Kanehira T, Shinohara M, Bertaccini A, Cousin MT, Hiruki C, Namba S (1999) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma japonicum', a new phytoplasma taxon associated with Japanese Hydrangea phyllody. Int J Syst Bacteriol 49:1275–1285

Schneider B, Seemüller E, Smart CD, Kirkpatrick BC (1995) Phylogenetic classification of plant pathogenic mycoplasma-like organisms or phytoplasmas. In: Razin S, Tully JG (eds) Molecular and diagnostic procedures in mycoplasmology, vol I, Molecular characterization. Academic, San Diego, pp 369–380

Schneider B, Torres E, Martin MP, Schroder M, Behnke HD, Seemuller E (2005) *Candidatus* Phytoplasma pini, a novel taxon from *Pinus silvestris* and *Pinus halepensis*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 55:303–307

Seemüller E, Schneider B (2004) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma mali', '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma pyri' and '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma prunorum', the causal agents of apple proliferation, pear decline and European stone fruit yellows, respectively. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 54:1217–1226

Sharma AK, Misra S, Raychaudhury SP, Parameswaran N (1985) Phyllody of marigold, a disease associated with mycoplasma-like organisms. Int J Trop Plant Dis 3:45–49

Shin HD, La YL (1984) Use of dienes stain in diagnosis of plant mycoplasmal diseases and modification of diagnostic procedure. Korean J Plant Protec 23:215–220

Shiomi T, Sugiura M (1983) Water dropwort yellows and *Chrysanthemum* witches' broom occurred in Ishikawa prefecture. Ann Phytopathol Soc 49:367–370

Shiomi T, Tanaka M, Uematsu S, Wakibe H, Nakamura H (1999) Statice witches broom a *Macrosteles striifrons* borne Phytoplasma disease. Jpn J Phytopathol 65:87–90

Sichani FV, Bahar M, Zirak L (2014) Characterization of Phytoplasmas related to aster yellows group infecting annual plants in Iran, based on the studies of 16S rRNA and RP genes. J Plant Protect Res 54:1–8

Siddique ABM (2006) Phytoplasma associated with *Gerbera* phyllody in Australia. J Phytopathol 153:730–732

Singh M, Chaturvedi Y, Tewari AK, Rao GP, Snehi SK, Raj SK, Khan MS (2011) Diversity among phytoplasmas infecting ornamental plants grown in India. Bull Insectol 64:S69–S70

Slack SA, Traylor JA, Williams HE, Nyland G (1976) Rose leaf curl, a distinct component of a disease complex which resembles rose wilt. Plant Dis Rep 60:178–182

Sliwa H, Kaminska M (2004) Experimental transmission of phytoplasmas from diseased magnolias to *Catharanthus roseus* test plants by grafting. Phytopathol Pol 32:21-31

Smart CD, Schneider B, Blomquist CL, Guerra LJ, Harrison NA, Ahrens U, Lorenz KH, Seemüller E, Kirkpatrick BC (1996) Phytoplasma-specific PCR primers based on sequences of the 16S–23S rRNA spacer region. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:2988–2993

Sobolev I, Weintrab PG, Gera A, Tam Y, Spiegel S (2007) Phytoplasma infection in the four o'clock flower (*Mirabilis jalapa*). Bull Insectol 60:281–282

Sugio A, MacLean AM, Kingdom HN, Grieve VM, Manimekalai R, Hogenhout SA (2011) Diverse targets of phytoplasma effectors: from plant development to defense against insects. Annu Rev Phytopathol 49:175–195

Tedeschi R, Ferrato V, Rossi J, Alma A (2006) Possible phytoplasma transovarian transmission in the psyllids *Cacopsylla melanoneura* and *Cacopsylla pruni*. Plant Pathol 55:18–24

Tessitori M, Masenga V, Marzachi C (2006) First report of phytoplasma associated with abnormal proliferation of cladodes in cactus pear (*Opuntia ficus-indica*) in Italy. Plant Pathol 55:292

Thomas BJ (1981) Some degeneration and dieback diseases of the rose. Annu Rep Glasshouse Crops Res Inst 1981:178–190

Ulrychova M, Peteru E, Jokes M, Joskova B (1983) Mycoplasma-like organisms associated with stunting of *Gypsophila paniculata* L. Biol Plant 25:385–388

Valiunas D, Jomantiene R, Davis RE (2013) Evaluation of the DNA-dependent RNA polymerase β-subunit gene (rpoB) for phytoplasma classification and phylogeny. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 63:3904–3914

Verhoyen M, Genot M, Colin J, Horvat F (1979) Chrysanthemum yellows etiology. Phytopathol Z 96:59–64

Vibio M, Bertaccini A, Lee IM, Davis RE, Clark MF (1994) Characterization of aster yellows and related European mycoplasma-like organisms maintained in periwinkle plants and shoot-tip culture. IOM Lett 3:297–298

Vibio M, Bertaccini A, Lee M, Davis RE, Clark MF (1996) Differentiation and classification of aster yellows and related European phytoplasmas. Phytopathol Medit 35:33–42

Wang K, Hiruki C (2001) Use of heteroduplex mobility assay for identification and differentiation of Phytoplasmas in the aster yellows group and the clover proliferation group. Phytopathology 91:546–552

Weintraub PG, Beanland LA (2006) Insect vectors of phytoplasmas. Annu Rev Entomol 51:91–111

White DT, Blackall LL, Scott PT, Walsh KB (1998) Phylogenetic positions of phytoplasmas associated with dieback, yellow crinkle and mosaic diseases of papaya, and their proposed inclusion in '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma australiense' and a new taxon, '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma australasia'. Int J Syst Bacteriol 48:941–951

Zajak Z (1979) Mycoplasma like organisms in phloem of (*Phlox paniculata* L.) with symptoms of flower greening. Referat Zhur 3:79–106

Zhang CP, Wu KK, Li ZN, Zhang J, Wang WL, Wu YF (2009) Occurrence of an aster yellows (16SrI) group phytoplasma associated with a leaf roll disease of shinyleaf yellow horn in China. Plant Pathol 58:790

Zhao Y, Sun Q, Wei W, Davis RE, Wu W, Liu Q (2009) '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma tamaricis', a novel taxon discovered in witches'-broom-diseased salt cedar (*Tamarix chinensis* Lour). Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 59:2496–2504

Isolation and Identification of Allelochemicals from Ascocarp of *Tuber* Species

Paola Angelini, Emma Bricchi, Mohd. Sayeed Akhtar, Alessandro Properzi, Jeri-Lynn Elizabeth Fleming, Bruno Tirillini, and Roberto Venanzoni

Abstract Truffles (*Tuber* spp.) belong to the fruiting bodies of certain hypogeous ascomycetes, which may grow in ectomycorrhizal symbioses with specified shrub and tree species. Some truffles, notably *Tuber melanosporum* and *T. aestivum,* form 'burnt' area, also known as 'burn' or 'brûlé' around their symbiotic hosts. Increasingly focused interest has been centred on an in-depth research and study of truffle methanolic extracts and their fatty acid allelochemicals. These metabolites have been recognised as biochemical and have great influence in the burnt formation. This present chapter contributes the knowledge of truffle methanolic extracts and fatty acids regarding allelopathic activity to understand the applicability and sustainability of truffles in agricultural practices for the management of weed and plant pathogens. However, it will also be helpful to the companies specialising in the processing of truffle and the recovery and reinsertion of waste truffles through the production process for the isolation of important allelopathic compounds.

Keywords Bioassay • Fatty acids • LC/MS analysis • *Tuber aestivum* • *T. borchii* • *T. magnatum* • *T. melanosporum*

P. Angelini (✉) • E. Bricchi • A. Properzi • J.-L. E. Fleming • R. Venanzoni
Department of Chemistry, Biology and Biotechnology, University of Perugia,
Borgo XX Giugno, 74-06121 Perugia, Italy
e-mail: paola.angelini@unipg.it

M.S. Akhtar
Department of Botany, Gandhi Faiz-E-Aam College,
Shahjahanpur 242001, Uttar Pradesh, India

B. Tirillini
Institute of Botany, University of Urbino, Via Bramante, 28-61028 Urbino, PU, Italy

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_11

1 Introduction

Fungi are microorganisms known to occupy every ecological niche of the earth. Their environmental requirements are different, from those species that are capable of utilising nutrients in various substrates to species with very specific habitat needs (Angelini et al. 2008, 2014a, 2016; Pagiotti et al. 2011; Picco et al. 2011; Perotto et al. 2013). Fungi are a rich source of secondary metabolites and natural products. These compounds recovered from the fungi are low molecular weight molecules, are highly dispensable and are advantageous in various environmental conditions (Gerke and Braus 2014). However, the interest in secondary metabolites of symbiotic fungi found in close association with land plants, lichens, marine organisms and insects has recently intensified due to the belief that natural products synthesised by these fungi during ecological interactions exhibited strong biological activities (Keller and Turner 2012; Streiblova et al. 2012; Angelini et al. 2015b).

True truffles are subterranean fruiting bodies produced by members of the ascomycete genus *Tuber*, comprising of over 200 species (Bonito et al. 2012). Some of these species produce edible fruiting bodies (ascocarps) of high nutritional values commonly used in both traditional European cooking and haute cuisine worldwide. These fungi form as ectomycorrhizal symbiosis with the roots of trees or shrub to complete their life cycle. The production points of some species of truffles, such as *T. melanosporum* and *T. aestivum*, are known as burns or brûlés because of their activity to clear the vegetation around host plants through the secretion of phytotoxic allelochemicals from the mycelia and ascocarps into their environment as exudates or leachates (Angelini et al. 1998, 2010a, b, 2015; Zacchi et al. 2003; Splivallo et al. 2007a, b, 2011; Splivallo 2008; Streiblova et al. 2012; Azul et al. 2014). They are also able to effectively 'kill off' the competing plants by creating a seemingly burnt area at their vicinity. Truffles are naturally occurring in the Northern Hemisphere (Payen et al. 2014). Black truffle (*T. melanosporum*), the black summer truffle (*T. aestivum*) and white truffle (*T. magnatum*) are edible in nature and are consumed throughout the world (Otsing and Tedersoo 2015). However, there are some other economically important truffle species such as pecan truffles (*T. lyonii*) found in North America and Chinese truffles (*T. indicum* and *T. sinoaestivum*) found in Asia (Bonito et al. 2012; Reyna and Garcia-Barreda 2014).

The natural production of truffle in the past century has been drastically declining due to many factors, including deforestation of the natural habitat of the *Tuber* spp., poor forest management, unselective harvesting of fruiting bodies as well as the introduction of new or exotic species which is unable to form a symbiotic relationship with edible mushrooms (Rubini et al. 2005). Other factors include acid rain, global climate change and pollution (Büntgen et al. 2012; Olivier et al. 2012). This decline and the flourishing truffle market have encouraged researchers and entrepreneurs to develop methods for cultivating truffles in varying climatic conditions and on different soils (Otsing and Tedersoo 2015). Despite the fact that truffle orchards have been and are

being established in various countries around the world, including New Zealand and Israel, many basic aspects of truffle biology are scarcely understood and the ecological requirements of some species remain unknown to this day (Murat et al. 2013; Martin et al. 2014). Thus, innovative tools are now required to make truffle cultivation in a sustainable manner and profitable in the truffle industry.

2 Truffle Plantations: Weed and Herbaceous Plant Competition and Necessity of Allelopathy

The ecological requisites of truffle species are relatively well known, and cultivation methods have been developed based on these, thus allowing many once-endemic species to be sown in truffle plantations worldwide especially in New Zealand, Finland and Israel. It is not possible to cultivate successfully all the species in truffle beds (Iotti et al. 2012; Reyna and Garcia-Barreda 2014). Aside from the importance of site suitability and seedling quality, one critical factor in the precocity and regularity of truffle production has proven to be correct management of the truffle beds. All ectomycorrhizal fungi demand very specific conditions to be able to develop in a given soil, pH, moisture, fertility, temperature, aeration, texture, organic matter and content found in and the canopy cover of a given site all contribute to the possible development or inhibition of fungi, such as truffles (Olivier et al. 2012; Salerni et al. 2013). These factors and more are modifiable with certain cultural practices and may contribute to creating a more favourable environment for the production of truffles, i.e. weed control, irrigation and foliar fertilisation treatments applied to young truffle plantations have resulted in modifications in plant growth in general as well as in the root system and the status of the ectomycorrhizal colonisation itself (Olivera et al. 2011).

Competition from weeds and herbaceous plants has been shown to reduce the colonisation (Mamoun and Olivier 1997) and production (Ricard et al. 2003) of truffles citing the competition with these plants for water, nutrients and light (Cahill 1999; Olivera et al. 2014). Black truffles act as a natural herbicide as they are known to exert a phytotoxic effect on the root systems of many herbaceous species. This results in a 'burn' pattern, an area void of competing vegetation which forms at the base of colonised trees even years before the first truffle appears. This means before the formation of the truffle bun, the development of the young seedlings (host plant) may be constrained due to competition from weeds which could eventually lead to plantation failure (Olivera et al. 2014). Clearly, the impact herbaceous competition must be reduced so as to create productive plantations. Traditional methods of weed control in truffle orchards are based essentially on labour-intensive tillage and hand hoeing for the first few years. Unfortunately, these may also adversely affect soil structure itself and excessively break down the aggregates (Reicosky et al. 2003).

During a plantation establishment phase, both tillage and herbicides are recognised methods as stated by Ricard et al. (2003); indeed Bonnet et al. (2007) noted

that using glyphosate furnished not only greatly reduced mortality rates in first-year seedlings after out planting but also a non-reduction of truffle mycorrhizae. However, Busse et al. (2004) found that though mycorrhizal formation itself may not be inhibited by commercial herbicides, root tip growth may be subjected to serious damage. Seeing the increasing cause for concern with risks involving human and environmental health for the use of the generally unsafe chemical herbicides (Duke et al. 2001), it becomes clear that an adequate and sustainable modern agricultural practice requires new strategies in the improvement of weed and pathogen management. Allelopathy offers just this new approach towards the discovery, isolation and utilisation of new lead compounds as organic herbicides and pesticides driving directly from the natural biological phenomena of negative allelopathy in plants, fungi and microorganisms (Bhadoria 2011).

3 Allelopathy and Allelochemicals

The term allelopathy (Molisch 1937) refers to the direct or indirect harmful or beneficial effects of one plant (or microbes) on other plants through the release of chemical compounds in the environment, known as allelochemicals (Rice 1984). Allelopathy plays an important role in the pattern of vegetation, i.e. as plant communities, climax vegetation and crop productivity (Chou 1999; Cruz-Ortega et al. 2007).

According to the International Allelopathy Society, allelopathy can be regarded as 'any process involving secondary metabolites produced by plants, algae, bacteria, and fungi that influences the growth and development of agriculture and biological systems' (Muller 1966). Which is to say, allelopathic compounds may influence the germination and the growth and development of plants, affecting their photosynthetic, respiratory, transpiratory and biochemical metabolic processes reaching as far as to affect the molecular basis of their protein and nucleic acid synthesis (Reigosa et al. 2006; Angelini et al. 2009).

Allelochemicals or allelochemics are secondary metabolites which may institute allelopathic influences (Chandra et al. 2012). Taking into consideration the structures and properties of allelochemical compounds, it is possible to descry essentially ten categories, as follows: (1) water-soluble organic acids, straight-chain alcohols, aliphatic aldehydes and ketones; (2) simple unsaturated lactones; (3) long-chain fatty acids and polyacetylenes; (4) quinines (benzoquinone, anthraquinone and complex quinines); (5) phenolics; (6) cinnamic acid and its derivatives; (7) coumarins; (8) flavonoids; (9) tannins; and (10) steroids and terpenoids (sesquiterpene lactones, diterpenes and triterpenoids) (Li et al. 2010). Despite the fact that tens of thousands of secondary substances have been identified to date, the number of these which have been revealed as utilisable allelochemicals is very limited (An 2005).

3.1 Competition or Allelopathic Interference

A vast gamma of scientific studies regarding the biology and genetics of pathological, symbiotic and associative interactions on a molecular level is defined by plant-microbe interactions; competition and allelopathy are paramount in these. As it is reliant upon the effective release of chemical compounds (particularly secondary metabolites) into the surrounding environment, allelopathy, a form of chemical competition, is distinct from the competition, which instead removes or reduces a necessary factor for other individuals in a shared habitat (Bertholdsson 2012). Competition is used by microbes and plants to assure its place in nature. In the field, both allelopathy and competition usually act simultaneously (Bertholdsson 2012).

4 Allelopathic Activities of Methanolic Extract and Allelochemicals from *Tuber* spp.

The experiment conducted at the Mycology Laboratory, Department of Chemistry, Biology and Biotechnology, University of Perugia, Italy, studies and observes the allelopathic effects of methanolic extracts of truffles and fatty acid allelochemicals on germination and growth of *Arabidopsis thaliana*, *Lotus corniculatus*, *Melica ciliata* and *Silene vulgaris* seeds and seedlings (Angelini et al. 2015). Here below are offered the descriptions of the tested truffles, methods of experimentation and the results of this experiment.

4.1 Truffle Fruiting Bodies

In the truffle allelopathy studies (Angelini et al. 2010a, b, 2015), fruiting bodies from *T. melanosporum* Vittad., *T. aestivum* Vittad., *T. magnatum* Pico and *T. borchii* Vittad. were purchased from a truffle company and identified according to macro- and micromorphological characteristics paying particular attention to the size, the shape and the ornamentation of spores (Granetti et al. 2005; Angelini et al. 2014b).

4.1.1 Description of Truffles

Tuber aestivum Vittad.

(Great Britain: Summer white truffle; Italy: Scorzone; France: Truffe de la Sainte Jean, Truffe d'été)

Globose ascoma, irregular, from (1)3 to 10(14) cm, often with a, not very pronounced, concavity at the base, firm and compact, black-brown, intense black, with

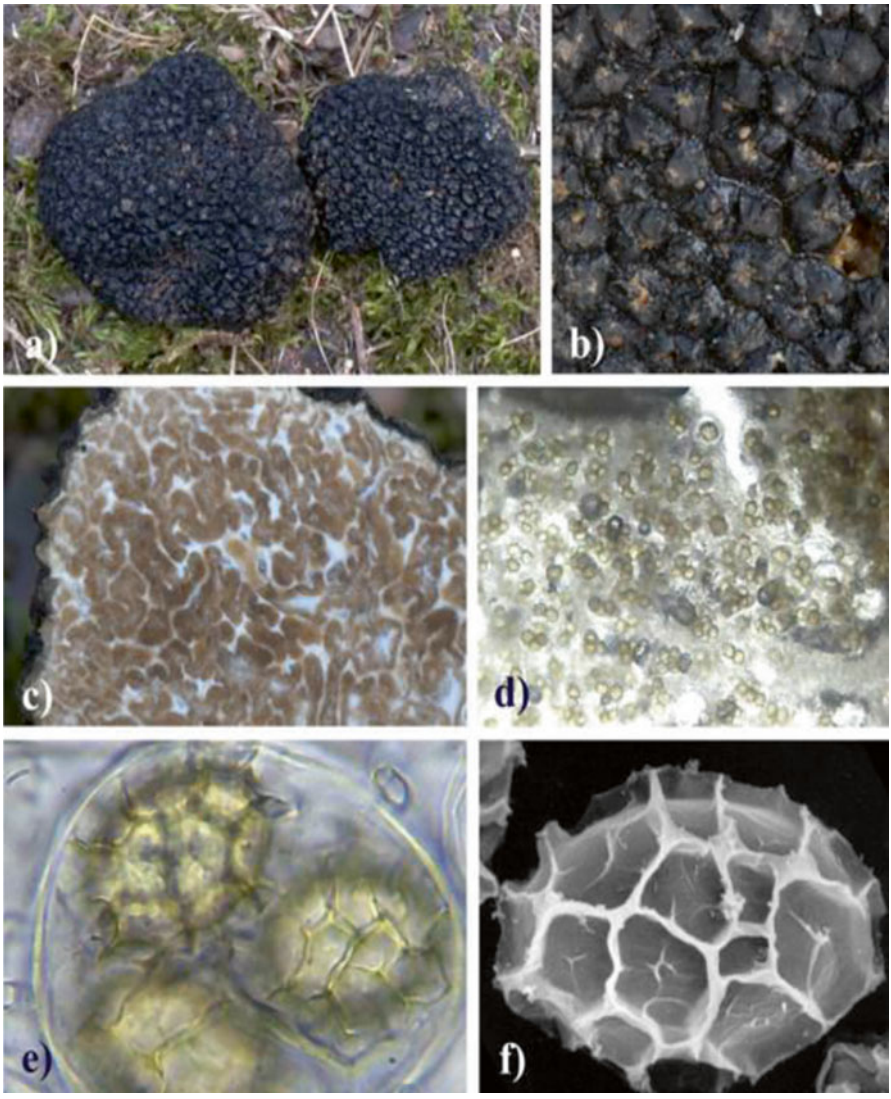


Fig. 1 *Tuber aestivum*: (**a**) Two truffle samples (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**b**) truffle surface detail with marked verrucas (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**c** and **d**) gleba section (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**e**) ascus with three spores (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**f**) SEM spore with medium-sized alveoles (photo: Emma Bricchi)

4–6(7)-sided pyramidal warts also very large at the base (from 2 up to 12 mm) and (0.5–)1–2(5) mm high, often seen with a depressed or concave apex and with risen radical crests and small parallel transversal striations; warts also with longitudinal cracks (Fig. 1a).

Peridium thickness 200–480 µm comprising a layer of 100 µm corresponding to the warts, essentially pseudoparenchymatic with polygonal cells of 8–18(20) µm,

the external, with a thick wall, coloured brown-black, the internal coloured a pale ochre and an internal layer with a pseudoparenchymatic structure in the proximity of the gleba (Fig. 1b). Global firm and pulpy, at first white, the ochre-like, brunette, often spotted with reddish here and there with plectenchimatic zones; numerous veins, white, very ramified, thin (Fig. 1c, d). Globular asci or subglobular, short stalked or sessile, 80–100 × 55–75 µm, (1)3–5(6) spores (Fig. 1e). Alveolate-reticulum spores, subglobular or largely ellipsoidal, coloured ochre or brownish-red, (18–)24–35(–40) × (15–)18–27(–36) µm excluding the ornamentation; with large irregular alveoli 4–10 µm and 2–5(–7) µm deep, often with internal crests and with walls often hooked at the apex (Fig. 1e, f and Table 1). Odour at first weak, then strong, pleasant, fruity and pleasant flavour.

Habitat

In calcareous terrain, drained and rocky of diverse geological origins with pH 7–8, in mixed and broad-leaved woods, and in conifer plantations, but also under isolated plants, with not preferred exposition, at variable altitudes above sea level up to 1400–1600 m. Fructification also on the surface. Solitary or aggregate.

Maturation Period

From late spring to winter.

Symbiotic Nature

It forms the symbiosis with *Quercus pubescens* Willd., *Q. ilex* L., *Q. ilex* L. var. *ballota* (Desf.) Samp., *Q. robur* L., *Q. petraea* (Mattushka) Liebl., *Q. cerris* L., *Corylus avellana* L., *Ostrya carpinifolia* Scop., *Carpinus betulus* Willd., *Tilia platyphyllos* Scop., *Fagus sylvatica* L., *Betula verrucosa* Ehrh., *Salix* spp., *Populus* spp., *Pinus nigra* Arnold, *P. pinea* L., *P. sylvestris* L., *P. halepensis* Mill., *P. brutia* Ten., *Picea abies* (L.) Karst. and *Cedrus* spp. (Chevalier 1979; Stobbe et al. 2013; Hilszczanska et al. 2014; Garcia-Montero et al. 2014).

Geographic Distribution

Distributed in almost all Europe (between 37° and 57° N), North Africa, Korea and China (Weden et al. 2004; Granetti et al. 2005; Hall et al. 2007; Jeandroz et al. 2008; Milenkovic et al. 2009; Yun and Liu 2009; Chevalier 2010; Streiblova et al. 2010; Gryndler et al. 2011; Gogan et al. 2012; Salerni et al. 2013; Azul et al. 2014; Gezer et al. 2014).

Tuber borchii Vittad.

(Great Britain: Whitish truffle, whitebait; Italy: Tartufo bianchetto, Marzuolo; France: Blanche du Piemont)

Table 1 Morphological features of *Tuber* spp. spores

Tuber spp.	Spore colour	Spore length (µm)	Spore width (µm)	Spore shape	Episporium ornamentation	Ornamentation width	Ornamentation height
Tuber magnatum	Light yellow	35–50	32–42	Subglobose, spheroidal, ellipsoidal	Alveolae 5–6 sided; 2–3 alveolae along spore length	Alveolae 10–20 µm	Walls 4–5 µm
T. aestivum	Yellow-brown	25–36	18–28	Ellipsoidal	Polygonal alveolae sometimes incomplete with inner ridges; 3–4–(5) alveolae along spore length	Alveolae 8–9 µm	Walls 1.5–2.5 µm
T. borchii	Yellow-brown	30–45	24–32	Ellipsoidal, subglobose	Small, orderly alveolate-reticulum; 7–8–(9) alveolae along spore length	Alveolae 4–7 µm	Walls 1–2.5 µm
T. melanosporum	Light brown to mid brown	23–45	19–28	Ellipsoidal	Broad base spines, longitudinally furrowed, sometimes with curved tips	Strong spines, stronger at poles	Spine length 2.5–3 µm

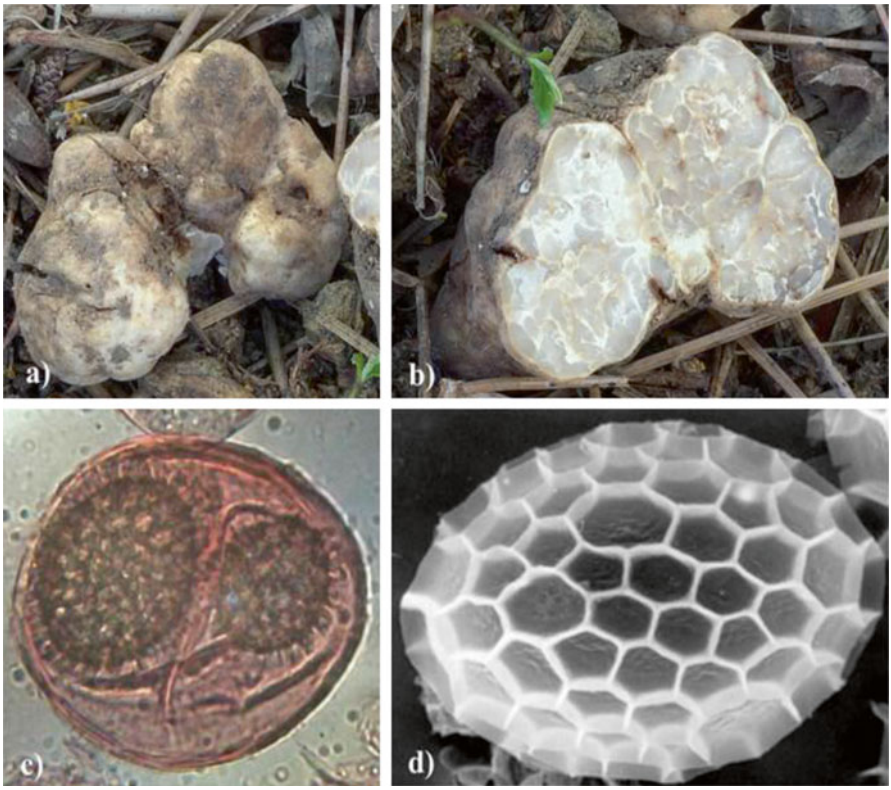


Fig. 2 *Tuber borchii*: (**a**) Truffle sample (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**b**) truffle section (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**c**) ascus with two spores (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**d**) SEM spore showing small regular alveoles (photo: Emma Bricchi)

Globose ascoma, often lobbed or irregular, often with a depressed base, but without cavities, 2–3(–7) cm in diameter (Fig. 2a). Peridium on the surface at first whitish, then greyish-yellow and finally brown ochre, when immature quite pubescent and glabrous at maturity, humid, smooth, often with darker or lighter reddish spots; thickness (100–)200–500 μm, when immature with sparse superficial, short hyphae, up to 50–80(–120) × 3–5 μm in height, generally with thin walls, occasionally thickened and yellowish near the surface, in proximity of the gleba plectenchimatic with meshed hyphae up to 5–9 μm in width (Fig. 2a, b). Pale ochre-coloured gleba, often a bit reddish then yellowish and brownish, smooth plectenchimatic structure, not unlike that of the more internal layer of the peridium, with more or less numerous veins, white and tending towards ochre-like or brownish-red, ramified from multiple points of the peridium and anastomosed (Fig. 2b).

Asci mostly globose, sessile or barely stalked, 73–80 × 52–67 μm, with 1–3(4) spores (Fig. 2c). Alveolate-reticulum spores, ellipsoidal, mostly ellipsoidal,

rarely subspherical, reddish-brown, (20–)30–45(–55) × (18–)24–32(–40) µm excluding ornamentation, with more or less regular polygonal alveoli, numbering (4)5–7 along the major dimension of the spore, 4–8(–10) µm wide and 3–5 µm deep (Fig. 2d and Table 1). Pleasant in odour, then strong and garlic-like; strong flavour, intense, not very pleasant.

Habitat

In calcareous terrain, clayish (hilly), but also sandy (coastal pinewoods) and in humus not very acidic, in broad-leaved, conifer or mixed woods, at a shallow depth in the soil, from sea level to 1000 m in altitude. Solitary and aggregated.

Maturation Period

From autumn to spring.

Symbiotic Nature

It forms the symbiosis with *Q. pubescens* Willd., *Q. ilex* L., *Q. cerris* L., *Q. petraea* (Mattuschka) Liebl., *Fagus sylvatica* L., *Corylus avellana* L., *Carpinus betulus* L., *Ostrya* sp., *Tilia* sp., *Populus alba* L., *P. nigra* L., *P. tremula* L., *Cistus* spp., *Salix alba* L., *S. caprea* L., *Pinus nigra* Arnold, *P. pinea* L., *P. halepensis* Miller, *Larix decidua* Miller, *Cedrus* sp., *Abies* sp. and *Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Mirbel) Franco for *T. levissimum* Gilkey (Angelini and Granetti 2001; Granetti et al. 2005; Iotti et al. 2010).

Geographic Distribution

Commonly distributed in almost all Europe (between 37° and 55° N) (Hall et al. 2007; Jeandroz et al. 2008; Lawrynowicz et al. 2008; Gezer et al. 2014), south-west China and Taiwan for *T. sphaerospermum* (Malençon) (≡ *Tuber borchii* var. *sphaerosperma* Malençon) (Yun and Liu 2009).

Tuber magnatum Pico

(Great Britain: Piedmont white truffle; Italy: Tartufo bianco del Piemonte, Trifola bianca; France: Truffe des Magnats, Truffe Gris)

Globose ascoma more or less regular, often with lobes, gibbous, often flattened with variable dimensions from 1–2 cm up to 10–15 cm and beyond, yellowish, pale ochre, more or less greyish, often with greenish or reddish tones (Fig. 3a, b). Peridium smooth on the surface, under a dense minutely papillose, adherent, 50–350(–500) µm thick, pale grey ochre, essentially pseudoparenchymatic with few plectenchimatic zones, internally paler (Fig. 3a, b). Whitish gleba, pale yellow, pale ochre, brownish-grey or reddish-brown, often with reddish spots, soapy to the touch, essentially pseudoparenchymatic. Thin veins, whitish, ramified, anastomosed, also in the white

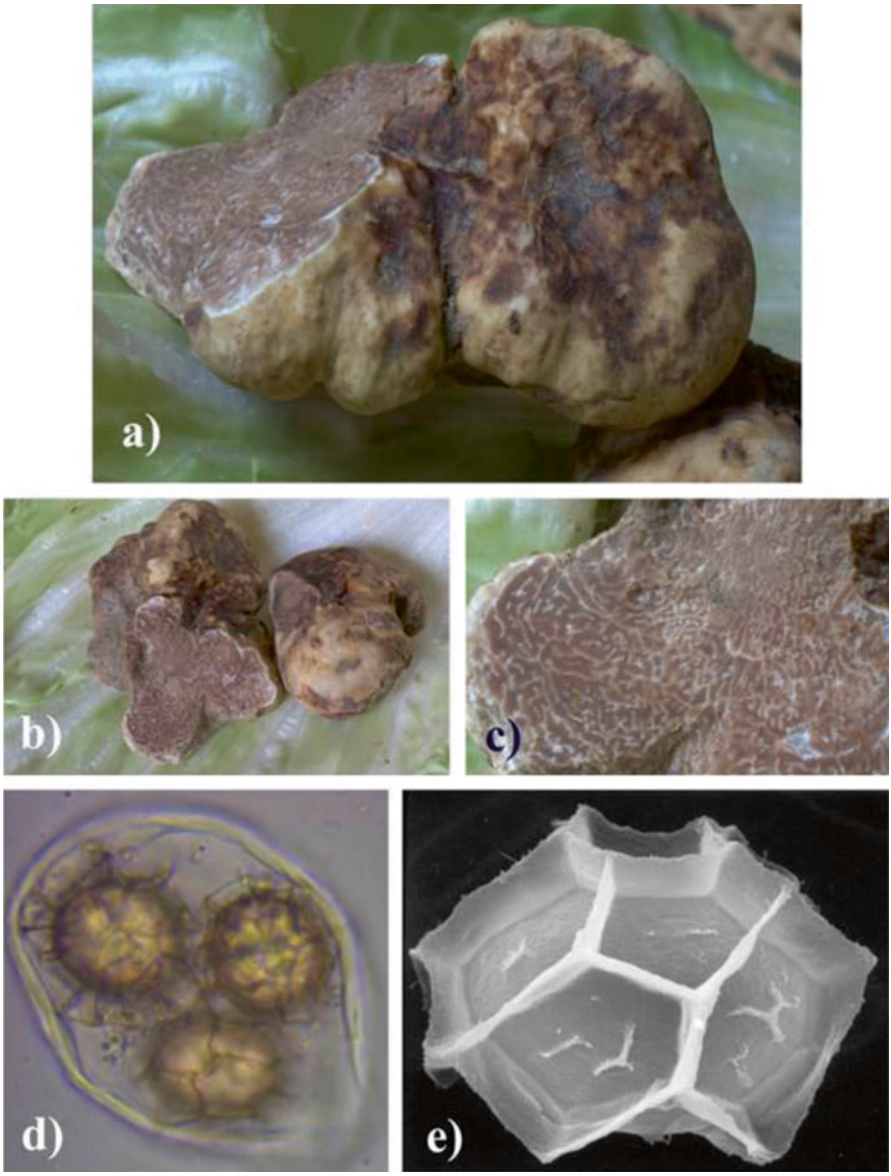


Fig. 3 *Tuber magnatum*: (**a**) Mature truffle sample (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**b**) three truffle samples (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**c**) truffle section with sterile white veins and fertile light brown veins (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**d**) ascus with three spores (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**e**) SEM spore with wide alveoles (photo: Emma Bricchi)

ganglia(Fig.3c).Ascimostlyglobose,sessileorshortstalked65–80(90)×42–65(70)µm with 1–3(4) spores (Fig. 3d).

Alveolate-reticulum spores, from yellowish, pale ochre to brownish, globose or ovoid-globose, (20–)35–50×(15–)32–42 µm excluding ornamentation, with more or less regular alveole, by number 2–3 according to the diameter of the spore and depth 4–6, 5(–8) µm with internal crests (Fig. 3d, e and Table 1). Pleasant odour, penetrating, garlic-like and strongly cheesy. Pleasant flavour, intense and garlic-like.

Habitat

In calcareous marl terrain, constituted of sandstone, marl, marly limestone and marl clay; mostly at the depth of 10–30 cm (and beyond up to 80 cm), but also more superficially (2 cm), solitary or rarely aggregated. Grows below 700(–800) m in altitude, in the valley bottoms, along ditches, in tilled terrain, slightly humid, but drained, poor in P and N, at pH 7–8(8.5), poor in humus, not very inclined and not very sunny, especially alluvial, sedimentary, of landslides, and of escarpment; does not grow in sandy or siliceous terrain.

Maturation Period

Late summer, autumn and early winter.

Symbiotic Nature

It forms the symbiosis with *Q. robur* L., *Q. petrea* Liebl., *Q. pubescens* Willd., *Q. cerris* L., *Q. ilex* L., *Populus alba* L., *P. nigra* L., *P. tremula* L., *P. pyramidalis* Roz., *Salix alba* L., *S. viminalis* L., *S. caprea* L., *S. appennina* Skvortsov, *Tilia cordata* Miller, *T. platyphyllos* Scop., *Corylus avellana* L., *Ostrya carpinifolia* Scop., *Alnus cordata* (Loisel.) Desf., *Carpinus betulus* L., *Pinus pinea* L. and *Abies alba* Miller (Granetti et al. 2005; Figliuolo et al. 2013; Iotti et al. 2014).

Geographic Distribution

Distributed in Central and Southern Europe (between 40° and 46° N) (Rubini et al. 2005; Piltaver and Ratosa 2006; Jeandroz et al. 2008; Milenkovic et al. 2009; Christopolous et al. 2013).

Tuber melanosporum Vittad.

(Great Britain: Black truffle, Black diamond; Italy: Tartufo nero pregiato; France: Truffe du Périgord; Spain: Trufa negra)

Globose ascoma, regular or irregular, occasionally lobed, compact, with a diameter from (2)5 to 8(10) cm, at first reddish-brown then reddish-black,

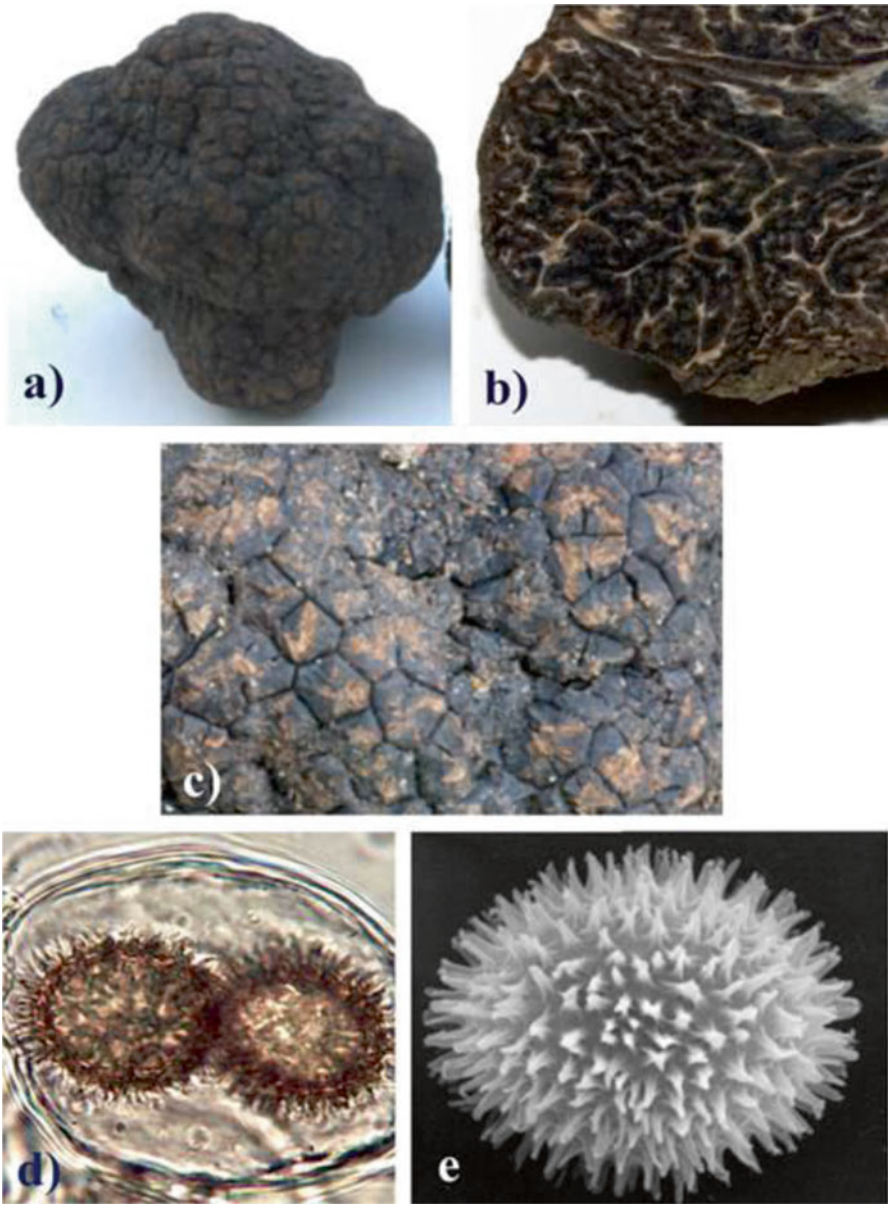


Fig. 4 *Tuber melanosporum*: (**a**) Truffle sample (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**b**) truffle section with sterile clear veins and fertile blackish veins (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**c**) surface detail with verrucas (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**d**) ascus with two ellipsoidal spores (photo: Giancarlo Bistocchi); (**e**) SEM spore with broad base spines (photo: Emma Bricchi)

brownish-black, blackish sometimes with dark red or rusty zones, with pyramidal warts, depressed at the apex and 3–6 mm wide at the base with four to six lateral faces with radial walls (Fig. 4a).

Peridium strongly adherent to the gleba, up to 700 µm thick, pseudoparenchymatic, blackish-brown with large polyhedral cells with thickened walls up to 2 µm, especially in the peripheral part, clearer towards the internal, with a pseudoparenchymatic structure with thin-walled cells and plectenchimatic structure in the proximity of the gleba (Fig. 4c). Plectenchimatic gleba, at first white, then greyish, reddish-grey, tending towards a purplish-black or a brownish-black with violet highlights, with numerous remified, thin, sterile veins, at first white which become reddish in the air at maturation (Fig. 4b).

Globose asci, sessile or short stalked, pale ochre colour, numerous, 85–145×78–127 µm with (1)3–4(6) spores (Fig. 4d). Aculeate spores, non-transparent at maturation, intense brownish colour, elongated ellipsoidal, (20–)23–45×(14–)19–28 µm excluding short and rigid spines, sometimes curved in the mature spores, 2.5–3 µm long (Fig. 4d, e and Table 1). Odour intense, musky and very pleasant. Flavour intense, spicy and very pleasant.

Habitat

In calcareous or limestone and clay terrain, with 40 % or less clay, presence of Fe, microelements and scarce N, P and K, a permeable surface, but not necessarily, well-aerated, porous, sandy or rocky, sunny, rarely towards the north, on a gradient, at pH 7.5–8.5, with 1.5–8 % humus, mostly at a depth of 5–15(–30) cm. Grows mostly aggregated from 100 to 1100 m above sea level and requires a well-distributed rainfall throughout the year. Rain in spring and in June, storms in summer, rain in autumn and moderate rain in winter.

Maturation Period

From autumn to winter.

Symbiotic Nature

It form the symbiosis with *Q. pubescens* Willd., *Q. robur* L., *Q. petraea* (Mattuschka) Liebl., *Q. ilex* L., *Q. coccifera* L., *Q. faginea* Lam., *Q. cerris* L., *Q. trojana* Webb, *Q. suber* L., *Fagus sylvatica* L., *Corylus avellana* L., *C. colurna* L., *Salix caprea* L., *S. viminalis* L., *S. alba* L., *Populus nigra* L., *P. tremula* L., *P. alba* L., *P. carolinensis*, *Tilia cordata* Miller, *T. platyphyllos* Scop., *Ostrya carpinifolia* Scop., *Carpinus betulus* L., *Alnus cordata* (Loisel) Desf., *A. glutinosa* (L.) Gaertner, *Betula verrucosa* Ehrh., *Castanea sativa* Miller, *Eucalyptus* sp., *Cistus albidus* L., *C. incanus* L., *C. salvifolius* L., *C. laurifolius* L., *C. crispus* L., *C. monspeliensis* L., *Fumana procumbens* (Dunal) Gren. et Godron, *Pinus halepensis* Miller, *P. nigra* Arnold, *P. sylvestris* L., *P. pinaster* Aiton, *P. pinea* L., *Picea abies* (L.) Karsten, *Abies alba* Miller, *Cedrus atlantica* (Endl.) Carrièrè, *C. deodara* (D. Don) G. Don. and *Arbutus unedo* L. (Granetti et al. 2005; Comandini et al. 2006; Rubini et al. 2011; Belfiori et al. 2012; Taschen et al. 2015).

Geographic Distribution

Southern Europe (between 40° and 48° N) (Piltaver and Ratosa 2006; Jeandroz et al. 2008; Rubini et al. 2011; Parlade et al. 2013; Le Tacon et al. 2013).

4.2 Experimental Methods

4.2.1 Preparation of the Methanolic Extracts

Fresh fruiting bodies of *T. melanosporum*, *T. aestivum*, *T. magnatum* and *T. borchii* (200 g of each truffle species) are extracted with methanol (1:10 ml) at room temperature for 7 days to obtain an extract after evaporation under a vacuum (40 °C). The samples are held at −20 °C until analysed (Angelini et al. 2010a, b, 2015).

4.2.2 Separation and Characterisation of Chemicals

The fruiting bodies of *Tuber* spp. are poor in lipids, ranging from 5 to 9 % by dry weight according to the species and age. Normal extraction protocols don't extract spore contents which is a considerable weight of the fruiting bodies; on the other hand, spores are not digestible and their contents currently are not well studied. The lipids have a pattern of total FAs that consist mainly of linoleic, oleic and palmitic acids even if many other FAs were identified by Tang et al. (2011); 28 kinds of FAs were found within the fruiting bodies of *T. aestivum*, *T. indicum*, *T. himalayense* and *T. borchii*. The total FA fraction is the result of free FAs and esterified FAs being these two fraction distinguishable with particular protocols. The classical total FA determination consists of an extraction of lipid fraction (e.g. chloroform/methanol 2:1 in a Soxhlet apparatus). The residue was redissolved in methanol and treated with KOH methanolic solution. With this extraction protocol, esterified FAs and free FAs were derivatised all together to their methyl ester forms. The use of methyl derivatives is necessary because the quali-quantitative analysis of the FA mixture was due to gas-chromatographic methods that required the volatilisation of the sample (methyl derivatives have a lower boiling point referring to the corresponding non-methylated acid). The quantitative analysis requires the use of an FID detector that has about the same responsive factor even for FAs of relative different C-chain number (calibration curves are necessary at least for groups of similar FAs). The qualitative analysis was performed using an MS detector set at 70 eV. The standard use of such a detector has produced, during the last 60 years, a very big mass spectra database of every sort of chemical compound so it is quite easy to label a GC peak (automatic softwares of research in the mass database were furnished with the GC/MS instruments).

Another approach in the separation and identification of complex matrices was the use of HPLC with an MS detector, the ESI interface being the most useful (with the promising liquid chromatography-electron ionisation-mass spectrometry (LC-EI-MS) which is able to separate a complex matrix and give a

mass spectra of the peak at 70 eV, therefore allowing the use of GC mass spectra database, but lacking in sensitivity). The modern instruments HPLC-ESI with various interfaces for the fragmentation of the compounds (i.e. laser desorption/ionisation) and MS/MS/TOF detectors are highly sensitive but give a mass fingerprint of first and second fragmentation that aren't useful with the GC mass spectra library. Currently, the HPLC mass spectra libraries are continuously refurnished by mass spectra of new compounds, but a correct use of the report of such instruments needs the use of the original standards. Other problems are in the quantitative analysis and are due to the different fragmentation patterns of each compound even concentration dependent that require a calibration curve for each compound.

HPLS/ESI/MS/TOF is widely used because each analysis furnishes a lot of information on the analysed matrix and gives a large survey on the compounds of many kinds. A possibility to analyse a large pool of compounds simultaneously has greatly improved the knowledge of many aspects, and the scientific papers on-omic studies are in exponential rise. The use of less invasive extraction and analysis protocols is well accepted and produces less chemical artefacts (Li et al. 2011; Tang et al. 2011; Han et al. 2012; Bhattacharya 2013; Brenna 2013; Fouillen et al. 2013; Hartler et al. 2013; Lam and Shui 2013; Schone et al. 2013).

A lipidomic approach for the determination of the free fatty acids (FFAs) in some *Tuber* species was carried out by Angelini et al. (2015). Methanolic extracts from fresh fruiting bodies from *T. melanosporum* Vittad., *T. aestivum* Vittad., *T. magnatum* Pico and *T. borchii* Vittad. were analysed on an LC system interfaced with a Q-TOF/MS/MS detector equipped with an ESI source, operating in negative ion mode. The identification of FFAs was based on commercially available standards. The components were identified by comparing the MS/MS spectra and the retention times (RT) of the chromatographic peaks with those of authentic compounds run under the same conditions. The relative amounts of FFAs were obtained calculating the response factor for the linoleic acid. Among the more than 100 separated compounds, only the FFAs were considered and the mainly FAs were in accordance with the GC results (Angelini et al. 2015).

4.2.3 Bioassays

A suitable bioassay is a necessity in the investigation of allelopathy and in finding out the role of truffle methanolic extract and fatty acid compounds. According to Selim et al. (2012), the most frequently used bioassay tests are the influence on seed germination seeing as its results are fairly direct and reputable. Though many techniques are applied, all share some common ground; seeds are placed on a substrate saturated with the test solution. Germination is defined as the emergence of the radicle, often 2 mm beyond the seed coat, and is scored over a period of time (Angelini et al. 2010b). Properly conducted bioassays are invaluable. They are straightforward and require a little test solution (Khaliq et al. 2012). When the quantity of test solution is problematic, agar cultures may be utilised, placing the

pre-germinated seed on the surface of the agar containing allelochemicals. The elongation of the hypocotyl or coleoptile could be considered in conjunction with germination percentage. The measure of the elongation itself or dry mass can be used to mark the growth (Mardani et al. 2014). It should be taken into consideration that growth bioassays are often more sensitive than germination bioassays.

4.3 Truffle Allelopathy

4.3.1 Allelopathic Activities of *Tuber* spp. Methanolic Extract

Metabolites of many fungi may have adverse or stimulatory effects on plants (Heisey et al. 1985; Rice 1995) such as suppression of seed germination, malformation and retardation of seedling growth (Lynch and Clark 1984; Eaton and Ayres 2002). To evaluate possible allelopathic effects of the *Tuber* spp. methanolic extracts, extract concentrations from 0.03 to 0.3 g/ml were used to test the in vitro effects on germination, root length and plant height of *A. thaliana*, *L. corniculatus*, *M. ciliata* and *S. vulgaris* expressed as inhibition ratio {IR = [1 − (obtained value/control value)] × 100} (Angelini et al. 2015).

The *Tuber* spp. methanolic extracts significantly affected the germination of seeds as well as the development of seedlings (Fig. 5a). The extracts were able to inhibit root length as well as seedling height in the tested plant species. The magnitude of the extract's effect was dependent on the concentration. The tested plants demonstrated varying responses to each methanolic extract (Fig. 5b, c). Differences in root length and plant height (IR values) in the morphological indices of the tested subjects were observed among *Tuber* spp. extracts. Phytotoxic activity in the *T. melanosporum* and *T. aestivum* extracts was nearly consistently greater than that in *T. magnatum* and *T. borchii* (Fig. 5b, c) (Angelini et al. 2015). The extracts also induced leaching in the cotyledon leaves and tissue darkening in the roots. This preliminary in vitro study has demonstrated the allelopathic potency of the methanolic extract of *Tuber* spp. (Angelini et al. 2010a, b). Active methanolic extract compounds of *Tuber* spp. are particularly interesting, because they can act as allelochemicals to inhibit some plant species or be a signal to specific microbes.

4.3.2 *Tuber* spp. Allelochemicals

The FFA compositions in the extracts with methanol from *T. melanosporum*, *T. aestivum*, *T. magnatum* and *T. borchii* were shown in Table 2 (Angelini et al. 2015). There were a total of 12 FFAs identified from the *Tuber* spp. extract, but the extracts could be differentiated from each other on the basis of relative amounts of FFAs (Table 2). The main saturated fatty acids (SFA) and polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFA) were palmitic acid (ca. 38.53–77.38 μg/g) and linoleic acid (63.88–185.89 μg/g), respectively; they were more abundant in *T. aestivum* than in the other

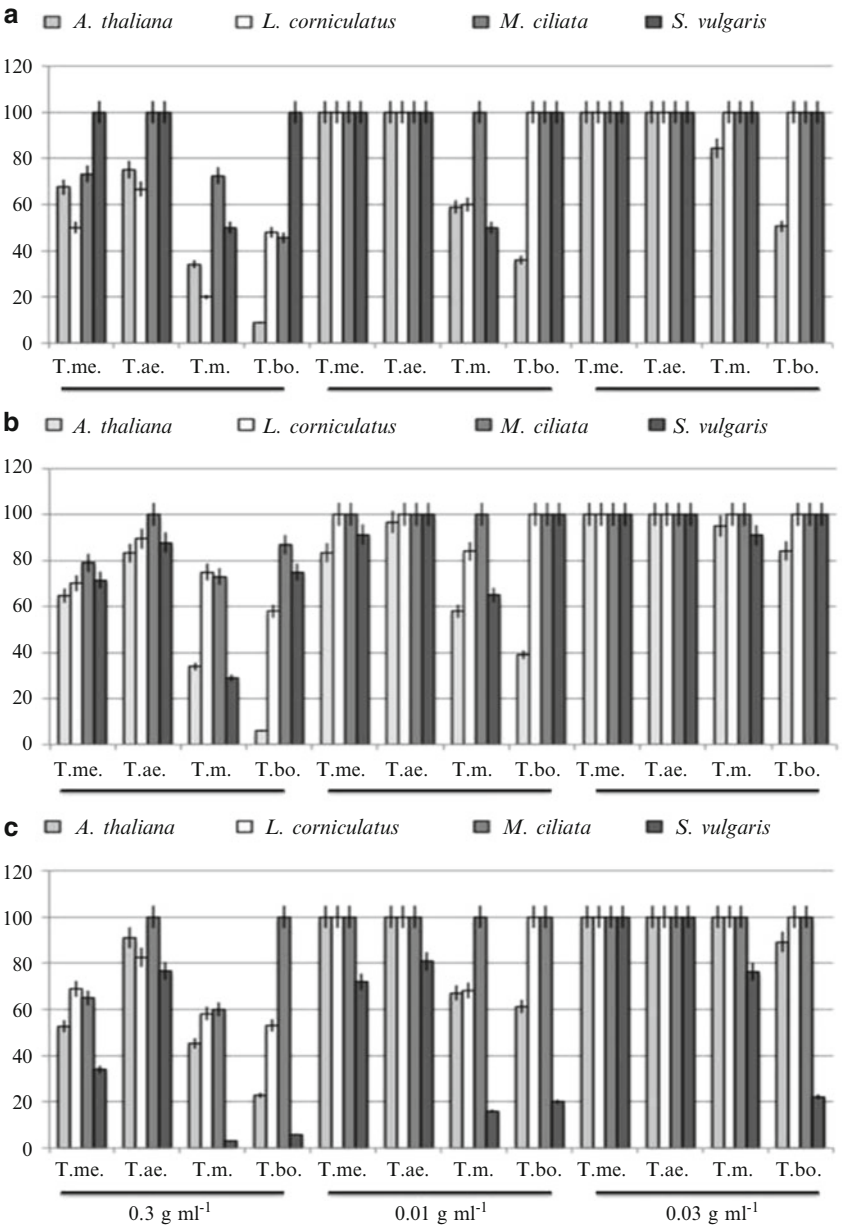


Fig. 5 IR (%) of *Tuber* spp. methanolic extracts on seed germination (**a**), root length (**b**) and hypocotyl length (**c**), 12 days after sowing. The values are the means of three repetitions. Error bars represent the 95 % confidence interval of a mean

Table 2 Free fatty acids (FFAs) composition of *Tuber* spp. methanolic extracts (Angelini et al. 2015)

FFAs		*Tuber* spp.			
Systematic name (shorthand notation)	Trivial name	*T. melanosporum*	*T. aestivum*	*T. magnatum*	*T. borchii*
Decanoic (C10:0)	Capric	0.11 ± 0.02^{a}	0.69 ± 0.21^{b}	0.43 ± 0.16^{ab}	0.32 ± 0.11^{ab}
Tetradecanoic (C14:0)	Myristic acid	5.91 ± 1.90^{ab}	6.71 ± 1.37^{b}	4.19 ± 1.37^{ab}	2.49 ± 1.00^{a}
Pentadecanoic (C15:0)	Pentadecylic	18.03 ± 4.26^{b}	18.6 ± 3.36^{b}	10.04 ± 1.85^{a}	6.08 ± 1.28^{a}
Hexadecanoic (C16:0)	Palmitic acid	63.25 ± 7.46^{ab}	77.38 ± 20.01^{b}	40.44 ± 8.34^{a}	38.53 ± 9.00^{a}
cis-10-heptadecenoic (C17:1)	–	1.05 ± 0.45^{ab}	1.40 ± 0.27^{b}	0.98 ± 0.41^{ab}	0.20 ± 0.14^{a}
Heptadecanoic (C17:0)	Margaric	0.11 ± 0.04^{ab}	0.17 ± 0.05^{b}	0.07 ± 0.01^{a}	0.09 ± 0.02^{ab}
cis-9,12-octadecadienoic (C18:2n6)	Linoleic acid	136.98 ± 34.97^{bc}	185.89 ± 32.4^{c}	90 ± 22.97^{ab}	63.88 ± 15.54^{a}
cis-9-octadecenoic (C18:1n9)	Oleic acid	62.42 ± 15.2^{b}	62.93 ± 17.53^{b}	26.88 ± 5.43^{a}	24.88 ± 6.06^{a}
cis-11-14 eicosadienoic (C20:0)	Dihomo-gamma-linoleic	14.00 ± 3.23^{ab}	18.41 ± 5.79^{b}	6.75 ± 2.46^{a}	6.05 ± 1.90^{a}
cis-11-eicosenoic (C20:2)	Gadoleic	12.45 ± 3.5^{ab}	20.52 ± 5.54^{b}	10.31 ± 2.37^{a}	9.96 ± 1.06^{a}
Eicosanoic (C20:0)	Arachidic	28.88 ± 9.69^{ab}	40.9 ± 6.51^{b}	21.31 ± 3.9^{a}	18.43 ± 4.95^{a}
Heneicosanoic (C21:0)	Heneicosylic	21.24 ± 4.38^{bc}	31.67 ± 5.58^{c}	17.27 ± 4.5^{ab}	8.6 ± 1.58^{a}
Yield of the compounds		364.43 ± 1.73^{c}	465.27 ± 2.88^{d}	228.67 ± 5.77^{b}	179.51 ± 3.54^{a}

Means of three analyses ± standard error; each value is expressed as mg/g of free fatty acids in dry matter. Values in the same row bearing different letters were significantly different ($p < 0.05$)

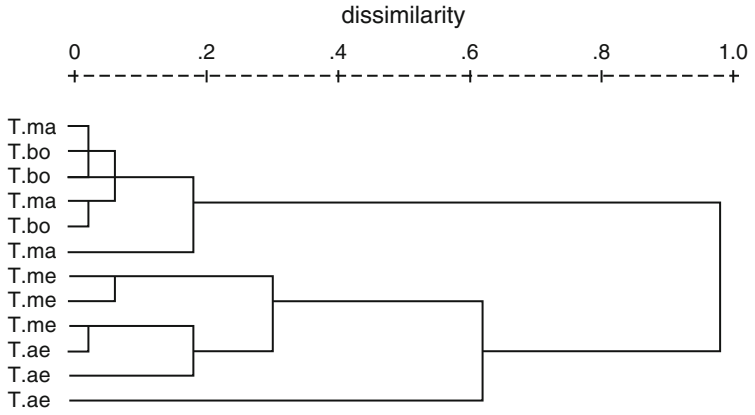


Fig. 6 Dendrogram of *Tuber* spp. methanolic extract with fatty acids contents (Angelini et al. 2015). T.me: *Tuber melanosporum*, T. ae: *T. aestivum*, T.ma: *T. magnatum*, T.bo: *T. borchii*

species (Table 2). In general, unsaturated FFA levels were higher than saturated. This is in agreement with previous published data that showed high proportions of unsaturated FFAs, especially linoleic acid (Ribeiro et al. 2009; Tang et al. 2011). It is known that linoleic acid is the precursor of 1-octen-3-ol, known as the alcohol of fungi, which is the principal aromatic compound in most fungi, and might contribute to mushroom flavour (Ullrich and Grosch 1987; Cullere et al. 2010). In terms of total production, *T. melanosporum* and *T. aestivum* synthesised significantly higher amounts of all identified FFAs than *T. magnatum* and *T. borchii* (Table 2).

The HCA (hierarchical cluster analysis) of the *Tuber* spp. methanolic extract and FFA variables was used to examine the distance among the samples of truffle extracts in two-dimensional plot (dendrogram) and cluster samples with similarity (Fig. 6). The results of this computation showed that the four investigated truffle species were separated into two groups, the group I containing the samples from *T. borchii* and *T. magnatum* extracts, while the group II is constituted of *T. melanosporum* and *T. aestivum* extracts. These results show that the FFA compositions of the group I samples were similar, whereas they were significantly different from those of the group II samples. These marked dissimilarities were principally the result of the distinctions among species and various complex factors such as habitat and relative harvest times (Sancholle et al. 1988; Tang et al. 2011).

4.3.3 Growth Inhibitory Effects (IR) of Isolated Allelochemicals

The toxic effects of the examined FFA (linoleic, oleic and palmitic acids) on seed germination and root and hypocotyl growth of the tested plants varied (Fig. 7a–c). Among the three FFAs studied, higher toxicity was detected for linoleic in all tested plants, followed by oleic acid and finally palmitic (Fig. 7b, c). *M. ciliata* was observed to be the most sensitive plant. Also oleic acid acted as a growth inhibitor

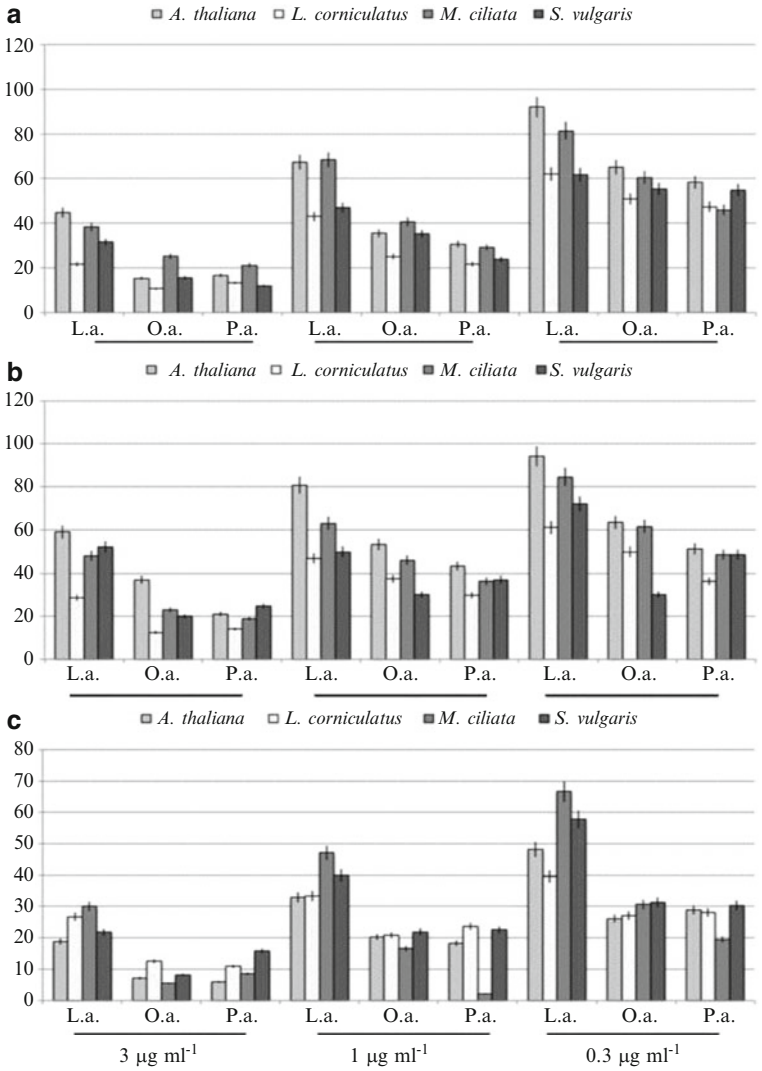


Fig. 7 IR (%) of allelochemicals on seed germination (**a**), root length (**b**) and hypocotyl length (**c**), 12 days after sowing. The values are the means of three repetitions. Error bars represent the 95 % confidence interval of a mean

on all of the tested plants (Fig. 7), with diverse respective IR values, according to the section of and species tested. *A. thaliana* was revealed as the most sensitive; on the other hand, *S. vulgaris* was the most resistant (Fig. 7). However, the effect of growth inhibition of oleic acid on the tested plants was overall less apparent than the other tested compounds. Palmitic acid demonstrated itself as a greater influence in the roots than in the hypocotyl with *A. thaliana* being the most sensitive to stearic acid and *L. corniculatus* being the most resistant. Angelini et al. (2015) reported

that the allelochemicals such as linoleic, oleic and palmitic acids may offer a plausible explanation for the aggressive characteristics of the *T. melanosporum* and *T. aestivum* along with the strong cytotoxic effects observed in their brûlé (Streiblova et al. 2012). Phytotoxic properties found within fatty acids have become part of the general knowledge in their respective fields of study (Duke et al. 2013). It is believed that the mode of action in long-chain fatty acids is observable in the disruption of the cell wall building function as these can be utilised by the proteins that construct the cell walls as a sort of building block (Kim and Kim 2000).

A number of studies have also indicated that the toxic activity of polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) may be due to oxidation products derived through photo-oxidation or metabolic processes (Duke et al. 2013). Linoleic, oleic and palmitic acids are well-known allelochemicals (Macias et al. 2006; Noguchi 2008; Quintana et al. 2009). Regardlessly, the study of Angelini et al. (2015) is the first report in which their effects on the weeds of truffle plants (*L. corniculatus*, *M. ciliate* and *S. vulgaris*) were exposed. It was found that unsaturated FFAs such as linoleic acid were the most inhibitory and that allelopathic efficacy increased with an increase in double bonds (Kakisawa et al. 1988).

FFAs are abundant in natural sources, relatively nontoxic and 'generally regarded as safe' (Khanh et al. 2007). It is also important to note that generally, the possible induced evolution of FFA-resistant phenotypes would prove to be a minor problem compared to the evolution of synthetic herbicide-resistant phenotypes (Desbois and Smith 2010; Busi et al. 2013). Disregarding the glaring potential of the phytotoxic and allelopathic properties of FFAs, they are still vastly unexploited. Possibly due to their structurally unstable nature, particularly found in the long-chain polyunsaturated FFAs, which are easily denaturalised when heat or pressure is applied (Storch and McDermott 2009). Otherwise, the usefulness of FFAs as allelochemicals could be seen as not patentable owing to their ubiquity. These complications are minor and surmountable; therefore, studies regarding the allelopathic applications of FFAs should proceed in the future (Desbois and Smith 2010).

4.3.4 Species Specificity of Truffle Allelopathic Activity

Investigations of truffle methanolic extracts suggest that some active compounds (FFAs) that are selective against specific weed species might also be responsible for the observed selective allelopathic activity of truffle methanolic extracts (Angelini et al. 2010a, b, 2015). These species specific responses of weed species to truffle allelochemicals has also been witnessed in other allelopathic fungal and plant species (Berestetskiy 2008). The test species' seedlings of these experiments were germinated and grown in an isolated Petri dish free from any form of intra-species resource competition as early seedlings extract their nutrients directly from the seed itself without the necessity of sunlight at this stage (Ashrafi et al. 2008). It is then deducible that the revealed growth inhibition of the tested species was likely due to an allelopathic reaction and not competitive

interference. Additionally, methanolic extracts and compounds proved to more greatly inhibit root growth than hypocotyl growth in the test subjects. Mominul Islam and Kato-Noguchi (2013) reported that root growth is more sensitive to the extracts of allelopathic plants than the hypocotyl/coleoptile growth as the root directly absorbs the undiluted allelochemicals from the soil. Furthermore, there is more intensive contact between roots and fungal or plant extracts (Salam and Kato-Noguchi 2010). These results suggest a possibility to develop biological herbicides for weed management from these compounds.

4.3.5 Comparative Analysis of Allelopathic Activities of Isolated FFAs and Methanolic Extracts

The comparative analysis between the identified FFAs and the methanolic extracts (linoleic, oleic and palmitic acids) from *Tuber* spp. has shown a vital role in the allelopathic activity. The greater phytotoxicity was found in the black truffles (*T. melanosporum* and *T. aestivum*) extracts compared to white truffles (*T. magnatum* and *T. borchii*). It may be justified with the release of huge relative quantities of the principle FFAs in the black truffles. On the contrary, multiple potential allelopathic compounds are likely to be responsible for the allelopathy of methanolic extracts of *Tuber* spp. It could also be hypothesised that synergistic reactions between some or all of the extract's present compounds may create its allelopathic potential (Angelini et al. 2015).

5 Conclusions and Future Prospects

Recently used innovative technologies are obliging in quantification and identification of minute amount of allelochemicals isolated from the various *Tuber* spp. It may grant the truffle processing companies to generate the revenue from the development of bio-herbicides based on truffle-extracted allelochemicals known as waste truffle. The isolation of natural, economically sustainable and ecologically sound herbicide from *Tuber* spp., through modern tool and techniques, has open the horizon of the future for equally beneficial, organic and/or integrated plant cultivations, but to understand the ability of allelopathic mechanisms of FFAs, a more in-depth research regarding the productivity, function and stability of FFAs is desired. The simulation of the innumerable field conditions is affected by a lot of biological interactions, which differ completely from laboratory experiments. The experimental setting under natural condition to explore the processes involved in the retention, transformation and transferring of chemicals in the environment could be a promising prospective in the future. It may explore our understanding towards the *Tuber* spp., their influence with surrounding environments and the health of the soil flora and fauna. These factors may also answer why some truffle species apparently do not create a brûlé' characteristic of giving black truffles despite the constant release and accumulation of phytotoxins in the soil. Moreover, it may also reconnoiter the indulgences of the chemical reactions with soil

microorganisms to the allelochemicals found in *Tuber* spp. and could be possible to set off a growing chain of implicated and applicable potentiality of *Tuber* ecosystems.

References

An M (2005) Mathematical modelling of dose-response relationship (hormesis) in allelopathy and its application. Nonlinearity Biol Toxicol Med 3:153–172

Angelini P, Granetti B (2001) Individuation and micropropagation of some clones of *Populus alba* L. envisaging their use in truffle cultivation. In: Proceedings of the Fifth International Congress on the Science and cultivation of truffles, French Federation of Trufficulteurs. pp 289–292

Angelini P, Costamagna L, Ciani M (1998) Bacterial ecology of ascocarps of the *Tuber* sp.pl.: characterization of functional groups and their capability to metabolize sulfite and organic sulfur compounds. Ann Microbiol 48:59–65

Angelini P, Granetti B, Pagiotti R (2008) Effect of antimicrobial activity of *Melaleuca alternifolia* essential oil on antagonistic potential of *Pleurotus* species against *Trichoderma harzianum* in dual culture. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:197–202

Angelini P, Pagiotti R, Venanzoni R, Granetti B (2009) Antifungal and allelopathic effects of Asafoetida against *Trichoderma harzianum* and *Pleurotus* spp. Allelopathy J 23:357–368

Angelini P, Venanzoni R, Pagiotti R, Tirillini B, Granetti B, Donnini D (2010) Attività allelopatica, antibatterica ed antiossidante di estratti metanolici di *Tuber magnatum* e *T. melanosporum*. In: Proceeding of the 3rd International Congress on Truffle, Umbria Region, Communities of the Martani, Serano and Subasio Mountains, Spoleto, Italy, 25–28 Nov 2008. Federici typography, Terni, Italy, pp 308–314

Angelini P, Venanzoni R, Pagiotti R, Tirillini B, Granetti B, Donnini D (2010b) Biological activities of methanolic extract from *Tuber aestivum*, *T. borchii*, and *T. brumale* f. *moschatum*. Osterr Z Pilzk 19:281–290

Angelini P, De Angelis MC, Guerzoni RP, Gigante D, Rubini A, Properzi P, Venanzoni R (2014a) Wood identification of pile dwellings from the Bronze Age San Savino site (Lake Trasimeno, central Italy). Plant Biosyst 148:713–722

Angelini P, Bricchi E, Gigante D, Poponessi S, Spina A, Venanzoni R (2014b) Pollen morphology of some *Amaranthaceae* common in Italy. Flora Medit 24:247–272

Angelini P, Compagno R, Arcangeli A, Bistocchi G, Gargano ML, Venanzoni R, Venturella G (2016) Macrofungal diversity and ecology in two Mediterranean forest types. Plant Biosyst. doi:10.1080/11263504.2014.987844

Angelini P, Tirillini B, Properzi A, Rol C, Venanzoni R (2015) Identification and bioactivity of the growth inhibitors in *Tuber* spp. methanolic extracts. Plant Biosyst 149:1000–1009. doi:10.1080/11263504.2014.983575

Ashrafi ZY, Rahnavard A, Sadeghi S, Alizade HM, Mashhadi HR (2008) Study of the allelopathic potential of extracts of *Azadirachta indica* (Neem). Online J Biol Sci 8:57–61

Azul AM, Nunes J, Ferreira I, Coelho AS, Veríssimo P, Trovão J, Campos A, Castro P, Freitas H (2014) Valuing native ectomycorrhizal fungi as a Mediterranean forestry component for sustainable and innovative solutions. Botany 92:161–171

Belfiori B, Riccioni C, Tempesta S, Pasqualetti M, Paolocci F, Rubini A (2012) Comparison of ectomycorrhizal communities in natural and cultivated *Tuber melanosporum* truffle grounds. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 81:547–561

Berestetskiy AO (2008) A review of fungal phytotoxins: from basic studies to practical use. Appl Biochem Microbiol 44:453–465

Bertholdsson NO (2012) Allelopathy—a tool to improve the weed competitive ability of wheat with herbicide-resistant black-grass (*Alopecurus* myosuroides Huds.). Agron J 2:284–294

Bhadoria PBS (2011) Allelopathy: a natural way towards weed management. Am J Exp Agric 1:7–20
Bhattacharya SK (2013) Recent advances in shotgun lipidomics and their implication for vision research and ophthalmology. Curr Eye Res 38:417–427
Bonito G, Smith ME, Brenneman T, Rytas Vilgalys R (2012) Assessing ectomycorrhizal fungal spore banks of truffle producing soils with pecan seedling trap-plants. Plant Soil 356:357–366
Bonnet JL, Bonnemoy F, Dusser M, Bohatier J (2007) Assessment of the potential toxicity of herbicides and their degradation products to non target cells using two microorganisms, the bacteria *Vibrio fischeri* and the ciliate *Tetrahymena pyriformis*. Environ Toxicol 22:78–91
Brenna JT (2013) Fatty acid analysis by high resolution gas chromatography and mass spectrometry for clinical and experimental applications. Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care 16:548–554
Büntgen U, Egli S, Camarero JM, Fischer EM, Stobbe U, Kauserud H, Tegel W, Sproll L, Stenseth NC (2012) Drought-induced decline in Mediterranean truffle harvest. Nat Clim Change 2:827–829
Busi R, Vila-Aiub MM, Beckie HJ, Gaines TA, Goggin DE, Kaundun SS, Lacoste M, Neve P, Nissen SJ, Norsworthy JK, Renton M, Shaner DL, Tranel PJ, Wright T, Yu Q, Powles SB (2013) Herbicide-resistant weeds: from research and knowledge to future needs. Evol Appl 6:1218–1221
Busse MD, Fiddler GO, Ratcliff AW (2004) Ectomycorrhizal formation in herbicide-treated soils of differing clay and organic matter content. Water Air Soil Pollut 152:23–34
Cahill JF (1999) Fertilization effects on interactions between above-and belowground competition in an old field. Ecology 80:466–480
Chandra S, Chatterjee P, Dey P, Bhattacharya S (2012) Allelopathic effect of *Ashwagandha* against the germination and radicle growth of *Cicer arietinum* and *Triticum aestivum*. Pharma Res 4:166–169
Chevalier G (1979) L'Espece *Tuber aestivum* Vitt.: II—Ecologie. The International Society for Mushroom. Science 10:977–993
Chevalier G (2010) La truffe d'Europe (*Tuber aestivum*): limites geographiques, ecologie et culture. Aust J Mycol 19:249–259
Chou CH (1999) Roles of allelopathy in plant biodiversity and sustainable agriculture. Crit Rev Plant Sci 18:609–636
Christopolous V, Psoma P, Diamandis S (2013) Site characteristics of *Tuber magnatum* in Greece. Acta Mycol 48:27–32
Comandini O, Contu M, Rinaldi AC (2006) An overview of *Cistus* ectomycorrhizal fungi. Mycorrhiza 16:381–395
Cruz-Ortega R, Lara-Núñez A, Anaya AL (2007) Allelochemical stress can trigger oxidative damage in receptor plants: mode of action of phytotoxicity. Plant Signal Behav 2:269–270
Cullere L, Ferreira V, Chevret B, Venturini ME, Sánchez-Gimeno AC, Blanco D (2010) Characterisation of aroma active compounds in black truffles (*Tuber melanosporum*) and summer truffles (*Tuber aestivum*) by gas chromatography-olfactometry. Food Chem 122:300–306
Desbois AD, Smith VJ (2010) Antibacterial free fatty acids: activities, mechanisms of action and biotechnological potential. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 85:1629–1642
Duke SO, Scheffler BE, Dayan FE (2001) Allelochemicals as herbicides. In: Bonjoch NP, Reigosa MJ (eds). 1st European OECD Allelopathy Symposium: Physiological aspects of allelopathy, Vigo, Spain. Printed by Gamesal, SA. pp 47–59
Duke SO, Bajsa J, Pan Z (2013) Omics methods for probing the mode of action of natural and synthetic phytotoxins. J Chem Ecol 39:333–347
Eaton G, Ayres M (2002) Plasticity and constraint in growth and protein mineralization of ectomycorrhizal fungi under simulated nitrogen deposition. Mycologia 94:921–932
Figliuolo G, Trupo G, Mang S (2013) A realized *Tuber magnatum* niche in the upper Sinni area (South Italy). Open J Genet 3:102–110
Fouillen L, Colsch B, Lessire R (2013) The lipid world concept of plant lipidomics. Adv Bot Res 67:331–376
Garcia-Montero LG, Moreno D, Monleon VJ, Arredondo-Ruiz F (2014) Natural production of *Tuber aestivum* in central Spain: *Pinus* spp. versus *Quercus* spp. brûles. For Syst 23:394–399
Gerke J, Braus GH (2014) Manipulation of fungal development as source of novel secondary metabolites for biotechnology. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 98:8443–8455

Gezer K, Kaygusuz O, Çelik A, Işiloğlu M (2014) Ecological characteristics of truffles growing in Denizli Province, Turkey. J Food Agric Environ 12:1105–1109
Gogan AC, Nagy Z, Dégi Z, Bagi I, Dimény J (2012) Ecological characteristics of a Hungarian summer truffle (*Tuber aestivum* Vittad.) producing area. Acta Mycol 47:133–138
Granetti B, De Angelis A, Materozzi G (2005) Umbria terra di tartufi. Assessorato Regionale Agricoltura, Foreste, Caccia e Pesca, Umbra, p 303
Gryndler M, Hršelová H, Soukupová L, Streiblová E, Valda S, Borovička J, Gryndlerová H, Gažo J, Miko M (2011) Detection of summer truffle (*Tuber aestivum* Vittad.) in ectomycorrhizae and in soil using specific primers. FEMS Microbiol Lett 318:84–91
Hall IR, Brown GT, Zambonelli A (2007) Taming the truffle, the history, lore and science of the ultimate mushroom. Timber Press, Portland
Han X, Yang K, Gross RW (2012) Multi-dimensional mass spectrometry-based shotgun lipidomics and novel strategies for lipidomic analyses. Mass Spectrom Rev 31:134–178
Hartler J, Tharakan R, Köfeler HC, Graham DR, Thallinger GG (2013) Bioinformatics tools and challenges in structural analysis of lipidomics MS/MS data. Brief Bioinform 14:375–390
Heisey RM, Deprank J, Putnam AR (1985) A survey of soil microorganisms for herbicidal activity. In: Thompson AC (ed) The chemistry of allelopathy. American Chemical Society, Washington, DC
Hilszczanska D, Rosa-Gruszecka A, Szmidla H (2014) Characteristic of *Tuber* spp. localities in natural stands with emphasis on plant species composition. Acta Mycol 49:267–277
Iotti M, Lancellotti E, Hall I, Zambonelli A (2010) The ectomycorrhizal community in natural *Tuber borchii* grounds. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 72:250–260
Iotti M, Leonardi M, Oddis M, Salerni E, Baraldi E, Zambonelli A (2012) Development and validation of a real-time PCR assay for detection and quantification of *Tuber magnatum* in soil. BMC Microbiol 12:1471–2180
Iotti M, Leonardi M, Lancellotti E, Salerni E, Oddis M, Leonardi P, Perini C, Pacioni G, Zambonelli A (2014) Spatio-temporal dynamic of *Tuber magnatum* mycelium in natural truffle grounds. PLoS One 9:e115921
Jeandroz S, Murat C, Wang Y, Bonfante P, Le Tacon F (2008) Molecular phylogeny and historical biogeography of the genus *Tuber*, the 'true truffles'. J Biogeogr 35:815–829
Kakisawa H, Asari F, Kusumi T, Toma T, Sakurai T, Oohusa T, Hara Y, Chihara M (1988) An allelopathic fatty-acid from the brown alga *Cladosiphon okamuranus*. Phytochemistry 27:731–735
Keller NP, Turner G (2012) Fungal secondary metabolism: methods and protocols, methods in molecular biology, vol 944. Springer, New York
Khaliq A, Matloob A, Aslam F, Mushtaq MN, Khan MB (2012) Toxic action of aqueous wheat straw extract on horse e purslane. Planta Daninha 30:269–278
Khanh TD, Elzaawely AA, Chung IM, Ahn JK, Tawata S, Xuan TD (2007) Role of allelochemical for weed management in rice. Allelopathy J 19:85–96
Kim KW, Kim KU (2000) Searching for rice allelochemicals. In: Kim KU, Shin DH (eds), Proceedings of the international workshop on rice allelopathy, Tageu, Korea, pp 73–78
Lam SM, Shui G (2013) Lipidomics as a principal pool for advancing biomedical research. J Genet Genomics 40:375–390
Lawrynowicz M, Krzyszczyk T, Faldziński M (2008) Occurrence of black truffles in Poland. Acta Mycol 43:143–151
Le Tacon F, Zeller B, Plain C, Hossann C, Bréchet C, Robin C (2013) Carbon transfer from the host to *Tuber melanosporum* mycorrhizas and ascocarps followed using a ^{13}C pulse-labeling technique. PLoS One 8:e64626
Li ZH, Wang Q, Xiao R, Pan CD, Jiang DA (2010) Phenolics and plant allelopathy. Molecules 15:8933–8952
Li M, Zhou Z, Nie H, Bai Y, Liu H (2011) Recent advances of chromatography and mass spectrometry in lipidomics. Anal Bioanal Chem 399:243–249
Lynch JM, Clark SJ (1984) Effects of microbial colonization of barley (*Hordeum vulgare* L.) roots on seedling growth. J Appl Bacteriol 56:47–52
Macias FA, Chinchilla N, Varela RM, Molinillo JMG (2006) Bioactive steroids from *Oryza sativa* L. Steroids 71:603–608

Mamoun M, Olivier JM (1997) Mycorrhizal inoculation of cloned hazels by *Tuber melanosporum*: effect of soil disinfestation and co-culture with *Festuca ovina*. Plant Soil 188:221–226
Mardani R, Yousefi AR, Fotovat R, Oveisi M (2014) New bioassay method to find the allelopathic potential of wheat cultivars on rye (*Secale cereale* L.) seedlings. Allelopathy J 33:53–62
Martin JF, García-Estrada C, Zeilinger S (2014) Biosynthesis and molecular genetics of fungal secondary metabolites. Springer, New York
Milenkovic M, Marjanović Ž, Grebenc T, Glišić A (2009) Ecological specifity and molecular diversity of truffles (genus *Tuber*) originating from mid-west of the Balkan Peninsula. Sidowia 62:67–87
Molisch H (1937) The influence of one plant on another: allelopathy. Scientific Publishers, India
Mominul Islam AKM, Kato-Noguchi H (2013) Plant growth inhibitory activity of medicinal plant *Hyptis suaveolens*: could allelopathy be a cause. Emir J Food Agric 25:692–701
Muller CH (1966) The role of chemical inhibition (allelopathy) in vegetational composition. Bull Torrey Bot Club 93:332–351
Murat C, Rubini A, Riccioni C, De la Varga H, Akroume E, Belfiori B, Guaragno M, Le Tacon F, Robin C, Halkett F, Martin F, Paolocci F (2013) Fine-scale spatial genetic structure of the black truffle (*Tuber melanosporum*) investigated with neutral microsatellites and functional mating type genes. New Phytol 199:176–187
Noguchi HK (2008) Allelochemicals released from rice plants. Jpn J Plant Sci 2:18–25
Olivera A, Fischer CR, Bonet JA, Martìnez de Aragòn J, Oliach D, Colinas C (2011) Weed management and irrigation are key treatment in emerging black truffle (*Tuber melanosporum*) cultivation. New For 42:227–239
Olivera A, Bonet JA, Palacio L, Liu B, Colinas C (2014) Weed control modified *Tuber melanosporum* mycelial expansion in young oak plantations. Ann For Sci 71:495–504
Olivier JPM, Savignac JC, Sourzat P (2012) Truffe et trufficulture. Fanlac, Périgueux, France, p 398
Otsing E, Tedersoo L (2015) Temporal dynamics of ectomycorrhizal fungi and persistence of *Tuber melanosporum* in inoculated *Quercus robur* seedlings in North Europe. Mycorrhiza 25:61–66
Pagiotti R, Angelini P, Rubini A, Tirillini B, Granetti B, Venanzoni R (2011) Identification and characterisation of human pathogenic filamentous fungi and susceptibility to *Thymus schimperi* essential oil. Mycoses 54:e364–e376
Parlade J, De la Varga H, De Miguel AM, Sáez R, Pera J (2013) Quantification of extraradical mycelium of *Tuber melanosporum* in soils from truffle orchards in northern Spain. Mycorrhiza 23:99–106
Payen T, Murat C, Bonito G (2014) Truffle phylogenomics: new insights into truffle evolution and truffle life cycle. In: Martin F (ed) Advances in botanical research, vol 70. Elsevier Academic Press, London, pp 211–234
Perotto S, Angelini P, Bianciotto V, Bonfante P, Girlanda M, Kull T, Mello A, Pecoraro L, Perini C, Persiani A, Saitta A, Sarrocco S, Vannacci G, Venanzoni R, Venturella G, Selosse MA (2013) Interactions of fungi with other organisms. Plant Biosyst 147:208–218
Picco AM, Angelini P, Ciccarone C, Franceschini A, Ragazzi A, Rodolfi M, Varese GC, Zotti M (2011) Biodiversity of emerging pathogenic and invasive fungi in plants, animals and humans in Italy. Plant Biosyst 145:988–996
Piltaver A, Ratosa I (2006) A contribution to better knowledge of hypogeous fungi in Slovenia. J For 64:303–312
Quintana N, Kassis EG, Stermitz FR, Vivanco JM (2009) Phytotoxic compounds from roots of *Centaurea diffusa* Lam. Plant Signal Behav 4:9–14
Reicosky DC, Allmaras RR, Shrestha A (2003) Advances in tillage research in North American cropping systems. In: Shrestha A (ed) Cropping systems: trends and advances. Part I. Haworth, New York, pp 75–125
Reigosa MJ, Pedrol N, González L (2006) Allelopathy: a physiological process with ecological implications. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 451–463
Reyna S, Garcia-Barreda S (2014) Black truffle cultivation: a global reality. For Syst 23:317–328
Ribeiro B, de Pinho PG, Andrade PB, Baptista P, Valentão P (2009) Fatty acid composition of wild edible mushrooms species: a comparative study. Microchem J 93:29–35

Ricard JM, Bergounoux F, Callot G, Chevalier G, Olivier JM, Pargney JC, Sourzat P (2003) La Truffe. Guide technique de trufficulture. Centre Technique Interprofessionnel Fruits Légumes, Paris
Rice EL (1984) Allelopathy, 2nd edn. Academic, London, UK, p 422
Rice EL (1995) Biological control of weeds and plant diseases: advances in applied allelopathy. University of Oklahoma Press, Oklahoma
Rubini A, Paolocci F, Riccioni C, Vendramin GG, Arcioni S (2005) Genetic and phylogeographic structures of the symbiotic fungus *Tuber magnatum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:6584–6589
Rubini A, Belfiori B, Riccioni C, Arcioni S, Martin F, Paolocci F (2011) *Tuber melanosporum*: mating type distribution in a natural plantation and dynamics of strains of different mating types on the roots of nursery-inoculated host plants. New Phytol 189:723–735
Salam MA, Kato-Noguchi H (2010) Allelopathic potential of methanol extract of Bangladesh rice seedlings. Asian J Crop Sci 2:70–77
Salerni E, Gardin L, Baglioni F, Perini C (2013) Effects of wild boar grazing on the yield of summer truffle (Tuscany, Italy). Acta Mycol 48:73–80
Sancholle M, Weete JD, Kulifaj M, Montant C (1988) Changes in lipid composition during ascocarp development of the truffle *Tuber melanosporum*. Mycologia 80:900–903
Schone C, Höfler H, Walch A (2013) MALDI imaging mass spectrometry in cancer research: combining proteomic profiling and histological evaluation. Clin Biochem 46:539–545
Selim SM, Zayed MS, Atta HM (2012) Evaluation of phytotoxicity of compost during composting process. J Nat Sci 10:69–77
Splivallo R (2008) Biological significance of truffle secondary metabolites. In: Karlowsky P (ed) Secondary metabolites in soil ecology Part III. Springer, Berlin, pp 141–165
Splivallo R, Bossi S, Maffei M, Bonfante P (2007a) Discrimination of truffle fruiting body versus mycelial aromas by stir bar sorptive extraction. Phytochemistry 68:2584–2598
Splivallo R, Novero M, Bertea C, Bossi S, Bonfante P (2007b) Truffle volatiles inhibit growth and induce an oxidative burst in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. New Phytol 175:417–424
Splivallo R, Ottonello S, Mello A, Karlovsky P (2011) Truffle volatiles: from chemical ecology to aroma biosynthesis. New Phytol 189:688–699
Stobbe U, Stobbe A, Sproll L, Tegel W, Peter M, Büntgen U, Egli S (2013) New evidence for the symbiosis between *Tuber aestivum* and *Picea abies*. Mycorrhiza 23:669–673
Storch J, McDermott L (2009) Structural and functional analysis of fatty acid-binding proteins. J Lipid Res 50S:S126–S131
Streiblova E, Gryndlerová H, Valda S, Gryndler M (2010) *Tuber aestivum*—hypogeous fungus. Czech Mycol 61:163–173
Streiblova E, Gryndlerová H, Gryndler M (2012) Truffle brûlé: an efficient fungal life strategy. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 80:1–8
Tang Y, Li YY, Li HM, Wan DJ, Tang YJ (2011) Comparison of lipid content and fatty acid composition between *Tuber* fermentation mycelia and natural fruiting bodies. J Agric Food Chem 59:4736–4742
Taschen E, Sauve M, Taudiere A, Parlade J, Selosse M, Richard F (2015) Whose truffle is this. Distribution patterns of ECM fungal diversity in *Tuber melanosporum* brûlés developed in multi-host Mediterranean plant communities. Environ Microbiol 17:2747–2761
Ullrich F, Grosch W (1987) Identification of the most intense volatile flavour compounds formed during autoxidation of linoleic acid. Eur Food Res Technol 184:277–282
Weden C, Chevalier G, Danell E (2004) *Tuber aestivum* (syn. *T. uncinatum*) biotopes and their history on Gotland, Sweden. Mycol Res 108:304–310
Yun W, Liu PG (2009) Achievements and challenges of research on truffles in China. Acta Bot Yunnanica 16S:1–9
Zacchi L, Vaughan-Martini A, Angelini P (2003) Yeast distribution in a truffle field ecosystem. Ann Microbiol 53:275–282

Mycorrhizal Association: A Safeguard for Plant Pathogen

Madhumati Bora and Ami Lokhandwala

Abstract Biological control refers to the potential application of introducing or inhabitant microorganisms to reduce the damage caused by one or more plant pathogens. A continuous interplay between ecosystem and its rhizospheric organisms brings the control of soilborne pathogens which are more difficult to manage. Since last two decades, biocontrol has been gaining considerable interest to maintain sustainable agriculture system. Mycorrhizae are among the most primeval, intimate, and vital association which colonize symbiotically through the roots of various vascular, nonvascular, and crop plants. The arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) fungi develops a complex mutualistic association with host plant roots via various mechanisms. From the initiation of symbiosis till the formation of arbuscules and/or vesicles, a number of changes occur in plant metabolism, plant nutritional status, and plant resistance. The key indicators of AM fungi for an effective defense response are reduction in the infectivity of soilborne pathogens or suppression of pathogen metabolism or increase in plant's tolerance toward pathogen. Proposed grounds for a healthier state of plants associated with AM fungi are attributed to (1) improvement in nutritional status of plants, (2) competition between mycorrhiza and pathogen for nutrition and infection sites, (3) modifications in root anatomy and morphology, (4) release of plant root exudates, (5) harboring microbial flora antagonistic to root pathogens, and (6) improved localized as well as systemic resistance in plants. The effective and prolonged mycorrhiza-induced resistance involves various phytohormones, secondary metabolites, pathogen-related proteins, and defense enzymes. Such activation leads to a primed state in plant, which allows quicker and mightier defense response against pathogens. This chapter provides an overview of the underlying mechanisms involved in mycorrhiza-induced disease resistance and priming in plants.

Keywords Biological control • Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi • Mechanisms involved

M. Bora (✉) • A. Lokhandwala
Natubhai V Patel College of Pure and Applied Sciences,
Vallabh Vidyanagar 388120, Gujarat, India
e-mail: madhumatib@yahoo.co.in

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_12

1 Introduction

The term "rhizosphere" was first coined by Lorenz Hiltner in 1904 (Hartmann et al. 2008) to describe the plant-root interface, a word originating in part from the Greek word "rhiza," meaning root. Rhizosphere is that section of soil which is in direct proximity of plant roots harboring a unique population of microorganisms (Azcón-Aguilar and Barea 1992). Rhizosphere develops at soil-root interface and so it communicates both with soil and plant roots via physical interaction and/or chemical or biochemical signals. It is metabolically busier and more competitive environment than the surrounding soil. This tripartite cross talk is affected by inherent soil characteristics and ecosystem conditions (Lynch 1990). The "dialogue" between these three partners can be either plant-plant communication caused by two overlapping rhizospheres, plant-microbe communication, or synergistic/antagonist microbe-microbe communication. Two factors determine plant-microbe interaction: first, the rhizospheric effect, i.e., plant activities that stimulate growth of microorganisms around the roots, and second, microbial activities that either benefit or detriment the plant (Lynch 1990). The beneficial action of biological organisms also named natural enemies against pathogens is termed as "biological control." A key component of ecosystem for biocontrol of pathogens is microbial diversity (Kennedy and Smith 1995). Under natural conditions, the majority of plant species form mycorrhizal associations to enable AMF survival. Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF), being the most widespread type in regular crops of all ecosystems (Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008a, b; Smith and Read 2008; Akhtar and Panwar 2011), are the most common association prevalent in almost all climatic conditions. AM fungi had the ability to modify the rhizospheric microbial activity through the alteration in the quality and abundance of rhizosphere microflora (Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008a, b). These fungi induce changes in the host root exudation pattern following host colonization which alters the microbial equilibrium in the mycorrhizosphere (Akhtar et al. 2011). AM fungi reduced the severity of plant diseases, increasing the yield of various crops through their biocontrol potential against the wide range of pathogens in sustainable agricultural practices. This chapter provides an overview of the underlying mechanisms involved in mycorrhiza-induced disease resistance and priming in plants.

2 Understanding of Arbuscular Mycorrhizal Fungi as Bioprotectant

AMF belongs to order Glomales of Zygomycetes family (Rosendahl et al. 1994). Since AMF are totally dependent on their host plant to multiply and survive, they are best known as "obligate biotrophs." The joint venture thus develops between plant and fungus is based on the mutual profits attained by both. AMF colonizes

the plant root cortex and forms bush or little treelike structures known as arbuscules meant for nutrient exchange between the partners (Jung et al. 2012). Extraradical hyphae formed by AMF in soil increase the absorption efficiency of plant roots by crossing nutrient depletion areas and thereby improve the reach for inorganic nutrients like phosphate and nitrate (Smith et al. 2011). Plants reciprocate this help by supplying photosynthates to fungal partner (Smith and Smith 2011). This kind of association ensures a tight bidirectional regulation of mutualism (Kiers et al. 2011). Plants manage this barter practice by bringing essential modifications in its primary as well as secondary metabolism and also amending its defense mechanisms (Fester and Hause 2005). These amendments build up the plants potential to muddle through stresses.

The fact that mycorrhiza provides nutritional benefit to plant is as old as human civilization. The enhanced growth and/or yield in mycorrhizal host plants are solely credited to improved nutritional status (Smith and Read 2008). Moreover, advancement in this field rendered another potential of mycorrhiza alleviating the damage under stress conditions (Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007; Koricheva et al. 2009; Smith et al. 2010; Campos-Soriano et al. 2012). Upon mycorrhizal association, noteworthy changes develop in host plant and its surrounding environment. Plants release root exudates in soil upon which alters soil structure, carbon deposition in soil, and its microbial diversity, thus influencing rhizospheric milieu (Jung et al. 2012). Changes associated with defense mechanism are noticed not only in rhizosphere but in non-colonized root parts and aboveground parts of mycorrhizal-colonized plant (Pozo et al. 2002; Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007). The obvious changes observed upon efficient colonization are alteration in root design, metabolic modifications, and accumulation of certain defense-related compounds (Strack et al. 2003; Hause et al. 2007; Schliemann et al. 2008; Péret et al. 2009; Lopez-Raez et al. 2010a, b; Akhtar et al. 2011) and accumulation of apocarotenoids (Strack and Fester 2006; Floss et al. 2008; Schliemann et al. 2008), flavonoid contents (Akiyama et al. 2002; Vierheilig and Piché 2002), phenolic compounds, defense-related phytohormones, and reactive oxygen species (Fester and Hause 2005; Lopez-Raez et al. 2010a, b). This implies that plants too exhibit defense mechanisms, coordinated by their immune system to enable the plant in recognizing nonself alien organisms through molecules like flagellins, lipopolysaccharides, or peptidoglycans, collectively known as pathogen-assisted molecular patterns (PAMPs) (Jung et al. 2012). Detection of these PAMPs by host's transmembrane receptors leads to activation of necessary reactions in host and ultimately PAMP-triggered immunity (Jones and Dangl 2006; Boller and He 2009; Thomma et al. 2011). Pathogen can suppress this immunity by secreting effector proteins for successful infection; sometimes plants may also recognize these effector proteins and initiate rapid, long-lasting, and robust responses known as effector-triggered immunity (Boller and He 2009; Thomma et al. 2011). These activated responses in plant are synchronized by signal transducers which control the expression of certain defense-related molecules (Jones and Dangl 2006; Thomma et al. 2011). Therefore, for successful establishment, mycorrhiza has to cope up effectively with these changes and regulate the responses of host. Such

modulations may result in priming and preconditioning of the tissues for competent activation of plant defense response (Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007). Priming is believed to be the basic strategy behind induced systemic resistance (ISR) reported in plants associated with beneficial organisms (Conrath et al. 2006; Goellner and Conrath 2008; van Wees et al. 2008) (Table 1).

The molecular mechanisms of priming and its biological relevance in plants immunity has been studied thoroughly, and now further attention is on to decipher its trans-generational effects. Biocontrol and biofertilizer properties associated with mycorrhizal symbiosis has become an important alternative to chemical fertilizers and pesticides for sustainable agriculture research (Harrier and Watson 2004; Mukerji and Ciancio 2007; Fester and Sawers 2011).

3 Underlying Mechanisms of Mycorrhiza-Induced Resistance (MIR)

3.1 Enhanced Nutritional Status in Host Plant

Plants having AMF association shows better nutrition uptake ability (Smith and Read 2008). Phosphorous and several other nutrients are made available in larger amounts to plants in exchange of photosynthates (Pearson and Jakobsen 1993). Whether this improved nutritional status of plant can increase the strength to cope with pathogens or not is still debatable. There are reports where plants colonized with AMF symbiont like *Glomus intraradices* and *G. mosseae* have shown a concurrent raise in mineral uptake and tolerance (Bodker et al. 1998; Karagiannidis et al. 2002; Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008a, b); on the contrary, some reports indicate improved nutritional status did not lead to any change in tolerance (Shaul et al. 1999; Fritz et al. 2006). Interestingly, it has also been reported that AMF provides protection toward pathogen to plants without affecting host phosphorous level (Newsham et al. 1995). Though the results obtained are not unanimous in ascribing the role of enhanced nutrition by AMF-colonized plants, it can be suggested that tolerance is indirectly contributed either by profused root growth or by efficient phosphorous uptake (Jansa et al. 2005) or by maintaining root cell activity through arbuscule formation (Cordier et al. 1996; Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008a, b; Smith and Read 2008; Akhtar and Panwar 2011).

3.2 Role of Phosphorus and Photosynthates

The most important aspect of mycorrhizal symbiosis is nutritional exchange of phosphorous and photosynthates which occurs mainly in arbusculated cells (Helber et al. 2011). Roots colonized with AMF are suppressed by higher P levels (Balzergue

Table 1 Few examples of defense mechanisms underlying mycorrhiza-induced resistance machinery

Host	Mycorrhiza	Pathogen/parasitic plants stresses	Mechanism involved	Results	References
Tomato	*G. mosseae*	*Erwinia carotovora* pv. *carotovora*	Competition for nutrients	Mycorrhiza inoculated plant exhibited normal growth in presence of pathogen	Garcia-Garrido et al (1991)
Marigold	*G. intraradices*	*Pythium ultimum*	Modulation of defense responses	Lower pathogen infection in mycorrhized plants	St-Arnaud et al. (1994)
Pea	*G. intraradices*	*Aphanomyces euteiches*	Increased P uptake	Reduced the disease severity	Bodker et al. (1998)
Tomato	*G. mosseae*, *G. intraradices*	*Phytophthora parasitica*	Induction of hydrolytic and antioxidant enzymes	Induction of mycorrhiza-related and new isoforms of the hydrolytic enzymes chitinase, chitosanase, and β-1,3-glucanase, superoxide dismutase	Cordier et al. (1998)
Lotus, Medicago	*G. margarita*	–	Modulation of superoxide dismutase	SOD was differentially expressed during the fungal life cycle; highest transcript levels were found in fungal structures inside the roots as observed on two host plants	Lanfranco et al. (2005)

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Host	Mycorrhiza	Pathogen/parasitic plants stresses	Mechanism involved	Results	References
Cucumber	*G. intraradices*	*Colletotrichum orbiculare*	Changes in host physiology at pathogen penetration sites	The pathogenicity declined on the leaves of cucumber plant colonized with *G. intraradices* Callose formation was notably high on the leaves of *G. intraradices* colonized plants	Lee et al. (2005)
Cucumber	*G. mosseae*	*C. orbiculare*	Association with other plant growth-promoting microbiota in soil	Anthracnose disease reduction in mycorrhiza colonized plants when combined with other bioprotective isolates	Chandanie et al. (2006)
Tomato	*AMF*	*Alternaria solani*	Induced systemic resistance	Reduced the *A. solani* symptoms	Fritz et al. (2006)
Mays, *Sorghum*	*G. clarum*, *G. margarita*	*Striga hermonthica*	Hormonal changes	Reduction in the number of *S. hermonthica* shoot	Lendzemo et al. (2007)
Barley	*G. mosseae*	*Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici*	Increase in SA content	Concentration of salicylic acid increased with colonization rate in the mycorrhizal fungus	Khaosaad et al. (2007)

Medicago	*G. intraradices*, *G. gigantea*, *G. versiforme*	*Xanthomonas campesteris*	Local and systemic defense responses in root and shoot	Differential expression of 68 genes in shoots and 41 in roots of host plant. Moreover, 21 genes found in both colonized and non-colonized host plant reduced the development of the pathogen	Liu et al. (2007)
Tomato	*G. intraradices*	*Rhizoctonia solani*	Association with other plant growth-promoting microbiota in soil	Soil application of *T. harzianum* or/and *G. intraradices* radically abridged tomato seedlings damping-off driven by *Rhizoctonia solani*	Amer and Abou-El-Seoud (2008)
Banana	*G. intraradices*	*Radopholus similis* and *P. coffeae*	Induced systemic resistance	The AMF reduced both nematode species by more than 50 %	Elsen et al. (2008)
Date palm	*AMF*	*F. oxysporum* f. sp. *albedinis*	Increase in phenolics	Accretion of hydroxycinnamic acid derivatives—synaptic derivative a I2, play a vital role in resistance of date palm to Foa in mycorrhized seedlings	Jaiti et al. (2008)

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Host	Mycorrhiza	Pathogen/parasitic plants stresses	Mechanism involved	Results	References
Tomato	*G. macrocarpum*, *G. fasciculatum*	*F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*	Increase in JA	Increased the growth, phenyl-alanine ammonia lyase activity, phenol and foliar trichome density	Kapoor (2008)
Cotton	*G. etunicatum*, *G. intraradices*, *G. versiforme*	*Verticillium wilt*	Competition between AMF and pathogen	Mycorrhizal symbiosis and growth of AMF-related structures reduced when AMF and pathogen infected the same host root	Kobra et al. (2009)
Tomato	*G. mosseae* and *G. intraradices*	*P. parasitica*	Acidic and basic β-1,3-glucanase isoforms	Differential expression of glucanase isoforms in mycorrhiza colonized plants	Pozo et al. (1999)
Pea	*G. mosseae*, *G. intraradices*	*Orobanche crenata*, *O. foetida*, *Phelipanche aegyptiaca*	Nutritional and hormonal changes	Inhibition of parasitic plants germination	Fernandez-Aparicio et al. (2010)

et al. 2011), while higher level of photosynthates promotes density of AM fungal vesicles (Bago et al. 2000) and lateral root development (Fusconi 2014). The negative role of P may be due to signaling pathway which senses the P level in roots and thus upregulates defense gene expression in plants for enzymes like chitinase, glucanase (Lambais and Mehdy 1993), and catalase (Lambais 2000). Phosphorous acts by systemic suppression of essential symbiotic genes, especially the genes encoding enzymes of carotenoid and strigolactone biosynthesis, and symbiosis associated phosphate transporters (Breuillin et al. 2010). Arbuscules are the most active structures in this association where trading of nutrient occurs (Garcia-Garrido and Ocampo 2002); thus, they are greater sucrose sinks for more energy requirements (Vierheilig et al. 2001). Blee and Anderson (2000) discussed the relationship between sugar catabolism, activation of defense-related genes, and in turn activation of systemic resistance (Herbers et al. 1996). Since interchange between phosphorous and carbon is the major movement in AMF association, it has a pivotal role in the activation of defense responses in host plants.

3.3 Hormonal Changes in Plants

Mycorrhizal association is well known for acclimatizing host plant to various stresses. Plant hormones, key controller of plant development and immunity, not only coordinate plant responses to the fluctuating environment but also regulate mycorrhizal symbioses either by regulating initial steps of colonization or by bringing morphological changes in plants to accommodate AMF, its expansion, and functionality (Pozo et al. 2015). These phytohormones interact positive or negative to regulate a large number of plant activities.

Hormones are having defined roles at onset of colonization and after colonization. Strigolactones are one of the positive hormones secreted by plant inducing fungal chitin oligomer, mandatory for fungal incursion and activating symbiosis with plant roots (Gutjahr and Parniske 2013; Ruyter-Spira et al. 2013). However, salicylates, ethylene, and cytokinins behave antagonistically for the same (Foo et al. 2013). Development of arbuscule and its survival are also controlled by plant hormones (Gutjahr and Parniske 2013) where ABA and auxins are indispensable, while gibberellins exhibit inhibition (Floss et al. 2013; Foo et al. 2013; Etemadi et al. 2014; Martín-Rodríguez et al. 2015).

Imbalance in plant hormone levels in mycorrhizal plants makes plants more tolerant (Fernandez et al. 2014; Selosse et al. 2014). Enhanced plant nutrition, changes in root structure, and priming plant defense responses regulated by plant hormones (Jung et al. 2012); while changes in root architecture alter the level of cytokinins, auxins, and strigolactones (Fusconi 2014); and ABA levels in colonized plants that increase their water absorption capacity (Ruiz-Lozano et al. 2012) are few examples of it. Though levels of ABA remain unaffected under normal conditions, ABA increases in osmotic stress, probably leading to primed responses (Aroca et al. 2013). ABA deficiency suppresses AMF formation (Martín-Rodríguez et al. 2015)

by inducing defense cell wall-related genes (Garcia-Garrido et al. 2010). Hormonal changes affect the interaction of plant with various airborne and soilborne pathogens. Production of strigolactones in mycorrhizal plants is able to reduce *Striga hermonthica* infection by root pathogen (Lendzemo et al. 2007). Similar, results were seen in peas and tomatoes (Fernandez-Aparicio et al. 2010; Lopez-Raez et al. 2012). Thus, it explains the role of plant hormone to alleviate plants' response to abiotic and biotic stresses in AMF plants.

3.4 Struggle for Host Photosynthates and Colonization or Infection Sites

AMF competes with pathogenic microorganisms in soil or root (Filion et al. 2003; St-Arnaud et al. 1994) for their establishment in the same host. This may be because both of them utilize common sources to survive which are host photosynthates such as glucose and fructose and a space to infect/colonize within the root (Whipps 2004). Arbuscules and intercellular hyphae are the structures which are actively involved in uptake of photosynthetic products (Douds et al. 2000; Kaiser et al. 2015). Photosynthates are transferred to the fungus as sucrose or hexose via mycorrhizal intraradical structures (hyphae or arbuscules in the root cortex) and transferred as glycogen or triacylglycerol through the large extraradical hyphae network (Bago et al. 2002, 2003; Parniske 2008). Increased inflow of sucrose, fructose, and glucose leads to active catabolism in arbuscules which in turn activates defense-related genes (Ernst and Siri-Prieto 2009; Vierheilig et al. 2001). Resistance mechanism depends upon type of pathogen in colonized plants which can be localized (Jalali and Jalali 1991) or systemic (Dehne 1982; Smith 1987). Utilization of plant resources and space by AMF consequently decreases the survival rate of pathogen.

3.5 Changes in Plant Root Architecture

AMF promotes profusely branched root system (Paszkowski et al. 2002; Olah et al. 2005; Gutjahr et al. 2009). Eggplant colonized with *Glomus* spp. showed higher lignin concentrations in first- and second-order root on attack of a root pathogen *Verticillium dahliae* (Matsubara et al. 1995). Moreover, AMF also caused the plant to produced thickened third-order roots. However, in tomato with AMF, root branching was not affected, but there was a decrease in number of infection loci of *Phytophthora parasitica* (Vigo et al. 2000). It is noteworthy here that increase in lateral root tips and developing meristems due to AMF colonization results in higher susceptibility of plants toward pathogen, which in turn necessitates AMF to protect plants by other mechanisms (Newsham et al. 1995; Norman et al. 1996). Thus, changes in root architecture such as the root physical force, rhizodeposition, root

entanglement of soil particles, and also the soil water regime (Rillig and Mummey 2006) on colonization by AMF can directly or indirectly affect the infectivity of pathogen to host plant (Dighton 2014).

3.6 Microbial Community and Its Associations in Mycorrhizosphere

Colonization by AMF in plants roots changes the quality and quantity of root exudates released in soil, which affects the microbial populations in soil (Azcón-Aguilar and Bago 1994; Akhtar et al. 2011). Changes in these root exudates in soil rhizosphere may be inhibitory to root pathogens and nematodes (Pozo et al. 2013). AMF reduces the number of sporangia and zoospores formed in soil by *Phytophthora cinnamomi* (Meyer and Linderman 1986); also the reduction is seen in *Fusarium* populations in mycorrhizospheric soil of tomato plants (Caron 1989). This prophylactic activity of AMF is also endorsed to some root pathogen antagonists such as *Trichoderma*, *Gliocladium*, and PGPR like *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* (Kloepper et al. 1991; Barea et al. 1996). Growth-promoting bacteria and fungi work in collaboration with AMF by improvement in plant rooting, enhancement of plant growth and nutrition (Gopal et al. 2012; Vafadar et al. 2014), abiotic stress tolerance (Xun et al. 2015), and biological control of pathogens; they also improve as well as facilitate symbiosis (Barea et al. 1996). That means the presence of microbial community in soil rhizosphere or changes in rhizosphere enhances AMF-assisted antagonism to root pathogens.

3.7 Production of Endogenous and Exogenous Elicitors

Development of resistance by AMF association can also be attributed to preventing the release of endogenous elicitor molecules from plant cell wall or degradation of the exogenous elicitor molecules produced by AMF. This crosstalk between both the partners can be one plausible reason for boosting plant defense response. Hydrolases are core enzymes of both the partners, wherein plant hydrolase can degrade fungal elicitors, while fungal hydrolase can degrade plant cell wall (Garcia-Garrido and Ocampo 2002). Potential hydrolases like chitinases, chitosanases, and β-1,3-glucanases produced constitutively by mycorrhiza regulate differentially in process of AMF colonization, revealing their key role in it (Dassi et al. 1996; Pozo et al. 1998; Salzer et al. 2000). Stimulation of plant defense reaction by an elicitor produced from extraradical mycelium of *G. intraradices* (Lambais 2000) further supports this theory. For elicitor breakdown, plant chitinase expresses constitutively in the early phase of mycorrhization,

whereas mycorrhiza-specific isozymes are expressed at later stage (Salzer and Boller 2000; Salzer et al. 2000). Besides, defense regulation through degradation of exogenous elicitor molecules and prevention of endogenous elicitor formation plays an equal role. These endogenous elicitors formed on degradation of cell wall; if prevented, then effective plant defense mechanism can be induced. This hypothesis is supported by the fact that *Glomus mosseae* produces very little plant cell wall-degrading pectolytic enzymes like pectin esterase, endo-polymethylgalacturonase, pectin lyase, and pectate lyase (Garcia-Romera et al. 1991). Production of hydrolytic enzymes is minimal by mycorrhiza which is required specifically for their incursion in plants only. There is no obvious role of these fungal enzymes in endogenous elicitor production. Apart from hydrolytic enzyme regulation by endo/exo elicitor molecules, arbuscules also play a role wherein localized defense response is generated when plant/fungal lytic enzymes generate fragments/elicitors from molecules like cellulose, pectin, xyloglucan, and HRGP in new interface compartment created by AMF shared by membranes from both partners (Bonfante 2001).

3.8 Interplay Between Hydrogen Peroxide and Salicylic Acid (SA)

A rapid and transient ROS production had been observed during early plant-pathogen interactions at the site of infection. Following this oxidative burst by ROS production, SA accumulates at the site of infection (Draper 1997). SA is potential inhibitor of antioxidant enzymes such as catalase and peroxidase, thus stimulating ROS response after pathogen attack. This same type of interplay has been observed between ROS and SA in mycorrhizal plants as a possible mechanism to attenuate plant defense response. Both ROS and SA have been used as secondary messengers in AMF associations (Garcia-Garrido and Ocampo 2002). Amount of H_2O_2 and other ROS have not been measured directly in AMF-colonized roots, but evidences suggest that ROS increase upon mycorrhizal colonization (Salzer et al. 1999). During AMF colonization, a transient increase in anti-oxidative enzymes like catalase, peroxidase, and superoxide dismutase is observed in mycorrhizal roots (Falahian et al. 2007; Younesi et al. 2013; Chen et al. 2014). Along with production of such enzymes, changes in their isoenzyme pattern in colonized roots have also been observed at initial stages of fungal penetration, indicating involvement of H_2O_2 and other ROS in signal transduction processes. To address the experimental evidence of the above results, we have tested the production and expression of peroxidase, polyphenol oxidase, and catalase in tomato when colonized with *G. geosporum* MBAL upon attack of *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*. Peroxidase (Fig. 1), polyphenol oxidase, and catalase were produced in higher amounts and expressed different isoenzyme pattern in mycorrhizal plants irrespective of pathogen attack (Fig. 2a–c). Tomato plants

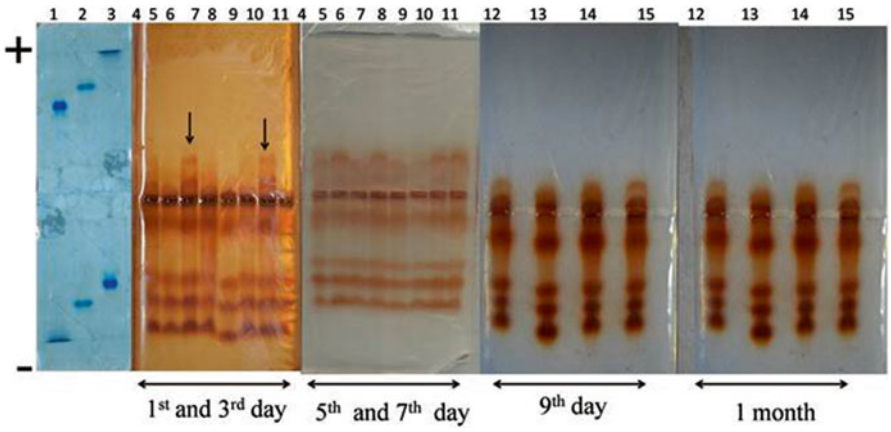


Fig. 1 Agarose gel electrophoresis. *Lane 1*: trypsin soya bean inhibitor (18.40 kDa); *Lane 2*: lactoglobulin (20.10); *Lane 3*: ovalbumin (43 kDa); *Lanes 4*, *5*, *12*: control; *Lanes 6*, *7*, *13*: plant + mycorrhiza; *Lanes 8*, *9*, *14*: plant + pathogen; *Lanes 10*, *11*, *15*: plant + mycorrhiza + pathogen

associated with *G. clarum* expressed all the isoforms of both peroxidase and polyphenol oxidase more strongly than that associated with *G. fasciculatum* (Rodríguez et al. 2001). In bean roots, catalase and ACC oxidase activity is synchronized in accordance with infection potential of AMF and P availability (Lambais 2000). Increase in anti-oxidative burst has been also ascribed to fungal penetration and appresoria formation (Spanu and Bonfante-Fasolo 1988). Accumulation and expression of defense enzymes in the arbuscules may be a localized regulation of defense mechanism (Garcia-Garrido and Ocampo 2002). Temporary increase in catalase and peroxidase activity coincides with that of free SA in AM-colonized tobacco roots and rice roots (Blilou et al. 2000a, b); even external application of SA did not concur with appresoria formation, rather it delayed the mycorrhization of roots. SA level increases only after successful completion of mycorrhization (Pozo and Azcón-Aguilar 2007). This implies that there must be a correlation between SA accumulation and mycorrhizal fungi infectivity. However, precise role of SA in successful mycorrhization is still hazy, but it appears that there is an explicit relationship between antioxidant enzymes and SA accumulation, which in turn regulates mycorrhiza-induced plant defense mechanism in plants.

3.9 Jasmonic Acid as an Endogenous Signal

Jasmonic acid (JA) and its derivatives play a major role in AM symbiosis (Morcillo et al. 2012). JA acts differently at different stages of mycorrhizal colonization (Foo et al. 2013). They are thought to be involved in establishment of AM fungus in host plant (Hause et al. 2007). Arbuscules containing cells actively express genes which is evident by an increase

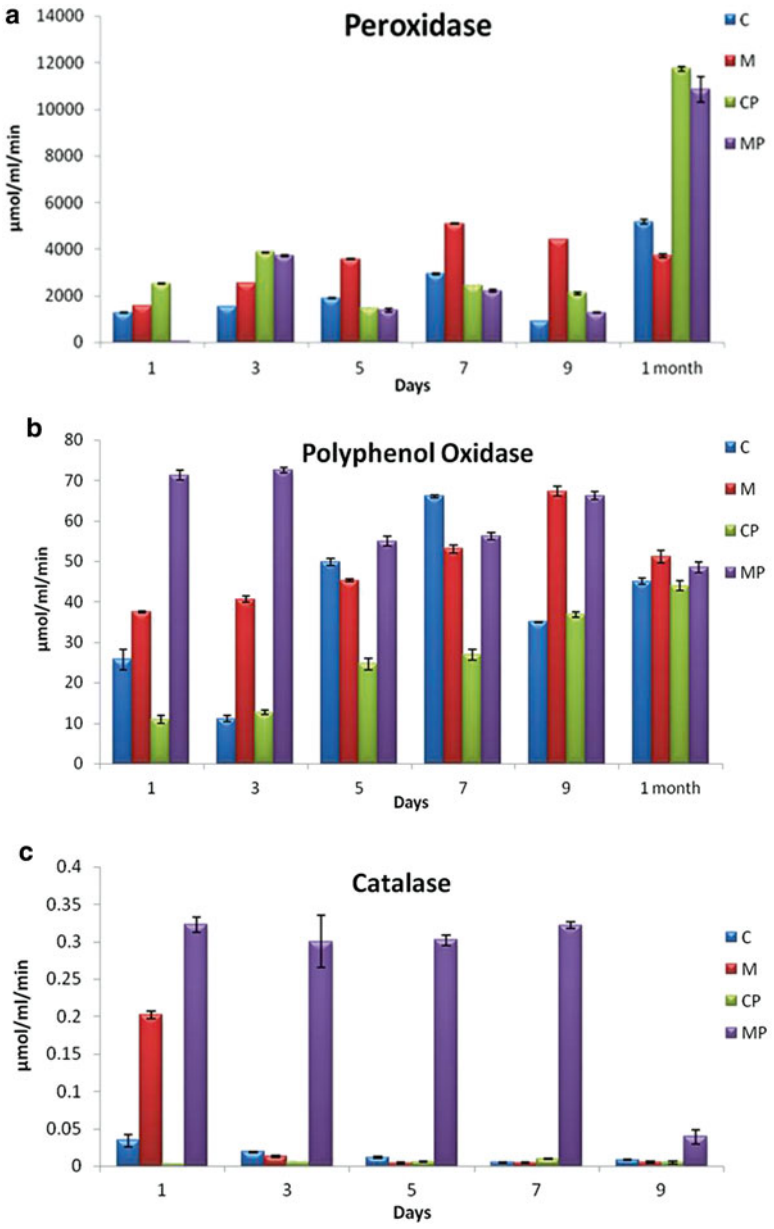


Fig. 2 (**a–c**) Analysis of enzyme (peroxidase, polyphenol oxidase, and catalase). *C* control, *M* mycorrhizal plant, *CP* control plant inoculated with *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*, *MP* mycorrhizal plant inoculated with *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*

in level of endogenous JA in mycorrhizal roots (Hause et al. 2002). This increase in JA may be a reason for prominent resistance shown by mycorrhizal plants. In tomato plants, the JA pathway is involved in defense priming by AMF upon herbivore attack (Song et al. 2012) Further, exogenous supply of JA increases mycorrhizal colonization through modifying the regulation of carbohydrate partitioning in tomato plants (Tejeda-Sartorius et al. 2008). Thus, for successful establishment of AMF, an increased JA is necessary requirement (Hause and Fester 2005). JA-regulated defense responses in mycorrhizal plants can be observed in aboveground tissues, particularly those colonized by *G. mosseae* (Pozo et al. 2009). Another interesting feature is eavesdropping of JA-regulated defense-related genes from colonized plants to their neighboring plants via common mycorrhizal networks (Song et al. 2010). So, it concludes the successful role of JA in colonization and activation of defense responses in mycorrhizal plants against pathogens.

3.10 Activation of Phenylpropanoid Pathway

Another widespread response of plant toward pathogen attack is production of phenylpropanoid derivatives. Flavonoids obtained from phenylpropanoid pathway are responsible for an increase in hyphal growth, spore germination, and more profused hyphal branching (Abdel-Lateif et al. 2012). Isoflavonoid phytoalexins are among the end products of phenylpropanoid pathway whose role is involved in resistance mechanism. These phytoalexins are found only at early stages of mycorrhization (Morandi et al. 1984), for example, glyceollin and medicarpin were found during early stages of mycorrhiza colonization in soya bean and *M. truncatula*, respectively (Wyss et al. 1991; Harrison and Dixon 1994). Similarly, phenylpropanoid-related enzymes, i.e., phenylalanine-lyase (PAL), first enzyme in phenylpropanoid pathway, and chalcone isomerase, the second enzyme, show their increased level in early stages of *G. intraradices* colonization (Lambais and Mehdy 1993; Volpin et al. 1994). Some enzymes that metabolize important reactions in phenylpropanoid pathway like PAL and CHS could be observed in arbuscules, while other enzymes of same pathway like CHI of IFR were not found in mycorrhiza (Harrison and Dixon 1994). However, accumulation of flavonoid/isoflavonoids depends on genotype of photobiont and mycobiont (Harrison and Dixon 1994; Volpin et al. 1995). It can be concluded here that mycorrhizal symbiosis leads to activation of weak, localized, and uncoordinated induction of phenylpropanoid pathway and accumulation of its products (Morandi 1989).

4 Conclusions and Future Prospects

Wide distribution of AM fungi throughout the world and its association with roots of most agricultural and horticultural plants is accepted unanimously. Moreover, it is an eco-friendly approach to combat the toxic effects of chemical fertilizers and pesticides. A thorough understanding of plant interaction with AM fungi, chemical

cross talk, and protection pathways induced after successful colonization will develop a feasible technique to use AM fungi as a potential safeguard. Further research on specific cues on mechanism regulated and products generated may result in an AMF-based green technology for sustainable agriculture.

Acknowledgments Authors are grateful to Dr. C L Patel chairman, Charutar Vidyamandal (CVM), Vallabh Vidyanagar Gujarat, and UGC, New Delhi, for their financial and technical support.

References

Abdel-Lateif K, Bogusz D, Hocher V (2012) The role of flavonoids in the establishment of plant roots endosymbioses with arbuscular mycorrhiza fungi, rhizobia and Frankia bacteria. Plant Signal Behav 7:636–641

Akhtar MS, Panwar J (2011) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and opportunistic fungi: efficient root symbionts for the management of plant parasitic nematodes. Adv Sci Eng Med 3:165–175

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2008a) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi as potential biprotectants against plant pathogens. In: Siddiqui ZA, Akhtar MS, Futai K (eds) Mycorrhizae: sustainable agriculture and forestry. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 61–98

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2008b) Biocontrol of a root-rot disease complex of chickpea by *Glomus intraradices*, *Rhizobium* sp. and *Pseudomonas straita*. Crop Prot 27:410–417

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA, Wiemken A (2011) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and Rhizobium to control plant fungal diseases. In: Lichtfouse E (ed) Alternative farming systems, biotechnology, drought stress and ecological fertilisation, vol 6, Sustainable Agriculture Reviews. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 263–292

Akiyama K, Matsuoka H, Hayashi H (2002) Isolation and identification of a phosphate deficiency-induced C-glycosyl flavonoid that stimulates arbuscular mycorrhiza formation in melon roots. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:334–340

Amer MA, Abou-El-Seoud II (2008) Mycorrhizal fungi and *Trichoderma harzianum* as biocontrol agents for suppression of *Rhizoctonia solani* damping-off disease of tomato. Commun Agric Appl Biol Sci 73:217–232

Aroca R, Ruíz-Lozano JM, Zamarreño A, Paz A, García-Mina JM, Pozo MJ, López Ráez JA (2013) Arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis influences strigolactone production under salinity and alleviates salt stress in lettuce plants. J Plant Physiol 170:47–55

Azcón-Aguilar C, Bago B (1994) Physiological characteristics of the host plant promoting an undisturbed functioning of the mycorrhizal symbiosis. In: Gianinazzi S, Schüepp H (eds) Impact of arbuscular mycorrhizas on sustainable agriculture and natural ecosystems. Birkhauser, Basel, Switzerland, pp 47–60

Azcón-Aguilar C, Barea JM (1992) Interactions between mycorrhizal fungi and other rhizosphere microorganisms. In: Allen MJ (ed) Mycorrhizal functioning: an integrative plant-fungal process. Chapman and Hall, New York, pp 163–198

Bago B, Pfeffer PE, Shachar-Hill Y (2000) Carbon metabolism and transport in arbuscular mycorrhizas. Plant Physiol 124:949–958

Bago B, Pfeffer PE, Zipfel W, Lammers P, Shachar-Hill Y (2002) Tracking metabolism and imaging transport in arbuscular mycorrhizal metabolism and transport in AM fungi. Plant Soil 244:189–197

Bago B, Pfeffer PE, Abubaker J, Jun J, Allen JW, Brouillette J, Douds DD, Lammers PJ, Shachar-Hill Y (2003) Carbon export from arbuscular mycorrhizal roots involves the translocation of carbohydrate as well as lipid. Plant Physiol 131:1496–1507

Balzergue C, Puech-Page V, Bécard G, Rochang SF (2011) The regulation of arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis by phosphate in pea involves early and systemic signalling events. J Exp Bot 62:1049–1060

Barea JM, Azcón-Aguilar C, Azcón R (1996) Interactions between mycorrhizal fungi and rhizosphere microorganisms within the context of sustainable soil-plant systems. In: Gange AC, Brown VK (eds) Multitrophic interactions in terrestrial systems. Blackwell, Oxford, UK, pp 195–212

Blee KA, Anderson AJ (2000) Defense responses in plants to arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. In: Podila GK, Douds DD (eds) Current advances in mycorrhizae research. APS Press, St Paul, MN, pp 27–44

Blilou I, Bueno P, Ocampo JA, García-Garrido JM (2000a) Induction of catalase and ascorbate peroxidase activities in tobacco roots inoculated with the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus mosseae*. Mycol Res 104:722–725

Blilou I, Ocampo JA, García-Garrido JM (2000b) Induction of Ltp (Lipid transfer protein) and Pal (phenylalanine ammonia-lyase) gene expression in rice roots colonized by the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus mosseae*. J Exp Bot 51:1969–1977

Bodker L, Kjoller R, Rosendahl S (1998) Effect of phosphate and the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus intraradices* on disease severity of root rot of peas (*Pisum sativum*) caused by *Aphanomyces euteiches*. Mycorrhiza 8:169–174

Boller T, He SY (2009) Innate immunity in plants: an arms race between pattern recognition receptors in plants and effectors in microbial pathogens. Science 324:742–744

Bonfante P (2001) At the interface between mycorrhizal fungi and plants: the structural organization of cell wall, plasma membrane and cytoskeleton. In: Esser K, Hock B (eds) The mycota IX. Springer, Berlin, pp 45–61

Breuillin F, Schramm J, Hajirezaei M, Ahkami A, Favre P, Druege U, Hause B, Bucher M, Kretzschmar T, Bossolini E, Kuhlemeier C, Martinoia E, Franken P, Scholz U, Reinhardt D (2010) Phosphate systemically inhibits development of arbuscular mycorrhiza in *Petunia hybrida* and represses genes involved in mycorrhizal functioning. Plant J 64:1002–1017

Campos-Soriano L, García-martínez J, Segundo BS (2012) The arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis promotes the systemic induction of regulatory defense-related genes in rice leaves and confers resistance to pathogen infection. Mol Plant Pathol 13:579–592

Caron M (1989) Potential use of mycorrhizae in control of soilborne diseases. Can J Plant Pathol 11:177–179

Chandanie WA, Kubota M, Hyakumachi M (2006) Interactions between plant growth promoting fungi and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus mosseae* and induction of systemic resistance to anthracnose disease in cucumber. Plant Soil 286:209–217

Chen X, Song F, Liu F, Tian C, Liu S, Xu H, Zhu X (2014) Effect of different arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on growth and physiology of maize at ambient and low temperature regimes. ScientificWorldJournal 2014:956141

Conrath U, Beckers GJM, Flors V, García-agustín P, Jakab G, Mauch F, Newman MA, Pieterse CMJ, Poinssot B, Pozo MJ, Pugin A, Schaffrath U, Ton J, Wendehenne D, Zimmerli L, Mauchmani B (2006) Priming: getting ready for battle. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:1062–1071

Cordier C, Gianinazzi S, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (1996) Colonization patterns of root tissues by *Phytophthora nicotianae* var. *parasitica* related to reduced disease in mycorrhizal tomato. Plant Soil 185:223–232

Cordier C, Pozo MJ, Barea JM, Gianinazzi S, Gianinazzi-pearson V (1998) Cell defense responses associated with localized and systemic resistance to *Phytophthora parasitica* induced in tomato by an arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 11:1017–1028

Dassi B, Dumas-Gaudot E, Asselin A, Richard C, Gianinazzi S (1996) Chitinase and β-1,3-glucanase isoforms expressed in pea roots inoculated with arbuscular mycorrhizal or pathogenic fungi. Eur J Plant Pathol 102:105–108

Dehne HW (1982) Interaction between vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and plant pathogens. Phytopathology 72:1115–1119

Dighton J (2014) Introduction: soils and their promotion of plant growth. In: Dighton J, Krumins JA (eds) Interactions in soil: promoting plant growth. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 1–26

Douds DD, Pfeffer PP, Shachar-Hill Y (2000) Carbon partitioning, cost, and metabolism of arbuscular mycorrhizas. In: Kalpunik Y, Douds DD (eds) Arbuscular mycorrhizas: physiology and function. Kluwer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 107–129

Draper J (1997) Salicylate superoxide synthesis and cell suicide in plant defense. Trends Pharmacol Sci 2:162–165

Elsen A, Gervacio D, Swennen R, De Waele D (2008) AMF-induced biocontrol against plant parasitic nematodes in *Musa* sp.: a systemic effect. Mycorrhiza 18:251–256

Ernst O, Siri-Prieto G (2009) Impact of perennial pasture and tillage systems on carbon input and soil quality indicators. Soil Tillage Res 105:260–268

Etemadi M, Gutjahr C, Couzigou J-M, Zouine M, Lauressergues D, Timmers A, Audran C, Bouzayen M, Becard G, Combier JP (2014) Auxin perception is required for arbuscule development in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Plant Physiol 166:281–292

Falahian F, Ardebili ZO, Fahimi F, Khavarinejad R (2007) Effect of mycorrhizal fungi on some defense enzymes against *Gaeumannomyces graminis* in wheat. Pak J Biol Sci 10:2418–2422

Fernandez I, Merlos M, López-Ráez JA, Martínez-Medina A, Ferrol N, Azcón C, Bonfante P, Flors V, Pozo MJ (2014) Defense related phytohormones regulation in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbioses depends on the partner genotypes. J Chem Ecol 40:791–803

Fernandez-Aparicio M, Garcia-Garrido JM, Ocampo JA, Rubiales D (2010) Colonization of field pea roots by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi reduces *Orobanche* and *Phelipanche* species seed germination. Weed Res 50:262–268

Fester T, Hause G (2005) Accumulation of reactive oxygen species in arbuscular mycorrhizal roots. Mycorrhiza 15:373–379

Fester T, Sawers R (2011) Progress and challenges in agricultural applications of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Crit Rev Plant Sci 30:459–470

Filion M, St-Arnaud M, Jabaji-Hare SH (2003) Quantification of *Fusarium solani* f. sp. *phaseoli* in mycorrhizal bean plants and surrounding mycorrhizosphere soil using real-time polymerase chain reaction and direct isolations on selective media. Phytopathology 93:229–235

Floss DS, Hause B, Lange PR, Küster H, Strack D, Walter MH (2008) Knock-down of the MEP pathway isogene 1-deoxy-d-xylulose 5-phosphate synthase 2 inhibits formation of arbuscular mycorrhiza-induced apocarotenoids, and abolishes normal expression of mycorrhiza-specific plant marker genes. Plant J 56:86–100

Floss DS, Levy JG, Lévesque-Tremblay V, Pumplin N, Harrison MJ (2013) DELLA proteins regulate arbuscule formation in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110:E5025–E5034

Foo E, Ross JJ, Jones WT, Reid JB (2013) Plant hormones in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbioses: an emerging role for gibberellins. Ann Bot 111:769–779

Fritz M, Jakobsen I, Lyngkjaer MF, Thordal-Christensen H, Pons-Kuhnemann J (2006) Arbuscular mycorrhiza reduces susceptibility of tomato to *Alternaria solani*. Mycorrhiza 16:413–419

Fusconi A (2014) Regulation of root morphogenesis in arbuscular mycorrhizae: what role do fungal exudates, phosphate, sugars and hormones play in lateral root formation. Ann Bot 113:19–33

Garcia-Garrido JM, Ocampo JA (2002) Regulation of the plant defense response in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. J Exp Bot 53:1377–1386

Garcia-Garrido JM, Morcillo RJ, Rodriguez JA, Bote JA (2010) Variations in the mycorrhization characteristics in roots of wild-type and ABA-deficient tomato are accompanied by specific transcriptomic alterations. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 23:651–664

Garcia-Romera I, García-Garrido JM, Ocampo JA (1991) Pectolytic enzymes in the vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus mosseae*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 78:343–346

Goellner K, Conrath U (2008) Priming: it's all the world to induced disease resistance. Eur J Plant Pathol 121:233–242

Gopal S, Chandrasekaran M, Shagol C, Kim K, Sa T (2012) Spore associated bacteria (SAB) of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) and plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) increase nutrient uptake and plant growth under tress conditions. Korean J Soil Sci Fert 45:582–592

Gutjahr C, Parniske M (2013) Cell and developmental biology of arbuscular mycorrhiza symbiosis. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 29:593–617

Gutjahr C, Casieri L, Paszkowski U (2009) *Glomus intraradices* induces changes in root system architecture of rice independently of common symbiosis signaling. New Phytol 182:829–837

Harrier LA, Watson CA (2004) The potential role of arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) fungi in the bioprotection of plants against soil-borne pathogens in organic and/or other sustainable farming systems. Pest Manage Sci 60:149–157

Harrison M, Dixon R (1994) Spatial patterns of expression of flavonoid/isoflavonoid pathway genes during interactions between roots of *Medicago truncatula* and the mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus versiforme*. Plant J 6:9–20

Hartmann A, Rothballer M, Schmid M (2008) Lorenz Hiltner, a pioneer in rhizosphere microbial ecology and soil bacteriology research. Plant Soil 312:7–14

Hause B, Fester T (2005) Molecular and cell biology of arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Planta 221:184–196

Hause B, Maier W, Miersch O, Kramell R, Strack D (2002) Induction of jasmonate biosynthesis in arbuscular mycorrhizal barley roots. Plant Physiol 130:1213–1220

Hause B, Mrosk C, Isayenkov S, Strack D (2007) Jasmonate in arbuscular mycorrhizal interactions. Phytochemistry 68:101–110

Helber N, Wippel K, Sauer N, Schaarschmidt S, Hause B, Requena N (2011) A versatile monosaccharide transporter that operates in the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus* sp is crucial for the symbiotic relationship with plants. Plant Cell 23:3812–3823

Herbers K, Meuwly P, Frommer WB, Metraux JP, Sonnewald U (1996) Systemic acquired resistance mediated by the ectopic expression of invertase, possible hexose sensing in the secretory pathway. Plant Cell 8:793–803

Jaiti F, Kassami M, Meddich A, El Hadrami I (2008) Effect of arbuscular mycorrhization on the accumulation of hydroxycinnamic acid derivatives in date palm seedlings challenged with *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *Albedinis*. Phytopathology 156:641–646

Jalali BL, Jalali I (1991) Mycorrhiza in plant disease control. In: Arora K, Rai B, Mukerji KG, Knudsen GR (eds) Handbook of applied mycology. Dekker, New York, pp 131–154

Jansa J, Mozafar A, Frossard E (2005) Phosphorus acquisition strategies within arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal community of a single field site. Plant Soil 276:163–176

Jones JDG, Dangl JL (2006) The plant immune system. Nature 444:323–329

Jung SC, Martinez-Medina A, Lopez-Raez JA, Pozo MJ (2012) Mycorrhiza-induced resistance and priming of plant defenses. J Chem Ecol 38:651–664

Kaiser C, Kilburn MR, Clode PL, Fuchslueger L, Koranda M, Cliff JB, Solaiman ZM, Murphy DV (2015) Exploring the transfer of recent plant photosynthates to soil microbes: mycorrhizal pathway vs direct root exudation. New Phytol 205:1537–1551

Kapoor R (2008) Induced resistance in mycorrhizal tomato is correlated to concentration of jasmonic acid. OnLine J Biol Sci 8:49–56

Karagiannidis N, Bletsos F, Stavropoulos N (2002) Effect of Verticillium wilt (*Verticillium dahliae* Kleb.) and mycorrhiza (*Glomus mosseae*) on root colonization, growth and nutrient uptake in tomato and eggplant seedlings. Sci Hortic 94:145–156

Kennedy AC, Smith KL (1995) Soil microbial diversity and the sustainability of agricultural soils. Plant Soil 170:75–86

Khaosaad T, García-Garrido JM, Steinkellner S, Vierheilig H (2007) Take-all disease is systemically reduced in roots of mycorrhizal barley plants. Soil Biol Biochem 39:727–734

Kiers ET, Duhamel M, Beesetty Y, Mensah JA, Franken O, Verbruggen E, Fellbaum CR, Kowalchuk GA, Hart MM, Bago A, Palmer TM, West SA, Vandeenkoornhuyse P, Jansa J, Bücking H (2011) Reciprocal rewards stabilize cooperation in the mycorrhizal symbiosis. Science 333:880–882

Kloepper JW, Zablotowick RM, Tipping EM, Lifshitz R (1991) Plant growth promotion mediated by bacterial rhizosphere colonizers. In: Keister DL, Cregan PB (eds) The rhizosphere and plant growth. Kluwer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 315–326

Kobra N, Jalil K, Youbert G (2009) Effects of three *Glomus* species as biocontrol agents against verticillium-induced wilt in cotton. J Plant Prot Res 49:185–189

Koricheva J, Gange AC, Jones T (2009) Effects of mycorrhizal fungi on insect herbivores: a meta-analysis. Ecology 90:2088–2097

Lambais MR (2000) Regulation of plant defence-related genes in arbuscular mycorrhizae. In: Podila GK, Douds DD (eds) Current advances in mycorrhizae research. APS Press, St. Paul, MN, pp 45–59

Lambais MR, Mehdy MC (1993) Suppression of endochitinase, β-1,3-endoglucanase, and chalcone isomerase expression in bean vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal roots under different soil phosphate conditions. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 6:75–83

Lanfranco L, Novero M, Bonfante P (2005) The mycorrhizal fungus *Gigaspora margarita* possesses a Cu Zn superoxide dismutase that is up-regulated during symbiosis with legume hosts. Plant Physiol 137:1319–1330

Lee CS, Lee YJ, Jeun YC (2005) Observations of infection structures on the leaves of cucumber plants pre-treated with arbuscular mycorrhiza *Glomus intraradices* after challenge inoculation with *Colletotrichum orbiculare*. Plant Pathol 21:237–243

Lendzemo VW, Kuyper TW, Matusova R, Bouwmeester HJ, van Ast A (2007) Colonization by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi of sorghum leads to reduced germination and subsequent attachment and emergence of *Striga hermonthica*. Plant Signal Behav 2:58–62

Liu J, Maldonado-Mendoza I, Lopez-Meyer M, Cheung F, Town CD, Harrison MJ (2007) Arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis is accompanied by local and systemic alterations in gene expression and an increase in disease resistance in the shoots. Plant J 50:529–544

Lopez-Raez JA, Verhage A, Fernández I, García JM, Azcón-aguilar C, Flors V, Pozo MJ (2010a) Hormonal and transcriptional profiles highlight common and differential host responses to arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and the regulation of the oxylipin pathway. J Exp Bot 61:2589–2601

Lopez-Raez JA, Flors V, García JM, Pozo MJ (2010b) AM symbiosis alters phenolic acid content in tomato roots. Plant Signal Behav 5:1138–1140

Lopez-Raez JA, Bouwmeester H, Pozo MJ (2012) Communication in the rhizosphere, a target for pest management. In: Lichtfouse E (ed) Agroecology and strategies for climate change. Springer, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 109–133

Lynch JM (1990) The rhizosphere. Wiley, Chichester

Martín-Rodríguez JA, Molinero-Rosales N, Tarkowská D, Ruíz-Rivero O, García-Garrido JM (2015) Role of gibberellins during arbuscular mycorrhizal formation in tomato: new insights revealed by endogenous quantification and genetic analysis of their metabolism in mycorrhizal roots. Physiol Plant 154:66–81

Matsubara Y, Tamura H, Harada T (1995) Growth enhancement and Verticillium wilt control by vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus inoculation in eggplant. J Jpn Soc Hortic Sci 64:555–561

Meyer JR, Linderman RG (1986) Selective influence on populations of rhizosphere or rhizoplane bacteria and actinomycetes by mycorrhizas formed by *Glomus fasciculatum*. Soil Biol Biochem 18:191–196

Morandi D (1989) Effect of xenobiotics on endomycorrhizal infection and isoflavonoid accumulation in soybean roots. Plant Physiol Biochem 27:697–701

Morandi D, Bailey JA, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (1984) Isoflavonoid accumulation in soybean roots infected with vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Physiol Plant Pathol 24:357–364

Morcillo RJF, Ocampo JA, García-Garrido JM (2012) Plant 9-lox oxylipin metabolism to arbuscular mycorrhiza. Plant Signal Behav 7:1584–1588

Mukerji K, Ciancio A (2007) Mycorrhizae in the integrated pest and disease management. In: Mukerji KG, Cianio A (eds) General concepts in integrated pest and disease management. Springer, Berlin, pp 245–266

Newsham KK, Fitter AH, Watkinson AR (1995) Multi-functionality and biodiversity in arbuscular mycorrhizas. Trends Ecol Evol 10:407–411

Norman JR, Atkinson D, Hooker JE (1996) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal induced alteration to root architecture in strawberry and induced resistance to the root pathogen *Phytophthora fragariae*. Plant Soil 185:191–198

Olah B, Briere C, Becard G, Denarie J, Gough C (2005) Nod factors and a diffusible factor from arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi stimulate lateral root formation in *Medicago truncatula* via the DMI1/DMI2 signalling pathway. Plant J 44:195–207

Parniske M (2008) Arbuscular mycorrhiza: the mother of plant root endosymbioses. Nat Rev Microbiol 6:763–775

Paszkowski U, Kroken S, Roux C, Briggs SP (2002) Rice phosphate transporters include an evolutionarily divergent gene specifically activated in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:13324–13329

Pearson JN, Jakobsen I (1993) Symbiotic exchange of carbon and phosphorus between cucumber and three arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. New Phytol 124:48–488

Péret B, Svistoonoff S, Laplaze L (2009) When plants socialize: symbioses and root development. In: Beeckman T (ed) Root development. Blackwell, Oxford, UK, pp 209–238

Pozo MJ, Azcón-Aguilar C (2007) Unravelling mycorrhiza induced resistance. Curr Opin Plant Biol 10:393–398

Pozo MJ, Azcón-Aguilar C, Dumas-Gaudot E, Barea JM (1998) Chitosanase and chitinase activities in tomato roots during interactions with arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi or *Phytophthora parasitica*. J Exp Bot 49:1729–1739

Pozo MJ, Azcón-Aguilar C, Dumas-Gaudot E, Barea JM (1999) β-1,3-Glucanase activities in tomato roots inoculated with arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and/or *Phytophthora parasitica* and their possible involvement in bioprotection. Plant Sci 141:149–157

Pozo MJ, Cordier C, Dumas-gaudot E, Gianinazzi S, Barea JM, Azcón-aguilar C (2002) Localized versus systemic effect of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on defense responses to *Phytophthora* infection in tomato plants. J Exp Bot 53:525–534

Pozo MJ, Verhage A, García-andrade J, García JM, Azcón-aguilar C (2009) Priming plant defence against pathogens by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. In: Barea JM, Gianinazzi S, Gianinazzi-Pearson V, Azcón-Aguilar C (eds) Mycorrhizas-functional processes and ecological impact. Springer, Berlin, pp 123–135

Pozo MJ, Jung SC, Martínez-Medina A, López-Ráez JA, Azcón-Aguilar C, Barea JM (2013) Root allies: arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi help plants to cope with biotic stresses. In: Aroca R (ed) Symbiotic endopyhtes. Springer, Berlin, pp 289–307

Pozo MJ, López-Ráez JA, Azcón-Aguilar C, García-Garrido JM (2015) Phytohormones as integrators of environmental signals in the regulation of mycorrhizal symbioses. New Phytol 205:1431–1436

Rillig MC, Mummey DL (2006) Mycorrhizas and soil structure. New Phytol 171:41–53

Rodríguez Y, Pérez E, Solórzano E, Meneses AR, Fernández F (2001) Peroxidase and polyphenoloxidase activities in tomato roots inoculated with *Glomus clarum* or *Glomus fasciculatum*. Cultiv Trop 22:11–16

Rosendahl S, Dodd JC, Walker C (1994) Taxonomy and phylogeny of the *Glomales*. In: Gianinazzi S, Schüepp H (eds) Impact of arbuscular mycorrhizas on sustainable agriculture and natural ecosystems. Birkhäuser, Basel, Switzerland, pp 1–12

Ruiz-Lozano JM, Porcel R, Azcón R, Aroca R (2012) Regulation by arbuscular mycorrhizae of the integrated physiological response to salinity in plants: new challenges in physiological and molecular studies. J Exp Bot 63:4033–4044

Ruyter-Spira C, Al-Babili S, van der Krol S, Bouwmeester H (2013) The biology of strigolactones. Trends Plant Sci 18:72–83

Salzer P, Boller T (2000) Elicitor-induced reactions in mycorrhizae and their suppression. In: Podila GK, Douds DD (eds) Current advances in mycorrhizae research. APS Press, St. Paul, MN, pp 1–10

Salzer P, Corbière H, Boller T (1999) Hydrogen peroxide accumulation in *Medicago truncatula* roots colonized by the arbuscular mycorrhiza-forming fungus *Glomus mosseae*. Planta 208:319–325

Salzer P, Bonanomi A, Beyer K, Vögeli-Lange R, Aeschbacher RA, Lang J, Wiemken A, Kim D, Cook DR, Boller T (2000) Differential expression of eight chitinase genes in *Medicago truncatula* roots during mycorrhiza formation, nodulation and pathogen infection. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 13:763–777

Schliemann W, Ammer C, Strack D (2008) Metabolite profiling of mycorrhizal roots of *Medicago truncatula*. Phytochemistry 69:112–146

Selosse MA, Bessis A, Pozo MJ (2014) Microbial priming of plant and animal immunity: symbionts as developmental signals. Trends Microbiol 22:607–613

Shaul O, Galili S, Volpin H, Ginzberg I, Elad Y, Chet I, Kapulnik Y (1999) Mycorrhiza-induced changes in disease severity and PR protein expression in tobacco leaves. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 12:1000–1007

Smith GS (1987) Interactions of nematodes with mycorrhizal fungi. In: Veech JA, Dickon DW (eds) Vistas on nematology. Society of Nematology, Hyattsville, pp 292–300

Smith SE, Read DJ (2008) Mycorrhizal symbioses, 2nd edn. Academic, London

Smith SE, Smith FA (2011) Roles of arbuscular mycorrhizas in plant nutrition and growth: new paradigms from cellular to ecosystem scales. Annu Rev Plant Biol 62:227–250

Smith SE, Facelli E, Suzanne P, Smith FA (2010) Plant performance in stressful environments: interpreting new and established knowledge of the roles of arbuscular mycorrhizas. Plant Soil 326:3–20

Smith SE, Jakobsen I, Grønlund M, Smith FA (2011) Roles of arbuscular mycorrhizas in plant phosphorus nutrition: interactions between pathways of phosphorus uptake in arbuscular mycorrhizal roots have important implications for understanding and manipulating plant phosphorus acquisition. Plant Physiol 156:1050–1057

Song YY, Zeng RS, Xu JF, Li J, Shen X, Yihdego WG (2010) Interplant communication of tomato plants through underground common mycorrhizal networks. PLoS One 5:e13324

Song YY, Ye M, Li CY, Wang RL, Wei XC, Luo SM, Zeng RS (2012) Priming of anti-herbivore defense in tomato by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus and involvement of the jasmonate pathway. J Chem Ecol 39:1036–1044

Spanu P, Bonfante-Fasolo P (1988) Cell-wall-bound peroxidase activity in roots of mycorrhizal *Allium porrum*. New Phytol 109:119–124

St-Arnaud M, Hamel C, Caron M, Fortin JA (1994) Inhibition of *Pythium ultimum* in roots and growth substrate of mycorrhizal *Tagetes patula* colonized with *Glomus intraradices*. Can J Plant Pathol 16:187–194

Strack D, Fester T (2006) Isoprenoid metabolism and plastid reorganization in arbuscular mycorrhizal roots. New Phytol 172:22–34

Strack D, Fester T, Hause B, Schliemann W, Walter MH (2003) Arbuscular mycorrhiza: biological, chemical and molecular aspects. J Chem Ecol 29:1955–1979

Tejeda-Sartorius M, Martínez de la Vega O, Délano-Frier JP (2008) Jasmonic acid influences mycorrhizal colonization in tomato plants by modifying the expression of genes involved in carbohydrate partitioning. Physiol Plant 133:339–353

Thomma BP, Nürnberger T, Joosten MH (2011) Of PAMPs and effectors: the blurred PTI-ETI dichotomy. Plant Cell 23:4–15

Vafadar F, Amooaghaie R, Otroshy M (2014) Effects of plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus on plant growth, stevioside, NPK, and chlorophyll content of *Stevia rebaudiana*. J Plant Interact 9:128–136

van Wees SCM, Van der Ent S, Pieterse CMJ (2008) Plant immune responses triggered by beneficial microbes. Curr Opin Plant Biol 11:443–448

Vierheilig H, Piché Y (2002) Signalling in arbuscular mycorrhiza: facts and hypotheses. In: Buslig B, Manthey J (eds) Flavonoids in cell functions. Kluwer, New York, pp 23–39

Vierheilig H, Knoblauch M, Juergensen K, van Bel AJE, Grundler FMW, Piché Y (2001) Imaging arbuscular mycorrhizal structures in living of *Nicotiana tabacum* by light, epifluorescence and confocal laser scanning microscopy. Can J Bot 79:231–237

Vigo C, Norma JR, Hooker JE (2000) Biocontrol of the pathogen *Phytophthora parasitica* by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi is a consequence of effects on infection loci. Plant Pathol 49:509–514

Volpin H, Elkind Y, Okon Y, Kapulnik Y (1994) A vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus intraradices* induces, a defence response in alfalfa roots. Plant Physiol 104:683–689

Volpin H, Phillips DA, Oken Y, Kapulnik Y (1995) Suppression of an isoflavonoid phytoalexin defense response in mycorrhizal alfalfa roots. Plant Physiol 104:1449–1454

Whipps JM (2004) Prospects and limitations for mycorrhizas in biocontrol of root pathogens. Can J Bot 82:1198–1227

Wyss P, Boller T, Wiemken A (1991) Phytoalexin response is elicited by a pathogen (*Rhizoctonia solani*) but not by a mycorrhizal fungus (*Glomus mosseae*) in soybean roots. Experientia 47:395–399

Xun F, Xie B, Liu S, Guo C (2015) Effect of plant growth-promoting bacteria (PGPR) and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) inoculation on oats in saline-alkali soil contaminated by petroleum to enhance phytoremediation. Environ Sci Pollut Res Int 22:598–608

Younesi O, Moradi A, Namdari A (2013) Influence of arbuscular mycorrhiza on osmotic adjustment compounds and antioxidant enzyme activity in nodules of salt-stressed soybean (*Glycine max*). Acta Agric Slov 101:219–230

Potential of *Bacillus thuringiensis* in the Management of Pernicious Lepidopteran Pests

Md. Aslam Khan, Bishwajeet Paul, Wasim Ahmad, Sangeeta Paul, Chetana Aggarwal, Zehra Khan, and Mohd. Sayeed Akhtar

Abstract Microbial products have a long history of safe use and most of the microbial agents are compatible with other methods of pest control. A number of microbial biopesticides have been registered for field application on various vegetables, fruits, and other crops of agricultural, horticultural, and forest importance. During sporulation phase, *Bacillus thuringiensis* accumulates certain insecticidal crystal proteins which are pathogenic to a number of insect orders. Thousands of toxicogenic strains of *B. thuringiensis* exist and each strain produces its own unique well-known insecticidal crystal protein. *B. thuringiensis* is biodegradable and safe to nontarget organisms as the conditions required for complex steps in the mode of action do not exist in mammals or most of invertebrates. Development of agricultural crop varieties that contain *B. thuringiensis* proteins provides a safe alternative to the use of chemical insecticides. Tobacco and tomato were the first transgenic plants encoding for *B. thuringiensis* insecticidal crystal protein. The development of resistance to *B. thuringiensis* toxins is, however, particularly unfortunate. Thousands of *B. thuringiensis* isolates are available around the world, and fortunately almost all the major insect pests are susceptible to these strains. Moreover synthetic insecticides in combination with biopesticides are economic,

M.A. Khan (✉) • Z. Khan
Biology Department, Faculty of Science, Jazan University, Jazan, Saudi Arabia
e-mail: mdaslam30@gmail.com

B. Paul
Division of Entomology, Indian Agricultural Research Institute, New Delhi 110012, India

W. Ahmad
Section of Nematology, Department of Zoology, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh 202002, India

S. Paul • C. Aggarwal
Division of Microbiology, Indian Agricultural Research Institute, New Delhi 110012, India

M.S. Akhtar (✉)
Department of Botany, Gandhi Faiz-E-Aam College, Shahjahanpur 242001, Uttar Pradesh, India

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_13

effective, and eco-friendly. The aim of this chapter is to focus on the potentiality of *B. thuringiensis* in the management of pernicious lepidopteran pests and their mode of their interactions to develop the cost-effective medium for the formulation of biopesticides.

Keywords *B. thuringiensis* • Insecticidal crystal proteins • Lepidoptera

1 Introduction

It is a well-established fact that weather, insects, and plant diseases affect agricultural products. The integration between the two out of the three and sometimes among all the three is so complicated that it becomes difficult to determine the actual origin of the trouble. In India alone, 30 % of the crop yield potential is lost as a result of insects, disease, and weeds, corresponding to 30 million tons of food grain (Koul 2011). Insects are one of the main natural hazards to any agricultural products and comprise a remarkable group in animal kingdom, accounting 70 % of all the animals present in this universe. Damage caused by them in one or the other way is incompatible, and to estimate, it is really a hard nut to crack. It may be safely stated that next to the vagaries of climate, insects aggravate the farmer's problem the world over. The human desire to control insects has existed about as long as humans themselves have. As the world's population increases, the need to keep away insects from destroying food crops becomes even more urgent. An estimated one third of global agricultural production valued at several billion dollars is destroyed annually by over 20,000 species of insect pests in field and storage (Mariapackiam and Ignacimuthu 2008).

During ancient time, insect pest control has been practiced in various manners. Greek philosopher Homer reported the use of sulfur for fumigation and other pest control uses (1000 B.C.). Pliny the Elder reported pest control practices from Greek literature (70 A.D.) including the use of pepper, tobacco extracts, soapy water, vinegar, turpentine, fish oil, brine, etc. After World War II, the Green Revolution provided great agricultural advantages via the use of agrochemicals, chemical fertilizers, highly productive cultivars, and mechanization. The result was a considerable decrease in a great variety of insect populations, and as a consequence, synthetic insecticidal compounds became popular due to the long residual action and the wide toxicity spectrum. However, synthetic chemical insecticides appeared fully in 1940, when organochlorinated and organophosphate insecticides were discovered. These insecticides were applied during all growing seasons to attack all the developmental stages of insect pests.

One of the most spectacular episodes of insect control began in 1945–1946 with the commercial introduction of the synthetic insecticides like DDT. With the discovery of organochlorines, organophosphorus, organocarbamates, and synthetic pyrethroids, chemical insecticides have been the backbone of insect control. Human

attempts at insect control have changed over time from synthetic chemical control to natural methods, to overcome the demerits associated with synthetic chemical insecticides. Serious environmental and health issues began to be recognized by the presence of chemical residues in food, water, and air. Long-term exposure to these synthetic insecticides, like DDT, has been associated with cancer, liver damage, immunotoxicity, birth defects, and reproductive problems in humans and other animals (Kegley and Wise 1998). Moreover when an insecticide is repeatedly applied against a population, unaffected individuals survive to pass their genes on to following generations. Over time, a greater and greater proportion of the insect population is unaffected by that insecticide. Unfortunately insects have developed resistance to most of the synthetic chemical insecticides that are used widely. In 1979, the United Nations Environmental Programme declared pesticide resistance "one of the world's most serious environmental problem." Its seriousness to the environment has posed a burning and alarming situation from documented adverse effects on the beneficial insects, wildlife, spread of disease by resistant insects, and addition to the environment of new and potentially dangerous insecticides to which pests have already gained resistance (Pimentel and Burgess 1985).

With the growing realization of hazards and side effects associated with the extensive and indiscriminate use of pesticides, entomologists have adopted a new concept of pest control, termed as integrated pest management (IPM) which refers to a system that utilizes all suitable techniques and methods in as compatible manner as possible and maintain the pest population at levels below those causing economic threshold (Mahtur and Kishor 1987). In this context, the role of biocontrol agents, viz., predators, parasitoids, and microbes, needs no emphasis due to their specificity, effectiveness, and safety to nontargeted organisms besides the other components in relation to man and biosphere.

Microbial products have a long history of safe use, and most of the microbial agents are compatible with other methods of pest control. In recent years, entomologists are leaning their attention on the exploration of microbial agents including bacteria, virus, fungi, nematode, and protozoa for pest suppression. Facultative pathogens of some insect species are commonly used as a biopesticide or microbial control agent. Interestingly, some of them have been widely tested and proved very effective against pernicious insect pests of agricultural crops. In certain developing and developed countries, a number of microbial biopesticides have been registered for field application on various vegetables, fruits, and other crops of agricultural, horticultural, and forest importance.

Of the large number of microbial species belonging to all the major groups like bacteria, virus, fungi, and nematode, the bacterial pathogens have been exploited the most and are recommended as potential biocontrol agent for the control of major insect pests. Bacteria are prokaryotic, unicellular organisms varying in size from less than 1 μm to several μm in length along with spherical, spiral, and rod shaped. Most of the insect pathogenic bacteria occur under the families *Bacillaceae*, *Pseudomonadaceae*, *Enterobacteriaceae*, and *Streptococcaceae* (Kalha et al. 2014). Members of *Bacillaceae*, particularly *Bacillus* spp., have received maximum attention as microbial control agents. *Bacillus thuringiensis*

Berliner, which occupied 90 % of the world biopesticide market, is pathogenic to more than 525 insect species belonging to various orders, but mainly to Lepidoptera, Diptera, Coleoptera, and Hymenoptera (Jayaraj 1986). The aim of this chapter is to focus on the potentiality of *B. thuringiensis* in the management of pernicious lepidopteran pests and their mode of their interactions to develop the cost-effective medium for the formulation of biopesticides.

2 *Bacillus thuringiensis*

B. thuringiensis is a rod-shaped, gram-positive, spore-forming, aerobic common soil bacterium and was first discovered in Japan in 1901 by Ishiwata and then in 1911 in Germany by Berliner (Baum et al. 1999). It is distributed worldwide in soil, stored products, insects, insect-breeding environments, and the phylloplane (Hofte and Whiteley 1989). Vegetative cells of *B. thuringiensis* are 0.2–5 μm in size with peritrichous flagella. They divide by binary fission and frequently occur in chains. During sporulation phase of growth, this bacterium accumulates certain insecticidal crystal proteins (ICPs)/δ-endotoxin. These proteins accumulate as inclusion bodies in the mother cell compartment and are finally released to the environment along with the spore at the end of sporulation. Some ICPs have toxicity at par with that of widely used organophosphate pesticides. Unlike organophosphates, which are quite general in their effects, *B. thuringiensis* ICPs are very specific to certain harmful insects and are therefore safe to most beneficial insects and other animals. Additionally, *B. thuringiensis* toxins are biodegradable and do not persist in the environment (Van Frankenhuyzen 1993). Owing to its greater effectiveness to defoliating lepidopterans, a worldwide recognition has been given to this bacterium.

The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) has exempted from tolerance several *B. thuringiensis* ICPs for introduction into agricultural crops to control insect pests. These tolerance exemptions were based on the extensive safety data on history of safe use of microbial pesticide formulations containing *B. thuringiensis* proteins. ICPs were also subjected to safety testing to confirm that they posed no meaningful risks to mammals, especially human being. None of the incidents are attributable to exposure to the proteins produced by *B. thuringiensis* (EPA 1988).

The first record of its application to control insects was in Hungary at the end of 1920, and in Yugoslavia at the beginning of the 1930s, it was applied to control the European corn borer. During the following two decades, several field tests were conducted to evaluate its effectiveness against lepidopterans, both in Europe and in the United States (Ceron 2001), and results favored the development of formulations against on this pathogen. Subsequently, the first commercial product was produced in 1938 by Libec in France (Aronson et al. 1986) and in the 1950s in the United States. The first product of *B. thuringiensis* was registered in 1961; since then bacterium has been applied continuously for an expending number of uses in agriculture, forestry, and control of insect vector. Now there are many countries like the United States, France, Germany, Russia, etc. where *B. thuringiensis* has

been registered under the different trade names for the control of insect pests. Thousands of toxicogenic strains of *B. thuringiensis* exist (Lereclus et al. 1993), and each strain produces its own unique insecticidal crystal protein which is encoded by a single gene on a plasmid in the bacterium. The insecticidal activity of the toxins from each strain is also known to vary widely. In addition to that, there is often a considerable diversity of such activity within a single strain. The medium on which a bacterial strain is grown also affects the toxicity of the pathogen (Srivastava and Ramakrishnan 1980). There are several other factors, viz., pH of the gut, stage, age, feeding habit of the insect, method of application, exposure period, and environmental conditions, which determine the pathogenic effects of the bacterium against the particular insect species.

There are 34 recognized subspecies of *B. thuringiensis* with two distinct groups of toxin proteins, *Cry* (crystal delta-endotoxins) and *Cyt* (cytolysins), pathogenic to insect pests (Schnepf et al. 1998). *Cry* proteins are named according to their amino acids similarity to established holotype proteins (Crickmore et al. 1995). In general, commercially available *B. thuringiensis* products are of two types. The predominant type is *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki*. Since early 1960, these have been sold under several trade names like Dipel, Biobit, Bactospeine, Thuricide, Delfin, etc. for the control of a number of lepidopteran pests of important field crops, forest trees, vegetable crops, and ornamentals. In the late 1970s, another *B. thuringiensis* product based on *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *israelensis* was introduced for the control of a number of dipteran, including the vectors of human diseases like mosquito and flies. These products are sold under various trade names like Tekhnar, VectoBac, etc. (Lee et al. 1998).

In the 1980s, commercial interest in *B. thuringiensis* grew very rapidly as many popular synthetic insecticides became ineffective due to insect resistance or became unusable due to environmental restrictions and also as the field of genetic engineering emerged. The first report of genes insertion, encoding for *B. thuringiensis* δ-endotoxins into plants, came in 1987 with a tag on tobacco and tomato to be the first transgenic plants (Van Frankenhuyzen 1993). Development of agricultural crop varieties that contain *B. thuringiensis* proteins provides a safe alternative to the use of chemical insecticides. Many lepidopterans bore into the stalk of the plants and destroy its structural integrity. In the stalk, the pest is relatively safe from pesticide application. The engineering of plants to express *B. thuringiensis* δ-endotoxins has been especially helpful against pests that attack parts of the plant that are usually not well protected by conventional insecticide applications. Using *B. thuringiensis* in the form of transgenic crops is now very common. Such crops have also been commercialized and are in wide use. Most of the transgenic are in major crop plants such as cotton, corn, rice, potato, soybean, tobacco, and tomato (Perlak et al. 1990; Jenkins et al. 1993). The discovery of *Bt.* with new insecticidal spectra and the advent of recombinant DNA technology have led to a substantial increase in the number of *B. thuringiensis* products available for pest control. At present more than 100 *B. thuringiensis* insecticidal formulations (based on naturally occurring isolates) are available. We have summarized some of them in tabular form (Table 1).

Table 1 Classification of insecticidal crystal proteins (ICPs) from *B. thuringiensis* (Source: Lee et al. 1998)

Old name	New name	Host range	Mass (kDa)
CryIA (a)	*Cry1Aa*	Lepidopteran	133.5
CryIA (b)	*Cry1Ab*	Lepidopteran	131.0
CryIA (c)	*Cry1Ac*	Lepidopteran	133.3
CryIB	*Cry1Ba*	Lepidopteran	138.0
CryIC (a)	*Cry1ca*	Lepidopteran	134.8
CryIC (b)	*Cry1Cb*	Lepidopteran	134.0
CryID	*Cry1Da*	Lepidopteran	132.5
CryIF	*Cry1Fa*	Lepidopteran	133.6
CryIG	*Cry9Aa*	Lepidopteran	129.7
CryIIA	*Cry2Aa*	Lepidopteran/dipteran	70.9
CryIIB	*Cry2Ab*	Lepidopteran	70.8
CryIIIA	*Cry3Aa*	Coleopteran	73.1
CryIIIB	*Cry3Ba*	Coleopteran	74.2
CryIIIC	*Cry7Aa*	Coleopteran	74.4
CryIIID	*Cry3Ca*	Coleopteran	73.8
CryIVA	*Cry4Aa*	Dipteran	134.4
CryIVB	*Cry4Ba*	Dipteran	127.8
CryIVC	*Cry10Aa*	Dipteran	77.8
CryIVD	*Cry11Aa*	Dipteran	72.4
CryV	*Cry11b*	Coleopteran/lepidopteran	81.2
CytA	*Cyt1Aa*	Dipteran/cytolytic	27.4
CytB	*Cyt2aA*	Dipteran/cytolytic	29.2

The development of resistance to *B. thuringiensis* toxins is, however, particularly unfortunate. If *B. thuringiensis*-based products become ineffective due to resistance, organic farmers would lose this irreplaceable resource (McGaughey et al. 1998). In 1985, the first evidence of resistance developing in the field against *B. thuringiensis* δ-endotoxin was published. Low levels of resistance was found in *Plodia interpunctella* (Hubner), the Indian meal moth, in storage bins of *B. thuringiensis*-treated grain. Prior to this, *B. thuringiensis* δ-endotoxin resistance had been seen in neither the field nor the lab, though attempts were made to select for resistance in laboratory populations (McGaughey 1985). In 1990, *Plutella xylostella* (L.) was found to be losing susceptibility to *B. thuringiensis* toxin in Hawaii, Florida, and New York. In *P. xylostella* the resistance was detected after intensive use of these insecticides in several other countries, including Japan, China, the Philippines, and Thailand (Liu and Tabashnik 1997).

About 20 years after *B. thuringiensis* resistance was discovered in *P. interpunctella*, *B. thuringiensis* resistance has been reported in laboratory populations of a total of 13 insect species. Eleven of these species have developed resistance to various strains of *B. thuringiensis* toxin in the laboratory but not in the field (Tabashnik et al. 1994; Gould et al. 1997; Wirth et al. 1997; Huang et al. 1999; Liu et al. 1999).

These laboratory studies show that the potential to develop resistance is real. To overcome the resistance problem in *B. thuringiensis*-based biopesticides, it is necessary to minimize the uses of similar *B. thuringiensis* strains or even different strains having the same mode of actions against a particular insect pest.

2.1 *History of* B. thuringiensis

B. thuringiensis was isolated as early as 1911 by Berliner from the diseased larvae of Mediterranean flour moth *Anagasta kuehniella* Zeller (Faust 1974). The events of pioneering research of Steinhaus (1951) on *B. thuringiensis* and a growing realization that the organic insecticides were deleterious to the environment and human health spurred a renewed interest in *B. thuringiensis* in the early 1960s. Hannay (1953) reported a crystalline body formed at sporulation in the cells of *B. thuringiensis* and suggested it might be associated with the insecticidal activity of this bacterium. Angus (1954) demonstrated that the crystal contained an alkaline soluble toxin for insects. In 1962, Edouard Kurstak isolated another subspecies of *B. thuringiensis* from diseased *A. kuehniella* larva from a floor mill at Bures-sur-Yvette near Paris in France (Kurstak 1962). Heimpel (1967) named this agent the δ-endotoxin and reported that the effectiveness of *B. thuringiensis* depends on the presence of this toxin, and bacterial spore count is not a reliable index of potency. In 1970, Dulmage isolated a new strain of *B. thuringiensis* var. *alesti* from diseased pink bollworm, *Pectinophora gossypiella* (Saunders) larvae, at the Southwestern Cotton Insects Investigations Laboratory at Brownsville, Texas, and he designated this strain as HD-1 (Dulmage 1970). It has a high insecticidal activity. Later on, different types of biopesticide based on *B. thuringiensis* were introduced into the market. Simultaneously, intensive screening programs were undertaken in western countries to find out new strains of *B. thuringiensis* that could kill wider spectrum of insects. Cabbage looper, *Trichoplusia ni*, is used in the standardization of preparations of *B. thuringiensis*, and the potency of the pathogen is expressed in international unit (IU)/mg. Earlier in the use of conventional *B. thuringiensis* insecticides, there were some limitations like narrow specificity, short shelf life, low potency, lack of systematic activity, and the presence of viable spores. To some extent these problems are now being tackled by various molecular and genetic engineering approaches along with the conventional microbiological methods (Dov-Ben et al. 1995). Now, thousands of *B. thuringiensis* isolates are available around the world, and fortunately almost all the major insect pests are susceptible to these strains.

2.2 *Role of* B. thuringiensis *in Agriculture*

B. thuringiensis strains have attracted worldwide interest in various pest management applications because of their specific pesticide activities. It is the most widely used commercially successful biological control agents in different forms (Table 2).

Table 2 Types of *Bt.*-based microbial insecticides formulation

Formulation	Application
Briquettes	Aquatic systems
Emulsions	Agriculture and forestry
Encapsulations	Agriculture and forestry
Granules	Agriculture and forestry
Powders	Forestry
Wettable powders	Agriculture and gardens

δ-endotoxins produced by *B. thuringiensis* have been successfully and safely used against several agricultural and forest pests, as well as in vector control, for decades (Federici et al. 2006). Depending upon the subsp. and strains of the bacterium, it is pathogenic to a number of major insect orders. In India, *B. thuringiensis*-based products are being marketed by various agrochemical industries, whereas new strains are being investigated for development as potential microbial biopesticide (Arora et al. 2000a). Annual worldwide production of *B. thuringiensis* represents about 2 % of the total global insecticide market with worth of approximately $90 million clearly indicating that *B. thuringiensis* is the widely used bacterial pest control agents.

Different *B. thuringiensis* subsp. are known to vary in their efficacy to different insect pests, and even different isolates of the same strain may show variable toxicity against the same species of insect pests (Khan et al. 1995; Adams et al. 1996; Barker 1998). Dulmage (1970) reported an isolate of *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* strain HD-1 that was later produced by Abbott Laboratories as the first major commercial product called as Dipel. Presently subsp. *kurstaki* HD-1-based products are registered for nearly 30 crops against over 100 insect pest species worldwide.

2.3 Toxins Produced by B. thuringiensis

Although *B. thuringiensis* contain four major toxins (α-, β-, and γ-exotoxin and δ-endotoxin), more attention has been paid only to crystalline δ-endotoxin, because of its high toxicity to insect pests of agricultural importance. The α-exotoxin is a proteinaceous, thermolabile toxin that is highly toxic to some insects by oral and intra-hemocoelic inoculations. It is also toxic to mice and other vertebrates. The β-exotoxin or thuringiensin is a thermostable toxin, which kills the insect by per os and parental inoculations. It is formed during vegetative phase of the bacteria and secreted into the medium. Thuringiensin affects a broad spectrum of insect orders like Lepidoptera, Diptera, Coleoptera, Hymenoptera, Isoptera, Orthoptera, Hemiptera, and Neuroptera (Kalha et al. 2014). On the basis of molecular mass, δ-endotoxins may be grouped into two classes: one containing both high- (125–144 kDa, P1) and medium-sized

(60–144 kDa, P2) proteins and a second class consisting of only the high-molecular-weight polypeptides. Structure of δ-endotoxin from *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *tenebrionis* which is especially toxic to coleopterans has been determined by Li et al. (1991) at 2.5 Å resolution.

2.4 *New Strains of* B. thuringiensis

Isolation and characterization of new *B. thuringiensis* strains are needed to discover strains with novel or high insecticidal activities. Intensive screening programs are leading to a broader activity spectrum of toxins as the result of isolation and characterization of new strains with different combinations of crystal proteins, as well as the discovery of new toxins (Silva-Werneck and Ellar 2008). Shojaaddini et al. (2012) isolated a new *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *aizawai* strain EF495116 from a dead *P. interpunctella* larva in Tabriz University, Iran. The strain produced a major parasporal protein band of about 135 kDa and shows toxicity against *P. interpunctella* and *P. xylostella* larvae, with LC_{50} values of 7.13 and 3.1 mg/ml, respectively. Yilmaz et al. (2012) isolated a highly pathogenic *B. thuringiensis* strain SY49.1 from a soil sample in Turkey. This strain harbors several cry genes producing crystalline inclusions known to have toxicity on lepidopteran, dipteran, and coleopteran pests. Ecological distribution of Cry proteins and their genotypes of *B. thuringiensis* isolates from warehouses in China has also been reported by Hongyu et al. (2000). More than 3000 isolates of *B. thuringiensis* from 20 countries have been collected (Stotzky 2002).

2.5 *Classification of* B. thuringiensis *Subspecies*

Different workers have classified *B. thuringiensis* into a large number of subsp., varieties, strains, serotypes, serovars, biovars, pathovars, or cristovars. The subsp. have been differentiated by various methods such as biochemical tests, flagella serology, parasporal body (crystal) antigen, plasmid profiling, and molecular techniques (Adams et al. 1996). DeBarjac and Bonnefoi (1962) developed a key for taxonomic division of *B. thuringiensis*, based on the antigenic properties of the flagella. In 1990, DeBarjac and Franchon revised the classification based on H antigen. The insecticidal proteins of *B. thuringiensis* are grouped in two big families named Cry and Cyt toxins. Lee et al. (1998) classified *B. thuringiensis* Cry proteins as cryl (lepidopteran specific), cryll (lepidopteran and dipteran specific), crylll (coleopteran specific), crylV (dipteran specific), cryV (coleopteran and lepidopteran specific), and cytl and cytll (dipteran and cytolytic). A number of techniques including serotyping, crystal serology, crystal morphology, protein profiles, peptide mapping, DNA probes, and insecticidal activity can be used to characterize a *B. thuringiensis* strain.

2.6 Crystal Protein Genes and Their Classification

Several genes code for various ICPs, produced by *B. thuringiensis*. These genes are usually plasmid borne but are also chromosomally located (Carlson and Kolsto 1993). They are normally present on large plasmids some of which are self-transmissible and often in low copy number. Many of the plasmid borne genes are bordered by transposons and/or insertional sequences. Several *B. thuringiensis* toxin genes have homology in sequence and show similar insecticidal spectrum. However, there are certain genes which are highly homologous but have different insecticidal spectrum. These genes have been sequenced and analyzed. Since the insecticidal activity of *B. thuringiensis* is determined by the cry genes within the host bacterium, cloning and sequencing of cry genes is an obvious key to understanding this relationship.

Based on comparison of the insecticidal spectra, Hofte and Whiteley (1989) organized a classification system for the 42 sequenced genes. Fourteen cry genes were designated holotypes and placed into four major classes: *CryI*, *CryII*, *CryIII*, and *CryIV* (Table 3). Feitselson et al. (1992) analyzed toxin domains of 29 distinct ICPs and added two new major classes, cryV and cryVI. Koni and Ellar (1994) reported a new 27.3 kDa protein, isolated from *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kyushuensis*, and it was named as *cytB*. For classifying the *cry* genes and their protein products, Crickmore et al. (1998) have introduced a systematic nomenclature, based on amino acid sequence of full-length gene products. This shifting from function-based to amino acid sequence-based nomenclature allows closely related toxins to be ranked together. Over the past few years, however, the discovery of new *Cry* proteins with new insecticidal properties shows that the screening programs continue to hold promise for identifying proteins that could prove useful in pest control.

2.7 Structure of Insecticidal Crystal Proteins

Insecticidal crystal proteins, produced during sporulation phase of the bacterium, are bipyramidal with eight similar faces, on which rows of protein molecules are arranged. These crystal proteins comprise three domains, which are from N- to C-terminal, a seven-helix bundle, a three-sheet domain, and a β-sandwich. The bundle of long, hydrophobic, and amphipathic helices is equipped for pore formation in the insect midgut membrane, and the regions of three-sheet domain are probably responsible for receptor binding. Biochemically crystal proteins are insoluble in water, dilute nitric acid, and several common organic solvents, whereas soluble in weak alkaline solutions like sodium carbonate, ammonium carbonate, and sodium hydroxide. Insecticidal crystal proteins contain only protein and silicon, while other constituents like carbohydrate, phosphorus, and fats are altogether absent. Federici et al. (1990) extensively reviewed the biochemical properties along with the toxicity of different crystal protein components.

Table 3 Commercial *B. thuringiensis*-based bioinsecticides (Source: Ninfa and Garcia 2009)

Company	Commercial name	Active ingredient	Target pest
Certis	Agree WG	*B. thuringiensis* v. *aizawai*	Lepidopterans
Certis	Condor	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
Certis	CoStar	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
Certis	Crymax	Genetically engineered *B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki* and *B. thuringiensis* v. *aizawai*	Lepidopterans
Certis	Deliver	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
Certis	Jackpot WP	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
Certis	Javelin/Delfin	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
Certis	Lepinox WDG	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
Certis	Turix WP/Agree WP	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
AFA Environment Inc.	Agribac	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	More than 30 insect species
Valent Biosciences Corp.	Dipel	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
Valent Biosciences Corp.	XenTari	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	*Spodoptera* sp. and *P. xylostella*
Valent Biosciences Corp.	Biobit	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
Valent Biosciences Corp.	Novodor	*B. thuringiensis* v. *tenebrionis*	Coleopterans
Valent Biosciences Corp.	VectoBac	*B. thuringiensis* v. *israelensis*	Mosquito and fly larvae
Valent Biosciences Corp.	Teknar	*B. thuringiensis* v. *israelensis*	Mosquito and black fly larvae
Valent Biosciences Corp.	Gnatrol DG	*B. thuringiensis* v. *israelensis*	Larval stage of sciarid mushroom flies
Valent Biosciences Corp.	Foray	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
Som Phytopharma	Lipel	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
Biotech International	Biolep	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans
Valent Biosciences Corp.[a]	Thuricide	*B. thuringiensis* v. *kurstaki*	Lepidopterans and certain leaf-eating worms

[a]Valent BioSciences has also acquired exclusive marketing rights to Thuricide biological insecticide. Thuricide is a registered trademark of Certis, USA

2.8 Mode of Action

The pathogenic effect of *B. thuringiensis* generally occurs in insects only after ingestion of toxin with food, and target organ is the insect midgut. Upon ingestion by insect crystalline, inclusions are solubilized at high pH in the midgut, releasing δ-endotoxins (protoxins). These toxins are activated by resident protease and bind to receptor proteins localizing on brush border membrane of the larval midgut and form pore on the membrane that lead to insect death (Chang et al. 2001). The main toxicity symptom appears as cessation of feeding followed by gut paralysis. In certain cases, as a result of inhibition of feeding, the insect dies within 2–4 days. However, Contreras et al. (2015) reported that differences in susceptibility to *B. thuringiensis* infection might not only rely on toxin–receptor interaction but also on host defense mechanisms. The toxicity caused by δ-endotoxins is also known to affect the biology of insect pests. Conditions required for complex steps in the mode of action do not exist in mammals or most of invertebrates. Only a relatively small subset of insects has been identified that support this complex series of events that leads to cell death.

3 Preparation of Bacterial Concentration

For seed flasks, prepare 72-h-old nutrient agar slants of *B. thuringiensis* and store them at 4 °C until use. Take loopsful of the bacterial growth from these slants to inoculate 500-ml Erlenmeyer seed flasks containing 100 ml of tryptose phosphate broth that had been autoclaved at 121 °C for 35 min. Incubate these flasks on a rotary shaker at 280 rpm at 32 °C for 24 h. Use 3 % (by volume) of the first-passage seed to inoculate second similar seed flasks and incubate these flasks for 18–24 h at the same conditions. For fermentation flasks, use 2 % of the second-passage seed to inoculate fermentation flasks, and incubate at same conditions on rotary shaker for 3 days (Dulmage 1970) which can be harvested when sporulation and cell lysis are essentially complete, usually at about 72 h. The spore–crystal complex can be harvested by the acetone coprecipitation procedure described by Dulmage et al. (1970) (Fig. 1). The number of viable spores can be determined by first pasteurizing samples for 10 min at 65 °C and then plating them in nutrient agar (Dulmage 1970). However, the required concentrations of the pathogen can be calculated using Pearson's square method. For example, to prepare 0.05 % of spray solution, 0.05 ml of 10 % microbial stock solution and 9.95 ml of DDW is required.

3.1 Cost-Effective Medium for Large-Scale Production

Large-scale production of *B. thuringiensis* is expensive because of the high cost of the raw materials used in the medium. Several workers made attempts to develop a cost-effective medium, based on a locally available raw material. Salama et al.

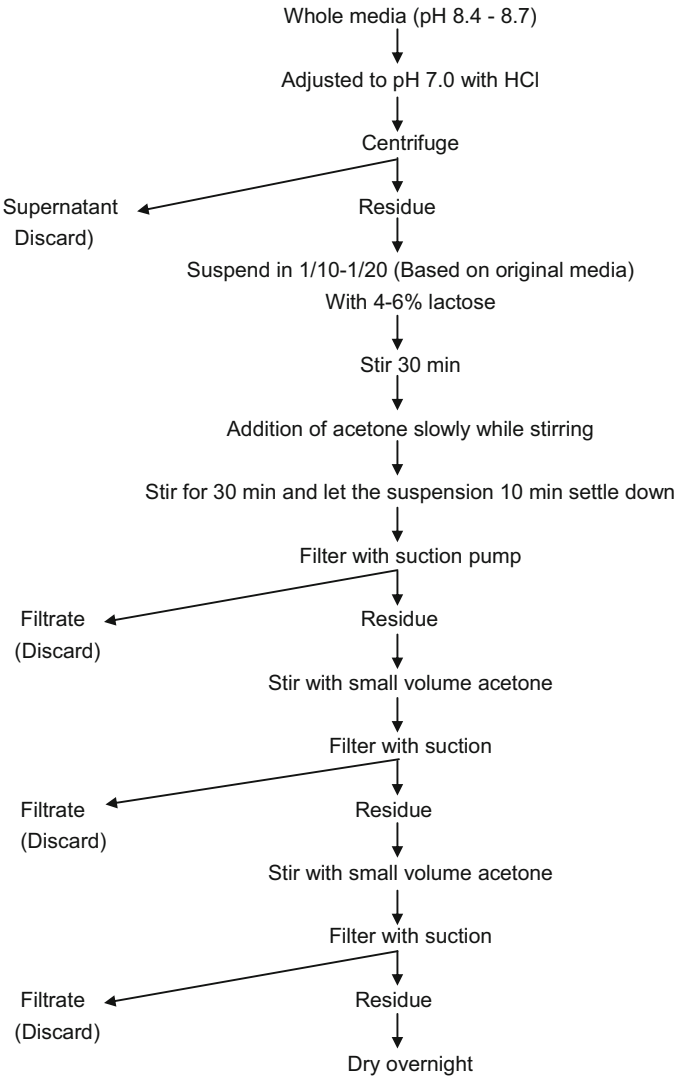


Fig. 1 Flow sheet representation of recovery process for spore–crystal complex (Dulmage et al. 1970)

(1983) used fodder yeast, beef blood, and slaughterhouse residue by-products for yielding good sporulation titers and potent spore–δ-endotoxin preparations. Formulations of subsp. *kurstaki* produced from media containing these nutrients killed 80–100 % of larvae of *H. armigera* when tested at 500 pg/ml diet. Most of the formulations derived from fermentations using leguminous seeds as sole sources of protein also contained high levels of spores and endotoxin. Prabakaran et al. (2008)

reported that coconut water-based culture medium is economical for the production of *B. thuringiensis* var. *israelensis*, widely used in mosquito control programs. Paul et al. (2011) develop an economical medium, based on inexpensive, locally available raw materials. They reported that *Parthenium hysterophorus* L. leaf extract-based culture medium resulted in highest toxicity (LC_{50} 14.628 µg/ml) against 7-day-old *Spodoptera litura* (Fab) larvae. Cost-effective media using locally available raw materials, wheat bran (Vimala Devi et al. 2005), and spent mushroom substrate (Wu et al. 2014) were also reported.

4 Effect of *B. thuringiensis* Against Lepidopteran Pests

Many lepidopteran insects can effectively be controlled by *B. thuringiensis kurstaki* (Nethravathi et al. 2010). *Bt*. spore–crystal mixtures have been successfully used as bioinsecticides against lepidopteran pests. Several workers have reported efficacy of this pathogen against different stages, egg, larva, pupa, and adult (Fig. 2), of lepidopteran pests. By restricting the amount of damage caused by lepidopteran pests to the infested crop, *B. thuringiensis*-based biopesticides have contributed to yield increases in different crops like rice (Kandibane et al. 2010), cauliflower (Justin et al. 2003), corn (Tamez-Guerra et al. 1998), etc. Mortality symptoms among different stages of the pest are shown in Fig. 3.

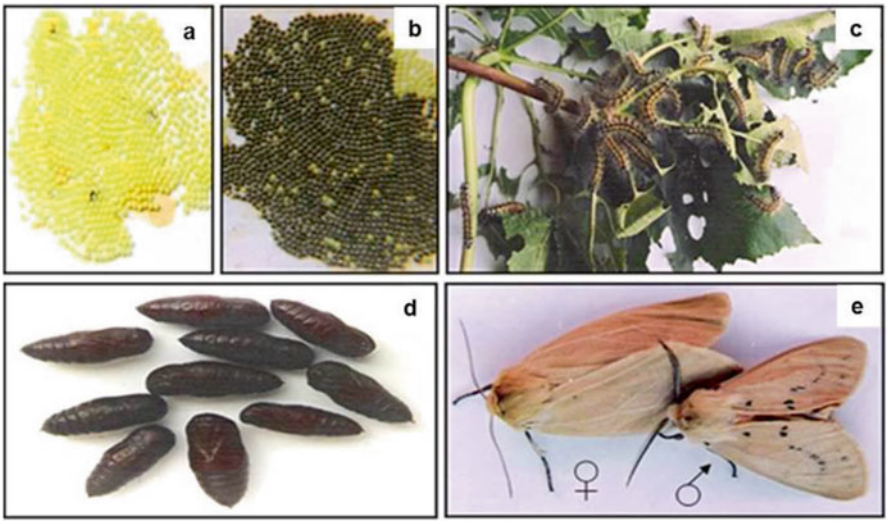


Fig. 2 Various life cycle stages of *Spilarctia obliqua* (Walker) (Lepidoptera: Arctiidae): (**a**) fresh eggs; (**b**) eggs near to hatch; (**c**) 7-day-old larva; (**d**) pupa; (**e**) adult

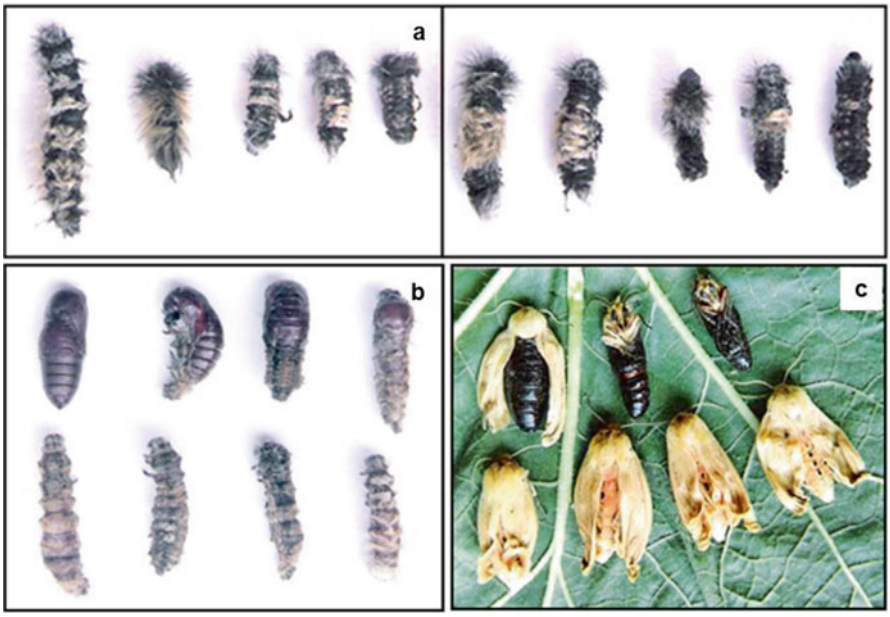


Fig. 3 Mortality symptoms at different stages of *Spilarctia obliqua* (Walker) (Lepidoptera: Arctiidae)

4.1 Larval Mortality

Traditionally the insecticidal activity of *B. thuringiensis* crystal protein has been investigated by using a crude preparation of spore–crystal mixtures. Kulkarni and Amonkar (1988) studied toxicity effects of purified spore–crystal formation from three isolates of *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki*. They revealed that the mixture of spore–crystal formation pronounces 100 % mortality against second instar larvae of pod borer *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hubner). However, spores alone registered 10–20 % larval mortality. Larvae of *Chilo partellus* (Swinhoe) showed >80 % mortality when treated with spore–crystal preparations from *B. thuringiensis* strains (Khanna et al. 1995). Citrus butterfly (*Papilio demoleus* L.) was found to be completely controlled 5 days after application of different concentrations of *B. thuringiensis* (Narayanamma and Savithri 2003).

Cornu et al. (1996) demonstrated that *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* HD-1 and HD-73 strains when tested against *P. xylostella* showed that the cryIA(a) protein of HD-73 is about three times better in toxicity than cry1A(a) from HD-1. *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* strain as S93 was analyzed by Silva-Werneck et al. (1999) for its cry gene and their efficacy against third instar larvae of *Spodoptera frugiperda*. They noticed 12.3-fold lower LC_{50} for the S93 strain when compared with the standard HD-1 strain. Gujar et al. (2004) studied the

susceptibility of *H. armigera* neonates, collected from different crops and locations in north India, against *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* HD-73. They reported that there was a relative influence of host crops on insect susceptibility. *B. thuringiensis* strains K9903 and K9805, from subsp. *kurstaki* and *aizawai*, respectively, were reported as highly biological active against *P. xylostella* and *S. exigua* (Li et al. 2000). Comparative efficacy for two *B. thuringiensis* strains, Toarrow-Ct and Bacilex, was carried out by Adachi and Grey (1996) against *P. xylostella* and reported that the LC_{50} for Toarrow-Ct was 96.0 ppm, whereas, for Bacilex, it was 78.8 ppm. Kat et al. (2005) isolate a *B. thuringiensis* strain (MnD) from lepidopteran insect *Malacosoma neustria* L. They performed the toxicity tests against seven insect species from Lepidoptera, Coleoptera, and Diptera groups and noticed that crystal–spore suspensions show toxicity only against Lepidoptera species, *M. neustria*, *Lymantria dispar* (L.), and *Hyphantria cunea* (Drury). Hernandez-Martınez et al. (2008) evaluated the susceptibility of *S. exigua* larvae to nine toxins from *B. thuringiensis*. They observed that Cry1Ca, Cry1Da, and Cry1Fa were the most effective toxins with all strains.

B. thuringiensis subsp. *kurstaki*-based commercial formulations, viz., Bioasp, Biobit, Biolep, Dipel WP, and Dipel 8L, were evaluated against *P. xylostella* in field trial (Battu et al. 1997). They reported that 7 days after the first spray, Bioasp at 0.075 kg/ha recorded maximum larval mortality (61.1 %). However, 3 days after the second spray, Dipel 8L and Biobit at the same concentration recorded the highest mortality, 90 % and 89.6 %, respectively. Further they mentioned that in comparison chemical insecticides endosulfan and fenvalerate recorded 27.5 % and 32.7 % larval mortality, respectively, at 833 and 250 ml/ha. In another experiment Arora et al. (2000b) observed that *P. xylostella* was effectively controlled by two applications of Dipel 8L, Biolep, and Biobit at 0.75 kg/ha in cauliflower field in Punjab, India, and 5 days after *B. thuringiensis* treatment, the larval mortality was more than 80 % as compared to 53 % in standard fenvalerate. Considerable mortality in *P. xylostella* larvae was also noticed by Chandle and Mane (1994) using another *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki*-based product Agree 50 WP.

Under environmentally controlled conditions, Ajanta et al. (1999) evaluated the effectiveness of commercial formulations from *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki*, viz., Biolep, Biobit, and Dipel, against third instar larvae of *H. armigera* and reported LC_{50} 0.114, 0.211, and 0.213 %, respectively, with an exposure period of 48 h. These all concentration of biopesticides had adverse effect on growth and development of *H. armigera*. Biswas et al. (1994) noticed that Dipel is the most toxic (LC_{50} = 0.08) and acted more rapidly followed by Thuricide and Bactospeine, respectively, against third instar larvae of *S. obliqua*. Gujar et al. (2000) also noticed that HD-1 caused highest mortality to 5-day-old larvae of *H. armigera* (LC_{50} 1.71 a.i. ppm), followed by Biobit and Biolep. Dhawan (1999) suggested that the spray of Thuricide/Biotrol effectively controlled *H. armigera* at 1.25 l/ha. Moreover Biswas et al. (1996) mentioned that Dipel was compatible with synthetic chemical insecticides against *S. obliqua* larvae. Other commercial formulations of subsp. *kurstaki*, viz., Delfin, Halt, Dipel DF, and Biobit, were tested by Gopalakrishnan and Gangavisalakshy (2005) for their field efficacy

against *P. demoleus* on citrus. They reported that five applications of bacterial formulations at 1 kg/ha effectively controlled the larval population of *P. demoleus* on citrus compared with the untreated control. An optimal mixture of molasses and henna minimizes the degradation of *B. thuringiensis* formulations caused by sunlight, and the stability of formulations can also be improved by adding a sugar solution to them (Zareie et al. 2003). Results suggest that *B. thuringiensis* is a potential biopesticide for controlling lepidopteran larvae.

4.2 Larval Growth and Development

Toxins from *B. thuringiensis* are known to effect larval growth and development. Several workers have reported various effects of *B. thuringiensis* toxins on larval development. Larvae of *Achaea janata* (Tiwari and Mehrotra 1980), *S. litura* (Sareen et al. 1983), and *H. armigera* (Gujar et al. 2000) when fed on leaves treated with different concentration of *B. thuringiensis* lost their weight along with prolonged larval period. Retardation in larval growth, prolonged pupal period, and low rate of pupation among *H. armigera* were also reported by Wang et al. (1994) when larvae were fed on diet treated with *B. thuringiensis* at LC_{50} (1.2 µg protein crystal/g). Ma et al. (2008) evaluated the mortality and survival of moth *Ostrinia furnacalis* using crystal protein, Cry1Ac, produced by *B. thuringiensis*. They reported that not only were larval growth and development delayed, but pupation, pupal weight, and adult emergency also decreased when larvae were fed on artificial diet containing purified Cry1Ac toxin. Barker (1998) noticed that larval feeding of banded sunflower moth *Cochylis hospes* Walsingham stopped almost at a sudden when *B. thuringiensis* toxin was present in the diet. Total developmental period from hatching of eggs to pupation was 21.4 ± 0.1 and 33.8 ± 1.1 days, respectively, for control and treated larvae. Weight loss in tobacco budworm *H. virescens* larvae has also been reported by Navon et al. (1992), when larvae were fed upon diet treated with lethal dose, 20 µg/g of *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* strain HD-73, for 24 h. However, the larvae feeding on fresh food attained normal weight. Janmaat et al. (2014) reported that susceptible larvae of *Trichoplusia ni* exhibited reductions in growth and frass production at all tested *B. thuringiensis* concentrations.

Commercial formulations of *B. thuringiensis* were also noticed to effect larval growth. Morris (1973) reported that larvae of forest pests *Lymantria dispar* (L.) when fed at Dipel-treated diet gained weight at a considerably slower rate as compared to the untreated ones. Reduction in larval weight intensified as dosages of microbe were increased. Weight loss caused by *B. thuringiensis* commercial formulations, viz., E-16, Bactospeine, and Dipel, in the case of *A. janata* larvae was also reported by Srivastava (1991). Other formulations, Biobit, Biolep, and Dipel, were evaluated by Chandra et al. (1998) against *H. armigera* at 0.114, 0.211, and 0.212 %, respectively. They noticed an increase in larvae mortality, larval period, and growth inhibition along with decrease in total numbers of pupae, pupal weight, and adult emergence as the doses of *B. thuringiensis* were increased.

4.3 Larval Age/Stage

A critical growth phase, responsible for deformities in the larva, was noticed. Dulmage et al. (1978) assigned this stage between hatch and the third instar in *H. virescens*. Once this stage is over, little difference occurs between treated and control larvae. Different larval instars of *P. xylostella* were tested against *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* at 0.01 % concentration by Singh et al. (2002). They observed the mean percent mortality of 16.67, 53.33, 86.67, and 66.67 % for the first, second, third, and fourth instar larvae, respectively, indicating that the third instar larvae were the most susceptible, whereas first instar larvae were the least. They suggested that the difference could be because of the leaf-mining habit of neonates, greater physiological tolerance of neonates to *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki*, or both. The third instar larvae followed by fourth instar larvae were most susceptible because of voracious feeding habit and consuming more leaf area treated with the insecticide. Highest larval mortality at third instar stage was also reported by Singh et al. (2003) using commercial formulation of *B. thuringiensis*, Biobit and Biolep, respectively.

Valicente and Fonseca (2004) noticed that larval mortality was inversely proportional to the age of *S. frugiperda* larvae treated with *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *tolworthi*. Li and Bouwer (2012) also reported that second instar larvae of *H. armigera* were consistently less susceptible to the evaluated Cry proteins than neonate larvae. Pramanik and Somchoudhury (2002), however, reported that larval mortality was directly proportional to concentration of microbial insecticide and duration of treatment in *S. obliqua*. These differences among observations of various workers may be because of different species of insects or subsp. of microbe used in studies.

4.4 Exposure Period/Time

Dulmage and Martinez (1973) noticed that the constant exposure of *H. virescens* larvae even to sublethal concentration results in heavy mortality at prepupal and pupal stage. Dulmage et al. (1978) observed that the larvae of *H. virescens* exposed to *B. thuringiensis* for a short period could recover completely, although the capacity for recovery decreased as the exposure time or dosage rate (Abdul Sattar and Watson 1982) increased. Fast and Regniere (1984) also reported that the extension of exposure period from 1 day to continuous 6 days resulted in 500-fold reduction in LC_{50} and equivalent reduction in LT_{50} of spruce budworm larvae. Valicente and Fonseca (2004) evaluated different concentrations of *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *tolworthi* against 2-day-old larvae of *S. frugiperda* for 24, 48, and 72 h of exposure. The highest mortality was observed at 72-h exposure. Gupta et al. (2000) stated that in the case of laboratory-prepared *B. thuringiensis* strains, the toxicity symptoms in the larvae of *H. armigera* were noticed only within 24 h, but complete larval mortality, in infected larvae, was observed 120 h after exposure.

A proportional relationship between larval mortality and concentration of *B. thuringiensis* along with time exposure and anti-proportional relationship to the growth of insect was reported by Pramanik and Somchoudhury (2002) in *S. obliqua*. Salama et al. (1981), however, reported that at higher concentration larval mortality was cent per cent irrespective of the exposure period in *S. littoralis* and *H. armigera*. On the contrary Chatterjee and Choudhury (2003) reported a decline in toxicity of *B. thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* and other biopesticides, *Beauveria bassiana* and avermectin, with increase in time against third instar larvae of European cabbageworm *Pieris brassicae*.

4.5 Compatibility of B. thuringiensis *with Chemical Insecticides*

Chemical pesticides are compatible with the bacterium *B. thuringiensis* having little or no effect on spore germination or cell multiplication (Benz 1971). In combination, some additive effects of chemical pesticides have also been reported. Tan et al. (1999) mentioned that sensitivity to fenvalerate in *H. armigera* larvae increases when the larvae are treated with *B. thuringiensis* for 24 h. It shows that *B. thuringiensis* in combination with chemical insecticides in an integrated pest management system is feasible. Rao and Singh (2003) also mentioned that synthetic insecticides in combination with biopesticides exhibited moderate effects on pest damage as well as on predator's populations, which were at par with alone biopesticidal treatment indicating that synthetic insecticides in combination with biopesticides were economic, effective, and eco-friendly. Combination of insecticides and *B. thuringiensis* to limit the population of lepidopteran pests has also been reported by (Khan et al. 2010).

5 Conclusions and Future Prospects

Annual worldwide production of *B. thuringiensis* represents about 2 % of the total global insecticide market indicating that *B. thuringiensis* is now the most widely used bacterial pest control agents. Earlier in the use of conventional *B. thuringiensis* insecticides, there were some limitations. To some extent these problems are now being tackled using various molecular and genetic engineering approaches. *B. thuringiensis*-based products are being marketed by various agrochemical industries. Thousands of toxicogenic strains of *B. thuringiensis* exist, and each strain produces its own unique insecticidal crystal protein. The insecticidal activity of the toxins from each strain is also known to vary widely. Therefore, isolation and characterization of new *B. thuringiensis* strains are needed to discover strains with novel or high insecticidal activities. Large-scale production of *B. thuringiensis* is expensive because of the high cost of raw materials used in the medium. Locally available

raw materials are required to develope cost-effective medium. To overcome the resistance problem in *B. thuringiensis*-based biopesticides, it is necessary to minimize the uses of similar *B. thuringiensis* strains or even different strains having the same mode of actions against a particular insect pest. As synthetic insecticides in combination with biopesticides were economic, effective, and eco-friendly, various combinations must be standardized.

Acknowledgment Senior author is thankful to the Head, Biology Department, Faculty of Science, Jazan University, Jazan, for his encouragement to study microbial management of lepidopteran pests.

References

Abdul Sattar A, Watson TF (1982) Survival of tobacco bud worm (*Heliothis virescens*) (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae) larvae after short term feeding periods on cotton treated with *Bacillus thuringiensis*. J Econ Entomol 75:630–632

Adachi T, Grey G (1996) Control of diamondback moth (*Plutella xylostella* L.) on cabbage with Bt formulations and fluctuations in resistance to Bt. The Use of Biological Control Agents under Integrated Pest Management, Food and Fertilizer Technology Center for the Asian and Pacific Region, Taipei, Taiwan, pp 164–171

Adams LA, Lin CL, Mc Intosh SC, Tarnes RL (1996) Diversity and biological activity of *Bacillus thuringiensis*. In: Copping IG (ed) Crop protection agents from nature: natural products and analogues. The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge, UK, pp 360–388

Ajanta C, Kaushak NC, Gupta GP, Chandra A (1999) Studies of *Bacillus thuringiensis* on growth and development of *H. armigera* Hubner. Ann Plant Prot Sci 7:154–189

Angus TA (1954) A bacterial toxin paralyzing silkworm larvae. Nature 173:545–546

Aronson A, Beckman W, Dunn P (1986) *Bacillus thuringiensis* and related insect pathogens. Microbiol Rev 50:1–24

Arora R, Battu GS, Bath DS (2000a) Management of insect pests of cauliflower with biopesticides. Indian J Ecol 27:156–162

Arora R, Battu GS, Ramakrishnan N (2000b) Microbial pesticides: current status and future outlook. In: Dhaliwal GS, Singh B (eds) Pesticides and environment. Common Wealth Publishers, New Delhi, India, pp 344–395

Barker JF (1998) Effect of *Bacillus thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* toxin on the mortality and development of the larval stage of the banded sunflower moth (Lepidoptera: Cochylidae). J Econ Entomol 91:1084–1088

Battu GS, Arora R, Bath DS (1997) Field performance of *Bacillus thuringiensis* Berliner based biopesticides for the control of *Plutella xylostella* (Linnaeus) on cauliflower. In: 1st National Symposium on pest management and horticultural crops, Oct 15–17, Bangalore, Association for Advancement of Pest Management in Horticultural Ecosystems, Bangalore, p 103

Baum JA, Johnson TB, Carlton BC (1999) *Bacillus thuringiensis*: natural and recombinant bioinsecticide products. In: Menn JJ, Hall FR (eds) Biopesticides: use and delivery. Humana Press, Totowa, NJ, pp 189–210

Benz G (1971) Synergism of microorganism and chemical insecticides. In: Burges HD, Hussey NW (eds) Microbial control of insects and mites. Academic, New York, pp 327–353

Biswas S, Upadhyay KD, Kumar A (1994) Bio-efficacy of various *Bacillus thuringiensis* formulations and dosages against hairy caterpillar, *Spilosoma* (*Diacrisia*) *obliqua*. J Ecotoxicol Environ Monit 4:185–188

Biswas S, Kumar A, Upadhyay KD (1996) Effect of sub-lethal concentration of Dipel on the post-embryonic development of *Spilosoma obliqua*. Indian J Entomol 58:359–363

Carlson CR, Kolsto AB (1993) A complete physical map of a *Bacillus thuringiensis* chromosome. J Bacteriol 175:1053–1060

Ceron JA (2001) Productos comerciales nativos y recombinantes a base de *Bacillus thuringiensis*. In: Caballero P, Ferre J (eds) Bioinsecticidas: Fundamentos y aplicaciones de *Bacillus thuringiensis* en el control integrado de plagas. Phytoma-Espana, Valencia, pp 153–168

Chandle AG, Mane A (1994) Laboratory bioassay of *Bacillus thuringiensis* Berl. against *Plutella xylostella* L. Pestology 18:27–28

Chandra A, Kaushik NC, Gupta GP (1998) Effect of Bt intoxicated food on growth and development of *Helicoverpa armigera*. Indian J Entomol 60:286–292

Chang L, Grant R, Aronson A (2001) Regulation of the packaging of *Bacillus thuringiensis* d-endotoxin into inclusions. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:5032–5036

Chatterjee H, Choudhury PP (2003) Relative efficacy of some biological pesticides against different larval instars of *Pieris brassicae* (Linnaeus). Pestic Res J 15:165–168

Contreras E, Benito-Jardon M, Lopez-Galiano MJ, Real MD, Rausell C (2015) *Tribolium castaneum* immune defense genes are differentially expressed in response to *Bacillus thuringiensis* toxins sharing common receptor molecules and exhibiting disparate toxicity. Dev Comp Immunol 50:139–145

Cornu D, Leple JC, Bonade-Bottino M, Ross A, Augustin S, Delphanque A, Jouamin L, Pilate G, Ahuja MR (1996) Expression of a proteinase inhibitor and a *Bacillus thuringiensis* delta endotoxin in transgenic poplars. In: Boerjan W, Neale DB (eds) Somatic cell genetics and molecular genetics of trees. Kluwer, Drodrecht, The Netherlands, pp 131–136

Crickmore N, Bone EJ, Williams JA, Ellar DJ (1995) Contribution of the individual components of the delta-endotoxin crystal to the mosquitocidal activity of *Bacillus thuringiensis* subsp. *israelensis*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 131:249–254

Crickmore N, Zeeigler DR, Feitselson J, Schnepf E, VanRie JJ, Lereclus D, Baum J, Dean DH (1998) Revision of the nomenclature for the *Bacillus thuringiensis* pesticidal crystal proteins. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 62:807–813

DeBarjac H, Bonnefoi A (1962) Easai de classficiation biotechnique et serologique de 24 souches de *Bacillus* du type *Bacillus thuringiensis*. Entomophaga 7:5–31

Dhawan AK (1999) Major insect pests of cotton and their integrated management. In: Upadhay RK, Mukerji KG, Dubey OP (eds) IPM systems in agriculture: cash crops, vol 6. Aditya Book Pvt. Ltd, New Delhi, India, pp 165–255

Dov-Ben E, Boussiba S, Zaritsky A (1995) Mosquito larvicidal activity of E. coli with combination of gene from *Bacillus thuringiensis* sub sp. *israelensis*. J Bacteriol 177:2851–2857

Dulmage HT (1970) Insecticidal activity of HD-1, a new isolate of *Bacillus thuringiensis* var. *alesti*. J Invertebr Pathol 15:232–239

Dulmage HT, Martinez E (1973) The effect of continuous exposure to low concentration of delta-endotoxins of *Bacillus thuringiensis* on the low development of tobacco bud worm, *Heliothis virescens*. J Invertebr Pathol 22:14–22

Dulmage HT, Correa JA, Martinez AJ (1970) Coprecipitation with lactose as a means of recovering the spore-crystal complex of *Bacillus thuringiensis*. J Invertebr Pathol 15:15–20

Dulmage HT, Graham HM, Martinez E (1978) Interaction between the tobacco bud worm, *Heliothis virescens* and the d-endotoxin produce by the HD-1 isolates of *Bacillus thuringiensis* var. *kurstaki*. Relationship between length of exposure to the toxin and survival. J Invertebr Pathol 32:40–50

EPA (1988) Guidance for the registration of pesticide products containing *Bacillus thuringiensis* as the active ingredient. Registration standard 540/RS-89-023, Washington, DC

Fast PG, Regniere T (1984) Effect of exposure time to *Bacillus thuringiensis* on mortality and recovery of the spruce bud worm (Lepidotera: Tortricidae). Can Entomol 116:123–130

Faust RM (1974) Bacterial diseases. In: George EC (ed) Insect diseases, vol I. Marcel Dekker, New York, pp 111–113

Federici BA, Luthy P, Ibana JE (1990) Paraporal body of *Bacillus thuringiensis* sub-sp. *israelensis*. In: de Barjac H, Sutherland DJ (eds) Bacterial control of mosquitoes and flies: biochemistry,

genetics and application of *Bacillus thuringiensis* and *Bacillus sphaericus*. Springer, Drodrecht, The Netherlands, pp 16–44

Federici BA, Park HW, Sakano Y (2006) Insecticidal protein crystals of *Bacillus thuringiensis*. In: Shively J (ed) Inclusions in prokaryotes, vol 1, Microbial monograph. Springer, Berlin, pp 196–225

Feitselson JS, Payne J, Kim L (1992) *Bacillus thuringiensis*: insects and beyond. Biotechnology 10:271–276

Gopalakrishnan C, Gangavisalakshy PN (2005) Field efficacy of commercial formulations of *Bacillus thuringiensis* var. *kurstaki* against *Papilio demoleus* L. on citrus. Entomon 30:93–95

Gould F, Anderson A, Jones A, Sumerford D, Heckel DG, Lopez J, Micinski S, Leonard R, Laster M (1997) Initial frequency of alleles for resistance to *Bacillus thuringiensis* toxins in field populations of *Heliothis virescens*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94:3519–3523

Gujar GT, Kalia V, Kumari A, Kalia V, Kumari A (2000) Bioactivity of *Bacillus thuringiensis* against the American bollworm, *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hubner). Ann Plant Prot Sci 8:125–131

Gujar GT, Mittal A, Kumari A, Kalia V (2004) Host crop influence on the susceptibility of the American bollworm, *Helicoverpa armigera*, to *Bacillus thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* HD-73. Entomol Exp Appl 113:165–172

Gupta GP, Mahapatro GK, Chandra A (2000) Bio-potency of insecticidal crystal proteins of *Bacillus thuringiensis* against cotton (*Gossypium hirsutum*) bollworms. Indian J Agric Sci 70:194–196

Hannay CL (1953) Crystalline inclusions in aerobic spore-forming bacteria. Nature 172:1004

Heimpel AM (1967) A critical review of *Bacillus thuringiensis* Berliner and other crystalliferous bacteria. Annu Rev Entomol 12:287–322

Hernandez-Martınez P, Ferre J, Escriche B (2008) Susceptibility of *Spodoptera exigua* to 9 toxins from *Bacillus thuringiensis*. J Invertebr Pathol 97:245–250

Hofte H, Whiteley HR (1989) Insecticidal crystal proteins of *Bacillus thuringiensis*. Microbiol Rev 53:242–255

Hongyu Z, Ziniu Y, Wangxi D (2000) Composition and ecological distribution of cry Proteins and their genotypes of *Bacillus thuringiensis* isolates from Warehouses in China. J Invertebr Pathol 76:191–197

Huang F, Buschman LL, Higgins RA (1999) Susceptibility of different instars of European corn borer (Lepidoptera: Crambidae) to diet containing *Bacillus thuringiensis*. J Econ Entomol 92:547–550

Janmaat AF, Bergmann L, Ericsson J (2014) Effect of low levels of *Bacillus thuringiensis* exposure on the growth, food consumption and digestion efficiencies of *Trichoplusia ni* resistant and susceptible to Bt. J Invertebr Pathol 119:32–39

Jayaraj S (1986) Role of insect pathogens in plant protection. Proc Indian Natl Sci Acad 1:91–107

Jenkins JJ, Parrot WL, McCarthy JC, Callahan FE Jr, Berberich SA, Deaton WR (1993) Growth and survival of *H. virescens* (Lepidotera: Noctuidae) on transgenic cotton containing a truncated from the delta endotoxin gene from *Bacillus thuringiensis*. J Econ Entomol 86:181–185

Justin C, Leo G, Prem JJ, Jayasekhar M (2003) Comparative efficacy of *Bacillus thuringiensis* Berliner formulations with insecticides against *Plutella xylostella* (L.) and their effect on *Cotesia plutellae* Kurdj. on cauliflower. Agric Sci Dig 23:251–254

Kalha CS, Singh RP, Kang SS, Hunjan MS, Gupta V, Sharma R (2014) Entomopathogenic viruses and bacteria for insect-pest control. In: Abrol DP (ed) Integrated pest management: current concepts and ecological perspectives. Academic, San Diego, pp 225–244

Kandibane M, Kumar K, Adiroubane D (2010) Effect of *Bacillus thuringiensis* Berliner formulation against the rice leaf folder *Cnaphalocrocis medinalis* Guenee (Pyralidae: Lepidoptera). J Biopest 3:445–447

Kat H, Sezen K, Belduz AO, Demrbag Z (2005) Characterization of a *Bacillus thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* strain isolated from *Malacosoma neustria* L. (Lepidoptera: Lasiocampidae). Biologia Bratisl 60:301–305

Kegley SE, Wise LJ (1998) Pesticides in fruit and vegetables. University Science, Sausalito, CA

Khan E, Makhdoom R, Karim S, Riazuddin S (1995) Entomocidal activity of indigenous Bt isolates against two important pests. *T. incertulas* and *C. medinalis*. In: Malik KA, Naseem A, Khalid M (eds), Proceedings of International symposium on biotechnology and sustainable development, pp 145–153

Khan MA, Mumtaz R, Khan MA (2010) Management of *Spilarctia obliqua* through Bt and Chlorpyrifos combinations. Ann Plant Prot Sci 18:499–500

Khanna V, Gupta VK, Kanta U, Dhaliwal HS, Sekhon SS (1995) Control of maize borer, *Chilo partellus* (Swinhoe) by *Bacillus thuringiensis* based bioinsecticides. J Entomol Res 19:101–105

Koni PA, Ellar DJ (1994) Biochemical characterization of *Bacillus thuringiensis* cytolytic delta-endotoxins. Microbiology 140:1869–1880

Koul O (2011) Microbial biopesticides: opportunities and challenges. CAB Rev Perspect Agric Veterinary Sci Nutr Nat 6:1–26

Kulkarni UV, Amonkar SV (1988) Microbial control of *Heliothis armigera* (Hb): Part I—Isolation and characterization of a new strain of *Bacillus thuringiensis* and comparative pathogenicity of three isolates of *B. thuringiensis* against *H. armigera*. Indian J Exp Biol 26:703–707

Kurstak E (1962) Donnessur I epizootie bacterienne naturelle prouogue por un Bacillus du type *Bacillus thuringiensis* sur phestia kuehniella Zeller. Entomophaga Mem Hous Ser 2:245–247

Lee HK, Cheong H, Gill SS (1998) Microbial control of insects: use of bacterial insecticides. In: Dhaliwal GS, Hernrichs EA (eds) Critical issues in insect pests management. Commonwealth Publishers, New Delhi, pp 389–425

Lereclus D, Delecluse A, Lecadet MM (1993) Diversity of *Bacillus thuringiensis* toxins and genes. In: Entwistle PF, Cory JS, Bailey MJ, Higgs S (eds) *Bacillus thuringiensis*, an environmental biopesticide: theory and practice. Wiley, Chichester, UK, pp 37–69

Li H, Bouwer G (2012) Toxicity of *Bacillus thuringiensis* Cry proteins to *Helicoverpa armigera* (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae) in South Africa. J Invertebr Pathol 109:110–116

Li J, Carroll J, Ellar DJ (1991) Crystal structure of insecticidal d-endotoxin from *Bacillus thuringiensis* at 2.5 Å resolutions. Nature 353:815–821

Li JH, Wan QY, Wang MO, Kang S, Niu Z (2000) Characteristics of two new isolates of *Bacillus thuringiensis*. J Hunan Agric Univ 26:363–365

Liu YB, Tabashnik BE (1997) Experimental evidence that refuges delay insect adaptation to *Bacillus thuringiensis*. Proc R Soc Lond B 264:605–610

Liu ZD, Sun M, Yu ZN, Zaritsky A, Ben DE, Manasherob R (1999) A preliminary study of the P19 gene from *Bacillus thuringiensis* subsp. *israelensis*. Acta Microbiol Sin 39:114–119

Ma XM, Liu XX, Ning X, Zhang B, Han F, Guan XM, Tan YF, Zhang QW (2008) Effects of *Bacillus thuringiensis* toxin Cry1Ac and *Beauveria bassiana* on Asiatic corn borer (Lepidoptera: Crambidae). J Invertebr Pathol 99:123–128

Mahtur YK, Kishor P (1987) Recent concept of integrated management of key pests of agriculture crops. In: Mathur YK, Bhattacharya AK, Pandey ND, Upadhyaya KD, Srivastava JP (eds) Recent advances in entomology. Gopal Prakashan, Kanpur, India, pp I–X

Mariapackiam S, Ignacimuthu S (2008) Larvicidal & histopathological effects of oil formulation on *Spodoptera litura*. In: Ignacimuthu S, Jeyaraj S (eds) Recent trends in insect pest management. Elite Publishing House Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi, India

McGaughey WH (1985) Insect resistance to the biological insecticide *Bacillus thuringiensis*. Science 229:193–195

McGaughey WH, Gould F, Gelernter W (1998) Bt resistance management. Nat Biotechnol 16:144–146

Morris ON (1973) Dosage mortality studies with commercial, *Bacillus thuringiensis*, sprayed in a modified potter tower against some forest insect. J Invertebr Pathol 22:108–114

Narayanamma VL, Savithri P (2003) Evaluation of biopesticides against citrus butterfly, *Papilio demoleus* L. on sweet orange. Indian J Plant Prot 31:105–106

Navon A, Federici BA, Walsh TS, Peiper UM (1992) Mandibular adduction force of *Heliothis virescens* (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae) larvae fed the insecticidal crystals of *Bacillus thuringiensis*. J Econ Entomol 85:2138–2143

Nethravathi CJ, Hugar PS, Krishnaraj PU, Vastrad AS, Awaknavar JS (2010) Bioefficacy of native Sikkim *Bacillus thuringiensis* (Berliner) isolates against lepidopteran insects. J Biopest 3:448–451

Ninfa M, Garcia R (2009) Biopesticide production from *Bacillus thuringiensis*: an environmentally friendly alternative. Recent Pat Biotechnol 3:28–36

Paul B, Paul S, Khan MA (2011) A potential economical substrate for large-scale production of *Bacillus thuringiensis* var. *kurstaki* for caterpillar control. Biocontrol Sci Technol 21:1363–1368

Perlak FJ, Deaton RW, Armstrong TA, Fuchs RL, Sims SR, Greenplate JT, Fischhoff DA (1990) Insect resistant cotton plants. Biotechnology 8:939–943

Pimentel D, Burgess M (1985) Effects of single versus combinations of insecticides on the development of resistance. Environ Entomol 14:582–589

Prabakaran G, Hoti SL, Manonmani AM, Balaraman K (2008) Coconut water as a cheap source for the production of δ endotoxin of *Bacillus thuringiensis* var. *israelensis*, a mosquito control agent. Acta Trop 105:35–38

Pramanik A, Somchoudhury AK (2002) Relative efficacy of *Bacillus thuringiensis* Berliner on different larval stage of *Spilosoma obliqua* Walker (Arctiide: Lepidoptera). Adv Plant Sci 15:29–33

Rao NBVC, Singh VS (2003) Eco-friendly management of rice leaf folder, *Cnaphalocrocis medinalis* (Guenee). Indian J Plant Prot 31:17–19

Salama HS, Foda MS, El Sharaby A, Matter M, Khalafallah M (1981) Development of some lepidopterous cotton pests as affected by exospore to sub-lethal level of endotoxin of *Bacillus thuringiensis* for different period. J Invertebr Pathol 38:220–227

Salama HS, Foda MS, Dulmage HT, El-Sharaby A (1983) Novel fermentation media for production of δ-endotoxins from *Bacillus thuringiensis*. J Invertebr Pathol 41:8–19

Sareen V, Rathore YS, Bhattacharya AK (1983) Influence of *Bacillus thuringiensis* var. *thuringiensis* on the food utilization of *Spodoptera litura* (Fabricius). J Appl Entomol 95:253–258

Schnepf HE, Cricmore N, Vanrie J, Lereclus D, Baum J, Feitelson J, Zfider DR, Dean DH (1998) *Bacillus thuringiensis* and its pesticidal crystal proteins. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 62:775–806

Shojaaddini M, Lopez MJ, Moharramipour S, Khodabandeh M, Talebi AA, Vilanova C, Latorre A, Porcar M (2012) A *Bacillus thuringiensis* strain producing epizootics on *Plodia interpunctella*: a case study. J Stor Prod Res 48:52–60

Silva Werneck JO, De Souza MT, de S. Dias JMC, Ribeiro BM (1999) Characterization of *Bacillus thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* strain S93 effective against the fall armyworm (*Spodoptera frugiperda*). Can J Microbiol 45:464–471

Silva-Werneck JO, Ellar DJ (2008) Characterization of a novel *Cry9Bb* d-endotoxin from *Bacillus thuringiensis*. J Invertebr Pathol 98:320–328

Singh MK, Raju SVS, Singh HN (2002) Larval age affects susceptibility to *Bacillus thuringiensis* in diamondback moth, *Plutella xylostella*. Indian J Entomol 64:475–483

Singh MK, Raju SVS, Singh HN (2003) Laboratory bioassay of *Bacillus thuringiensis* formulation against diamondback moth, *Plutella xylostella*. Indian J Entomol 65:86–93

Srivastava KL (1991) Comparison of the effect of *Bacillus thuringiensis* and calcium arsenate on the body weight of *Achaea janata* L. New Agric 2:171–174

Srivastava KL, Ramakrishnan N (1980) Potency of Bactospeine and Dipel, two commercial formulations of *Bacillus thuringiensis* Berliner against castor semilooper, *Achaea janata* Linn. Indian J Entomol 42:769–772

Steinhaus EA (1951) Possible use of *Bacillus thuringiensis* as an aid in the biological control of the alfalfa caterpillar. Hilgarida 20:359–381

Stotzky G (2002) Release, persistence, and biological activity in soil of insecticidal proteins from *Bacillus thuringiensis*. In: Letourneau DK, Burrows BE (eds) Genetically engineered organisms: assessing environmental and human health effects. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 187–222

Tabashnik BE, Finson N, Groeters FR, Moar WJ, Johnson MW, Luo K, Adang MJ (1994) Reversal of resistance to *Bacillus thuringiensis* in *Plutella xylostella*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 91:4120–4124

Tamez-Guerra P, Castro-Franco R, Medrano-Roldan H, Mcguire MR, Galan-Wong LJ, Luna-Olvera HA (1998) Laboratory and field comparisons of strains of *Bacillus thuringiensis* for activity against noctuid larvae using granular formulations (Lepidoptera). J Econ Entomol 91:86–93

Tan W, Liang G, Guo Y (1999) Resistance alleviation in the larvae of cotton bollworms to fenvalerate after pre-treatment with *Bacillus thuringiensis*. Entomol Sin 6:153–161

Tiwari LD, Mehrotra KN (1980) Effect *Bacillus thuringiensis* Ber., on the body weight and haemolymph volume of *Achaea janata* (Linn.) larvae. J Entomol Res 4:153–156

Valicente FH, Fonseca MM (2004) Susceptibility of fall armyworm, *Spodoptera frugiperda*, to different strains of *Bacillus thuringiensis*. Rev Bras Milho Sorgo 3:21–29

Van Frankenhuyzen K (1993) The challenge of *Bacillus thuringiensis*. In: Entwistle PE, Cory JS, Bailey MJ, Higgs S (eds) *Bacillus thuringiensis*, an environmental biopesticide: theory and practice. Wiley, Chichester, UK, pp 1–35

Vimala Devi PS, Ravinder T, Jaidev C (2005) Cost-effective production of *Bacillus thuringiensis* by solid-state fermentation. J Invertebr Pathol 88:163–168

Wang DS, Yuan QC, Ma CZ, Gu ZR, Zhao JY (1994) Food consumption and survival rate and time of *H. armigera* (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae) larvae following intoxication by different strains of *Bacillus thuringiensis*. Acta Agric Shanghai 10:57–60

Wirth MC, Georghiou GP, Federici BA (1997) *CytA* enables *CryIV* endotoxins of *Bacillus thuringiensis* to overcome high levels of *CryIV* resistance in the mosquito, Culex quinquefasciatus. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94:10536–10540

Wu S, Lan Y, Huang D, Peng Y, Huang Z, Xu L, Gelbic I, Carballar-Lejarazu R, Guan X, Zhang L, Zou S (2014) Use of spent mushroom substrate for production of *Bacillus thuringiensis* by solid-state fermentation. J Econ Entomol 107:137–143

Yilmaz S, Ayvaz A, Akbulut M, Azizoglu U, Karaborklu S (2012) A novel *Bacillus thuringiensis* strain and its pathogenicity against three important pest insects. J Stor Prod Res 51:33–40

Zareie R, Shayesteh N, Pourmirza AA (2003) Starch encapsulating of *Bacillus thuringiensis* Berliner containing different additives and evaluation of their efficacy. Iranian J Agric Sci 34:855–862

Genomics of Plant, Soil, and Microbe Interaction

Syeda Hafsa Ali, Syeda Ayesha Ali, Syed Abdul Munam, Mustafeez Mujtaba Babar, and Alvina Gul

Abstract Plants are exposed to a wide variety of microbes in the environment. Owing to the diverse range of microbes, a complex set of molecular mechanisms mediate the plant–microbe interactions. These interactions, consequently, may be presented in the form of beneficial or harmful effects on plants. On receiving a specific stimulation from the host, certain plant-associated microbes improve plant growth and development. They colonize the host plant and either contribute to nitrogen fixation process or suppress the invasion of pathogenic microbes. Moreover, they also enhance the acquisition of nutrients by the plant based on the mycorrhizal association. Plants also release a variety of secondary metabolites that disturb the microbial growth and availability of nutrition to these pathogenic microbes. The interaction between plants and microbes is mediated by very specific signaling molecules that allow only the compatible bacteria to colonize the plant. Albeit the specificity, a number of pathogens have evolved mechanisms to overtake plant defense resulting in plant diseases. The study of genomics of plant–microbe interaction and the signaling pathways involved in the process offer an interesting avenue for the improvement of biological and agricultural outcomes. Research in this field can help in improving the background knowledge on plant tolerance to various biotic stress factors. Moreover, understanding the genomics of plant interaction may benefit crop productivity by exploiting the signaling pathways and designing suitable interventional strategies. The current chapter provides an account of the essential microbial genes and pathways involved in plant–microbe interaction.

Keywords Plant–microbe interaction • Symbiosis • Pathogenesis • Genomics • Signaling pathways • Phytohormones

S.H. Ali • S.A. Ali • A. Gul (✉)
Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences, National University of Sciences and Technology, Islamabad, Pakistan

M.M. Babar
Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences, National University of Sciences and Technology, Islamabad, Pakistan

Department of Life Sciences, Abasyn University, Islamabad, Pakistan
e-mail: alvina_gul@yahoo.com

S.A. Munam
University of Balochistan, Quetta, Pakistan

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_14

1 Introduction

Rhizosphere is a dynamic platform for the interaction of plant roots with microbes, insects, and soil. The plant battles a wide range of pathogens including fungi, bacteria, and insects within the rhizosphere (Hirsch et al. 2003; Hirsch 2004). Here, the plant–microbe signaling occurs via a complex chemical interaction in which both the partners actively participate. The plants release a diverse set of compounds, mainly comprising of root exudates, mucilage, border cells, volatile organic carbon, root cap, and the metabolites of dead tissue, collectively referred to as rhizodeposition (Jones et al. 2009). Plant, soil, and microbe interactions are generally characterized on the basis of location and relationship with fungi and bacteria (Hirsch 2004).

Plant actively produces and releases small-molecular-weight compounds—root exudates—into the rhizosphere. These comprise of carbon-containing primary and secondary metabolites, enzyme, mucilage, and ions (Uren 2000; Bertin et al. 2003). Plant root interaction is quite complex as multiple chemical, physical, and biological entities are involved in this relationship between the plants, microbes, and roots of neighboring plants (Evangelisti et al. 2014; Badri et al. 2009). Consequently, the recipient microbes show a diverse range of responses depending upon the composition of root exudates that may be deleterious for one organism while attracting another organism (Morris et al. 1998). Microbes, generally, are attracted toward plants owing to the exudation of nutrients that increase the activity and population of microorganisms in plant root vicinity (Hiltner 1904). Plant roots provide a carbon-rich environment to these microbes and aid the initiation of molecular cross talk to initiate colonization (Bais et al. 2006). The type of colonizing bacteria, hence, depends upon the composition of rhizodeposits around plant roots. A wide range of prokaryotes and eukaryotes are attracted toward the plants (Turner et al. 2013). In a rhizosphere, plant roots release amino acid and carbohydrates that act as chemoattractant for bacteria, thereby increasing their number in the vicinity (Bacilio-Jimenez et al. 2003). *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* strain PAO1, for instance, showed a differential gene expression contributing to bacterial colonization and rhizosphere competition in response to various root exudates of sugar beet varieties (Mark et al. 2005). Isoflavones are mainly involved in chemical signaling to attract microbes like *Phytophthora sojae* and *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* on soybean roots (Morris et al. 1998).

Microbes interact with plants in harmony as root exudates either accelerate plant resistance against pathogenic infection or initiate production of plant volatiles that attracts predators (Wardle et al. 1998; Inderjit and Weiner 2001). Root exudates also alter biological processes and soil chemistry by regulating the availability of soil nutrients that stimulates competition among plants (Bais et al. 2006). However, certain root exudates inhibit the competition with neighboring plants, insects, and microbes via signaling due to their antibiotic potential, for instance, the generation of “defensive zone” by root tip mucilage to protect the meristematic and root elongating cells from other biological agents (Walker et al. 2003). Therefore, root exudates are perceived as positive or negative signal

depending on the type of organism and the chemical moiety released by the plant. Figure 1 represents the complexity of plant–microbe interactions and the myriad presentations observed as a result of this relationship.

2 Role of Flavonoids in Plant–Soil Interaction

Plants release different types and amounts of metabolites through active root exudation (Cesco et al. 2010). Chief among the ones released as a result of root decomposition and injury are flavonols, isoflavonoids, flavanones, flavones, and chalcones (Shaw et al. 2006). Flavonoids play a vital role in soil interaction. They are polyphenolic compounds that are produced by phenylpropanoid or shikimic acid pathways. The type and amount of flavonoid released depend on plant species, types of stress factors, plant development, and nutrient availability in soil (Cesco et al. 2010). However, the potency of flavonoids in soil is very low in comparison to in planta mainly because of its degradation and rapid absorption by surface reactive soil. Therefore, the interaction mechanism is regulated by a number of factors including the presence of exact amount and time of release of flavonoids, soil

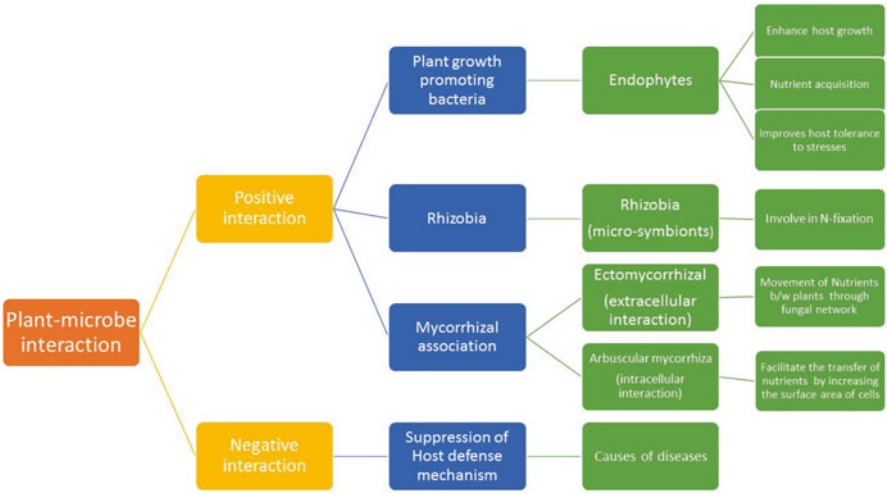


Fig. 1 Plant–microbe interactions: The interactions involve positive or negative interaction between the participants. Here, positive interactions are divided into plant growth-promoting bacteria that either act as free-living bacteria or endophytes, enhance host growth, help in nutrition acquisition, or develop host tolerance to diseases (Han et al. 2011). Rhizobia are involved in nitrogen fixation by forming nodules in host mycorrhizal association that also enhances nutrient uptake in plants depending on the area of colonization (Oldroyd and Downie 2004). However, negative association also exists, where plant responses are suppressed and result in infection and disease (Bonfante and Genre 2010)

heterogeneity (variable pH, surface reactive solid phase), and properties of flavonoids (reactivity of flavonoid molecules and their chemical structures) (Alford et al. 2007; Barto and Cipollini 2009; Chaves et al. 2001; Perry et al. 2007a, b; Inderjit and Dakshini 1992a). A number of studies have reported the multifunctionality of flavonoids. The most significant of these include the plant protection from diseases (Dakora and Phillips 2002; Dakora 2003), nutrition regulation (Rao 1990; Kuiters 1990; Garg and Geetanjali 2007), regulating root development and function (Buer et al. 2010; Rao 1990), allelopathic effect on neighboring plants (Chaves et al. 2001), and development of mechanisms to resist the microbial degradation (Hättenschwiler and Vitousek 2000).

Once flavonoids are released into soil, their concentration is reduced by flavonoid-degrading bacteria that stimulate the biodegradation of xenobiotics (Cooper 2004a; Shaw et al. 2006). Thereafter, there is an increase in the free flavonoid concentration due to the microbial activity leading to the hydrolysis of flavonol glycosides and release of unconjugated aglycones. Further degradation of free flavonoids is carried out due to their high affinity for organo-mineral matrix (Hartwig and Phillips 1991). Phenols in soil undergo biotic and abiotic metabolism as they are used as carbon source by microorganisms (Hättenschwiler and Vitousek 2000), absorbed by clay minerals (Huang et al. 1999) or soil matter (Makino et al. 1996). They are also polymerized to recalcitrant humic substances (Hättenschwiler and Vitousek 2000). They are also transformed chemically into a variety of other compounds depending upon the inherent properties of phenols and the properties of soil (Okumura et al. 1999; Blum et al. 1999). Similarly, aglycone flavonoids from *Cistus ladanifer* become inaccessible to soil microbes due to the entrapped micropores of soil aggregates (Pignatello and Xing 1996; Sosa et al. 2010). Sosa and colleagues (2010) demonstrated that root exudates of *C. ladanifer* L. in soils showed five types of aglycone flavonoids including apigenin, 7(*O*)-methyl apigenin, 4′(*O*)-methyl apigenin, 3(*O*)-methyl kaempferol, and 3,7-di(*O*)-methyl kaempferol. The persistence of these compounds in soil, however, varies according to the biological and pedological properties of the compounds (Cesco et al. 2012). Flavonoids, hence, act as the initiator molecules for many plant–microbe interactions.

3 Positive Plant–Microbe Interactions

The study of plant–microbe interactions aids the characterization of pathways involved in the association of two diverse biological communities. The outcomes of these interactions may be beneficial or harmful to either one or both the members. The symbiotic outcomes of the interactions are observed between mycorrhizae and plants (Smith and Smith 2011) or rhizobia that fix nitrogen in legume root nodules (Oldroyd et al. 2011) and endophytic bacteria and plant growth-promoting bacteria in plant development. The negative effects are generated in case of pathogenic relations with host owing to the suppressed immune

system and disease in plant (Kachroo and Robin 2013; Dodds and Rathjen. 2010; Wirthmueller et al. 2013). The positive and negative aspects of the plant–microbe interactions have been discussed in the following sections.

3.1 Plant Growth-Promoting Bacteria

Plant growth-promoting bacteria or PGPBs are a group of bacteria that live in symbiosis with plants and contribute to its growth. PGPBs exist either as rhizobacteria—residents of soil—or later colonize the plant roots to attain their endophytic status (Compant et al. 2010). They are involved in performing a variety of activities such as nitrogen acquisition, production of phytohormones, protecting plants by controlling pathogens, and enhancing or mobilizing mineral uptake (Compant et al. 2010). In response, these rhizobia thrive on abundant nutrients and attain shelter from plants (Gray and Smith 2005).

3.1.1 Genomics of Bacterial Endophytes

A large and diverse population of soil bacteria not only occupy soil environment of plants but also inhabit the plant parts without causing any disease symptoms. These are referred to as bacterial endophytes. Successful colonization of endophytes requires compatible host and specific plant parts to obtain nutrients and multiply. Endophytes gain access into lateral roots via cracks and reside in specific tissues, intracellular fluids, or cells (Rosenblueth and Martınez-Romero 2006). These plant–microbe interactions mediate a variety of outcomes in plants such as plant growth (Moulin et al. 2001) and tolerance to biotic or abiotic stress factors (Schardl et al. 2004). Majority of endophytes exist in free-living state in soil. However, a few of them become a part of plant microbiome by circumventing the host immunity and defense response. Studies have reported the transition of endophytes from soil to plant body especially for the competent microbes that are well established in rhizosphere and actively colonize the host roots (Compant et al. 2010). After gaining access to the plant body, they may colonize intracellular or extracellular regions within the plant body. *Herbaspirillum seropedicae*, for instance, colonizes intercellular spaces, cortical cells of roots, and xylem vessels of the shoots (James et al. 2002). *Azoarcus* sp. strain BH72—a strict nitrogen-fixing endophyte—encodes nitrogenase genes (*nif*) in rice roots (Miché et al. 2006). On residing inside plant cells, necessary transition occurs in motility, with secretion of pectinase and cellulase to aid its transformation to the endophytic form (Reinhold-Hurek and Hurek 2011). In rice roots, jasmonic acid-mediated defense response is activated following the bacterial colonization. Endophytic bacteria are, generally, harmless and do not cause any cellular damage in plants. To explain the phenomenon, Zinniel et al. (2002) demonstrated that endophytes, in comparison to pathogens, evade plant defenses and exist in low density in plant tissues.

The genomic analysis of *Variovorax paradoxus* S110, a PGPR, revealed 6,754,997 bp genome in two separate chromosomes having 6,279 ORFs. Around 91.4 % of the genome comprises of coding regions with 4557 genes that have known biological role. The rest of the coding region has unknown function, and studies to decipher their roles are still undergoing. The genomic studies have shown that there are genes that are involved in the symbiotic interaction and contribute to the adaptation under diverse environmental conditions of rhizosphere and endosphere (Han et al. 2011). *V. paradoxus* under both conditions—living as free microbe or in plant cells—competes for iron acquisition (Neilands 1995) via active ferric siderophore complex that controls iron uptake by TonB-dependent proteins. In genome of this rhizobacteria, 24 genes and 12 ORFs function in iron transport and for the maintenance of homeostasis. Another 16 genes are involved in the synthesis of siderophore. Nevertheless, plant–microbe association depends on metabolic activity of the microbe. As observed in the case of strain S110, a superfamily of ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporter of 143 members is involved in the transportation of elemental agents. Strain S110 successfully colonizes and acts as endophyte by using polar flagellum and pili (Dörr et al. 1998). Its genome analysis established the role of 32 genes in the assembly and regulation of IV pilus (tfp). The pilin performs the signal peptidase activity along with the assembly and translocation of pilus. Pilus retraction is performed by NTP-binding protein. The genome also contains five genes that encode the filamentous hemagglutinin involved in the attachment to the plant (Gottig et al. 2009). Rhizobacteria are attracted to the plants by means of a chemosensory protein system that is encoded by 45 genes. Similar to this, *P. aeruginosa* PAO1 also includes cluster of chemotaxis: cheYZABW and cheR (Shitashiro et al. 2005). *V. paradoxus* requires carbon and nitrogen sources to produce ethylene and utilize 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) as instant precursor for synthesis of phytohormone (Belimov et al. 2009). S110 contains an ACC deaminase gene that fragments ACC into ammonia and ketobutyrate for further utilization as carbon and nitrogen source. Similarly, spermidine synthase gene and its transporter gene synthesize spermidine, a polyamine phytohormone, responsible for plant growth during cell division (Han et al. 2011).

Plants protect themselves from pathogen attack by producing reactive oxygen species. Rhizobacteria strain S110 comprises of 21 glutathione S-transferases (GST), five catalase genes, eight hydroperoxide reductase genes, and nine peroxidase genes, all of which are collectively involved in the production of free radicals and, hence, protection of the plants (Han et al. 2011). Although, PGPR lacks hydrolytic enzymes (cellulases and pectinases) and toxins due to absence of toxin genes, yet they possess β-glycosidase genes that allow colonization in *Azoarcus*. The genome also encodes feruloylesterases that hydrolyze feruloyl polysaccharides. These sugars control the cross-linking of plant cell wall, prevent microbial degradation, and help in improving host compatibility (Krause et al. 2006). Genome sequencing of a number of endophytes has been reported including *Serratia proteamaculans* 568, *Methylobacterium populi* BJ001, *Pseudomonas putida* W619, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* R551-3, and *Enterobacter* sp.638 (www.jgi.doe.gov). Genome sequence analysis of *Azoarcus* sp. strain BH72, a nitrogen-fixing

endophyte, exhibited that it lacked genes for toxins, cell wall-hydrolyzing enzyme, T3SS, T4SS, *N*-acyl homoserine lactone-based QSS (quorum sensing system), and Nod factors. These have been reported in *Azoarcus* sp. strain EbN1 and other plant-associated strains (Krause et al. 2006; Hurek and Reinhold-Hurek 2003). Most plant-related microbes and pathogens contain these essential genes involved in colonization of plant body (Büttner and Bonas 2006; Preston et al. 2001). Detailed analysis of BH72 genome identified various factors responsible for host interaction including proteins of type I and II secretion systems, for iron–siderophore uptake, type IV pili proteins for chemotaxis and flagella, and surface polysaccharides (Krause et al. 2006) (Fig. 2).

Endophytic bacteria prevent pathogenic infections by triggering induced systemic resistance (ISR) in plants (Kloepper and Ryu 2006). The essential components of microbes identified by plant system are called microbe-associated molecular patterns (MAMPs) that trigger plant immunity called MAMP-triggered

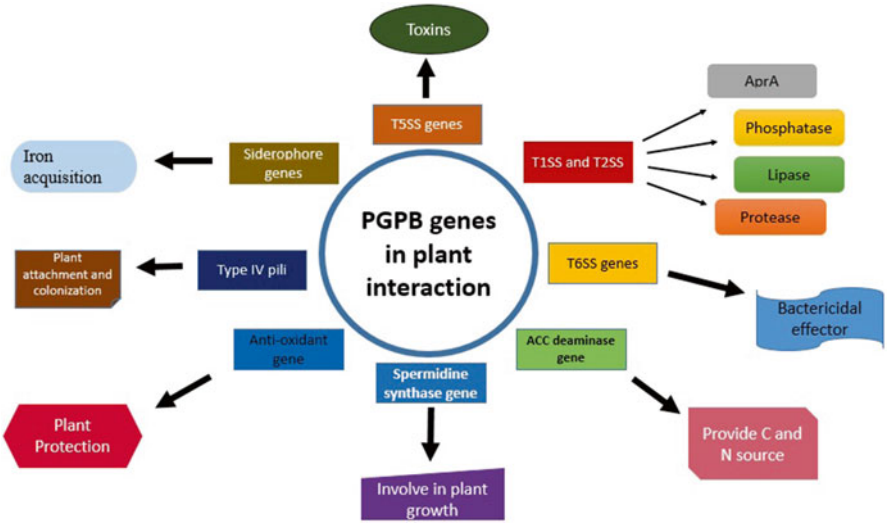


Fig. 2 Plant growth-promoting bacterial genes in plant interaction: Genomic analysis of PGPB reveals unique properties of genes involved in symbiotic interaction in environmental conditions of rhizosphere and as endophyte. In genome of WCS strains, type II, III, V, and VI secretion systems are already determined, whereas T1SS and T2SS are involved in secretion of AprA, phosphatase, lipase, and extracellular protease to facilitate nutrient acquisition. T5SS-related gene encodes for toxins in contact-dependent growth inhibition of surrounding bacteria (Ruhe et al. 2013), whereas T6SS competes in a cell contact-dependent manner with microbes by delivering bactericidal effector. ACC deaminase gene fragments help in the conversion to ammonia and ketobutyrate to be utilized as carbon and nitrogen as energy source, while spermidine synthase gene is in charge of plant growth during cell division. PGPB also comprises of antioxidant genes that protect plants by producing antioxidant enzymes, whereas type IV pili allow colonization and attachment in plants (Han et al. 2011)

immunity (MTI). As a result, nitrogen species and reactive oxygen species (ROS) are produced that are involved in exhibiting antimicrobial effects. In terms of pathogenicity, MAMPs are highly conserved in all types of bacteria including beneficial bacteria, pathogens, and endophytes (Newman et al. 2013). In plants, ISR triggered by endophytes is independent of pathogen-related protein induction and salicylic acid accumulation. This factor helps to mediate the response of systemic acquired resistance (SAR) triggered under pathogenic attack (van Loon et al. 1998; Pieterse et al. 1998). Conn and colleagues (2008) confirmed the protective role of two strains of *Streptomyces* species (endophyte) when pre-inoculated in *Arabidopsis* seedlings and later with pathogenic *Erwinia carotovora* increased duration of resistance. Although both the strains were similar, yet they evoked a completely different response in *Arabidopsis*. One of the strains elicited ISR induction while other showed SAR induction. Plant responses are fine-tuned for every bacterial signal as bacterial exudates confirmed induction of ISR on complex medium. On the other hand, SAR induction was confirmed by some strains that exudate on minimal medium (Conn et al. 2008).

3.1.2 PGPB Interacts via Phytohormones and Biofilm

Some PGPB strains are phyto-stimulators, i.e., they increase the plant growth; for example, *Azospirillum* spp. secrete phytohormones like cytokinins, auxins, and gibberellins for that purpose (Steenhoudt and Vanderleyden 2000). Phytohormones produced by microbes are essential to initiate biosynthesis cross talk and communication of indoleacetic acid (IAA) and ethylene with plants (Yuan et al. 2008; Spaepen et al. 2007; Tsavkelova et al. 2006; Bottini et al. 2004). Rothballer and coworkers (2008) demonstrated that *Herbaspirillum frisingense* GSF30T produces IAA in culture. Similarly, wheat seedlings inoculated with *B. subtilis* increased seedling growth by producing auxins (Egorshina et al. 2011). *Azospirillum* spp. are also known for fixing atmospheric nitrogen and stimulating plant growth by synthesizing auxins and other phytohormones (Steenhoudt and Vanderleyden 2000). Some bacterial species protect plants by acting as biocontrol agents against potential pathogens by either forming a biofilm or producing antibiotic agents (Bais et al. 2004a, b). However, recent studies have shown that a few toxic or allelopathic compounds are degraded by the pathogenic microbes (Gray and Smith 2005). Molecular characterization has shown that the members of the genus *Pseudomonas* contribute most actively to the biocontrol mechanisms. They produce antifungal metabolites like pyoluteorin, phenazines, and pyrrolnitrin 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol (DAPG) (Ryu et al. 2004). These compounds create suppressive soil that prevents fungal and bacterial attacks on plants. Biocontrol activity of microbes is controlled by niche exclusion, antifungal metabolite production, nutrient competition, and siderophore secretion. Siderophores are small iron-chelating compounds that enhance ferric iron uptake from surrounding environment under iron-stress conditions (Lemanceau et al. 2009). Biocontrol activity of certain *Pseudomonas* WCS strains is linked with iron competition via siderophore (Bakker et al. 1986; Duijff et al. 1999). These

microbes recognize and uptake cognate iron–siderophore complexes via specific siderophore receptors (Cornelis 2013; Loper and Henkels 1999). A number of rhizobacteria possess siderophore receptors to compete for iron uptake produced by soil microbes (Hartney et al. 2013; Bakker et al. 1990). Plants under pathogenic attack signal to recruit surrounding soil microbe; for example, when *P. syringae* attacks *Arabidopsis*, it induces malic acid (MA) transporters. The increased MA in rhizosphere helps in the recruitment of *Bacillus subtilis*, beneficial rhizobacteria that stimulate ISR in plants to restrict pathogenic infection from spreading to the plant body (Lakshmanan et al. 2012).

Ryu and coworkers (2004) discovered a reduction in the symptoms of *Cucumber mosaic virus (CMV)* infection in wild-type *Arabidopsis thaliana* when pre-inoculated with strains of PGPBs: *Bacillus pumilus* strain SE34 and *Serratia marcescens* strain 90–166 (Ryu et al. 2004). Interestingly, *B. pumilus* strain 90–166 induces acquired resistance in *Arabidopsis* that helped in its protection from *CMV* (Ryu et al. 2004). On the other hand, gram-positive *B. subtilis* 6051 strain protected the plant from gram-negative pathogen invasion. Certain *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. DC3000 have genes that code for protective biofilm layer formation on the roots of *A. thaliana* (Bais et al. 2004a). This helped in the prevention of colonization of pathogenic bacteria on the plants (Raaijmakers et al. 2010). Though the *Pseudomonas* spp. are plant pathogens, they are found to increase the plant immunity and serve as PGPR model organisms to study their role in plant protection (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2011; Pieterse et al. 2014).

3.1.3 Genomics of PGPB Interaction with Plants

In rhizosphere, population and density of WCS strains depend on effective competition for space and nutrients with other microbes. Moreover, the secretions from plant roots help in the provision of nutrients and shelter to the microbial community around the roots (Berendsen et al. 2012). As a result, rhizobacteria return the favor by modulating immune responses and regulating the composition of root excretion (Zamioudis et al. 2014; Millet et al. 2010). Three strains of *Pseudomonas* WCS have been shown to be capable of eliciting the ISR on the basis of host specificity (Berendsen et al. 2015). The strain WCS417 failed to elicit response in radish. However, WCS374 and WCS358 displayed a potent ISR in radish (Leeman et al. 1996). WCS417 strain demonstrated ISR mediated by specific transcription factor, MYB72, present in the roots of the plant (Zamioudis et al. 2014; Van der Ent et al. 2008). The study showed that in these plants, ISR coordinates well with phytohormones like ethylene (ET) and jasmonic acid (JA) yet works without salicylic acid (SA) (Pieterse et al. 1998; Pieterse et al. 1996). As a result, WCS417-ISR elicits a different resistance pattern in comparison to the pathogen-induced systemic acquired resistance (SAR) (Fu and Dong 2013). The ISR redundancy has been investigated in different plant species, and it has been found that tomato WCS358 strain works effectively to elicit ISR against *Botrytis cinerea* (Meziane et al. 2005). Several bacterial determinates such as LPS, flagella, and siderophores induce

systemic resistance (Weller et al. 2012; Iavicoli et al. 2003; Tran et al. 2007). Additionally, pyoverdine production plays a key role in biocontrol activity of WCS strains (Berendsen et al. 2015). WCS strains have been demonstrated to induce resistance in a variety of crops including bean, carnation, eucalypt, flax, radish potato, and tomato (Bakker et al. 1986; Duijff et al. 1999; Ran et al. 2005). The protective role of these strains depends on siderophore-mediated iron competition as pyoverdines initiate onset of ISR; e.g., PVD358 is known to cause ISR in *Arabidopsis*, eucalypt bean, and tomato (Ran et al. 2005; Meziane et al. 2005). It is, hence, established that siderophores are involved in host specificity to elicit ISR in rhizobacteria. Genomic analysis of PVD374 and PVD417 showed that isomeric configuration of single amino acid can cause high specificity to differentiate the pyoverdines (Berendsen et al. 2015). *Pseudomonas* WCS374 strain, for instance, produces siderophore pseudomonine and pyoverdine (Berendsen et al. 2015). SA moiety is present in the compound pseudomonine generated by isochorismate-pyruvate lyase gene pmsB and isochorismate synthase gene pmsC. These genes are a part of pseudomonine biosynthesis gene cluster pmsCEAB (Mercado-Blanco et al. 2001). Previous studies showed that SA is a potent inducer of systemic acquired resistance (SAR) as exogenous application of SA induces systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis* (Van Wees et al. 1997). Meanwhile, as strain WC374 colonizes plant roots, SA is incorporated in siderophore pseudomonine preventing the induction of SA-induced plant immunity (Djavaheri et al. 2012). Contrarily, a related strain of WCS374, *Pseudomonas* strain SS101, induces systematic resistance in *Arabidopsis* via SA-dependent pathway (Van de Mortel et al. 2012). The SA-dependent nature of strain SS101 is due to elevated SA in rhizosphere and is exhibited due to its lack of effective incorporation in pseudomonine. Strain SS101 also acts as cyclic lipopeptide massetolide A elicitor of ISR in tomato.

In general, PGPRs reach a high population in rhizosphere and protect the plants by outnumbering the pathogens. Protein secretion system, encoded by the genome of *Pseudomonas* strain WCS, is involved in rhizosphere competence. There are six protein secretion systems in bacteria that are involved in microbe–microbe and host–microbe interactions. In genome of WCS strains, type II, III, V, and VI secretion systems are responsible for the interaction. However, T1SS and T2SS are involved in secretion of AprA, phosphatase, lipase, and extracellular protease to facilitate nutrient acquisition (Putker et al. 2013; Bull et al. 1991). They are also involved in the secretion of bacteriocins (Parret and DeMot 2002) and cyclic lipopeptides (Raaijmakers et al. 2010). Strains WCS374 and WCS417 possess several genes and gene clusters to secrete effector proteins and encode T3SS in *P. fluorescens* strain (Zamioudis and Pieterse 2012; Rezzonico et al. 2005; Preston et al. 2001). WCS strains compete in rhizosphere by the T5SS-related genes that secrete toxins that cause a contact-dependent growth inhibition of surrounding bacteria (Ruhe et al. 2013). Similarly, T6SS competes in a specific cell contact-dependent manner with microbes exhibiting their bactericidal effect (Kapitein and Mogk 2013; Russell et al. 2013; Hood et al. 2010). Mutualistic microbes establish a strong relationship by evading the immune response that can, otherwise, be triggered in plant roots after the antigens are recognized (Zamioudis and Pieterse

2012). Millet and coworkers (2010) demonstrated that rhizobacterium WCS417 colonizes *Arabidopsis* roots and suppresses its immune response. This is mediated by the production of alkaline protease AprA. Interestingly, *P. syringae* and *P. aeruginosa* prevent flg22-triggered immunity by degrading flagellin monomers in *Arabidopsis* leaves (Pel et al. 2014; Bardoel et al. 2011). *Pseudomonas* strains suppress host immune responses via T3SS-mediated injection of effector proteins in a manner quite similar to that adopted by pathogenic microbes. However, non-pathogenic *Pseudomonas* have active T3SS gene clusters or T3SSs as they are associated with roots and do not cause any disease (Loper et al. 2012; Rezzonico et al. 2005; Preston et al. 2001).

3.2 Nodulation of Legumes by Rhizobia

Legumes establish a symbiotic relation with nitrogen-fixing bacteria called rhizobia. Rhizobia are involved in the formation of root nodules where these microsymbionts convert free, inert nitrogen into ammonia for plant consumption (Peters et al. 1986). This bioprocess is essential in sustainable agriculture as it provides protein-rich food and reduces requirement of exogenous nitrogen fertilizer (Wang et al. 2012). Rhizobium inoculates in soybean seed, enhances the fixation of atmospheric nitrogen, and helps in improving crop yield (Furseth et al. 2012). Although indigenous soil bacteria can form nodules in most legumes, the efficiency of nitrogen fixation varies among plant species (Schumpp and Deakin 2010). Knowledge of molecular machinery involved in symbiosis has helped to predict and control genetic factors responsible for symbiotic interactions, thereby improving the agronomic practices and crop yield.

Plants attain extra nitrogen to balance the loss of photosynthate during mutualistic association of rhizobia. The energy for nitrogen fixation comes from sucrose with expense of the photosynthate (Young and Johnston 1989). Consequently, the plants are benefited even in nitrogen-poor soils, whereas bacteria get the shelter and finally escape back to the soil during nodule senescence (Young and Johnston 1989). This process of nodulation is a coordinated effort of legumes and resident *Rhizobium* bacteria.

3.2.1 Legume Signals to Attract Bacteria

At the start of the signaling process, plants secrete flavonoids as signaling molecules that diffuse across the membrane of soil bacteria such as *M. truncatula* (Peters et al. 1986). On being detected by the bacterial receptor NodD, flavonoids generate chemotaxis that activates nodulation genes called *nod* genes. They encode for enzymes required in synthesis of Nod factors, the lipochitooligosaccharides essential in legume–rhizobia association (Oldroyd et al. 2011). This is followed by the transcription and translation process resulting in the expression

of NodD proteins that belong to LysR family of transcription regulators (Long 1996). This host–bacteria interaction is highly specific and regulated by very specific molecules as well. For instance, soybean produces daidzein isoflavonoids and genistein, both of which induce nod genes in *Bradyrhizobium japonica*. However, they inhibit the nod expression of *S. meliloti* (Peters et al. 1986). This mechanism enables the rhizobia to differentiate their specific host from other legumes. In promoter region of *nod* genes, nod boxes are present that comprise of conserved DNA motifs to which the NodD is generally bound (Perret et al. 2000). Flavonoid secretion also enhances the DNA binding of NodD1 with nod gene promoter in *Sinorhizobium meliloti* and induces *nod* gene to interact with the product of nod—a LysR-type regulator (Peck et al. 2006). Conformational changes activate bacterial NodD protein that acts as a sensor to recognize chemicals excreted by plant roots and induce gene expression thereafter (Russelle 2008). Expression of *nod* genes initiates synthesis of Nod factors called lipochitooligosaccharides that comprise four or five β-1,4 *N*-acetylglucosamines and terminal nonreducing sugar *N*-acylated 16–18-carbon fatty acid. Nod factors undergo chemical modification involving acetate, carbonyl, or sulfate functional groups or by sugars like fructose and arabinose (Perret et al. 2000).

Bender and coworkers (1988) demonstrated that *Rhizobium* sp. strain NGR234 recognizes a wide range of flavonoids from the host plant and transfers the nodD1 to *S. meliloti*. The bacterium has a narrow host range, and hence the protein mediates the formation of nodules in *Parasponia* nonlegume host (Bender et al. 1988). This transfer established the role of NodD in the regulation of legume and rhizobia recognition (Peck et al. 2006). In roots, a high concentration of flavonoids helps in promoting the colonization of rhizobia in vicinity of root hair (Russelle 2008). *Azorhizobium caulinodans*, *Methylobacterium nodulans*, and *Bradyrhizobium* are well-known nodule-forming symbionts (Jourand et al. 2005; Giraud and Fleischman 2004; Sy et al. 2001). On the basis of the genome, rhizobia are classified into six different genera. Their genome varies between 5.4 and 9.2 Mb (MacLean et al. 2007). The genomes contain specialized coding regions for regulatory and transportation genes that ensure their survival in soil. The genes, hence, adapt a number of strategies to develop symbiotic relations with legumes. For instance, they are involved in stress resistance, metabolic activities, transportation, and housekeeping. A few genes ensure the specificity of host selection like genes encoding for exopolysaccharides in *Sinorhizobium meliloti* and *celC2* genes for cellulose to allow bacterial entrance in *Rhizobium leguminosarum* (Robledo et al. 2008).

The Nod factors are detected and recognized by transmembrane surface receptors resulting in prompt response and abrupt disruption of cell wall which ensures the entrance of rhizobia in the plant cells. The Nod factors, hence, play an essential role in formation of nodules in legumes. The Nod factors in different rhizobia share a similar oligosaccharide backbone of chitin-like *N*-acetyl glucosamine with a fatty acyl chain at the nonreducing end. However, it varies in size, length, and chemical modification (sulfation, glycosylation, or saturation) of the backbone (Long 1996). Nod factors comprise of a core structure, synthesized by nodABC gene products. Any mutation in these genes, generally, results in the termination of symbiosis.

Some additional genes in Nod factor core are responsible for ensuring host specificity. For instance, in *R. leguminosarum*, host specificity is abolished by *Trifolium* species owing to the alteration in fatty acyl chain attached to Nod factor (Spaink et al. 1991). Contrarily, there is a boost in symbiosis specificity for *Vicia sativa* and *Pisum sativum* after the same exposure (Spaink et al. 1989; Djordjevic et al. 1985).

3.2.2 Nodule Formation

Nod factors are detected by a family of LysM family and serine or threonine receptor-like kinase known as Nod factor receptors (NFRs). In legumes, they are localized in the plasma membrane and contain LysM motifs in extracellular domain of epidermal cells in root hair. Examples of these are the NFP and LYK3 in *Medicago truncatula* and NFR1 and NFR5 receptors in *Lotus japonicus* (Arrighi et al. 2006; Madsen et al. 2010; Limpens et al. 2003; Radutoiu et al. 2003). LysM domains are directly bound to Nod factors owing to their abundance in chitin-binding proteins and peptidoglycan. The interaction further activates calcium-dependent signal transduction. This is followed by a fluctuation in the calcium levels within the nuclear-associated cytoplasm and nucleoplasm known as calcium spiking that results in expression of early nodulins (ENODs) (Oldroyd and Downie 2004).

Initial contact of rhizobia and host takes place at growing tip of root hair. Successful contact curls root hair to trap bacteria. Root hair undergoes growth changes as bacterial count increases, and there is an increased colonization of the nodule. Within the cytosol of root hair tip, Ca^{2+} level increases due to influx by Nod factors resulting in developmental changes. This causes a reorganization of microtubule and actin filaments in root hair (Felle et al. 1999). Rhizobia digest cell wall of root hair to form an infection thread. Stimulated root hair curls in response to attached bacteria and grows to form a narrow and long passage—the shepherd's crook. *nodL* and *nodF* genes are essential for biosynthesis of Nod factors. Any mutations in these genes result in abnormal infection threads (Bisseling et al. 2003). Similarly, in *M. truncatula*, LysM Nod factor receptors are involved in the formation of infection thread (Arrighi et al. 2006). Rhizobia in infection threads travel, divide, and spread through the cell into basal membrane ultimately releasing the bacteria into extracellular space and initiating the cell division in root cortex (Oldroyd et al. 2011). This spread of infection occurs after rhizobia breach the host cell wall by producing cellulose- and pectin-degrading enzymes to ensure its entry into the host cell (Brewin 2004; Robledo et al. 2011). Inside the nodule, rhizobia are released from infection thread in the droplets of polysaccharide. Although plant receptors are not completely defined and known, yet many resemble animal receptors to detect surface polysaccharides of bacteria.

Rhizobia are converted to bacteroides as infection travels from the tip of epidermal cells down to the root hair. This process is repeated until the bacteria reach its final destination that is the root cortex by forming additional branches of infection thread. On reaching the cortex, host cells start behaving as stem cells and give rise to new cells to form lateral organ nodule. Nodules can host single or multiple

strains of rhizobia. They can exist in determinate (spherical in nature and lack persistent meristem) or indeterminate (situated in the distal end of cylindrically shaped lobes) forms (Russelle 2008). On approaching nodule cells, bacteria are internalized via endocytosis. Plant develops peribacteroid membrane responsible for exchange of compounds with plants and bacteria; bacteroides immediately grow and develop around the droplet region by endocytosis. However, individual bacteria on ingestion differentiate into nitrogen-fixing organelles called symbiosome. The host plants restrict these microbes outside or in exocytoplasmic regions (Russelle 2008). The host barters fixed carbon for fixed nitrogen from bacteria through the symbiosome membrane. In rhizobial legume symbiosis, high specificity is a striking feature occurring at the initial stage of the interaction. It is associated to nodule development at early stage and nitrogen fixation later (Oldroyd et al. 2011). Bacteroides maintain a symbiotic relation with legumes by losing ammonium assimilatory capacity. In certain strains of rhizobia, NodS induces TtsI expression that encodes transcriptional regulator involved in binding tts boxes, upstream of operons. They code for T3S machinery and its effectors (Wassem et al. 2008). R genes in few ecotypes recognize the effector proteins and limit host range for bacteria (Fig. 3).

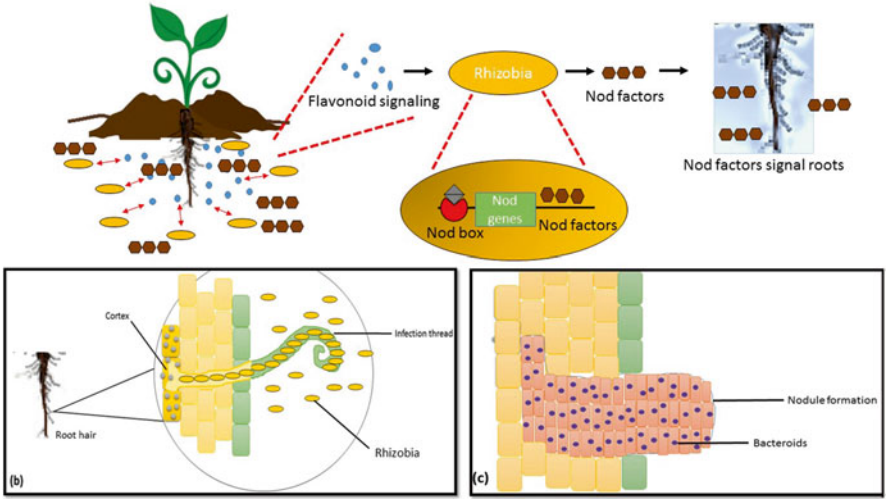


Fig. 3 Rhizobial nodule formation in legumes. (**a**) Plant releases flavonoids that are detected by receptors of rhizobial cell in soil environment and induce *nod* genes to synthesize Nod factors. These Nod factors are detected by NFRs in plants and entrap bacteria to colonize root hair. (**b**) Rhizobia digest cell wall of root hair to form infection thread that leads rhizobia to cortex of plant roots. (**c**) Rhizobia are converted to *Bacteroides* as infection travels. When bacteria reach the root cortex, host cells start behaving as stem cells and give rise to newly generated cells to form lateral organ nodule. In these nodules, rhizobia fix atmospheric N into usable form like ammonia and nitrates (Oldroyd et al. 2011)

3.3 Use of Bacterial Determinants in Plant Interaction

Plant immune system is highly sensitive and comprises a number of inducible barriers to prevent microbial attack (Jones and Dangl 2006). The polysaccharides present in the surface of bacteria that directly interact with the host cells include capsular polysaccharides (KPS), cyclic β-glucans, exopolysaccharides (EPS), and lipopolysaccharides (LPS). These microbial determinants of interaction are of prime importance in the induction of an effective symbiosis. Each determinant contributes in symbiosis, while any defect in these factors may lead to the abortion of symbiosis in early or later stages due to the alteration in conformation of EPS (Finan et al. 1985; Cheng and Walker 1998). Similarly during symbiosis, failure in production and transport of cyclic β-glucan results in inhibition of infection thread (Dylan et al. 1986). In the beginning, these microbe/pathogen-associated molecular patterns (MAMPs/PAMPs) are perceived by host pattern recognition receptors (PRRs). This leads to the development of immunity called PAMP-triggered immunity (PTI). However, gram-negative microbes use T3SS and deliver effectors into plants' cell that dampens the PTI and allows the microbe to access the host. The secondary defense of plant is activated as resistant gene (R) product detects the presence of effector proteins leading to the activation of effector-triggered immunity or ETI. The rhizobial T3SS releases effector molecules that trigger ETI as perceived by host R genes and regulates specific nodulation (Deakin and Broughton 2009; Soto et al. 2009).

These defense-related responses occur during legume–rhizobia interaction. However, they are less prominent once symbiotic relationship has been established (Lohar et al. 2006). Rhizobia MAMPs, including surface polysaccharides and Nod factors, suppress the defense responses in specific compatible host (Shaw and Long 2003; Jones et al. 2008). Rhizobial MAMPs can also activate immunity in nonleguminous plants resulting in the induction of a strong response (Staehelin et al. 1994). This property establishes the host-specific role of rhizobial MAMPs to recognize compatible legume during symbiotic relation and evading the host defense responses by overcoming them.

Symbiotic rhizobia are similar to pathogenic bacteria as they use a similar approach to invade host immune surveillance (Dai et al. 2008; Kambara et al. 2009). They use T3SS to transfer effectors called nodulation outer proteins (Nops) into host cells (Deakin and Broughton 2009). Both Nod factors and effectors of rhizobial T3SS are regulated by bacterial transcription activator NodD and flavonoids. Bacterial pathogens utilize T3SS for eliciting defense response and pathogenicity (Buttner and He 2009). On the other hand, T3SS of rhizobia is responsible for nodulation and rhizobial infection. Rhizobial effectors are known to promote bacterial infection in case they are left undetected by host R genes.

3.4 *Mycorrhizal Associations*

Mycorrhizal fungi either exist as free-living organisms or get associated with roots of around 90 % of the plant species including many crops, wild grasses, and forest trees. In this symbiotic relationship, both partners exchange benefits with each other. Mycorrhizal fungi provide nutrients and minerals to plants and enhance the water absorption and disease resistance. In return, they are provided shelter for fungal growth and reproduction (Bonfante and Genre 2010; Smith and Read 2008). Mycorrhizal fungi spread its hyphal network in soil, which is often shared by the adjacent plants, allowing horizontal and efficient transfer of nutrients (Helgason et al. 1998). The areas where mycorrhiza develops and interacts with host plants are called symbiotic interfaces (Bonfante 2001; Harrison 2005; Parniske 2008). Mycorrhiza is classified broadly into two categories on the basis of anatomical aspects defining whether fungi colonize intercellular spaces of roots or develop inside root cells. They are, hence, named ectomycorrhiza and endomycorrhiza, respectively. The endomycorrhizas are further classified into arbuscular, ericoid, and orchid.

3.4.1 Arbuscular Mycorrhizal Fungi (AMF)

Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) are found in association with the roots of around 80 % of the terrestrial plants (Bago et al. 2003; Newman and Reddell 1987). In this type of association, root tip is affected. Germinating spores form hyphae and produce hyphopodium in root epidermis. This intraradical colonization continues intercellularly and intracellularly. As it reaches the inner circle of cortical cells, it networks into fungal tree branches called arbuscules (Bonfante and Genre 2010).

MF colonization is initiated by perception of particular root exudates from compatible hosts (Nagahashi and Douds 2003; Tamasloukht et al. 2003). Kosuta and his coworkers (2003) reported that the signaling molecules from fungi activate plant genes when plant and fungal cells were placed in close proximity yet separated physically by impenetrable membrane. In *Medicago* system, Early Nodulation11 (ENOD11) gets activated by Nod factors of rhizobia (Journet et al. 2002), while AMF activates the pathway even at some distance from hyphae (Kosuta et al. 2003). The AMF interaction with host plant is mediated by signaling pathway similar to rhizobium–legume symbiosis (Oldroyd and Downie 2004; Parniske 2008). In this type of symbiosis, seven types of genes (SYM genes) are required and considered necessary. Some of these genes are specific to nodulation (LjNFR1/LjNFR5). As Myc factor is perceived by host plant through its specific receptors called Myc factor receptors (MFR), they elevate the cytosolic calcium levels (Oldroyd and Downie 2004). In *Lotus japonicus*, certain receptor-like kinases are responsible for perception of direct or indirect signals from AMF and rhizobia. These receptors are referred to as LjSYMRK secondary membrane proteins, for example, the MtDMI2 in *Medicago truncatula* (Markmann et al. 2008).

The MtDMI2 is responsible for signal transduction mediated by a kinase domain that phosphorylates the substrate. The nuclear localization of SYM pathway elements showed a rapid transduction of signal. The appearance of a nuclear pore complex suggests the involvement of nucleoporins in this pathway including LjNUP85 and LjNUP133. Another protein, LjPOLLUX or LjCASTOR, located in the nuclear envelope, is responsible for cation channel opening and calcium spiking. Similarly, MtDMI1 and MtDMI2 proteins in *M. truncatula* are responsible for controlling the regulation of $Ca2^{+}$ concentration in perinuclear cytoplasm (Oldroyd and Downie 2004; Kosuta et al. 2008).

LjCCaMK is a calcium- and calmodulin-dependent protein kinase that forms a complex with product of SYM gene by phosphorylating it. This protein is located in the nucleoplasm where it performs the decoding of calcium oscillation. In AM-mutated fungi, LjCCaMK is known to restore root colonization for SYM genes located upstream of Ca^{2+} spiking (Hayashi et al. 2010; Madsen et al. 2010). Another nuclear protein, LjCYCLOPS, leads to gene regulation during colonization (Yano et al. 2008). There are certain alternate signaling pathways responsible for early response of AM fungi. In case of rice-98 and *M. truncatula*, SYM-independent regulation is responsible for AM-induced gene expression (Kuhn et al. 2010). The AM fungi, thereafter, generate biologically active molecules that further mediate various signaling pathways. In the life cycle of mycorrhizal fungi, hyphal branching is a critical step as branch-inducing factor triggers morphogenesis of hyphae to ensure host root contact in order to establish symbiosis (De Carvalho-Niebel et al. 2002). In *Lotus japonicus*, root exudates are involved in symbiotic cross talk. The sesquiterpenes in dormant mycorrhizal fungi trigger hyphal branching (Akiyama et al. 2005). Flavonoid biosynthetic pathway in *M. truncatula* encodes for enzymes including chalcone synthase (CHS) and phenylalanine ammonia lyase (PAL) in arbuscules containing cells. Otherwise, the same pathways are involved in regulating the isoflavone reductase (IFR)—the defense-related enzymes. Induction of these enzymes triggers high production of flavonoids that enhance mycorrhizal growth rather than antimicrobial phytoalexin production that inhibits fungal growth (Harrison 2005; 1999). Mycorrhizal fungi on perceiving chemical response from roots get stimulated and spread out to invade root tissues. However, this branching is limited to the cortex of root tissues which shows control of host plants in fungal proliferation (Garcia-Garrido and Ocampo 2002).

Resting spore germinates into short explorative mycelium that increases the direct contact with host. Similarly, plant roots also receive fungal exudates that activate SYM pathway to trigger calcium spiking. This signal transduction activates cellular and transcriptional responses. Plant–fungi interaction takes place by attachment of hyphopodium on epidermal and cortical cells of roots that trigger assembly of prepenetration apparatus (PPA). PPA is an aggregate of cytoplasm in these cells that helps in the development of penetration assembly. Once fungi colonize intracellularly in epidermis, it follows PPA's route to the inner cortex and allows the development along the root axis. This PPA mechanism is repeated on reaching the internal portion of cortical cells and allows branching on small scale. Ultimately, arbuscule forms an extensive network by branching

and occupying a huge volume of cell. This strategy allows an efficient nutrient exchange (Bonfante and Genre 2010). Under this scenario, mycorrhiza-associated roots modulate plant defense responses that were activated on microbial invasion (Garcia-Garrido and Ocampo 2002). Moreover, other defense responses such as antioxidants, phenylpropanoid biosynthesis, and PR genes are also activated. These responses are weak, short termed, and strictly localized yet differ for each pathogen (Gianinazzi-Pearson 1996).

3.4.2 Ectomycorrhizal Fungi

Ectomycorrhizal fungi surround the outer region of plants; for example, in root tip, they form a thick mantle of hyphae around the epidermal cells (Bonfante and Genre 2010). Ectomycorrhizal fungi also respond to flavonoids excreted via root exudates such as rutin that promotes hyphal growth in *Suillus bovinus*. Similarly, rutin in *Eucalyptus globulus* spp. *bicostata* stimulates growth of *Pisolithus* species. Other trees, however, failed to respond to *Pisolithus* species infection (Lagrange et al. 2001). Kikuchi and coworkers (2007) demonstrated that picomolar concentration of rutin is sufficient to trigger symbiosis and stimulate the growth of putative symbionts. The fungi are highly specific to the stimulation for particular flavonoids. Luteolin, biochanin A, and quercetin, for instance, had no effect on germination of *S. bovinus*. In contrast, flavonoids, rutin, hesperidin, naringenin, quercetin, and genistein, while luteolin, biochanin A, and quercetin enhance their germination (Kikuchi et al. 2007).

Ectomycorrhizal fungi comprise of cell wall enzymes such as pectin lyases and pectinases that target plant cell wall. As fungi develop symbiosis with the plant tissue, certain genes of cell wall-degrading enzymes are upregulated. The nature of these enzymes shows saprotrophic role of EM fungi. *L. bicolor* retains substrate-degrading enzymes including chitinases, glucanases, glycosyl hydrolases, and proteases in order to degrade organic compounds and polysaccharides of microfauna (Martin et al. 2010). Around 15 genes of *L. bicolor* encode for hexose transporters. However, the genes for enzyme invertase, which converts sucrose to glucose and fructose, are absent. This suggests that the host plant depends on fungi for its glucose requirement. *T. melanosporum* possesses one invertase gene that allows its access to sucrose pool. Other fungi like *Hebeloma cylindrosporum* and *Amanita muscaria* metabolize fructose. Similarly, in maize, a biotrophic pathogen, *Ustilago maydis*, causes smut disease. The fungal plasma membrane comprises of sucrose transporter to acquire plant sucrose without secreting invertases (Wahl et al. 2010). These mutualistic interactions help both partners to fulfill nutrition requirement by exchanging nutrients. Research studies have shown that around 491 genes encode for the transporter proteins in *L. bicolor*. In comparison, saprotrophic and pathogenic fungi have 381 less abundant genes in *T. melanosporum*. Upregulation of these genes during symbiosis exhibits an intense traffic of amino acids, polyamines, and oligopeptides via symbiotic interface (Martin and Nehls 2009).

The genome study of EM revealed a high capacity of mycelium to import inorganic and organic nitrogen sources from soil such as peptides, ammonium, and nitrate via urea permease or ammonium transporter. These functions are common to various EM fungi including *Paxillus involutus* (PiDur3) and *A. muscaria* (AmAMT2) (Martin and Nehls 2009). Mycelium transfers nitrogenous compounds to the mantle and the Hartig net for further exportation to the plant. In this case, ammonium and glutamine are ideal candidates to cross symbiotic interface (Martin and Nehls 2009). Ammonium ions are directly released from Hartig net hyphae which upregulate ammonium importer in fungal roots or integrate ammonium ions into amino acids for translocation into the plant cells (Couturier et al. 2007). However, in *L. bicolor*, the discovery of upregulated 300 small cysteine-rich secreted proteins during interaction with *Douglas fir* and *poplar* has presented new scenarios. These proteins act as effectors during early plant–fungi interaction or establish symbiotic interface by MISSP7 proteins in hyphal mantle (Martin et al. 2008). Earlier studies have shown the inhibition or stimulation of phytopathogenic fungi by various agents like pisatin, a flavonoid having antifungal activity (Perrin and Bottomley 1961). Other chemicals are reported to hinder the development of phytopathogenic fungi like pterocarpans (e.g., medicarpin, maackiain, trifolirhizin) and pterocarpans by isoflavone betavulgarin that restricts growth of sugar beet pathogens (Rao 1990). Similarly, the hyphal growth of phytopathogenic fungi is inhibited by galangin and flavones—hyperoside (Afolayan and Meyer 1997; Li et al. 2005). Moreover, allelopathic rice releases tricin from root exudates that reduces level of cultivable fungi in soil (Kong et al. 2008). Spore germination is either stimulated or inhibited by the release of various flavonoids, for example, naringenin and kaempferol, that inhibits spore germination in *Pyricularia oryzae*, a rice pathogen (Padmavati et al. 1997). Spore germination is inhibited in *Verticillium dahliae* by rutin (El Hadrami et al. 2011). Pterocans stimulate spore germination in *Fusarium solani* (Ruan et al. 1995).

4 Negative Plant–Microbe Interactions

4.1 Self-Defense

The primary steps of communication between plants and microbes occur irrespective of the nature of relationship, that is, whether it is symbiotic or pathogenic. During this interaction, recognition is the initial event that involves signal perception and transduction followed by up- or downregulation of genes and subsequent activation of biochemical pathways. The end products act as signaling molecule for host leading to chemotaxis effect on microbe to either establish as pathogenic or in symbiotic association.

Plants possess multilayered defense mechanisms that recognize microbial infection. One of the layers is involved in detecting conserved molecules of microbes known as PAMPs/MAMPs. These are detected by specific receptors similar to that

of symbiotic microbe receptors (PRRs) that can sense bacterial lipopolysaccharides (LPS) or fungal chitin, quorum sensing factors, peptidoglycans (PGN), and flagellin (Boller and Felix 2009). In contrast, plants have receptor-like kinases (RLKs) and receptor-like proteins (RLPs) with functional domains located in plasma membrane. RLPs comprise of a transmembrane (TM) and an extracellular domain (ECD). They lack any specific signaling domain but possess a small cytosolic domain. RLKs, on the other hand, comprise of an intracellular kinase domain, a single-pass TM domain, and an ECD (Maekawa et al. 2011). When a pathogen tries to invade the plant, local defensive immunity is activated rapidly activating either of the two types of recognition. Plant recognizes microbe surface antigen MAMP by surface PRR to trigger PTI (Jones and Dangl 2006). This mechanism helps the plants to prevent pathogenic microbes. In addition to recognizing microbial determinants, PRR also recognizes other components such as cell fragments and plant peptides that act as danger signal and are known as damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs). They are produced by pathogens during wound or infection and cause a physiological change. Binding of DAMPs and PAMPs with PRR activates PAMP-triggered immunity (PTI) to initiate the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS). This causes a calcium burst and activates calcium-dependent associated kinases (CDPKs) and mitogen-associated protein kinases (MAPKs) leading, ultimately, to the imitation of transcriptional reprogramming (Nicaise et al. 2009; Tena et al. 2011).

Another bacterial determinant, the flagella, has a major component flagellin to induce PTI in majority of plants. Any mutation in flg22 epitope prevents its recognition by FLS2 receptor and results in dominated pathogenic or symbiotic relation (Boller and Felix 2009). PAMPs are essential for microbial life in order to evade host immune defenses by continuously undergoing negative selection of immune epitopes (McCann et al. 2012). However, PTI in plants actively blocks the infection of microbes. A loss of PRR causes disease susceptibility for both non-adopted and adopted pathogens (Boller and Felix 2009). Additionally, PTI can be suppressed or evaded if adapted pathogen releases any of the specific effector proteins (Dodds and Rathjen 2010). Nevertheless, secondary defense mechanisms involve resistance (R) genes that code for receptors located in cytoplasm. They recognize the effectors released by the pathogens and activate effector-triggered immunity (ETI) (Jones and Dangl 2006).

5 Genomics of Plant Hormone Signaling in Plant–Microbe Interaction

The protection of vulnerable roots depends on the level of chemical attack mounted by the pathogens. It is often mediated by plant secretions such as defensive proteins and chemicals (Bais et al. 2002; 2004a, b; Flores et al. 1999). These chemicals either function against a broad range of microbes or against certain specific pathogens. Rosmarinic acid (RA) is caffeic acid ester having strong antimicrobial activity for

soilborne microbes and opportunistic pathogen *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Extracts of *Phytophthora cinnamomi* have been shown to activate Rosmarinic Acid in root exudates of cultured roots of sweet basil, *Ocimum basilicum* (Bais et al. 2002).

Other chemicals like phytoalexin and phytoanticipins are involved in restricting the onset of disease owing to their antimicrobial activity. In vivo phytoalexin concentration cannot be measured due to direct contact with pathogens. However, a number of studies have provided the concentration of various classes of phenylpropanoids at organ and cellular level in root exudates of *Arabidopsis*. It has been shown that phenylpropanoid concentration levels were high when encountered with nonhost *Pseudomonas syringae* strains as compared to *P. syringae* pv. tomato DC3000 (host pathogen). Host pathogens show a resistance to these chemicals resulting in the onset of disease which establishes the potent antimicrobial activity of phytochemicals against nonhost pathogens (Bais et al. 2005).

Another class of phytohormones is also involved in plant defense during interaction with pathogens. These chemicals include salicylic acid (SA) that provides resistance against hemibiotrophic and biotrophic pathogens. Similarly, ethylene (ET) and jasmonic acid (JA) combinations are involved in fighting necrotrophic pathogens (Glazebrook 2005). The two pathways work antagonistic to each other, i.e., a high necrotrophic resistance causes high susceptibility to biotroph, while biotroph resistance elevates necrotroph susceptibility. Some pathogens are also specialized in mimicking plant hormones. Coronatine, a jasmonate (JA)–isoleucine, is similar to plant JA. It is synthesized by strains of *P. syringae* via unrelated pathways of coronamic acid (CMA) ligation with polyketide coronafacic acid or CFA (Fonseca et al. 2009). In *Pseudomonas* strains, coronatine production is regulated by HrpL which regulates TTSS. This is responsible for delivering type three effectors (TTS) into host cells. Coronatine works antagonistically to SA and similar to JA. Coronafacic acid ligase, encoded by genome of *Pectobacterium atrosepticum*, functions to ligate cfa and cma (Toth et al. 2006). *Pectobacterium carotovorum* and *Dickeya* sp. have a small portion of *cfa* and *ligase* homologous genes. In contrast, tested strains of *P. atrosepticum* contain *cfa* instead of *cma* biosynthetic gene cluster (Slawiak and Lojkowska 2009).

In plant–pathogen interaction, hormonal cross talk results in effective systemic immunity. Gibberellic acid (GA) degrades DELLA protein growth repressors causing an accumulation of ROS and SA. It also regulates the JA signaling (Achard et al. 2003; Navarro et al. 2006). Brassinosteroid is involved in providing resistance against biotroph–hemibiotroph (Nakashita et al. 2003). Similar response is also noted against abiotic stresses via NPR1 (nonexpressor of pathogenesis related 1) that also regulates SA signaling (Divi et al. 2010; Dong 2004). Brassinosteroid also induces PR1 expression independent of NPR1 (Divi et al. 2010). Under biotroph attack, cytokinin enhances response of SA via NPR1 in contrast to active auxin signaling that suppresses synthesis of SA (Robert-Seilaniantz et al. 2007). Active synthesis and signaling of abscisic acid (ABA) increase susceptibility in plants for several pathogens (Ton and Mauch-Mani 2004). ABA also plays a central role in abiotic stresses as environmental factors may weaken plant immunity leading to increased tendency for disease outbreak (Asselbergh et al. 2007)

Certain pathogens synthesize plant-related hormones and are capable of inducing similar symptoms due to hormonal imbalance (Bari and Jones 2009; Grant and Jones 2009, Robert-Seilaniantz et al. 2007). One such example is formation of galls in *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* that transfers its T-DNA and initiates production of cytokinin and auxins (Akiyoshi et al. 1983). Gall is an outgrowth in plants due to imbalance of auxins and cytokinins (Robinette and Matthysse 1990). Similarly, *P. syringae* pv. tomato delivers TTE which is capable of inducing production of auxin and ABA (Schmelz et al. 2003). Expression of AvrRpt2, in vulnerable *Arabidopsis*, increases concentration of auxin. In *Brassica*, clubroot disease caused by *Plasmodiophora brassicae* enhances expression of auxin receptors and downregulates CK degradation (Siemens et al. 2006). *Xanthomonas campestris* TTE AvrBs3 causes cell hypertrophy due to the induction of auxin-responsive genes (Marois et al. 2002). *In planta* expression of Pst AvrPtoB downregulates PAMP genes and increases ABA genes. This results in an elevated bacterial growth with weak response of basal defense (de Torres-Zabala et al. 2007). The exact mechanism of disrupting ABA signaling networks by AvrPtoB is still unknown. ABA increases in response to effector proteins as this is a core virulence mechanism that enhances bacterial and fungal resistance in ABA biosynthetic mutants (Asselbergh et al. 2007; Ton and Mauch-Mani 2004). The susceptibility of NCED5 (9-cis-epoxycarotenoid dioxygenase 5) overexpressers is also increased concurrently (Fan et al. 2009).

Similarly, *Pseudomonas syringae* B728a invades the host and starts the production of auxins via the conversion of indole acetonitrile into indoleacetic acid by utilizing nitrilase (Howden et al. 2009). This production of phytohormones by pathogens is an indication of the onset of disease. *Erwinia chrysanthemi* (soft rot pathogen) also produces auxins inside plant cells (Yang et al. 2006). However, mutations in auxin biosynthetic pathway allow the growth of pathogens. They attenuate the virulence factors; for example, they reduce the impact of TTE on cell wall degradation. *Erwinia herbicola* pv. *gypsophilae*, a gall-inducing microbe, carries auxin synthesis components including indole pyruvate pathway (IPyA) and indole acetamide pathway (IAM). It also contains a cytokinin synthesis component. Disruption in these pathways (IAM or CK pathway) reduces the gall size. However, IPyA pathway reduces the population of pathogen instead of affecting gall size (Manulis et al. 1998).

6 Conclusions and Future Perspective

Plant production needs to be optimized to fulfill the growing demand under the dynamic environmental conditions. Intensive breeding of crops has led to the loss of beneficial microbes in soil environment. There is a wide range of plant microbes that can be used for extracting beneficial outcomes. However, many aspects of this relationship remain unexplored and unexploited. Genetic circuit regulation between the symbiont and the host plant can be optimized to enhance crop production. There

are numerous and diverse opportunities to produce bioenergy crops by exploiting plant–microbe interaction. Similarly, low-cost biomass can be used to harness fossil fuel that can help in avoiding the fluctuation in fuel prices. A major challenge is to meet the growing needs of food for an exploding human population. Energy requirement can be sorted out by growing perennial crops on unfit land. Moreover, endophytes can be employed in the phytoremediation process. These strategies may help in reducing cost spent on production of various agents while meeting the demands of the society. These benefits of endophytes can be exploited in promoting plant development and making agriculture more sustainable. Understanding mechanisms of plant–microbe interaction may help to obtain greater biotechnological benefits and employ them in a wide range of applications including phytoremediation of contaminated soils and production of bioenergy crops. Similarly, phytohormones or secondary metabolite-producing microbes can be exploited in promoting plant growth and as biopesticides or bio-fertilizers.

The study of genomics can be integrated with proteomics and transcriptomics to determine the symbiotic genes of the microbes interacting with the plants. Similarly, low-tech application can be used in layering microbial biofilm inoculation to aid the plants in their growth and development. Moreover, a number of techniques can be employed for manipulating the bacterial response in order to regulate the rhizosphere environment. The interaction in this zone is still unexplored and uncharacterized. Therefore, monitoring endophyte population and soil and plant interaction may help in unveiling the hidden secrets of plant–microbe interaction. Nevertheless, computational methods, genome sequencing, and high-tech applications are required to elucidate the complexity of plant–microbe interaction. They can be employed for gaining an understanding of the expression of genes and their role in multiple pathways of this communication. However, unleashing the molecular mechanisms in rhizosphere interaction may pose challenges due to the dynamic and complex nature of interaction within the system (Badri et al. 2009; Farrar et al. 2014). Efforts, hence, need to be made to investigate and materialize the outcomes of research studies on the genomics of plant–microbe interaction.

References

Achard P, Vriezen WH, Van Der Straeten D, Harberd NP (2003) Ethylene regulates Arabidopsis development via the modulation of DELLA protein growth repressor function. Plant Cell 15:2816–25

Afolayan AJ, Meyer JJM (1997) The antimicrobial activity of 3, 5, 7- trihydroxyflavone isolated from the shoots of Helichrysum aureonitens. J Ethnopharmacol 57:177–181

Akiyama K, Matsuzaki K, Hayashi H (2005) Plant sesquiterpenes induce hyphal branching in arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Nature 435:824–27

Akiyoshi D, Morris R, Hinz R, Mischke BS, Kosuge T, Garfinkel D, Gordon M, Nester E (1983) Cytokinin/auxin balance in crown gall tumors is regulated by specific loci in the T-DNA. Proc Natl Acad Sci 80:407–411

Alford EA, Perry LG, Qin B, Vivanco JM, Paschke MW (2007) A putative allelopathic agent of Russian knapweed occurs in invaded soils. Soil Biol Biochem 39:1812–1815

Arrighi J-F, Barre A, Amor BB, Bersoult A, Soriano LC, Mirabella R, de Carvalho-Niebel F, Journet E-P, Ghérardi M, Huguet T (2006) The Medicago truncatula lysine motif-receptor-like kinase gene family includes NFP and new nodule-expressed genes. Plant Physiol 142:265–279

Asselbergh B, Curvers K, França SC, Audenaert K, Vuylsteke M, Van Breusegem F, Höfte M (2007) Resistance to Botrytis cinerea in sitiens, an abscisic acid-deficient tomato mutant, involves timely production of hydrogen peroxide and cell wall modifications in the epidermis. Plant Physiol 144:1863–1877

Bacilio-Jimenez M, Aguilar-Flores S, Ventura-Zapata E, Perez-Campos E, Bouquelet S, Zenteno E (2003) Chemical characterization of root exudates from rice (Oryza sativa) and their effects on the chemotactic response of endophytic bacteria. Plant Soil 249:271–277

Badri DV, Weir TL, Van Der Lelie D, Vivanco JM (2009) Rhizosphere chemical dialogues: plant–microbe interactions. Curr Opin Biotechnol 20:642–650

Bago B, Pfeffer PE, Abubaker J, Jun J, Allen JW, Brouillette J, Douds DD, Lammers PJ, Shachar-Hill Y (2003) Carbon export from arbuscular mycorrhizal roots involves the translocation of carbohydrate as well as lipid. Plant Physiol 131:1496–1507

Bais HP, Walker T, Stermitz F, Hufbauer R, Vivanco J (2002) Enantiomeric-dependent phytotoxic and antimicrobial activity of (+/−)-catechin. A rhizosecreted racemic mixture from spotted knapweed. Plant Physiol 128:1173–1179

Bais HP, Fall R, Vivanco JM (2004a) Biocontrol of Bacillus subtilis against infection of Arabidopsis roots by Pseudomonas syringae is facilitated by biofilm formation and surfactin production. Plant Physiol 134:307–19

Bais HP, Park SW, Weir TL, Callaway RM, Vivanco JM (2004b) How plants communicate using the underground information superhighway. Trends Plant Sci 9:26–32

Bais HP, Prithiviraj B, Jha AK, Ausubel FM, Vivanco JM (2005) Mediation of pathogen resistance by exudation of antimicrobials from roots. Nature 434:217–21

Bais HP, Weir TL, Perry LG, Gilroy S, Vivanco JM (2006) The role of root exudates in rhizosphere interactions with plants and other organisms. Annu Rev Plant Biol 57:233–266

Bakker PAHM, Lamers JG, Bakker AW, Marugg JD, Weisbeek PJ, Schippers B (1986) The role of siderophores in potato tuber yield increase by Pseudomonas putida in a short rotation of potato. Neth J Plant Pathol 92:249–56

Bakker PAHM, Van Peer R, Schippers B (1990) Specificity of siderophore receptors and biocontrol by Pseudomonas spp. In: Hornby D (ed) Biological control of soil-borne plant pathogens. CAB international, Wallingford, pp 131–42

Bardoel BW, Van Der Ent S, Pel MJ, Tommassen J, Pieterse C, van Kessel K, van Strijp J (2011) Pseudomonas evades immune recognition of flagellin in both mammals and plants. PLoS Pathog 7:e1002206–e1002206

Bari R, Jones JD (2009) Role of plant hormones in plant defence responses. Plant Mol Biol 69:473–88

Barto EK, Cipollini D (2009) Half-lives and field soil concentrations of Alliaria petiolata secondary metabolites. Chemosphere 76:71–75

Belimov AA, Dodd IC, Hontzeas N, Theobald JC, Safronova VI, Davies WJ (2009) Rhizosphere bacteria containing 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase increase yield of plants grown in drying soil via both local and systemic hormone signalling. New Phytol 181:413–423

Bender GL, Nayudu M, Strang KKL, Rolfe BG (1988) The nodD1 gene from Rhizobium strain NGR234 is a key determinant in the extension of host range to the nonlegume Parasponia. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 1:259–266

Berendsen RL, Pieterse CMJ, Bakker PAHM (2012) The rhizosphere microbiome and plant health. Trends Plant Sci 17:478–86

Berendsen RL, van Verk MC, Stringlis IA, Zamioudis C, Tommassen J, Pieterse CM, Bakker PA (2015) Unearthing the genomes of plant-beneficial Pseudomonas model strains WCS358, WCS374 and WCS417. BMC Genomics 16(1):539

Bertin C, Yang XH, Weston LA (2003) The role of root exudates and allelochemicals in the rhizosphere. Plant Soil 256:67–83

Bisseling T, Limpens E, Franken C, Smit P, Willemse J, Geurts R (2003) LysM domain receptor kinases regulating rhizobial Nod factor-induced infection. Science 302:630–633

Blum U, Shafer SR, Lehman ME (1999) Evidence for inhibitory allelopathic interactions involving phenolic acids in field soils: concepts vs an experimental model. Crit Rev Plant Sci 18:673–693
Boller T, Felix G (2009) A renaissance of elicitors: perception of microbe-associated molecular patterns and danger signals by pattern-recognition receptors. Annu Rev Plant Biol 60:379–406
Bonfante P (2001) At the interface between mycorrhizal fungi and plants: the structural organization of cell wall, plasma membrane and cytoskeleton. In Fungal Associations Ed. Hock B. Springer Berlin Heidelberg pp. 45–61
Bonfante P, Genre A (2010) Mechanisms underlying beneficial plant–fungus interactions in mycorrhizal symbiosis. Nat Commun 1:48
Bottini R, Cassan F, Piccoli P (2004) Gibberellin production by bacteria and its involvement in plant growth promotion and yield increase. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 65:497–503
Brewin NJ (2004) Plant cell wall remodelling in the Rhizobium–legume symbiosis. Crit Rev Plant Sci 23:293–316
Buer CS, Imin N, Djordjevic MA (2010) Flavonoids: new roles for old molecules. J Integr Plant Biol 52:98–111
Bull CT, Weller DM, Thomashow LS (1991) Relationship between root colonization and suppression of Gaeumannomyces graminis var. tritici by Pseudomonas fluorescens Strain 2–79. Phytopathology 81:954–9
Büttner D, Bonas U (2006) Who comes first? How plant pathogenic bacteria orchestrate type III secretion. Curr Opin Microbiol 9:193–200
Buttner D, He SY (2009) Type III protein secretion in plant pathogenic bacteria. Plant Physiol 150:1656–1664
Cesco S, Neumann G, Tomasi N, Pinton R, Weisskopf L (2010) Release of plant-borne flavonoids into the rhizosphere and their role in plant nutrition. Plant Soil 329:1–25
Cesco S, Mimmo T, Tonon G, Tomasi N, Pinton R, Terzano R, Neumann G, Weisskopf L, Renella G, Landi L (2012) Plant-borne flavonoids released into the rhizosphere: impact on soil bioactivities related to plant nutrition. A review. Biol Fertil Soils 48:123–149
Chaves N, Sosa T, Escudero JC (2001) Plant growth inhibiting flavonoids in exudate of Cistus ladanifer and in associated soils. J Chem Ecol 27:623–631
Cheng HP, Walker GC (1998) Succinoglycan is required for initiation and elongation of infection threads during nodulation of alfalfa by Rhizobium meliloti. J Bacteriol 180:5183–5191
Compant S, Clément C, Sessitsch A (2010) Plant growth-promoting bacteria in the rhizo- and endosphere of plants: their role, colonization, mechanisms involved and prospects for utilization. Soil Biol Biochem 42:669–678
Conn VM, Walker AR, Franco CMM (2008) Endophytic Actinobacteria induce defense pathways in Arabidopsis thaliana. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 21:208–218
Cooper JE (2004) Multiple responses of rhizobia to flavonoids during legume root infection. Adv Bot Res 41:1–62
Cornelis P (2013) Iron transport systems and iron homeostasis in pseudomonas. In Iron uptake in bacteria with emphasis on E coli and Pseudomonas Ed.s Chakraborty R, Braun V, Hantke K, Cornelis P. Springer Netherlands pp. 67–89
Couturier J, Montanini B, Martin F, Brun A, Blaudez D, Chalot M (2007) The expanded family of ammonium transporters in the perennial poplar plant. New Phytol 174:137–150
Dai WJ, Zeng Y, Xie ZP, Staehelin C (2008) Symbiosis-promoting and deleterious effects of NopT, a novel type 3 effector of Rhizobium sp. strain NGR234. J Bacteriol 190:5101–5110
Dakora FD (2003) Defining new roles for plant and rhizobial molecules in sole and mixed plant cultures involving symbiotic legumes. New Phytol 158:39–49
Dakora FD, Phillips DA (2002) Root exudates as mediators of mineral acquisition in low-nutrient environments. Plant Soil 245:35–47
De Carvalho-Niebel F, Timmers AC, Chabaud M, Defaux-Petras A, Barker DG (2002) The Nod factor-elicited annexin MtAnn1 is preferentially localized at the nuclear periphery in symbiotically activated root tissues of Medicago truncatula. Plant J 32:343–52
de Torres-Zabala M, Truman W, Bennett MH, Lafforgue G, Mansfield JW, Egea PR, Bögre L, Grant M (2007) Pseudomonas syringae pv. tomato hijacks the Arabidopsis abscisic acid signalling pathway to cause disease. EMBO J 26:1434–1443

Deakin WJ, Broughton WJ (2009) Symbiotic use of pathogenic strategies: rhizobial protein secretion systems. Nat Rev Microbiol 7:312–320

Divi UK, Rahman T, Krishna P (2010) Brassinosteroid-mediated stress tolerance in *Arabidopsis* shows interactions with abscisic acid, ethylene and salicylic acid pathways. BMC Plant Biol 10:151

Djavaheri M, Mercado-Blanco J, Meyer JM, Versluis C, Van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM (2012) Iron-regulated metabolites produced by Pseudomonas fluorescens WCS374r are not required for eliciting induced systemic resistance against *Pseudomonas syringae pv. tomato* in Arabidopsis. Microbiologyopen 1:311–25

Djordjevic MA, Schofield PR, Rolfe BG (1985) Tn-5 mutagenesis of Rhizobium trifolii host specific nodulation genes results in mutants with altered host range ability. Mol Gen Genet 200:463–471

Dodds PN, Rathjen JP (2010) Plant immunity: towards an integrated view of plant-pathogen interactions. Nat Rev Genet 11:539–548

Dong X (2004) NPR1, all things considered. Curr Opin Plant Biol 7:547–52

Dörr J, Hurek T, Reinhold-Hurek B (1998) Type IV pili are involved in plant–microbe and fungus–microbe interactions. Mol Microbiol 30:7–17

Duijff BJ, Recorbet G, Bakker PAHM, Loper JE, Lemanceau P (1999) Microbial antagonism at the root level is involved in suppression of Fusarium wilt by the combination of nonpathogenic Fusarium oxysporum Fo47 and Pseudomonas putida WCS358. Phytopathology 89:1073–9

Dylan T, Ielpi L, Stanfield S, Kashyap L, Douglas C, Yanofsky M, Nester E, Helinski D, Ditta G (1986) Rhizobium meliloti genes required for nodule development are related to chromosomal virulence genes in Agrobacterium tumefaciens. Proc Natl Acad Sci 83:4403–4407

Egorshina AA, Khairullin RM, Sakhabutdinova AR, Luk'yantsev MA (2011) Involvement of phytohormones in the development of interaction between wheat seedlings and endophytic Bacillus subtilis strain 11BM. Russ J Plant Physiol 59:134–140

El Hadrami A, Adam LR, Daayf F (2011) Biocontrol treatments confer protection against Verticillium dahliae infection of potato by inducing antimicrobial metabolites. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 24:328–335

Evangelisti E, Rey T, Schornack S (2014) Cross-interference of plant development and plant–microbe interactions. Curr Opin Plant Biol 20:118–126

Fan J, Hill L, Crooks C, Doerner P, Lamb C (2009) Abscisic acid has a key role in modulating diverse plant-pathogen interactions. Plant Physiol 150:1750–61

Farrar K, Bryant D, Cope-Selby N (2014) Understanding and engineering beneficial plant–microbe interactions: plant growth promotion in energy crops. Plant Biotechnol J 12:1193–1206

Felle HH, Kondorosi E, Kondorosi A, Schultze M (1999) Elevation of the cytosolic free [Ca2+] is indispensable for the transduction of the nod factor signal in alfalfa. Plant Physiol 121:273–279

Finan TM, Hirsch AM, Leigh JA, Johansen E, Kuldau GA, Deegan S, Walker GC, Signer ER (1985) Symbiotic mutants of Rhizobium meliloti that uncouple plant from bacterial differentiation. Cell 40:869–877

Flores HE, Vivanco JM, Loyola-Vargas VM (1999) "Radicle" biochemistry: the biology of root-specific metabolism. Trends Plant Sci 4:220–26

Fonseca S, Chini A, Hamberg M, Adie B, Porzel A, Kramell R, Miersch O, Wasternack C, Solano R (2009) (+)-7-iso-Jasmonoyl-L-isoleucine is the endogenous bioactive jasmonate. Nat Chem Biol 5:344–350

Fu ZQ, Dong X (2013) Systemic acquired resistance: Turning local infection into global defense. Annu Rev Plant Biol 64:839–63

Furseth BJ, Conley SP, Ane J-M (2012) Soybean Response to Soil Rhizobia and Seed-applied Rhizobia Inoculants in Wisconsin. Crop Sci 52:339–344

Garcia-Garrido JM, Ocampo JA (2002) Regulation of the plant defence response in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. J Exp Bot 53:1377–86

Geetanjali GN (2007) Symbiotic nitrogen fixation in legume nodules: process and signaling: a review. Agron Sustain Dev 27:59–68

Gianinazzi-Pearson V (1996) Plant cell responses to arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi: getting to the roots of the symbiosis. Plant Cell 8:1871–83

Giraud E, Fleischman D (2004) Nitrogen-fixing symbiosis between photosynthetic bacteria and legumes. Photosynth Res 82:115–130

Glazebrook J (2005) Contrasting mechanisms of defense against biotrophic and necrotrophic pathogens. Annu Rev Phytopathol 43:205–27
Gottig N, Garavaglia BS, Garofalo CG, Orellano EG, Ottado J (2009) A filamentous hemagglutinin-like protein of Xanthomonas axonopodis pv. citri, the phytopathogen responsible for citrus canker, is involved in bacterial virulence. PLoS One 4:e4358–e4358
Grant MR, Jones JD (2009) Hormone (dis)harmony moulds plant health and disease. Science 324:750–52
Gray EJ, Smith DL (2005) Intracellular and extracellular PGPR: commonalities and distinctions in the plant-bacterium signaling processes. Soil Biol Biochem 37:395–410
Han JI, Choi HK, Lee SW, Orwin PM, Kim J, LaRoe SL, Kim TG, O'Neil J, Leadbetter JR, Lee SY, Hur CG. (2011) Complete genome sequence of the metabolically versatile plant growth-promoting endophyte Variovorax paradoxus S110. Journal of bacteriology 193(5):1183–90
Harrison MJ (1999) Molecular and cellular aspects of the arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol 50:361–89
Harrison MJ (2005) Signaling in the arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Annu Rev Microbiol 59:19–42
Hartney SL, Mazurier S, Girard MK, Mehnaz S, Davis EW, Gross H, Lemanceau P, Loper JE (2013) Ferric-pyoverdine recognition by Fpv outer membrane proteins of Pseudomonas protegens Pf-5. J Bacteriol 195:765–776
Hartwig U, Phillips DA (1991) Release and modification of nod gene inducing flavonoids from alfalfa seeds. Plant Physiol 95:804–807
Hättenschwiler S, Vitousek PM (2000) The role of polyphenols in terrestrial ecosystem nutrient cycling. Trends Ecol Evol 15:238–243
Hayashi T, Banba M, Shimoda Y, Kouchi H, Hayashi M, Imaizumi-Anraku H (2010) A dominant function of CCaMK in intracellular accommodation of bacterial and fungal endosymbionts. Plant J 63:141–154
Helgason T, Daniell TJ, Husband R, Fitter AH, Young JPW (1998) Ploughing up the wood-wide web? Nature 394:431
Hiltner L (1904) Uber neure Erfahrungen und probleme auf dem gebeit der bodenback- teriologieund unter besonderer berucksichtigung der grundungung und brache. Arb. Deut Landwirsch Ges 98:59–78
Hirsch AM (2004) Plant–microbe symbioses: a continuum from commensalism to parasitism. Symbiosis 37:345–363
Hirsch AM, Bauer WD, Bird DM, Cullimore J, Tyler B, Yoder JI (2003) Molecular signals and receptors: controlling rhizosphere interactions between plants and other organisms. Ecology 84:858–68
Hood RD, Singh P, Hsu F, Güvener T, Carl MA, Trinidad RR, Silverman JM, Ohlson BB, Hicks KG, Plemel RL (2010) A type VI secretion system of Pseudomonas aeruginosa targets a toxin to bacteria. Cell Host Microbe 7:25–37
Howden AJ, Rico A, Mentlak T, Miguet L, Preston GM (2009) Pseudomonas syringae pv. syringae B728a hydrolyses indole-3-acetonitrile to the plant hormone indole-3-acetic acid. Mol Plant Pathol 10:857–65
Huang PM, Wang MC, Wang MK (1999) Catalytic transformation of phenolic compounds in the soil. In: Inderjit, Dakshini KMN, Chester FL (eds) Principles and practices in plant ecology. Allelochemical interactions. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 287–306
Hurek T, Reinhold-Hurek B (2003) Azoarcus sp. strain BH72 as a model for nitrogen-fixing grass endophytes. J Biotechnol 106:169–178
Iavicoli A, Boutet E, Buchala A, Métraux J-P (2003) Induced systemic resistance in Arabidopsis thaliana in response to root inoculation with Pseudomonas fluorescens CHA0. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 16:851–8
Inderjit, Dakshini KMM (1992) Hesperetin 7 rutinoside (hesperidin) and taxifolin 3-arabinoside as germination and growth inhibitors in soils associated with the weed Pluchea lanceolata (DC.) C.B. Clarke (Asteraceae). J Chem Ecol 17:1585–1591

Inderjit, Weiner J (2001) Plant allelochemical interference or soil chemical ecology? Perspect Plant Ecol Evol Syst 4:3–12

James EK, Gyaneshwar P, Mathan N, Barraquio WL, Reddy PM, Iannetta PP, Olivares FL, Ladha JK (2002) Infection and colonization of rice seedlings by the plant growth-promoting bacterium Herbaspirillum seropedicae Z67. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 15:894–906

Jones JD, Dangl JL (2006) The plant immune system. Nature 444:323–329

Jones KM, Sharopova N, Lohar DP, Zhang JQ, Vanden Bosch KA, Walker GC (2008) Differential response of the plant Medicago truncatula to its symbiont Sinorhizobium meliloti or an exopolysaccharide-deficient mutant. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:704–709

Jones DL, Nguyen C, Finlay RD (2009) Carbon flow in the rhizosphere: carbon trading at the soil–root interface. Plant Soil 321:5–33

Jourand P, Renier A, Rapior S, de Faria SM, Prin Y, Galiana A, Giraud E, Dreyfus B (2005) Role of methylotrophy during symbiosis between Methylobacterium nodulans and Crotalaria podocarpa. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 18:1061–1068

Journet EP, Van Tuinen D, Gouzy J, Crespeau H, Carreau V, Farmer MJ, Niebel A, Schiex T, Jaillon O, Chatagnier O (2002) Exploring root symbiotic programs in the model legume Medicago truncatula using EST analysis. Nucleic Acids Res 30:5579–5592

Kachroo A, Robin GP (2013) Systemic signaling during plant defense. Curr Opin Plant Biol 16:527–533

Kambara K, Ardissone S, Kobayashi H, Saad MM, Schumpp O, Broughton WJ, Deakin WJ (2009) Rhizobia utilize pathogen-like effector proteins during symbiosis. Mol Microbiol 71:92–106

Kapitein N, Mogk A (2013) Deadly syringes: type VI secretion system activities in pathogenicity and interbacterial competition. Curr Opin Microbiol 16:52–8

Kikuchi K, Matsushita N, Suzuki K, Hogetsu T (2007) Flavonoids induce germination of basidiospores of the ectomycorrhizal fungus Suillus bovinus. Mycorrhiza 17:563–570

Kloepper JW, Ryu CM (2006) Bacterial endophytes as elicitors of induced systemic resistance. Soil Biol 9:33–52

Kong CH, Wang P, Zhao H, Xu XH, Zhu YD (2008) Impact of allelochemical exuded from allelopathic rice on soil microbial community. Soil Biol Biochem 40:1862–1869

Kosuta S, Chabaud M, Lougnon G, Gough C, Denarie J, Barker DG, Becard G (2003) A diffusible factor from arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi induces symbiosis-specific MtENOD11 expression in roots of Medicago truncatula. Plant Physiol 131:952–62

Kosuta S, Hazledine S, Sun J, Miwa H, Morris RJ, Downie JA, Oldroyd GE (2008) Differential and chaotic calcium signatures in the symbiosis signaling pathway of legumes. Proc Natl Acad Sci 105:9823–9828

Krause A, Ramakumar A, Bartels D, Battistoni F, Bekel T, Boch J, Böhm M, Friedrich F, Hurek T, Krause L (2006) Complete genome of the mutualistic, N2-fixing grass endophyte Azoarcus sp. strain BH72. Nat Biotechnol 24(11):1385–91

Kuhn H, Kuster H, Requena N (2010) Membrane steroid-binding protein 1 induced by a diffusible fungal signal is critical for mycorrhization in Medicago truncatula. New Phytol 185:716–733

Kuiters AT (1990) Role of phenolic substances from decomposing forest litter in plant-soil interactions. Acta Bot Neerl 39:329–348

Lagrange H, Jay-Allgmand C, Lapeyrie F (2001) Rutin, the phenolglycoside from eucalyptus root exudates, stimulates Pisolithus hyphal growth at picomolar concentration. New Phytol 149:349–355

Lakshmanan V, Kitto SL, Caplan JL, Hsueh Y-H, Kearns DB, Wu Y-S, Bais HP (2012) Microbe-associated molecular patterns-triggered root responses mediate beneficial rhizobacterial recruitment in Arabidopsis. Plant Physiol 160:1642–1661

Leeman M, Den Ouden F, Van Pelt J, Dirkx F, Steijil H, Bakker P, Schippers B (1996) Iron availability affects induction of systemic resistance to Fusarium wilt of radish by Pseudomonas fluorescens. Phytopathology 86:149–155

Lemanceau P, Expert D, Gaymard F, Bakker PAHM, Briat JF (2009) Role of iron in plant-microbe interactions. In: Van Loon LC (ed) Plant innate immunity. Advances in botanical research, vol 51. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 491–549

Li SY, Zhang ZZ, Cain A, Wang B, Long M, Taylor J (2005) Antifungal activity of camptothecin, trifolin, and hyperoside isolated from Camptotheca acuminata. J Agric Food Chem 53:32–37

Limpens E, Franken C, Smit P, Willemse J, Bisseling T, Geurts R (2003) LysM domain receptor kinases regulating rhizobial Nod factor-induced infection. Science 302:630–633

Lohar DP, Sharopova N, Endre G, Penuela S, Samac D, Town C, Silverstein KA, VandenBosch KA (2006) Transcript analysis of early nodulation events in Medicago truncatula. Plant Physiol 140:221–234

Long SR (1996) Rhizobium symbiosis: nod factors in perspective. Plant Cell 8:1885–1898

Loper JE, Henkels MD (1999) Utilization of heterologous siderophores enhances levels of iron available to pseudomonas putida in the rhizosphere. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:5357–63

Loper JE, Hassan KA, Mavrodi DV, Davis EW, Lim CK, Shaffer BT, Elbourne LD, Stockwell VO, Hartney SL, Breakwell K (2012) Comparative genomics of plant-associated pseudomonas spp.: insights into diversity and inheritance of traits involved in multitrophic interactions. PLoS Genet 8, e1002784

Lugtenberg B, Kamilova F (2011) Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol X 63:541–56

MacLean AM, Finan TM, Sadowsky MJ (2007) Genomes of the symbiotic nitrogen-fixing bacteria of legumes. Plant Physiol 144:615–622

Madsen LH, Tirichine L, Jurkiewicz A, Sullivan JT, Heckmann AB, Bek AS, Ronson CW, James EK, Stougaard J (2010) The molecular network governing nodule organogenesis and infection in the model legume Lotus japonicus. Nat Commun 1:10

Maekawa T, Kufer TA, Schulze-Lefert P (2011) NLR functions in plant and animal immune systems: so far and yet so close. Nat Immunol 12:817–826

Makino T, Takahashi T, Sakurai Y, Nanzyo M (1996) Influence of soil chemical properties on adsorption and oxidation of phenolic acids in soil suspension. Soil Sci Plant Nutr 42:867–879

Manulis S, Haviv-Chesner A, Brandl MT, Lindow SE, Barash I (1998) Differential involvement of indole-3-acetic acid biosynthetic pathways in pathogenicity and epiphytic fitness of Erwinia herbicola pv. gypsophilae. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 11:634–42

Mark GL, Dow JM, Kiely PD, Higgins H, Haynes J, Baysse C, Abbas A, Foley T, Franks A, Morrissey J, O'Gara F (2005) Transcriptome profiling of bacterial responses to root exudates identifies genes involved in microbe–plant interactions. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102:17454–17459

Markmann K, Giczey G, Parniske M (2008) Functional adaptation of a plant receptor-kinase paved the way for the evolution of intracellular root symbioses with bacteria. PLoS Biol 6:497–506

Marois E, Van den Ackerveken G, Bonas U (2002) The xanthomonas type III effector protein AvrBs3 modulates plant gene expression and induces cell hypertrophy in the susceptible host. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 15:637–46

Martin F, Nehls U (2009) Harnessing ectomycorrhizal genomics for ecological insights. Curr Opin Plant Biol 12:508–515

Martin F, Aerts A, Ahrén D, Brun A, Danchin E, Duchaussoy F, Gibon J, Kohler A, Lindquist E, Pereda V (2008) The genome of Laccaria bicolor provides insights into mycorrhizal symbiosis. Nature 452:88–92

Martin F, Kohler A, Murat C, Balestrini R, Coutinho PM, Jaillon O, Montanini B, Morin E, Noel B, Percudani R (2010) Périgord black truffle genome uncovers evolutionary origins and mechanisms of symbiosis. Nature 464:1033–1038

McCann HC, Nahal H, Thakur S, Guttman DS (2012) Identification of innate immunity elicitors using molecular signatures of natural selection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:4215–4220

Mercado-Blanco J, van der Drift KMGM, Olsson PE, Thomas-Oates JE, van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM (2001) Analysis of the pmsCEAB gene cluster involved in biosynthesis of salicylic acid and the siderophore pseudomonine in the biocontrol strain Pseudomonas fluorescens WCS374. J Bacteriol 183:1909–20

Meziane H, Van der Sluis I, Van Loon LC, Höfte M, Bakker PAHM (2005) Determinants of *Pseudomonas putida* WCS358 involved in inducing systemic resistance in plants. Mol Plant Pathol 6:177–85

Miché L, Battistoni F, Gemmer S, Belghazi M, Reinhold-Hurek B (2006) Upregulation of jasmonate-inducible defense proteins and differential colonization of roots of Oryza sativa cultivars with the endophyte Azoarcus sp. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 19:502–511

Millet YA, Danna CH, Clay NK, Songnuan W, Simon MD, Werck-Reichhart D, Ausubel FM (2010) Innate immune responses activated in Arabidopsis roots by microbe-associated molecular patterns. Plant Cell 22:973–990

Morris PF, Bone E, Tyler BM (1998) Chemotropic and contact responses of Phytophthora sojae hyphae to soybean isoflavonoids and artificial substrates. Plant Physiol 117:1171–78

Moulin L, Munive A, Dreyfus B, Boivin-Masson C (2001) Nodulation of legumes by members of the beta-subclass of Proteobacteria. Nature 411:948–50

Nagahashi G, Jr DoudsDD DD (2003) Action spectrum for the induction of hyphal branches of an arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus: exposure sites versus branching sites. Mycol Res 107:1075–82

Nakashita H, Yasuda M, Nitta T, Asami T, Fujioka S, Arai Y, Sekimata K, Takatsuto S, Yamaguchi I, Yoshida S (2003) Brassinosteroid functions in a broad range of disease resistance in tobacco and rice. Plant J 33:887–898

Navarro L, Dunoyer P, Jay F, Arnold B, Dharmasiri N, Estelle M, Voinnet O, Jones JD (2006) A plant miRNA contributes to antibacterial resistance by repressing auxin signaling. Science 312:436–439

Neilands J (1995) Siderophores: structure and function of microbial iron transport compounds. J Biol Chem 270:26723–26726

Newman EI, Reddell P (1987) The distribution of mycorrhizas among families of vascular plants. New Phytol 106:745–51

Newman MA, Sundelin T, Nielsen JT, Erbs G (2013) MAMP (microbe-associated molecular pattern) triggered immunity in plants. Front Plant Sci 4:139

Nicaise V, Roux M, Zipfel C (2009) Recent advances in PAMP- triggered immunity against bacteria: pattern recognition receptors watch over and raise the alarm. Plant Physiol 150:1638–1647

Okumura M, Filonow AB, Waller GR (1999) Use of 14C-labeled alfalfa saponins for monitoring their fate in soil. J Chem Ecol 25:2575–2583

Oldroyd GE, Downie JA (2004) Calcium, kinases and nodulation signaling in legumes. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 5:566–576

Padmavati M, Sakthivel N, Thara KV, Reddy AR (1997) Differential sensitivity of rice pathogens to growth inhibition by flavonoids. Phytochemistry 46:499–502

Parniske M (2008) Arbuscular mycorrhiza: the mother of plant root endosymbioses. Nat Rev Microbiol 6:763–775

Parret A, DeMot R (2002) Bacteria killing their own kind: novel bacteriocins of Pseudomonas and other gamma-proteobacteria. Trends Microbiol 10:107–12

Peck MC, Fisher RF, Long SR (2006) Diverse flavonoids stimulate NodD1 binding to nod gene promoters in Sinorhizobium meliloti. J Bacteriol 188:5417–5427

Pel MJ, van Dijken AJ, Bardoel BW, Seidl MF, van der Ent S, van Strijp JA, Pieterse CM (2014) Pseudomonas syringae evades host immunity by degrading flagellin monomers with alkaline protease AprA. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 27:603–610

Perret X, Staehelin C, Broughton WJ (2000) Molecular basis of symbiotic promiscuity. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 64:180–201

Perrin DR, Bottomley W (1961) Pisatin—antifungal substance from Pisum-sativum L. Nature 191:76

Perry LG, Alford ER, Horiuchi J, Paschke MV, Vivanco JM (2007a) Chemical signals in the rhizosphere: root–root and root–microbes communication. In: The rhizosphere: biogeochemistry and organic substances at the soil–plant interface. CRC, Boca Raton, pp 297–330

Perry LG, Thelen GC, Ridenour WM, Callaway RM, Paschke MV, Vivanco JM (2007b) Concentrations of the allelochemical (±)- catechin in Centaurea maculosa soils. J Chem Ecol 33:2337–2344

Peters NK, Frost JW, Long SR (1986) A plant flavone, luteolin, induces expression of Rhizobium meliloti nodulation genes. Science 233:977–80

Pieterse CMJ, Van Wees SCM, Hoffland E, Van Pelt JA, Van Loon LC (1996) Systemic resistance in Arabidopsis induced by biocontrol bacteria is independent of salicylic acid accumulation and pathogenesis-related gene expression. Plant Cell 8:1225–37

Pieterse CM, Van Wees SC, Van Pelt JA, Knoester M, Laan R, Gerrits H, Weisbeek PJ, Van Loon LC (1998) A novel signaling pathway controlling induced systemic resistance in Arabidopsis. Plant Cell 10:1571–1580

Pieterse CMJ, Zamioudis C, Berendsen RL, Weller DM, Van Wees SCM, Bakker PAHM (2014) Induced systemic resistance by beneficial microbes. Ann Rev Phytopathol 52:347

Pignatello JJ, Xing B (1996) Mechanisms of slow sorption of organic chemicals to natural particles. Environ Sci Technol 30:1–12

Preston GM, Bertrand N, Rainey PB (2001) Type III secretion in plant growth-promoting Pseudomonas fluorescens SBW25. Mol Microbiol 41:999–1014

Putker F, Tommassen-van Boxtel R, Stork M, Rodríguez-Herva J, Koster M, Tommassen J (2013) The type II secretion system (Xcp) of Pseudomonas putida is active and involved in the secretion of phosphatases. Environ Microbiol 15:2658–71

Raaijmakers JM, De Bruijn I, Nybroe O, Ongena M (2010) Natural functions of lipopeptides from Bacillus and Pseudomonas: more than surfactants and antibiotics. FEMS Microbiol Rev 34:1037–62

Radutoiu S, Madsen LH, Madsen EB, Felle HH, Umehara Y, Grønlund M, Sato S, Nakamura Y, Tabata S, Sandal N (2003) Plant recognition of symbiotic bacteria requires two LysM receptor-like kinases. Nature 425:585–592

Ran LC, Xiang ML, Zhou B, Bakker PAHM (2005) Siderophores are the main determinants of fluorescent Pseudomonas strains in suppression of grey mould in Eucalyptus urophylla. Acta Phytopathol Sinica 35:6–12

Rao AS (1990) Root flavonoids. Bot Rev 56:1–84

Reinhold-Hurek B, Hurek T (2011) Living inside plants: bacterial endophytes. Curr Opin Plant Biol 14:435–443

Rezzonico F, Binder C, Défago G, Moënne-Loccoz Y (2005) The type III secretion system of biocontrol Pseudomonas fluorescens KD targets the phytopathogenic chromista Pythium ultimum and promotes cucumber protection. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 18:991–1001

Robert-Seilaniantz A, Navarro L, Bari R, Jones JD (2007) Pathological hormone imbalances. Curr Opin Plant Biol 10:372–79

Robinette D, Matthysse AG (1990) Inhibition by Agrobacterium tumefaciens and Pseudomonas savastanoi of development of the hypersensitive response elicited by Pseudomonas syringae pv. Phaseolicola. J Bacteriol 172:5742–49

Robledo M, Jiménez-Zurdo J, Velázquez E, Trujillo M, Zurdo-Piñeiro J, Ramírez-Bahena M, Ramos B, Díaz-Mínguez J, Dazzo F, Martínez-Molina E (2008) Rhizobium cellulase CelC2 is essential for primary symbiotic infection of legume host roots. Proc Natl Acad Sci 105:7064–7069

Robledo M, Jimenez-Zurdo JI, Soto MJ, Velazquez E, Dazzo F, Martinez-Molina E, Mateos PF (2011) Development of functional symbiotic white clover root hairs and nodules requires tightly regulated production of rhizobial cellulase CelC2. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 24:798–807

Rosenblueth M, Martınez-Romero E (2006) Bacterial endophytes and their interactions with hosts. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:827–837

Rothballer M, Eckert B, Schmid M, Fekete A, Schloter M, Lehner A, Pollmann S, Hartmann A (2008) Endophytic root colonization of gramineous plants by Herbaspirillum frisingense. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 66:85–95

Ruan YJ, Kotraiah V, Straney DC (1995) Flavonoids stimulate spore germination in Fusarium solani pathogenic on legumes in a manner sensitive to inhibitors of cAMP-dependent protein kinase. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 8:929–938

Ruhe ZC, Low DA, Hayes CS (2013) Bacterial contact-dependent growth inhibition. Trends Microbiol 21:230–7

Russell AB, LeRoux M, Hathazi K, Agnello DM, Ishikawa T, Wiggins PA, Wai SN, Mougous JD (2013) Diverse type VI secretion phospholipases are functionally plastic antibacterial effectors. Nature 496:508–512

Russelle MP (2008) Biological dinitrogen fixation in agriculture. In Nitrogen in Agricultural Systems, Agronomy Monograph 49. Ed. Schepers JS and Raun WR. Soil Science Society of America, Madison, USA. pp. 281–359

Ryu CM, Farag MA, Hu CH, Reddy MS, Kloepper JW, Pare PW (2004) Bacterial volatiles induce systemic resistance in Arabidopsis. Plant Physiol 134:1017–26

Schardl CL, Leuchtmann A, Spiering MJ (2004) Symbioses of grasses with seed-borne fungal endophyte. Annu Rev Plant Biol 55:315–40

Schmelz EA, Engelberth J, Alborn HT, O'Donnell P, Sammons M, Toshima H, Tumlinson JH (2003) Simultaneous analysis of phytohormones, phytotoxins, and volatile organic compounds in plants. Proc Natl Acad Sci 100:10552–10557

Schumpp O, Deakin WJ (2010) How inefficient rhizobia prolong their existence within nodules. Trends Plant Sci 15:189–195

Shaw SL, Long SR (2003) Nod factor inhibition of reactive oxygen efflux in a host legume. Plant Physiol 132:2196–2204

Shaw LJ, Morris P, Hooker JE (2006) Perception and modification of plant flavonoid signals by rhizosphere microorganisms. Environ Microbiol 8:1867–1880

Shitashiro M, Tanaka H, Soo Hong C, Kuroda A, Takiguchi N, Ohtake H, Kato J (2005) Identification of chemosensory proteins for trichloroethylene in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Biosci Bioeng 99:396–402

Siemens J, Keller I, Sarx J, Kunz S, Schuller A, Nagel W, Schmülling T, Parniske M, Ludwig-Müller J (2006) Transcriptome analysis of Arabidopsis clubroots indicate a key role for cytokinins in disease development. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 19:480–494

Slawiak M, Lojkowska E (2009) Genes responsible for coronatine synthesis in Pseudomonas syringae present in the genome of soft rot bacteria. Eur J Plant Pathol 124:353–61

Smith SE, Read DJ (2008) Mycorrhizal symbiosis. Academic Press, New York

Smith SE, Smith FA (2011) Roles of arbuscular mycorrhizas in plant nutrition and growth: new paradigms from cellular to ecosystem scales. Annu Rev Plant Biol 62:227–250

Sosa T, Valares C, Alias JC, Lobon NC (2010) Persistence of flavonoids in Cistus ladanifer soils. Plant Soil 337:51–63

Soto MJ, Dominguez-Ferreras A, Perez-Mendoza D, Sanjuan J, Olivares J (2009) Mutualism versus pathogenesis: the give-and-take in plant-bacteria interactions. Cell Microbiol 11:381–388

Spaepen S, Vanderleyden J, Remans R (2007) Indole-3-acetic acid in microbial and microorganism-plant signaling. FEMS Microbiol Rev 31:425–448

Spaink HP, Weinman J, Djordjevic MA, Wijffelman CA, Okker RJ, Lugtenberg BJ (1989) Genetic analysis and cellular localization of the Rhizobium host specificity determining NodE protein. EMBO J 8:2811–2818

Spaink HP, Sheeley DM, van Brussel AA, Glushka J, York WS, Tak T, Geiger O, Kennedy EP, Reinhold VN, Lugtenberg BJ (1991) A novel highly unsaturated fatty acid moiety of lipo-oligosaccharide signals determines host specificity of Rhizobium. Nature 354:125–130

Staehelin C, Granado J, Müller J, Wiemken A, Mellor RB, Felix G, Regenass M, Broughton WJ, Boller T (1994) Perception of Rhizobium nodulation factors by tomato cells and inactivation by root chitinases. Proc Natl Acad Sci 91:2196–2200

Steenhoudt O, Vanderleyden J (2000) Azospirillum, a free-living nitrogen-fixing bacterium closely associated with grasses: genetic, biochemical and ecological aspects. FEMS Microbiol Rev 24:487–506

Sy A, Giraud E, Jourand P, Garcia N, Willems A, de Lajudie P, Prin Y, Neyra M, Gillis M, Boivin-Masson C (2001) Methylotrophic Methylobacterium bacteria nodulate and fix nitrogen in symbiosis with legumes. J Bacteriol 183:214–220

Tamasloukht MB, Séjalon-Delmas N, Kluever A, Jauneau A, Roux C, Bécard G, Franken P (2003) Root factors induce mitochondrial-related gene expression and fungal respiration during the developmental switch from asymbiosis to presymbiosis in the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus Gigaspora rosea. Plant Physiol 131:1468–1478

Tena G, Boudsocq M, Sheen J (2011) Protein kinase signaling networks in plant innate immunity. Curr Opin Plant Biol 14:519–529

Ton J, Mauch-Mani B (2004) Beta-amino-butyric acid-induced resistance against necrotrophic pathogens is based on ABA-dependent priming for callose. Plant J 38:119–30

Toth IK, Pritchard L, Birch PR (2006) Comparative genomics reveals what makes an enterobacterial plant pathogen. Annu Rev Phytopathol 44:305–36

Tran H, Ficke A, Asiimwe T, Höfte M, Raaijmakers JM (2007) Role of the cyclic lipopeptide massetolide A in biological control of Phytophthora infestans and in colonization of tomato plants by Pseudomonas fluorescens. New Phytol 175:731–42

Tsavkelova EA, Klimova SY, Cherdyntseva TA, Netrusov AI (2006) Hormones and hormone-like substances of microorganisms: a review. Appl Biochem Microbiol 42:229–235

Turner TR, Ramakrishnan K, Walshaw J, Heavens D, Alston M, Swarbreck D, Osbourn A, Grant A, Poole PS (2013) Comparative metatranscriptomics reveals kingdom level changes in the rhizosphere microbiome of plants. ISME J 7:2248–2258

Uren NC (2000) Types, amounts and possible functions of compounds released into the rhizosphere by soil grown plants. In: Pinton R, Varanini Z, Nannipieri P (eds) The rhizosphere: biochemistry and organic substances at the soil interface. Marcel Dekker, New York, pp 19–40

van de Mortel JE, de Vos RC, Dekkers E, Pineda A, Guillod L, Bouwmeester K, van Loon JJ, Dicke M, Raaijmakers JM (2012) Metabolic and transcriptomic changes induced in Arabidopsis by the rhizobacterium Pseudomonas fluorescens SS101. Plant Physiol 160(4):2173–88

Van der Ent S, Verhagen BW, Van Doorn R, Bakker D, Verlaan MG, Pel MJ, Joosten RG, Proveniers MC, Van Loon L, Ton J (2008) MYB72 is required in early signaling steps of rhizobacteria-induced systemic resistance in Arabidopsis. Plant Physiol 146:1293–1304

van Loon LC, Bakker PA, Pieterse CM (1998) Systemic resistance induced by rhizosphere bacteria. Annu Rev Phytopathol 36:453–483

Van Wees SC, Pieterse CM, Trijssenaar A, van' Westende YA, Hartog F, Van Loon LC (1997) Differential induction of systemic resistance in Arabidopsis by biocontrol bacteria. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 10:716–24

Wahl R, Wippel K, Goos S, Kämper J, Sauer N (2010) A novel high-affinity sucrose transporter is required for virulence of the plant pathogen Ustilago maydis. PLoS Biol 8:435

Walker TS, Bais HP, Grotewold E, Vivanco JM (2003) Root exudation and rhizosphere biology. Plant Physiol 132:44–51

Wang D, Yang S, Tang F, Zhu H (2012) Symbiosis specificity in the legume–rhizobial mutualism. Cell Microbiol 14:334–342

Wardle DA, Nilsson M-C, Gallet C, Zackrisson O (1998) An ecosystem-level perspective of allelopathy. Biol Rev Camb Phil Soc 73:305–19

Wassem R, Kobayashi H, Kambara K, Le Quéré A, Walker GC, Broughton WJ, Deakin WJ (2008) TtsI regulates symbiotic genes in Rhizobium species NGR234 by binding to tts boxes. Mol Microbiol 68:736–748

Weller DM, Mavrodi DV, van Pelt JA, Pieterse CMJ, van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM (2012) Induced systemic resistance in Arabidopsis thaliana against Pseudomonas syringae pv. tomato by 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol-producing Pseudomonas fluorescens. Phytopathology 102:403–12

Wirthmueller L, Maqbool A, Banfield MJ (2013) On the front line: structural insights into plant–pathogen interactions. Nat Rev Microbiol 11:761–776

Yang B, Sugio A, White FF (2006) Os8N3 is a host disease-susceptibility gene for bacterial blight of rice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:10503–10508

Yano K, Yoshida S, Müller J, Singh S, Banba M, Vickers K, Markmann K, White C, Schuller B, Sato S (2008) CYCLOPS, a mediator of symbiotic intracellular accommodation. Proc Natl Acad Sci 105:20540–20545

Young JPW, Johnston AWB (1989) The evolution of specificity in the legume-Rhizobium symbiosis. Trends Ecol Evol 4:341–349

Yuan Z-C, Haudecoeur E, Faure D, Kerr KF, Nester EW (2008) Comparative transcriptome analysis of Agrobacterium tumefaciens in response to plant signal salicylic acid, indole-3-acetic acid and gamma-amino butyric acid reveals signaling cross-talk and Agrobacterium–plant coevolution. Cell Microbiol 10:2339–2354

Zamioudis C, Pieterse CMJ (2012) Modulation of host immunity by beneficial microbes. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 25:139–50

Zamioudis C, Hanson J, Pieterse CMJ (2014) β-Glucosidase BGLU42 is a MYB72-dependent key regulator of rhizobacteria-induced systemic resistance and modulates iron deficiency responses in Arabidopsis roots. New Phytol 204:368–79

Zinniel DK, Lambrecht P, Harris NB, Feng Z, Kuczmarski D, Higley P, Vidaver AK (2002) Isolation and characterization of endophytic colonizing bacteria from agronomic crops and prairie plants. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:2198–2208

Soil Microbe Diversity and Root Exudates as Important Aspects of Rhizosphere Ecosystem

Owais Bashir, Kamran Khan, Khalid Rehman Hakeem, Naseer Ahmed Mir, Gh Hassan Rather, and Rehana Mohiuddin

Abstract The rhizosphere is an area of soil surrounding plant roots in which soil's most reactions take place. The term "rhizosphere" was coined by Lorenz Hiltner, and it is 1–2 mm wide. The rhizosphere is divided into three zones: endorhizosphere, rhizoplane, and ectorhizosphere. The two dynamic properties of soil rhizosphere are root exudates and soil microbes. Root exudates are the chemical compounds that are secreted by roots and act as a source of food for soil microbes and play a pivotal role in soil microbe and plant interaction. These are low- and high-molecular-weight compounds. The root exudates are important for root-microbe and root-root communication. The other important aspect of rhizosphere is soil microbes. The soil microbes include bacteria, fungi, and actinomycetes. These organisms are important for both soil and fungi. The main aspect of this chapter is to give brief information about the underground world, and its future perspective is to understand soil microbe and plant interaction for enhancing sustainable agriculture. Studies on gene expression in the

O. Bashir
Division of Soil Sciences, Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences and Technology of Kashmir, Srinagar 190025, India

K. Khan
Division of Plant Pathology, Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences and Technology of Kashmir, Srinagar 190025, India

K.R. Hakeem (✉)
Faculty of Forestry, Universiti Putra Malaysia, Serdang, 43400 Selangor, Malaysia
e-mail: kur.hakeem@gmail.com

N.A. Mir
Faculty of Forestry, Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agriculture Science and Technology of Kashmir, Srinagar, India

G.H. Rather
Division of Fruit Sciences, Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences and Technology of Kashmir, Srinagar 190025, India

R. Mohiuddin
Division of Agronomy, Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences and Technology of Kashmir, Srinagar 190025, India

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_15

rhizosphere and the use of other molecular techniques like m-RNA, proteomics, labeled root compounds, stable isotope probes, and reporter technology will help in exploring underground undiscovered world.

Keywords Rhizosphere • Roots • Exudates • Soil microbes • Allelochemicals • Ecosystem

1 Introduction

The rhizosphere is the area of soil roots where most of the reactions are affected by plant roots. The rhizosphere is about 1–2 mm wide with no distinct boundaries (Brimecombe et al. 2007). Lorenz Hiltner is a German scientist who coined the term "rhizosphere" to explain plant root association. At Munich in 2004, a meeting was organized in his memory. The term rhizosphere is from the Greek words "*rhiza*" which means root and "*sphere*" which means field or area of influence (Hartmann et al. 2008). The rhizosphere is broadly classified into the following three zones, viz., endorhizosphere, rhizoplane, ectorhizosphere (Clark 1949; Lynch 1987; Pinton et al. 2001a). The endorhizosphere consists of root tissues including cortical cells and the endodermis. Rhizoplane is the area of root surface where soil microbes and soil particles interact. It comprises of the cortex, epidermis, and mucilage. The third zone is ectorhizosphere which is formed from soil particles adjacent to roots. In addition to these three fundamental zones, few other layers are also found which include the mycorrhizosphere, rhizosheath, and bulk soil (Linderman 1988; Curl and Truelove 1986; Gobat et al. 2004). Mycorrhizosphere is the mycorrhizal association of plants. Rhizosheath is the strongly adhering dense layer and consists of root hairs, mucoid layer, soil particles, and soil microbes. Bulk soil is the portion of soil which is not the component of rhizosphere (Brundrett 2009; Lambers et al. 2008) (Figs. 1 and 2).

The rhizosphere is called the hot spot of soil microbes (Brimecombe et al. 2007). In Kashmiri Language, we may call rhizosphere as Wazwan point for soil microbes. The rhizosphere is also called as human gut microbiome for plants (Mendes et al. 2011). Rhizosphere is considered as the spot where soil genesis actually starts (Pate et al. 2001). To soil microorganisms, rhizosphere is the lush oasis in the desert. Because it is underground, rhizosphere is considered as the last frontier in agriculture. Soil microbial community also has greater reservoir of biological diversity in the world (Curtis et al. 2002; Chaparro et al. 2013; Philippot et al. 2013; Buée et al. 2009). The rhizosphere soil contains up to 10^{11} microbial cells/g (Egamberdiyeva et al. 2008) and over 30,000 prokaryotic species. The combined genome of the rhizosphere is greater than that of plant and thus is called plants' second genome (Bron et al. 2012). The eelworms are being used to quantify the extent of rhizosphere because they are highly in peculiar in reacting to chemicals exudated by plant roots (Bolton et al. 1992) (Table 1).

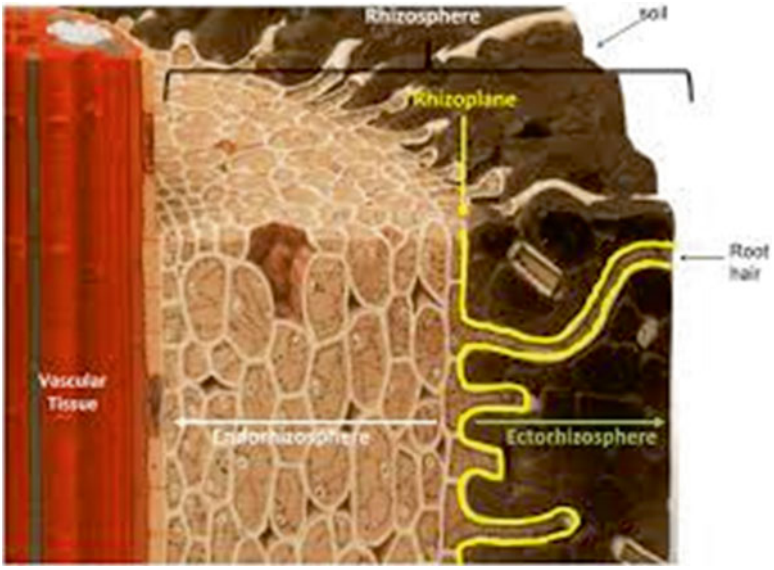


Fig. 1 Ectorhizosphere of the soil root ecosystem

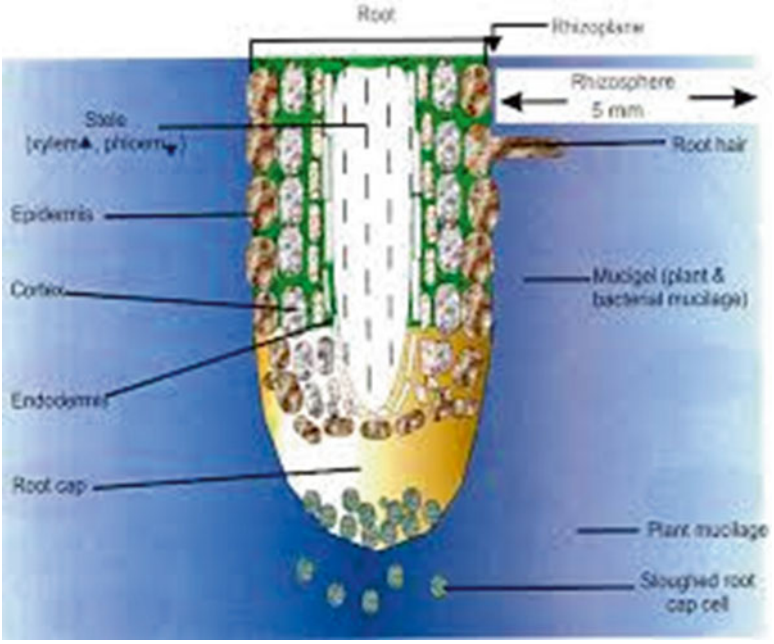


Fig. 2 The endorhizosphere and its different components

Table 1 Similarity between the human gut and rhizosphere

Characters	Human gut	Rhizosphere	References
Important for nutrient uptake	Microbes help in the breakdown of food and generate essential nutrients, such as vitamins B and D. In reward, microbes of the human gut get the carbon source from mucin	Soil bacteria, fungi, and actinomycetes assist plants to the uptake of nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium, and other important nutrients for their growth. The microbes also help in genesis and formation of minerals and degradation of organic matter. The root exudates and other rhizodeposits provide the energy source of soil microbes	Bais et al. (2006), VanDer et al. (2008), Derrien et al. (2010), Fagundes et al. (2012)
Restricts colonization of pathogens	Certain interactions of beneficial microorganisms include nutrient competition, inhibitory protein production, alteration of receptor sites, and modification of toxins	Certain soil beneficial microorganisms suppress plant pathogens by certain interactions like nutrient competition, antibiotic and lytic enzyme production, and consumption of pathogen stimulatory compounds	Lugtenberg and Kamilova (2009), Doornbos et al. (2012), Fagundes et al. (2012)
Modulate host immunity	The microbes stimulate host innate immunity system that not only affect intestinal mucosa but also produce immune responses in the respiratory tract. Also the development of microflora in the gut of humans during first year of life is very important for the development of the immune system	The rhizobacteria suppress diseases and systemically boost defense system of plants. The rhizobacteria trigger plant resistance to the pathogens. Most important chemicals are jasmonates	Bron et al. (2012), Ent et al. (2009), Fagundes et al. (2012), Ichinohe et al. (2011)

Distinguish friend from foe	Pathogens and symbionts have similar molecular patterns which are perceived by immune system, but the mechanism of immune system response is still unknown. Many mechanisms are present to prevent stimulation of immune system like physical barrier of mucous and reduced pathogen receptors in epithelial cells. Regulatory T cells suppress immune response of commensal gut microbes	Pathogens and symbionts have similar molecular patterns but are recognized by the immune system which is still unknown and thus differentiates friend from foe. Both pathogens and beneficial soil microorganisms suppress plant immune system and promote their own colonization through secretion of effector molecules	Chinen and Rudensky (2012), Lathrop et al. (2011), Zamioudis and Pieterse (2012)
Microbiome density and diversity	Microbial diversity is very high in the human gut ranging from 10^{11} to 10^{12} cells per ml of intestinal fluid, but its phylogenetic diversity is very low having only 7 of 55 described bacterial phyla which mostly include firmicutes and bacteroides. It is seen that more than 500–1000 sp. of bacteria exist in the human gut. There occurs stratified type of microbial variation and certain category of another community known as enterotypes	The rhizosphere microbial density is higher than bulk soil, and it ranges from 10^{8} to 10^{9} cells/g. These microbial communities are considered most diverse communities in the world with 10^{4} bacterial sps./g of soil. Rhizosphere microbes vary between plant species if grown in same soil	Weinert et al. (2011), Arumugam et al. (2011), Roesch et al. (2007), Weller et al. (2002)

2 The Dynamic Properties of Rhizosphere Are Root Exudates and Soil Microbes

2.1 Root Exudates

The knowledge of roots and its biology, biochemistry, and genetic evolution has considerably increased during the last few years, but the certain processes occurring in the rhizosphere by the roots such as root exudates and root border cells are still unknown (Benfey and Scheres 2000; Hawes et al. 2000). The plant roots provide mechanical anchorage to the plants and assist in water and mineral nutrient uptake. Some special functions including synthesizes, secretion, and accumulation of diverse group of chemical compounds are also performed by the plant roots (Flores et al. 1999). These compounds exudated by the plant roots play a pivotal function as chemical attractants in the soil root ecosystem (Estabrook and Yoder 1998; Bais et al. 2001). These chemical compounds are referred as root exudates. A diverse group of these chemical compounds have been found exudating from intact and healthy roots. These compounds include sugars, amino acids, peptides, vitamins, nucleotides, organic acids, enzymes, fungal stimulants, and inhabitants and also some other compounds which help in plant water uptake, plant defense, and stimulation (Pate et al. 2001; Pate and Verboom 2009; Taylor et al. 2009). Sugars, organic acids, coumarins, lipids, flavonoids, enzymes, amino acids, proteins, aliphatics, and aromatics are examples of primary substance found within the roots (Shukla et al. 2011). Among these, the organic acids are of considerable importance because of its role in providing substrate for microorganisms and also acting as intermediate in biological and chemical reactions in the soil (Philippe 2006; Wutzler and Reichstein 2013). The ability of plant roots to produce a wide range of chemical compounds is the most striking feature of plant roots with nearly 5–21 % of all photosynthetically fixed carbon being transferred to rhizosphere through root exudation (Marschner 1995). These root exudates are being classified as low-molecular-weight compounds and high-molecular-weight compounds. Sugars, amino acids, phenols, organic acids, and various other secondary metabolites are included in low-molecular-weight compounds, whereas mucilage and proteins are included in high-molecular-weight compounds (walker et al. 2003). These root exudates are relatively important in mediating the communication of plants with soil microbes (Bais et al. 2004; 2006; Weir et al. 2004; Broeckling et al. 2008). Root exudation is an important element of rhizodeposition and is a primary source of soil organic carbon released by the roots (Hutsch et al. 2000; Nguyen 2003). Whipps and Lynch (1985) first coined the term rhizodeposition as materials lost from roots, which include lysates, insoluble exudates, soluble material, and certain gases like carbon dioxide and ethylene.

2.1.1 Interaction Studies of Root Exudates

Another important function of root exudates is that it acts as a messenger that initiates and intimates physical and biological communication between the soil microbes and plant roots. Root-mediated rhizospheric communication is grouped into two categories: negative and positive interactions (Weller et al. 2002; Mendes et al. 2011; Elsas et al. 2012). Positive interactions involve communication of plant roots with certain plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR). These plant roots produce certain chemicals that act as signals and attract certain microbes and stimulate chemotaxis (Thimmaraju et al. 2008). Positive interactions of root exudates also include growth enhancers that enhance growth of neighboring plants and help in cross-species signaling. The negative interaction of root exudates includes secretion of insecticidal and nematicidal compounds, phytotoxins, and secretion of antibiotics (Bais et al. 2006).

Root Rhizosphere Communication

Performance of plant species depends upon its ability to recognize and receive changes in environment and to respond to these changes for acclimatization. These changes are very important for growth and development of plants and microbes (Chaparro et al. 2014). Root exudate is a major food source of soil microbes that communicate with the plants and is considered most diverse ecosystem on earth (Vogel et al. 2009). These interactions of soil microorganisms and plant roots are categorized into root-root communication and root-microbe communication.

Root-Root Communication

When roots communicate with neighboring roots of other plant species, they prevent their invadence by release of certain chemical messengers (Ahmed et al. 2007). Allelopathy is the phenomena which involve beneficial, harmful, direct, and indirect effect on plants through secretion of secondary metabolites (Li et al. 2010). Allelopathy is known for more than 2000 years with respect to plant interference (Callaway and Aschehoug 2000; Ridenour and Callaway 2001; Weston and Duke 2003). Allelopathy also has importance in agriculture, because the allelochemicals produced by the plants control weed population (Haribal and Enwick 1998). The most important allelochemicals in the plant ecosystem include phenolic compounds. Phenols are the chemical compounds having a hydroxyl group (–OH) attached to an aromatic hydrocarbon group (Zeng et al. 2008). Phenolic compounds which play an important role in allelopathy are produced from pentose phosphate pathway. 4-Phosphate erythrose and phosphoenolpyruvic acid undergo certain condensation reaction with sedoheptulose 7-phosphate and generate phenolic compounds. There occurs a series of reactions in shikimic and acetic acid metabolic pathway. The phenolic allelochemicals have adverse impact on the photosynthesis and respiration

of other plant species by weakening their oxygen absorption capacity and by reducing their photosynthetic rate by reducing chlorophyll content. Patterson (1981) reported that 10–30 μmol/l caffeic acid, ferulic acid, vanillic acid, coumaric acid, and cinnamic acid could considerably reduce growth of soybean. Bais et al. (2002) reported (+) catechin and (−) catechin as root phytotoxin. + catechin was produced invasive behavior of knapwood and (−) catechin was inhibitory to the soilborne bacteria. It has also been seen that certain allelochemicals released by the host roots stimulate haustoria formation (Estabrook and Yoder 1998; Yoder 2001). Allelochemicals produced by the black walnut causes growth inhibition and is one of the earliest classical examples of allelopathy (Bais et al. 2006). The naphthoquinone, juglone (5-hydroxy-1, 4- naphthoquinone), is responsible for the walnut toxicity. Juglone is generally found in nontoxic form, but when exposed to air it becomes oxidized and thus becomes toxic. Juglone is extracted from fresh bark of stripped roots or from fresh fruit hulls (Kocacali et al. 2009). Many other close relative species of black walnut like butternut or white walnut (*Juglans cinerea*) also produce juglone, but in limited quantities. Wheat is also known to produce root exudates with allelopathic activity. Due to simple phenolic compounds like p-coumaric, p-hydroxybenzoic, ferulic acid, vanillic acid, and syringic acid, the presence of hydroxamic acids is responsible for wheat allelopathy (Yongqing 2006). Sorghum roots also secrete a mixture of hydrophobic substances which are biologically active and include sorgoleone, characterized as (2-hydroxy-5-methoxy-3-pentadecatriene)-p-benzoquinone. Sorgoleone is used as an important bioherbicide which is used for broadleaf and grass weeds at concentrations below 10 μM in hydroponic bioassays (Xiaohan et al. 2004). Some plants also secrete secondary metabolites that suppress growth of specific plants (autotoxicity). Autotoxicity is a phenomenon mostly applicable in agricultural crops and weeds, as well as in some plants that inhabit natural systems. Phytotoxic root exudates play an important role in mediating autoinhibition in some species like *Cucumis sativus* (garden cucumber), *Centaurea maculosa* (spotted knapweed) (Perry et al. 2005), and *Asparagus officinalis* (garden asparagus) (Yu et al. 2003).

Root Microbiome Communication

In the unseen underground ecosystem, some complex communication occurs which includes root- root and root-microbe interaction which has both beneficial and harmful outcomes (Bais et al. 2006). The sophisticated processes include root-microbe interaction which includes both mutualistic and pathogenic relationship, metabolic processes including parasitic plants and root secretion, energy transfer which comprises electric potential, and resource distribution and information transfer which include quorum sensing. These processes play a critical role in terrestrial ecosystem (Bouwmeester et al. 2007; Gewin 2010). Some microbial bioactive compounds which function within the belowground ecosystem play a dynamic role in plant life. Roots of the plants continuously secrete organic compounds which help in harnessing beneficial microbes and suppressing plant pathogens (Berg and Smalla

2009; Marschner and Timonen 2005). Thus, these roots have stimulatory or inhibitory influence on soil microbes which help in their community structure development as they increase their competition for nutrients and other resources (Cesco et al. 2010, 2012).

There occurs a dynamic interaction between soil microbes and plants in nature which is based on coevolutionary pressures (Klironomos 2002; Dobbelaere et al. 2003; Duffy et al. 2004; Morrissey et al. 2004; Morgan et al. 2005; Reinhart and Callaway 2006). Consequently, the microbial communities in the rhizosphere vary due to certain factors like different species of plant (Batten et al. 2006; Innes et al. 2004), their genotypes (Kowalchuk et al. 2006), and their different developmental stages (Mougel et al. 2006; Wei et al. 2007). Microbial community in soil is closely related to highly diverse plant communities, but their connecting link is still unclear and it is believed that their close relationship occurs due to widely occurring habitat heterogeneity or enhanced plant biomass. It may be also due to different carbon substrates which act as signaling compounds as they are secreted by the plant roots. These compounds belong to a class called flavonoids which are responsible for specific microbe-host interactions. These flavonoids act as signaling molecules and are highly present in symbiotic and pathogenic microbes; there occur a large number of flavonoids in the plants and a greater number of flavonoids are identified in legumes. More than 4000 different flavonoids occur which mediate host specificity (Perret et al. 2000). In several *Fusarium* plant interactions, flavonoids help in micro- and macroconidia germination but have no effect on hyphal growth during infection. Certain isoflavonoid compounds are also present in legume crops. Soya bean (*Glycine max*) produces genistein, daidzein, and, isoflavonoids which effectively stimulate *Bradyrhizobiumjaponicum* nod genes but have negative effect on the *Sinorhizobium meliloti* nod gene expression. *S. meliloti* nod gene expression gets stimulated by luteolin (Juan et al. 2007). This phenomenon helps rhizobia to differentiate between hosts and other legumes. The specific flavonoid produced by the legumes not only stimulates nod gene expression but also has its effect on rhizobial chemotaxis (Bais et al. 2006). Strigolactones recently have been identified as important signaling molecules in the AMF-plant interaction and thus are "hot issues" in the mycorrhizal study. Ectomycorrhizal fungi are also stimulated by Brassicaceae (Zeng et al. 2003). There occurs a specific interaction between rhizobia and legume allowing only few rhizobial strains to nodulate with specific host legumes. *Medicago*, *Melilotus*, and *Trigonella* genera are nodulated with *S. meliloti*, whereas *Rhizobium leguminosarum* bv. viciae stimulates nodulation in *Pisum*, *Vicia*, *Lens*, and *Lathyrus* genera (Bais et al. 2006). Scientists demonstrated that plant roots secrete L-MA (malic acid) which acts as effective signaling molecule to establish beneficial rhizobial communities (Thimmaraju et al. 2008). *Arabidopsis thaliana* and *Medicago truncatula* are the two model plant species which are unable to maintain nonresident soil fungal populations, but maintain resident soil fungal populations. These phenomena occur largely due to root exudates. In vitro-generated root exudates applied to the soil fungi show similar results to that of plants growing in same soil (Yanhong et al. 2009).

2.2 *Rhizosphere Soil Microbes*

Someone has rightly said that rhizosphere microorganisms have two faces like Janus, the Roman god of doors and gates who symbolizes changes and transitions from one condition to another (one part of the face looks at the plant roots and the other at the soil; the ears and nose sense other gods, and the mouth is wide open for swallowing). It is also well established that soil is a good medium for plants and microbes, but the plants and their associated microbes help in genesis and weathering of soil (Pate et al. 2001; Pate and Verboom 2009; Taylor et al. 2009; Pausch et al. 2013). Soil formation occurs due to weathering process which primarily occurs due to soil microbes (Raven and Edwards 2001; Beerling and Berner 2005; Taylor et al. 2009). The soil microflora includes bacteria, fungi, actinomycetes, protozoa, and algae (Raaijmakers and Weller 2001; Singh et al. 2007; Grayston et al. 1998; Broeckling et al. 2008). Recently the nucleic acid analysis revealed enormous diversity in the soil (Nannipieri et al. 2003a, b; Suzuki et al. 2006).

2.2.1 Microorganisms and Their Mode of Action

The soil microbes can generally be divided into beneficial, harmful, and neutral microbes. The beneficial soil microbes can further be divided into three categories. The first category helps in nutrient supply (Ma et al. 2003; Robin et al. 2008; Michaud et al. 2008). The second group includes those that stimulate plant growth by suppressing activity of phytopathogens. The third group of microbes directly promotes growth of plants by secreting phytohormones (Welbaum et al. 2004; Brimecombe et al. 2007) (Fig. 3).

2.2.2 Nutrient Availability and Plant Growth Promotion

The most population in the rhizosphere is occupied by the bacteria. Those rhizosphere bacteria which enhance plant growth are called plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) (Kloepper JW Schroth 1978; Lucy et al. 2004). The most dynamic function of PGPR is secretion of phytohormones. A diverse group of PGPR are inoculated on the crops which include *Azospirillum* (Cassan and Garcia 2008), *Bacillus* (Jacobsen et al. 2004), *Pseudomonas* (Loper and Gross 2007), *Rhizobium* (Long 2001), *Serretia* (De Vleeschauwer and Hofte 2007), *Stenotrophomonas* (Ryan et al. 2009), and *Streptomyces* (Schrey and Tarkka 2008). Some fungi belonging to genera *Ampelomyces*, *Coniothyrium*, and *Trichoderma* have also beneficial effects (Harman et al. 2004). The mode of action of PGPR involves complex mechanism which promotes plant growth, development, and protection. The most versatile functions of PGPR are biofertilization, phytostimulation, and biocontrol (Morgan et al. 2005; Muller et al. 2009; Chet and Chernin 2002). The success of plant-microbe interaction depends on colonization (Lugtenberg et al. 2002;

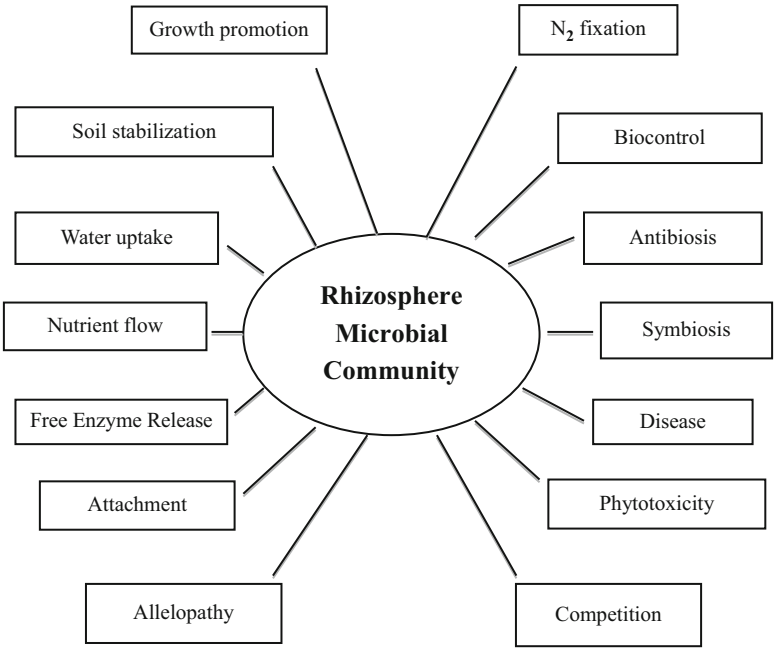


Fig. 3 Shows role of rhizosphere microbial community and its harmful and beneficial effects

Kamilova et al. 2005). The steps of colonization include attraction, recognition, adherence, invasion, colonization, and growth (Pinton et al. 2007; Berg 2009).

Plant growth in the agriculture is enhanced by certain abiotic and biotic factors. The abiotic factors comprise light, temperature, water, and air. The biotic factors include PGPR which help in plant growth by secreting enzymes (Lynch 1990; Marilley and Aragno 1999; Garcia et al. 2001). Interestingly the inoculation of PGPR increases the crop yield and plant growth (Farzana et al. 2009). Some plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria have more than one trait (Joseph et al. 2007; Yasmin et al. 2007; Egamberdiyeva 2007). These PGPR release volatile compounds like 2,3-butanediol and acetoin that help in growth and development of Arabidopsis thaliana (Ryu et al. 2003). There have also been reports that diazotrophical bacterial application in the soil increases crop yield, plant height, and microbial population in the soil (Anjum et al. 2007). Due to certain combination of PGPR, carbohydrates, and IBA (double and triple combinations), there occurs increased rooting capacity of apple (Karakurt et al. 2009). PGPR are the most effective model organism that can replace pesticides and other harmful supplements which cause soil and environmental pollutions. These PGPR also act as biofertilizers and bioenhancers and reduce use of

chemical fertilizers (Ashrafuzzaman et al. 2009). Utilization of PGPR with alternative use of chemical fertilizers reduces pollution, preserves environment, and increases agricultural productivity (Ştefa et al. 2008). Combination of PGPR and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi enhances nutrient use efficiency of plants and allows low rate of application of fertilizers (Adesemoye et al. 2009; Tanvir et al. 2015). The bacteria and archaea are responsible for biological nitrogen fixation. These include symbiotic nitrogen fixers like rhizobium, which are obligate symbionts in legume plants and *Frankia* in nonleguminous plants and certain free-living forms like cyanobacteria, azospirillum, azotobacter, and diazotroph.

2.2.3 Pathogen Inhibition

Soil microbes live around plant roots and feed on root secretions and dead root cells. Root colonization not only results in high plant growth-promoting rhizobacterial population densities but also functions as antagonistic metabolites (Shoda 2000; Raaijmakers et al. 2002). The different mechanisms involved are antibiosis, parasitism, and induced systemic resistance. Antibiosis is the phenomenon where microbial growth gets inhibited by different compounds like antibiotics, toxins, biosurfactants, and volatile organic compounds. Parasitism is the phenomenon where cell wall-degrading enzymes such as chitinase and β-1,3-glucanase are secreted which degrade cell wall (Compant et al. 2005; Haas and Defago 2005). A wide range of antifungal metabolites such as zwittermicin-A, kanosamine, and lipopeptides are secreted by *Bacillus subtilis*. These antifungal metabolites include surfactin, iturin, and fengycin families (Emmert and Handelsman 1999; Ongena and Thonart 2006). Competition for the carbon source of energy is responsible for fungi inhibition by reducing fungal spore germination (Chin et al. 2003; Alabouvette et al. 2006). Another mechanism of pathogen inhibition is induced resistance. The induced resistance involves the use of beneficial bacteria that not only reduces the activity of pathogenic microorganisms through antagonism but also stimulates plant defense mechanism (Shoda 2000; VanLoon 2007). In some instances, the mechanism of induced systemic resistance coincides with systemic acquired resistance. Both induced systemic resistance and systemic acquired resistance enhance the resistance of plant which depends on signaling compounds like ethylene, jasmonic acid, and salicylic acid (VanLoon 2007).

2.2.4 Rhizosphere Effect

The rhizosphere effect is determined by dividing the number of microorganisms per gram of rhizosphere soil by the number of microorganisms in a gram of control soil (Wasaki et al. 2005; Herman et al. 2006). The rhizosphere effect greatly reduces as we move away

from roots. For bacteria and fungi, R:S value ranges from 5 to 20. Actinomycetes is a less effected group of soil microorganisms having R:S effect of 2–12 (Curl and Truelove 1986; Foster 1986; Lynch 1990; Rovira 1991; Pinton et al. 2001a, b; Whipps 2001).

3 Quorum Sensing: The Bacterial Communication

"Quorum sensing" (QS) is the communication of bacteria which includes cell density. It is cell-to-cell communication. The bacterial quorum sensing occurs by the binding of signals with their receptor proteins. When binding occurs, it regulates gene expression in response to cell density (Gonzalez and Marketon 2003; Hong et al. 2012). The signaling molecules involved in quorum sensing are called autoinducers. These autoinducers are synthesized at particular stage of life cycle or may be synthesized for stimulating response, once the signaling molecule has reached at a particular concentration (Gonzalez and Marketon 2003). The quorum sensing is a cell density level: once a particular cell density is achieved, the concentration of quorum-sensing signals becomes enough to induce gene expression, either directly through transcriptional regulator or indirectly by signaling cascade activation (Fuqua et al. 2001). *N*-acyl homoserine lactone (AHL) is the most studied quorum-sensing signal molecule (Williams et al. 2007). AHL signals are highly preserved in nature having same homoserine lactone moiety, but differ in length and structure of acyl side chain. The *N*-acylated side chains have fatty acids. These chains have varying degrees of saturation, different chain lengths (4–18 carbons), and presence of different groups (hydroxy, oxo-, or no substituent at the C3 position) (Swift et al. 1997; Schuster et al. 2013). LuxI synthase gene using intermediate of fatty acid biosynthesis and *S*-adenosyl methionine synthesizes AHL molecules. The AHL molecules will incorporate LuxR protein and regulate downstream gene expression. Each LuxR protein is specific for its AHL signal molecules (Parsek and Greenberg 2000). AHL regulates many target genes, but basic mechanism of gene regulation and AHL biosynthesis seem to be specific in quorum-sensing bacterial species (Dong et al. 2002). QS mechanism with LuxI/LuxR signal molecules in *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* causes crown gall disease of plants. *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* with tumor-derived opines and transcriptional factor OccR or AccR regulate gene expression of LuxR homologue TraR (Oger et al. 1998; Zhu and Winans 1988). *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* uses LasI/R and RhlI/R to promote regulation and expression of virulence factors and biofilm formation (Glessner et al. 1999). Another class of homoserine lactone known as *p*-coumaroyl-homoserine lactone (pC-HSL) has been discovered to be produced by the bacteria *Rhodopseudomonas palustris*. The intracellular fatty acid is not used as precursor in the synthesis of pC-HSL molecules, and synthesis occurs due to RpaI and LuxI by using environmental *p*-coumaric acid (Schaefer et al. 2008). Many bacteria use QS to gain maximal competition advantages, and to measure the advantages of QS some organisms use quorum quenching (QQ) (Lin et al. 2003; Rodolfo et al. 2015). This QS widely occurs in prokaryotes and eukaryotes and plays an important role in pathogen-host and microbial interactions (Dong et al. 2002).

4 Conclusion

In this chapter, we discussed an overview of ecology of various organisms and the root exudates. Various microorganisms are present in the rhizosphere, and they form a complex community which is connected with each other and with the external environment. The genetic and functional diversity of soil microbes is very important for both plant and soil health. The major challenge ahead of rhizosphere is the discovery of new signaling molecules that occur between different organisms; these discoveries are very important to enhance our knowledge to deal with the new pest and disease problems in the sustainable manner. There also occurs challenges to adopt new crops and cropping systems which absorb most of the nutrients from soil particularly nitrogen and phosphorus because our phosphorus sources are getting diminished. Today rhizosphere is considered a new research field with many exciting challenges. These challenges can be both fundamental and applied. There are some major developments in biogeochemistry and ecology of rhizosphere which need a global consideration. In symbiotic association, a great achievement has been made, but there still occurs a great lacuna of knowledge in other biological interactions. Rhizodeposition is considered the central concept in rhizosphere ecosystem and beyond rhizosphere ecology. Rhizodeposition is very important for terrestrial ecosystem biodiversity and functioning. In rhizosphere studying of gene expression is used for understanding certain processes like inducing microbial activity, biological control, nutrient competition, and certain molecular interactions between roots and roots and roots and microorganisms. Some techniques have been developed to characterize m-RNA (Nannipieri et al. 2003a, b), but soil proteomics is still not so developed (Nannipieri 2006; Ogunseitan 2006). Stable isotope probe (SIP) has also been used in understanding functional activity and community structure in soil (Radajewski et al. 2000; Manefield et al. 2006). Labeled root exudate compounds and monitoring microorganisms of rhizosphere also involve the use of stable isotope compounds (Manefield et al. 2006). At single cell level, reporter technology is to be used to assess functions of rhizosphere soil including gene expression (Sorensen and Nybroe 2006). The increasing knowledge of the promoter, regulator, and reporter gene insertion techniques shall allow use of reporter gene technology for regulation, expression, and induction of any gene in rhizosphere. The methodological improvement of new technology will allow designing of new reporter bacteria to respond to specific root exudates.

References

Adesemoye A, Torbert H, Kloepper J (2009) Plant growth promoting Rhizobacteria allow reduced application rates of chemical fertilizers. Microb Ecol 58:921–929

Ahmed R, Uddin MB, Khan MASA, Mukul SA (2007) Allelopathic effects of Lantana camara on germination and growth behavior of some agricultural crops in Bangladesh. J For Res 18:301–304

Alabouvette C, Olivain C, Steinberg C (2006) Biological control of plant diseases the European situation. Euro J Plant Pathol 114:329–341

Anjum MA, Sajjad MR, Akhtar N, Qureshi MA, Iqbal A, Jami AR, Mahmud-ul-Hasan (2007) Response of cotton to plant growth promoting Rhizobacteria (PGPR) inoculation under different levels of nitrogen. J Agric Res 45:135–143

Arumugam M, Raes J, Pelletier E, Le Paslier D, Yamada T, Mende DR, Fernandes GR, Tap J, Bruls T, Batto JM, Bertalan M, Borruel N, Casellas F, Fernandez L, Gautier L, Hansen T, Hattori M, Hayashi T, Kleerebezem M, Kurokawa K, Leclerc M, Levenez F, Manichanh C, Nielsen HB, Nielsen T, Pons N, Poulain J, Qin J, Sicheritz PT, Tims S, Torrents D, Ugarte E, Zoetendal EG, Wang J, Guarner F, Pedersen O, De Vos WM, Brunak S, Dore J, Meta HIT, Consortium AM, Artiguenave F, Blottiere HM, Almeida M, Brechot C, Cara C, Chervaux C, Cultrone A, Delorme C, Denariaz G, Dervyn R, Foerstner KU, Friss C, Van de Guchte M, Guedon E, Haimet F, Huber W, Van H, Vlieg J, Jamet A, Juste C, Kaci G, Knol J, Lakhdari O, Layec S, Le Roux K, Maguin E, Mérieux A, Melo Minardi R, Mrini C, Muller J, Oozeer R, Parkhill J, Renault P, Rescigno M, Sanchez N, Sunagawa S, Torrejon A, Turner K, Vandemeulebrouck G, Varela E, Winogradsky Y, Zeller G, Weissenbach J, Ehrlich SD, Bork P (2011) Enterotypes of the human gut microbiome. Nature 473:174–180

Ashrafuzzaman M, Hossen FA, Ismail MR, Hoque MA, Islam MZ, Shahidullah SM, Meon S (2009) Efficiency of plant growth promoting Rhizobacteria (PGPR) for the enhancement of rice growth. Afr J Biotechnol 8:1247–1252

Bais HP, Loyola VVM, Flores HE, Vivanco JM (2001) Root specific metabolism: the biology and biochemistry of underground organs In vitro. Cell Dev Biol Plant 37:730–741

Bais HP, Walker TS, Stermitz FR, Hufbauer RA, Vivanco JM (2002) Enantiomeric-dependent phytotoxic and antimicrobial activity of (±)catechin. A rhizosecreted racemic mixture from spotted knapweed. Plant Physiol 128:1173–9

Bais HP, Park SW, Weir TL, Callaway RM, Vivanco JM (2004) How plants communicate using the underground information superhighway. Trends Plant Sci 9:26–32

Bais HP, Weir TL, Perry LG, Gilroy S, Vivanco JM (2006) The role of root exudates in rhizosphere interactions with plants and other organisms. Annu Rev Plant Biol 57:233–266

Batten KM, Scow KM, Davies KF, Harrison SP (2006) Two invasive plants alter soil microbial community composition in serpentine grasslands. Biol Inv 8:217–230

Beerling DJ, Berner RA (2005) Feedbacks and the coevolution of plants and atmospheric CO_2. Proc Natl Acad Sci 102:1302–1305

Benfey PN, Scheres B (2000) Root development. Curr Biol 16:813–815

Berg G (2009) Plant-microbe interactions promoting plant growth and health: perspectives for controlled use of microorganisms in agriculture. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 84:11–18

Berg G, Smalla K (2009) Plant species and soil type cooperatively shape the structure and function of microbial communities in the rhizosphere. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 68:1–13

Bolton H, Fredrickson JK, Elliot LF (1993) Microbial ecologyof the rhizosphere. Pages 27–63 in: F. Blaine Metting Jr. (éd.), Soil microbial ecology. Applications in agricultural and environmental management. Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York

Bouwmeester HJ, Roux C, Lopez-Raez JA, Becard G (2007) Rhizosphere communication of plants, parasitic plants and VAM fungi. Trends Plant Sci 12:224–230

Brimecombe MJ, De Leij FAAM, Lynch JM (2007) Rhizodeposition and microbial populations. In: Pinton R, Varanini Z, Nannipieri P (eds) The rhizosphere: biochemistry and organic substances at the soil-plant interface. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 73–109

Broeckling CD, Broz AK, Bergelson J, Manter DK, Vivanco JM (2008) Root exudates regulate soil fungal community composition and diversity. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:738–744

Bron PA, Baarlen PV, Kleerebezem M (2012) Emerging molecular insights into the interaction between probiotics and the host intestinal mucosa. Nat Rev Microbiol 10:66–78.

Brundrett MC (2009) Mycorrhizal associations and other means of nutrition of vascular plants: understanding the global diversity of host plants by resolving conflicting information and developing reliable means of diagnosis. Plant Soil 320:37–77

Buée M, Reich M, Murat C, Morin E, Nilsson RH, Uroz S, Martin F (2009) Pyrosequencing analyses of forest soils reveal an unexpectedly high fungal diversity. New Phytol 184:449–456

Callaway RM, Aschehoug ET (2000) Invasive plants versus their new and old neighbours: a mechanism for exotic plant invasion. Science 290:521–523

Cassan F, Garcia SI (2008) Azospirillum sp.: cell physiology, plant response, agronomic and environmental research in Argentina. Asociacion Argentina de Microbiologia, Buenos Aires

Cesco S, Neumann G, Tomasi N, Pinton R, Weisskopf L (2010) Release of plant-borne flavonoids into the rhizosphere and their role in plant nutrition. Plant Soil 329:1–25
Cesco S, Mimmo T, Tonon G, Tomasi N, Pinton R, Terzano R, Neumann G, Weisskopf L, Renella G, Landi L (2012) Plant-borne flavonoids released into the rhizosphere: Impact on soil bioactivities related to plant nutrition. Biol Fert Soils 48:123–149
Chaparro JM, Badri DV, Bakker MG, Sugiyama A, Manter DK, Vivanco JM (2013) Root exudation of phytochemicals in Arabidopsis follows specific patterns that are developmentally programmed and correlate with soil microbial functions. PLoS One 8:55731
Chaparro JM, Badri DV, Vivanco JM (2014) Rhizosphere microbiome assemblage is affected by plant development. ISME J 8:790–803
Chet I, Chernin L (2002) Biocontrol, microbial agents in soil. In: Bitton G (ed) Encyclopedia of environmental microbiology. Willey, New York, pp 450–465
Chin A, Woeng TFC, Bloemberg GV, Lugtenberg BJ (2003) Phenazines and their role in biocontrol by Pseudomonas bacteria. New Phytol 157:503–523
Chinen T, Rudensky AY (2012) The effects of commensal microbiota on immune cell subsets and inflammatory responses. Immunol Rev 245:45–55
Clark FE (1949) Soil micro-organisms and plant roots communication: acyl-homoserine lactone quorum sensing. Annu Rev Genet 35:439–468
Compant S, Duffy B, Nowak J, Clément C, Barka EA (2005) Use of plant growth-promoting bacteria for biocontrol of plant diseases: principles, mechanisms of action, and future prospects. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:4951–4959
Curl EA, Truelove B (1986) The rhizosphere. SpringerVerlag, Berlin Heidel-berg New York
Curtis TP, William TS, Scannell JW (2002) Estimating prokaryotic diversity and its limits. Proc. Natl Acad Sci USA 99:10494–10499
De Vleeschauwer D, Hofte M (2007) Using serratia plymuthica to control fungal pathogens of plants. CAB Rev 2:46
Derrien M, van Passel MW, van de Bovenkamp JH, Schipper RG, de Vos WM, Dekker J (2010) Mucin-bacterial interactions in the human oral cavity and digestive tract. Gut Microbes 1:254–268
Dobbelaere S, Vanderleyden J, Okon Y (2003) Plant growth promoting effects of diazotrophs in the rhizosphere. Crit Rev Plant Sci 22:107–149
Dong YH, Gusti AR, Zhang Q, Xu JL, Zhang LH (2002) Identification of quorum quenching N-acyl homoserine lactonases from Bacillus species. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:1754–1759
Doornbos RF, VanLoon LC, Bakker AHMP (2012) Impact of root exudates and plant defense signaling on bacterial communities in the rhizosphere. A review. Agron. Sustain. Dev. 32: 227–243.
Duffy B, Keel C, Defago G (2004) Potential role of pathogen signaling in multitrophic plant-microbe interactions involved in disease protection. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:1836–1842
Egamberdiyeva D (2007) The effect of plant growth promoting bacteria on growth and nutrient uptake of maize in two different soils. Appl Soil Ecol 36:184–189
Egamberdiyeva D, Kamilova F, Validov S, Gafurova L, Kucharova Z, Lugtenberg B (2008) High incidence of plant growth-stimulating bacteria associated with the rhizosphere of wheat grown on salinated soil in Uzbekistan. Environ Microbiol 10:1–9
Elsas JD, Chiurazzi M, Mallon CA, Elhottova D, Kristufek V, Salles JF (2012) Microbial diversity determines the invasion of soil by a bacterial pathogen. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:1159–1164
Emmert EAB, Handelsman J (1999) Biocontrol of plant disease: a (Gram) positive perspective. FEMS Microbiol Lett 171:1–9
Ent SV, Hulten MV, Pozo MJ, Czechowski T, Udvardi MK, Pieterse CMJ, Ton J (2009) Priming of plant innate immunity by rhizobacteria and b-aminobutyric acid: differences and similarities in regulation. New Phytol 183:419–431.
Estabrook EM, Yoder JI (1998) Plant-plant communications: rhizosphere signaling between parasitic angiosperms and their hosts. Plant Physiol 116:1–7
Fagundes CT, Amaral FA, Teixeira AL, Souza DG, Teixeira MM (2012) Adapting to environmental stresses: the role of the microbiota in controlling innate immunity and behavioral responses. Immunol Rev 245:250–264

Farzana Y, Saad ROS, Kamaruzaman S (2009) Growth and storage root development of Sweet potato inoculated with rhizobacteria under glasshouse conditions. Aust J Basic Appl Sci 3:1461–1466
Flores HE, Vivanco JM, Loyola-Vargas VM (1999) Radicle biochemistry: the biology of root-specific metabolism. Trends Plant Sci 4:220–226
Foster RC (1986) The ultrastructure of the rhizoplane and rhizosphere. Annu Rev Phytopathol 24:211–234
Fuqua C, Parsek MR, Greenberg EP (2001) Regulation of gene expression by cell to cell communication: acyl-homoserine lactone quorum sensing. Annu Rev Genet 35:439–468.
Garcia JL, Probanza A, Ramos B, Manero FJG (2001) Ecology, genetic diversity and screening strategies of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. J Plant Nutri Soil Sci 164:1–7
Gewin V (2010) An underground revolution. Nature 466:552–553
Glessner A, Smith RS, Iglewski BH, Robinson JB (1999) Roles of Pseudomonas aeruginosa las and rhl quorum-sensing systems in control of twitching motility. J Bacteriol 181:1623–1629
Gobat JM, Aragno M, Matthey W (2004) The living soil, fundamentals of soil science and soil biology. Science Publishers, USA
Gonzalez JE, Marketon MM (2003) Quorum sensing in nitrogen fixing rhizobia Microbiol. Mol Biol Rev 67:574–592
Grayston SJ, Wang SQ, Campbell CD, Edwards AC (1998) Selective influence of plant species on microbial diversity in the rhizosphere. Soil Biol Biochem 30:369–378
Haas D, Defago G (2005) Biological control of soil-borne pathogens by fluorescent pseudomonads. Nat Rev Microbiol 3:307–319
Haribal M, Enwick JAA (1998) Isovitexin 6-O-β-D-glucopyranoside: a feeding deterrent to Pieris napi oleracea from Alliaria petiolata. Phytochemistry 47:1237–1240
Harman GE, Howell CR, Viterbo A, Chet I, Lorito M (2004) Trichoderma species-opportunistic, avirulent plant symbionts. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:43–56
Hartmann A, Rothballer M, Schmid M, Lorenz H (2008) A pioneer in rhizosphere microbial ecology and soil bacteriology research. Plant Soil 312:7–14
Hawes MC, Gunawardena U, Miyasaka S, Zhao X (2000) The role of root border cells in plant defense. Trends Plant Sci 5:128–133
Herman DJ, Johnson KK, Jaeger CH, Schwartz E, Firestone MK (2006) Root influence on nitrogen mineralization and nitrification in Avena barbata rhizosphere soil. Soil Sci Soc Am 70:1504–1511
Hong KW, Koh CL, Sam CK, Yin WF, Chan KG (2012) Quorum quenching revisited-From signal decay to signalling confusion. Sensors (Basel) 12:4661–4696
Hutsch BW, Augustin J, Merbach W (2000) Plant rhizodeposition an important source for carbon turnover in soils. J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 165:397–407
Ichinohe T, Pang IK, Kumamoto Y, Peaper DR, Ho JH, Murray TS, Iwasaki A (2011) Microbiota regulates immune defense against respiratory tract influenza A virus infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108: 5354–5359.
Innes L, Hobbs PJ, Bardgett RD (2004) The impacts of individual plant species on rhizosphere microbial communities in soils of different fertility. Biol Fertil Soils 40:7–13
Jacobsen BJ, Zidack NK, Larson BJ (2004) The role of Bacillus-based biological control agents in integrated pest management systems: plant diseases. Phytopathology 94:1272–1275
Joseph B, Patra RR, Lawrence R (2007) Characterization of plant growth promoting Rhizobacteria associated with chickpea (*Cicer arietinum* L). Int J Plant Prod 1:141–152
Juan Z, Subramanian S, Zhang Y, Yu O (2007) Flavone synthases from Medicago truncatula is flavanone-2-hydroxylases and are important for nodulation. Plant Physiol 144:741–751
Kamilova F, Validov S, Azarova T, Mulders I, Lugtenberg B (2005) Enrichment for enhanced competitive plant root tip colonizers selects for a new class of biocontrol bacteria. Environ Microbiol 7:1809–1817
Karakurt H, Aslantas R, Ozkan G, Guleryuz M (2009) Effects of indol-3-butyric acid (IBA), plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) and carbohydrates on rooting of hardwood cutting of MM-106 Apple rootstock. Afr J Agric Res 4:60–64
Klironomos JN (2002) Feedback with soil biota contributes to plant rarity and invasiveness in communities. Nature 417:66–67

Kloepper JW Schroth MN (1978) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria on radish. Proceedings of the 4th Conference plant pathogenic bacteria, Angers, INRA 879–882
Kocacali I, Ceylan M, Terzi I (2009) Effects of juglone on seedling growth in intact and coatless seeds of cucumber (Cucumis sativus cv. Beith alpha). Sci Res Essay 4:39–41
Kowalchuk GA, Hol WHG, VanVeen JA (2006) Rhizosphere fungal communities are influenced by Senecio jacobaea pyrrolizidine alkaloid content and composition. Soil Biol Biochem 38:2852–2859
Lambers H, Shaver G, Raven JA, Smith SE (2008) N and P acquisition change as soils age. Trends Ecol Evol 23:95–103
Lathrop SK, Bloom SM, Rao SM, Nutsch K, Lio CW, Santacruz N, Peterson DA, Stappenbeck TS, Hsieh CS (2011) Peripheral education of the immune system by colonic commensal microbiota. Nature 478:250–254
Li ZH, Wang Q, Ruan X, Pan CD, Jiang DA (2010) Phenolics and plant allelopathy molecules. MDPI J 15:8933–8952
Lin YH, Xu JL, Hu J, Wang LH, Ong SL, Leadbetter JR, Zhang LH (2003) Acyl-homoserine lactone acylase from Ralstonia strain XJ12B represents a novel and potent class of quorum-quenching enzymes. Mol Microbiol 47:849–60
Linderman RG (1988) Mycorrhizal interactions with the rhizosphere microflora: the mycorrhizosphere effect. Phytopathology 78:366–371
Long SR (2001) Genes and signals in the Rhizobium-legume symbiosis. Plant Physiol 125:69–72
Loper JE, Gross H (2007) Genomic analysis of antifungal metabolite production by Pseudomonas fluorescens Pf-5. Eur J Plant Pathol 119:265–278
Lucy M, Reed E, Glick BR (2004) Applications of free living plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 86:1–25
Lugtenberg B, Kamilova F (2009) Plant growth promoting Rhizobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:541–556
Lugtenberg BJJ, Chin-A-Woeng TFC, Bloemberg GV (2002) Microbe-plant interactions: principles and mechanisms. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 81:373–383
Lynch JM (1987) The rhizosphere. Wiley Interscience, Chichester
Lynch JM (1990) The Rhizosphere. John Wiley & Sons Ltd., Chichester, Edited by Lynch JM, 458
Ma JF, Ueno H, Ueno D, Rombola A, Iwashita T (2003) Characterization of phytosiderophore secretion under Fe deficiency stress in Festucarubra. Plant Soil 256:131–137
Manefield M, Griffiths RI, Whiteley A, Bailey M (2006) Stable isotope probing: a critique of its role in linking phylogeny and function. In: Nannipieri P, Smalla K (eds) Nucleic Acids and Proteins in Soil. Springer, New York, pp 205–255
Marilley L, Aragno M (1999) Phylogenetic diversity of bacterial communities differing in degree of proximity of Lolium perenne and Trifolium repens roots. Appl Soil Ecol 13:127–136
Marschner H (1995) Mineral nutrition of higher plants, 2nd edn. Academic, London
Marschner P, Timonen S (2005) Interactions between plant species and mycorrhizal colonization on the bacterial community composition in the rhizosphere. Appl Soil Ecol 28:23–36
Mendes R, Kruijt M, Bruijn I, Dekkers E, Voort M, Schneider JHM, PicenoY M, Santis TZ, Andersen GL, Bakker PAHM, Raaijmakers JM (2011) Deciphering the rhizosphere microbiome for disease suppressive bacteria. Science 332:1097–1100
Michaud AM, Chappellaz C, Hinsinger P (2008) Copper phytotoxicity affects root elongation and iron nutrition in durum wheat (*Triticum turgidum durum* L.). Plant Soil 310:151–165
Morgan JA, Bending GD, White PJ (2005) Biological costs and benefits to plant-microbe interactions in the rhizosphere. J Exp Bot 56:1729–1739
Morrissey JP, Dow JM, Mark GL, Gara FO (2004) Are microbes at the root of a solution to world food production? Rational exploitation of interactions between microbes and plants can help to transform agriculture. EMBO Rep 5:922–926
Mougel C, Offre P, Ranjard L, Corberand T, Gamalero E, Robin C, Lemanceau P (2006) Dynamic of the genetic structure of bacterial and fungal communities at different developmental stages of Medicago truncatula Gaertn. cv. Jemalong. J Nat Phytol 170:165–175
Muller H, Westendorf C, Leitner E, Chernin L, Riedel K, Schmidt S, Eberl L, Berg G (2009) Quorum-sensing effects in the antagonistic rhizosphere bacterium Serratia plymuthica HRO-C48. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 67:468–478

Nannipieri P (2006) Role of stabilised enzymes in microbial ecology and enzyme extraction from soil with potential applications in soil proteomics. In: Nannipieri P, Smalla K (eds) Nucleic acids and proteins in soil, vol 8. Springer, New York, pp 75–94

Nannipieri P, Ascher J, Ceccherini MT, Landi L, Pietramellara G, Renella G (2003) Microbial diversity and soil functions. Eur J Soil Sci 54:655–670

Nguyen C (2003) Rhizodeposition of organic C by plants: mechanisms and controls. Agronomie 23:375–396

Oger P, Kim KS, Sackett RL, Piper KR, Farrand SK (1998) Octopine-type Ti plasmids code for a mannopine-inducible dominant-negative allele of tra R, the quorum-sensing activator that regulates Ti plasmid conjugal transfer. Mol Biol 27:277–288

Ogunseitan OA (2006) Soil proteomics: extraction and analysis of proteins from soil. In: Nannipieri P, Smalla K (eds) Nucleic Acids and Proteins in Soil. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 95–115

Ongena M, Thonart P (2006) Resistance induced in plants by non-pathogenic microorganisms: elicitation and defense responses. In: Teixeira da Silva JA (ed) Floriculture, ornamental and plant biotechnology: advances and topical issues. Global Science Books, London, pp 447–463

Parsek MR, Greenberg EP (2000) Acyl-homoserine lactone quorum sensing in Gram-negative bacteria: A signaling mechanism involved in association with higher organisms. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97:8789–8793

Pate JS, Verboom WH (2009) Contemporary biogenic formation of clay pavements by eucalypts: further support for the phytotarium concept. Ann Bot 103:673–685

Pate JS, Verboom WH, Galloway PD (2001) Co-occurrence of Proteaceae, laterite and related oligotrophic soils: coincidental associations or causative inter-relationships. Aust J Bot 49:529–560

Patterson DT (1981) Effects of allelopathic chemicals on growth and physiological response of soyabean (Glycine max). Weed Sci 29:53–58

Pausch J, Zhu B, Kuzyakov Y, Cheng WX (2013) Plant inter-species effects on rhizosphere priming of soil organic matter decomposition. Soil Biolo Biochem 57:91–99

Perret X, Staehelin C, Broughton WJ (2000) Molecular basis of symbiotic promiscuity. Microbiol. Mol Biol Rev 64:180–201

Perry LG, Thelen GC, Ridenour WM, Weir TL, Callaway RM (2005) Dual role for an allelochemical: (±)-catechin from Centaurea maculosa root exudates regulates conspecific seedling establishment. J Ecol 93:1125–1136

Philippe H (2006) Rhizosphere: a new frontier for soil biogeochemistry. J Geol Exp 88:210–213

Philippot L, Raaijmakers JM, Lemanceau P, Van der Putten WH (2013) Going back to the roots: the microbial ecology of the rhizosphere. Nat Rev Microbiol 11:789–99

Pinton R, Varanini Z, Nannipieri P (2001a) Rhizosphere. Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York

Pinton R, Varanini Z, Nannipieri P (2001b) The rhizosphere as a site of biochemical interactions among soil components, plants and microorganisms. In: Pinton R, Varanini Z, Nannipieri P (eds) The rhizosphere: biochemistry and organic substances at the soil-plant interface. Marcel Dekker, New York, pp 1–17

Pinton R, Veranini Z, Nannipieri P (2007) The rhizosphere Biochemistry and organic substances at the soil-plant interface. Taylor & Francis Group, LLC., New York

Raaijmakers JM, Weller DM (2001) Exploiting genotypic diversity of 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol-producing Pseudomonas spp.: characterization of superior root-colonizing *P. fluorescens* strain Q8r1-96. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:2545–2554

Raaijmakers JM, Vlami M, deSouza JT (2002) Antibiotic production by bacterial biocontrol agents. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 81:537–547

Radajewski S, Ineson P, Parekh NR, Murrell JC (2000) Stable isotope probing as a tool in microbial ecology. Nature 403:646–649

Raven JA, Edwards D (2001) Roots: evolutionary origins and biogeochemical significance. J Exp Bot 52:381–401

Reinhart KO, Callaway RM (2006) Soil biota and invasive plants. New Phytol 170:445–457

Ridenour WM, Callaway RM (2001) The relative importance of allelopathy in interference: the effects of an invasive weed on a native bunchgrass. Oecologia 126:444–450

Robin A, Vansuyt G, Hinsinger P, Meyer JM, Briat JF, Lemanceau P (2008) Iron dynamics in the rhizosphere: consequences for plant health and nutrition. Adv Agron 99:183–225

Rodolfo GC, Leslie NL, Ricardo JC, Brian WK, Javier AB, Adrian Rangel V, Toshinari M, Thomas KW (2015) Quorum sensing enhancement of the stress response promotes resistance to quorum quenching and prevents social cheating. ISME J 9:115–125

Roesch LF, Fulthorpe RR, Riva A, Casella G, Hadwin AK, Kent AD, Daroub SH, Camargo FA, Farmerie WG, Triplett EW (2007) Pyrosequencing enumerates and contrasts soil microbial diversity. ISME J 1:283–290

Rovira AD (1991) Rhizosphere research-85 years of progress and frustration. The Rhizosphere and Plant Growth Volume 14 of the series Beltsville Symposia in Agricultural Research pp. 313

Ryan RP, Monchy S, Cardinale M, Taghavi S, Crossman L, Avison MB, Berg G, van der Lelie D, Dow JM (2009) The versatility and adaptation of bacteria from the genus Stenotrophomonas. Nat Rev Microbiol 7:514–525.

Ryu CM, Farag MA, Hu CH, Reddy MS, Wei HX, Pare PW, Kloepper JW (2003) Bacterial volatiles promote growth in Arabidopsis. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:4927–4932.

Schaefer AL, Greenberg EP, Oliver CM, Oda Y, Huang JJ, Banin GB, Peres CM, Schmidt S, Juhaszova K, Sufrin JR, Harwood CS (2008) A new class of homoserine lactone quorum sensing signals. Nature 454:595–599

Schrey SD, Tarkka MT (2008) Friends and foes: streptomycetes as modulators of plant disease and symbiosis. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 94:11–19

Schuster M, Sexton DJ, Diggle SP, Greenberg EP (2013) Acyl-homoserine lactone quorum sensing: from evolution to application. Annu Rev Microbiol 67:43–63

Shoda M (2000) Bacterial control of plant diseases. J Biosci Bioeng 89:515–521

Shukla KP, Sharma S, Singh NK, Singh V, Tiwari K, Singh S (2011) Nature and role of root exudates: efficacy in bioremediation. Afr J Biotechnol 10:9717–9724

Singh S, Ladha JK, Gupta RK, Bhushan L, Rao AN, Sivaprasad B, Singh PP (2007) Evaluation of mulching, intercropping with Sesbania and herbicide use for weed management in dry-seeded rice (*Oryza sativa* L.). Crop Prot 26:518–524

Sorensen J, Nybroe O (2006) Reporter genes in bacterial inoculants can monitor life conditions and functions in soil. Nucleic acids and proteins in soil. Soil Biol 8:375–395

Ştefa M, Mihasan M, Dunca S (2008) Plant growth promoting Rhizobacteria can inhibit the in vitro germination of Glycine Max L seeds. Scientific Annals of University "Alexandru Ioan Cuza" Iasi. Sect Genet Mol Biol 3:105–110

Suzuki M, Takahashi M, Tsukamoto T, Watanabe S, Matsuhashi S, Yazaki J, Kishimoto N, Kikuchi S, Nakanishi H, Mori S, Nishizawa NK (2006) Biosynthesis and secretion of mugineic acid family phytosiderophores in zinc-deficient barley. Plant J 48:85–97

Swift S, Karlyshev AV, Fish L, Durant EL, Winson MK, Chhabra SR, Williams P, Macintyre S, Stewart GSAB (1997) Quorum sensing in Aeromonas hydrophila and Aeromonas salmonicida: Identification of the LuxRI homologs AhyRI and AsaRI and their cognate N-acylhomoserine lactone signal molecules. J Bacteriol 179:5271–5281

Tanvir S, Claire C, Patricia G, Bastien SB, Nazia P, Christian M, Sebastien F (2015) Contribution of exudates, arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and litter depositions to the rhizosphere priming effect induced by grassland species. Soil Biol Biochem 80:146–155

Taylor LL, Leake JR, Quirk J, Hardy K, Banwarts SA, Beerling DJ (2009) Biological weathering and the long-term carbon cycle: integrating mycorrhizal evolution and function into the current paradigm. Geobiology 7:171–191

Thimmaraju R, Czymmek KJ, Pare PW, Bais HP (2008) Root-secreted malic acid recruits beneficial soil bacteria. Plant Physiol 148:1547–1556

VanDer HMG, Bardgett RD, Van Straalen NM (2008) The unseen majority: soil microbes as drivers of plant diversity and productivity in terrestrial ecosystems. Ecol Lett 11:296–310

VanLoon LC (2007) Plant responses to plant growth promoting bacteria. Eur J Plant Pathol 119:243–254

Vogel TM, Simonet P, Jansson JK, Hirsch PR, Tiedje JM, Elsas JD, Bailey MJ, Nalin R, Philippot L (2009) Terra Genome: a consortium for the sequencing of a soil metagenome. Nat Rev Microbiol 7:252–253

Walker TS, Bais HP, Grotewold E, Vivanco JM (2003) Root exudation and rhizosphere biology. Plant Physiol 132:44–51

Wasaki J, Rothe A, Kania A, Neumann G, Romheld V, Shinano T, Osaki M, Kandeler E (2005) Root exudation, phosphorus acquisition, and microbial diversity in the rhizosphere of white lupine as affected by phosphorus supply and atmospheric carbon dioxide concentration. J Environ Qual 34:2157–2166

Wei HXU, Huai L, Mac QF, Xiongd ZT (2007) Root exudates, rhizosphere Zn fractions, and Zn accumulation of ryegrass at different soil Zn levels. Pedosphere 17:389–396

Weinert N, Piceno Y, Ding GC, Meincke R, Heuer H, Berg G, Schloter M, Andersen G, Smalla K (2011) PhyloChip hybridization uncovered an enormous bacterial diversity in the rhizosphere of different potato cultivars: many common and few cultivar-dependent taxa. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 75:497–506

Weir TL, Park SW, Vivanco JM (2004) Biochemical and physiological mechanisms mediated by allelochemicals. Curr Opin Plant Biol 7:472–479

Welbaum G, Sturz AV, Dong Z, Nowak J (2004) Fertilizing soil microorganisms to improve productivity of agroecosystems. Crit Rev Plant Sci 23:175–193

Weller DM, Raaijmakers JM, Gardener BBM, Thomashow LS (2002) Microbial populations responsible for specific soil suppressiveness to plant pathogens. Annu Rev Phytopathol 40:309–348

Weston LA, Duke SO (2003) Weed and crop allelopathy. Plant Sci 22:367–389

Whipps JM (2001) Microbial interactions and biocontrol in the rhizosphere. J Exp Bot 52:487–511

Whipps JM, Lynch JM (1985) Energy losses by the plant in rhizodeposition. Plant Prod New Technol 26:59–71

Williams P, Winzer K, Chan W, Camara M (2007) Look who's talking: communication and quorum sensing in the bacterial world. Phil Trans R Soc B 362:1119–1134

Wutzler T, Reichstein M (2013) Priming and substrate quality interactions in soil organic matter models. Biogeo Sci 10:2089–2103

Xiaohan Y, Brian E, LA Scheffler W (2004) SOR1, a gene associated with bioherbicide production in sorghum root hairs. J Exp Bot 55:2251–2259

Yanhong ZHU, Shuzhen Z, Honglin H, Bei W (2009) Effects of maize root exudates and organic acids on the desorption of phenanthrene from soils. J Environ Sci 21:920–926

Yasmin F, Othman R, Saad MS, Sijam K (2007) Screening for beneficial properties of Rhizobacteria isolated from sweet potato rhizosphere. J Biotechnol 6:49–52

Yoder JI (2001) Host-plant recognition by parasitic Scrophulariaceae. Curr. Opin. Plant Biol 4:359–365

Yongqing MA (2006) Allelopathic studies of common wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) W. Biol Mol 5:93–104

Yu JQ, Ye SF, Zhang MF, Hu WH (2003) Effects of root exudates and aqueous root extracts of cucumber (Cucumissativus) and allelochemicals, on photosynthesis and antioxidant enzymes in cucumber. Biochem. Syst Ecol 31:129–139

Zamioudis C, Pieterse CMJ (2012) Modulation of host immunity by beneficial microbes. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 25:139–150

Zeng RS, Mallik RS, Setliff E (2003) Growth stimulation of ectomycorrhizal fungi by root exudates of Brassicaceae plants: role of degraded compounds of indole glucosinolates. J Chem Ecol 29:1337–1355

Zeng RS, Mallik AU, Luo SM (2008) Allelopathy in Sustainable Agriculture and Forestry. Springer Science. ISBN: 978-0-387-77336-0 (Print) 978-0-387-77337-7

Zhu J, Winans SC (1988) Activity of the quorum-sensing regulator TraR of Agrobacterium tumefaciens is inhibited by a truncated, dominant defective TraR-like protein. Mol Microbiol 27:289–297

An Insight into the Legume–*Rhizobium* Interaction

G. Yamal, Ankita Bidalia, Krati Vikram, and K.S. Rao

Abstract Active forms of nitrogen are limiting in soil, but the legume–*Rhizobium* interaction overcomes this barrier by biological nitrogen fixation and lessens the usage of fertilizers. An understanding exists between the two partners for symbiotic association to share their resources without either one becoming dominant. Certain compounds released by the host legume plants into the rhizosphere attract the rhizobia and activate the expression of rhizobial nod genes that in turn leads to the production and secretion of strain-specific NFs. NF signalling cascade and events of cell divisions in cortex and pericycle and bacterial infection occur in an orchestrated manner and give rise to a nodule. The nodule organogenesis can be studied under nodule formation and bacterial invasion. Depending on the persistence of meristem, nodules formed can be determinate or indeterminate, but ultimately it is the host plant species that determine the type of nodule formed. More than 90 % of arable land experience one or other kind of stress. Stress conditions affect the host plant, rhizobium and also the interaction between the two.

Keywords Legume • Rhizobium • Stress • Nodulation

1 Introduction

The earth's atmosphere consists of 78.1 % nitrogen gas, but the biologically active forms of nitrogen are limiting in soil and can restrict plant growth. Thus, it's imperative for plants to capture nitrogen, in the form of nitrates and ammonia, from the soil. Modern agriculture relies on application of industrially synthesized nitrogen fertilizers to maximize crop productivity. Production of nitrogen fertilizers is expensive and consumes a lot of fossil fuel. In addition to this, 30–50 % of applied nitrogen fertilizer gets leached out and leads to environmental problems. The reliance on chemical fertilizer can be reduced by biological nitrogen fixation (BNF), wherein the atmospheric nitrogen is converted to ammonia by an enzyme called nitrogenase. The

G. Yamal (✉) • A. Bidalia • K.Vikram • K.S. Rao
Department of Botany, University of Delhi, New Delhi 110007, India
e-mail: yamalgupta@gmail.com

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_16

process of BNF was discovered by Beijerinck in 1901 (Wagner 2011). This process has ecological and agronomical importance and accounts for 65 % of the nitrogen used in agriculture worldwide. It is estimated that roughly 200 million tons of nitrogen is fixed annually by the symbiotic association between rhizobia and legume (Graham and Vance 2003; Peoples et al. 2009).

Legumes are a large group of angiospermic plants skilled with the ability to establish symbiotic association with the nitrogen-fixing bacteria called rhizobia (including the genera *Azorhizobium*, *Allorhizobium*, *Bradyrhizobium*, *Mesorhizobium*, *Rhizobium* and *Sinorhizobium*) that are widespread under different edaphic and climatic conditions. The Fabaceae or Leguminosae family includes three subfamilies: Faboideae (or Papilionoideae), Mimosoideae and Caesalpinioideae. Members of these families can grow in nitrogen-poor soils; therefore, they play a crucial role in the sustainable development of the agriculture (Pislariu et al. 2015). One of the identified roles of BNF is in poverty alleviation. However, applying the knowledge of the mechanism of BNF and providing training to the farmers about the inoculation, providing the efficient strains at the cheaper cost to the farmers, could be a step towards sustainability (O'Hara et al. 2008).

The rhizobium and host legume develop a metabolic cooperation which forms an exchange-control system that enables the two partners to share their resources without either one becoming dominant (Lodwig et al. 2003). An intricate dialogue occurs between the two partners, and the compatibility is tested, after which the host plants and rhizobia exchange signals. The rhizobia enter and infect the roots of compatible legume plants either by the root hair or through cracks present in root epidermis. Rhizobial signalling to host root hairs then leads to root hair deformation, branching and curling, mitosis in the root cortex and ultimately the formation of specialized structures called nodules.

Thus, this two-way molecular conversation between the host legume and the bacteria leads to morphological, anatomical, physiological and cytological changes in plants. Depending on the shape and maintenance of a meristematic region, two kinds of nodules, viz. determinate and indeterminate, are formed by host plants upon infection by rhizobia, but ultimately it is the plant that determines the type of nodule formed. In general, the indeterminate nodules are formed by temperate legumes, and determinate nodules are formed by tropical legumes (Lotocka et al. 2012). So far various functional genomics resources have been developed for the two model legumes *Medicago truncatula* and *Lotus japonicus* (Pislariu et al. 2015).

Plants being sessile often have to face a wide variety of environmental conditions. Like other plants legumes also face one or other kind of stress as more than 90 % of arable land experience stress. The presence of stress effects the growth of the host plant, the rhizobia and their interaction. Thus, stress changes the physiological state of host plant, rhizobial survival in the soil, infection and nodule establishment and ultimately the nodule functioning. In the present chapter, effect of stresses such as soil pH, soil moisture, salinity, temperature, nutrients, predation, etc. on the legumes, rhizobium and legume–*Rhizobium* interaction has also been discussed. The present chapter is an attempt to give an overview of process of nodule formation and the changes that occur in the host plant, along with the different types of nodules formed and the effect of natural stresses on plant, rhizobium and their interaction.

2 Nodule Organogenesis

The history of the study of root nodule formation dates back to the sixteenth century in the drawings of Fuchs and Dalechamps; however, Malpighi proposed that the swellings (the word used by Malpighi for nodules) are due to insect larvae. Interestingly, the necessity of bacteria for nodule formation was demonstrated during the nineteenth century by Frank and Beijerinck, Frank showed that soil sterilization prevented nodule formation, and Beijerinck prepared pure cultures of nodule occupants and used them to infect legumes (Bond 1948; Pueppke and Broughton 1999). Root nodule is a structure, unique to leguminous plants and is of great interest for several reasons. The nodules can be formed only after bacterial infection and possess differentiated tissues in a definite arrangement. However, today it is well established that nodule formation involves a two-way dialogue between the host legume and the bacteria rhizobium. During the dialogue, various signalling molecules are exchanged that regulate the specificity of legume and rhizobium interaction for initiation, differentiation and functioning of nodules. This specificity has ecological and evolutionary importance as it allows infection by symbiotic friend and not a pathogenic foe (Long 2015). The nodule organogenesis can be studied into two subheadings: nodule formation and bacterial invasion.

2.1 Process of Nodule Formation

Plants release certain signal compounds (such as lectins, flavonoids) in the rhizosphere that favour the initiation of nodule development. In the 1970s, the lectin recognition hypothesis was proposed according to which the plant lectins and rhizobium exopolysaccharides (EPS) mediate specificity in symbiosis (Hirsch 1999; Long 2015). In the rhizosphere, the exuding phenolic flavonoid compounds from the roots of the host plant attract the rhizobia and activate the expression of rhizobial nod genes that in turn leads to the production and secretion of strain-specific NFs (Gage 2004; Ferguson et al. 2010). In the free-living rhizobium, nodD gene shows its expression, but the rest of the nod genes (nodABC, nodE, nodH, nodPQ) are expressed only in the presence of plant. There are 'common' nod genes, viz. nodABC, that are essential for nodulation and certain 'host specific' such as nodE (in *R. leguminosarum* for nodulation in peas or clover), nodH and nodPQ (in *R. meliloti* for nodulation in alfalfa). However, the ability of rhizobia to nodulate several legumes is linked not only to the presence of different nod genes in its genome but also with the legume promiscuity (Roche et al. 1991). Therefore, certain bacteria can nodulate only specific legume host, while others such as NGR234 and USDA257 (strains of genus *Ensifer*) have a broad host range (Pueppke and Broughton 1999). The infection of varied legumes by several strains of rhizobia occurs due the presence of several copies of the nodD gene, which in turn permit them to respond to different types of flavonoids produced and secreted by plants (Cooper 2007; Gibson et al. 2008).

The NFs are lipochitooligosaccharides (LCO), the derivative of chitin but differ in the number of GlcNAc units (2–4), in the length and degree of unsaturation of the fatty acid chain, as well as the presence of various substitutions on the oligosaccharide backbone with various substitutions at the (non)reducing-terminal and/or nonterminal residues (Haeze and Holsters 2002; Fliegmann and Bono 2015). These variations are characteristic for each rhizobium and are involved in the specific recognition between the legume plant and its symbiont (Ferguson et al. 2010). Nod factors are responsible for nodule organogenesis and control infection, leading to the formation of root nodules. Thus, it is the nod genes, NFs and EPS, that determine the host range.

Rhizobia enter into the plant root either by the root hair or through cracks present in root epidermis. However, root hair infection at the tips is the most common, because they have thinner and less cross-linked cell walls which further allow the rearrangement of underlying microtubules, change vesicle trafficking to the growing tip and allow easy penetration by microsymbiont. Root hair deformation gets started within 6–8 h after the attachment of rhizobia (Ferguson et al. 2010). Rhizobial signalling to host root hairs leads to root hair deformation, branching and curling and mitosis in the root cortex, which culminates in the formation of nodule primordium. The nodABC genes are essential for root hair curling as well as infection, for eliciting mitosis in the root cortex and for nodule formation (Haeze and Holsters 2002).

2.2 Process of Bacterial Invasion

Bacteria invade the plant cells through tubular structures termed ‘infection thread’. Infection thread is a composite structure, as it has parts contributed by the two symbiotic partners (Gage 2004). The infection thread is comprised of plant cell wall components (esterified and unesterified pectins, xyloglucans and cellulose) and encapsulates the dividing bacteria in small quantity, thus facilitating the passage of bacterial cell into the cortex. This microcolony of rhizobia contains high concentration of NFs and the cell wall-degrading enzymes. The rhizobial microcolony penetrates through the cell wall and the plasma membrane remains intact, which is followed by re-synthesis and redigestion (Gage 2004; Ferguson et al. 2010).

The increased NF levels produced by the invading rhizobia lead to the mitotic division of root cortical cells. These divisions of cortical cells in the roots result in the formation of nodule primordium. In the tip region of the extending thread, active cytoplasmic streaming along with plant cytoskeleton has been proposed to play a role in the growth of infection threads. The infection threads reach into the cortical zone of the root and then to newly induced dividing cells via root hair. Bacteria get released into an infection droplet in the host cell cytoplasm through the growing tip of the infection thread. The bacteria remain enclosed within peribacteroid membrane derived from plasma membrane of host plant; this structure is

known as symbiosome (Udvardi and Day 1997). In symbiosome, these bacteria divide continuously even before they get differentiated into bacteria and start to fix nitrogen (Ferguson et al. 2010).

Reduction of nitrogen to ammonia occurs within bacteroids; this reaction is catalyzed by oxygen-sensitive enzyme nitrogenase. The level of oxygen in root nodules is regulated by leghaemoglobin, providing legume nodules a pink tinge. O'Brian and co-workers (1987) revealed that the host plant encodes the haemoglobin apoprotein, whereas the heme group is primarily synthesized by the bacterium. These researchers used a heme biosynthesis mutant strain LO505 of *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*. The mutant strain was deficient only in protoporphyrinogen oxidase activity and thus could not catalyze the penultimate step in heme biosynthesis. As a result of this, the mutant strain formed small root nodules. The bacteroids isolated from these nodules lacked protoporphyrinogen oxidase activity, and nodules contained no detectable leghaemoglobin in the nodule cytosol. These results suggest that bacterial heme synthesis is required for leghaemoglobin formation in soybean root nodules.

The leghaemoglobin remains localized within the host plant cytosol and not in the peribacteroid membrane. Thus, in nodules atmospheric nitrogen gets reduced to ammonia that subsequently assimilates into plants after its conversion into glutamine via glutamine synthase. Further, glutamate synthase enzyme converts glutamine into glutamate. The process of nodulation brings several changes in the root of the plants at morphological, anatomical, physiological and cytological levels (Ferguson et al. 2010; Gordon et al. 1992).

3 Changes in Root During Infection Thread Growth

Infection threads are considered to be tip-growing structures and develop from growing root hairs (Gage 2004). These probably elongate by using at least some of the machinery that was supporting root hair growth before infection took place. Since understanding the processes that contribute to tip growth in root hairs should enhance the understanding of the processes involved in infection thread growth, the same has been discussed in the following sections.

3.1 Cytological Changes During Root Hair Development

The root hair elongates through polarized secretion of vesicles to the tip region, with concomitant yield of the tip wall under the influence of internal turgor pressure (Hepler et al. 2001; Ketelaar and Emons 2001; Smith 2003; Rounds and Bezanilla 2013). Turgor pressure that provides the uniform stress or force in all the directions is a scalar property that irreversibly deforms the cell wall and ultimately leads to root growth but plays no role in determining the direction of growth (Kropf et al. 1998).

The directional growth of the cell depends on unequal mechanical properties of the cell wall which in turn depends on the unequal deposition of the wall matrix at certain sites of root while confining others and orientation of the cellulose fibrils (Kropf et al. 1998; Rounds and Bezanilla 2013). Under stress conditions the less viscous cell wall deforms at the faster rate in comparison to the more viscous cell wall. However, the viscosity and thickness of the wall at the tip of the cell result from several factors such as the net deposition, expansion and the variations in cross-linking within several components (Rounds and Bezanilla 2013). In root hairs, the vesicles that fuse at the tip are derived from Golgi bodies, located at a short distance behind the growing tip. These vesicles supply membrane and cell wall components that get incorporated into the plasma membrane, cell wall and extracellular matrix. During tip growth, vesicles and other organelles reach to the apical region of the cell by actin-dependent cytoplasm streaming. The cytoplasm typically moves towards the growing tip along the outside of the cell and then moves back towards basal regions via the centre region of the cell. This pattern of movement (most commonly observed in pollen tubes) is referred as 'reverse fountain streaming' (Iwanami 1956; Hepler et al. 2001; Rounds and Bezanilla 2013). The region which lies immediately adjacent to the tip does not show any cytoplasmic streaming and is devoid of organelles. This region termed as clear zone contains the vesicles that fuse with tip and provides material needed for growth. The transportation of vesicles from the base of clear zone to their site of fusion near the tip of the root hair is supposed to be mediated by diffusion, as the vesicles are delivered at the base of the clear zone and consumed at the apex (Miller et al. 1997; Lhuissier et al. 2001).

3.2 Roles of Actin and Microtubule Cytoskeleton in Tip-Growing Cells

Tominaga et al. (1997) experimentally revealed the mechanism involved in organization of actin filaments (AFs) in root hair cells (site of reverse fountain streaming) of *Hydrocharis*. Both microtubules (MTs) and AFs lie longitudinally within the cortical region of the root hair cell. However, in the transvacuolar strand, only AFs were present and MTs were entirely absent. The double inhibitor experiment using AFs inhibitor cytochalasin B, and MTs inhibitor propyzamide, showed that cytochalasin B reversibly inhibited cytoplasmic streaming while propyzamide alone had no effect. Removal of cytochalasin B after treating root hair cells with these inhibitors together failed to recover cytoplasmic streaming. However, after removal of propyzamide, both cytoplasmic streaming and original organization of AFs were recovered, suggesting that MTs play a vital role in the organization of AFs.

Similarly, in *Medicago truncatula*, the effects of microtubule stabilizing and destabilizing drugs on the morphology of the growing root hair have revealed the role of MTs in maintaining the normal structure of the subapical cytoplasmic dense region. These experiments imply that MTs play important role in maintaining the normal distance between the nucleus and the growing tip of the root hair during root hair growth and in actin maintenance (Lloyd et al. 1987; Tominaga et al. 1997; Sieberer et al. 2002).

3.3 Roles of Ca^{+2} in Tip-Growing Cells

Calcium is a versatile signalling component involved in root hair elongation (Robbins et al. 2014). Experiments conducted with ion-specific dyes have exhibited that root hairs show tip focus gradients of calcium like that of pollen tubes. The concentration of this ion at the tip of growing root hairs, just below the plasma membrane, is about 1 μM and varies up to a basal concentration of 100 nM within 20 μm, but the non-growing root hairs do not show such a gradient (Wymer et al. 1997). Necessity of calcium channel activity for root hair tip growth and maintenance was demonstrated by the use of calcium channel blocker, verapamil. 50 μM verapamil caused the dissipation of elevated calcium ion concentration and cessation of root hair growth. Re-establishment of calcium gradients shows that the highest calcium ion concentration promotes root hair growth. Change in the direction of root hair growth reorients the calcium ion gradient, and the gradient again changes/reverts when root hair growth is returned to the original direction.

4 Types of Nodules: Determinate and Indeterminate

According to the mode of development, nodules formed by *Rhizobium* are of two kinds, viz. determinate and indeterminate, but ultimately it is the host plant that determines the type of nodule formed (Franssen et al. 1992; Maunoury et al. 2008; Ferguson et al. 2010). In general, the indeterminate nodules are formed by temperate legumes, and determinate nodules are formed by tropical legumes (Nap and Bisseling 1990). The shape, site of first internal cell division, maintenance of a meristematic region and form of the mature nodule are the features that can be used to distinguish the two kinds of nodules (Newcomb and Peterson 1979; Ferguson et al. 2010). In general a nodule consists of an inner central region and an outer cortex that acts as an oxygen diffusion barrier (Witty et al. 1987; Parsons and Day 1990). Thus, the legume nodule anatomy is characterized by a central infected region, surrounded by a cortex of uninfected cells and a dichotomously branching vascular system. The vasculature system for sucrose/photosynthate delivery to nodule is present in cortex only. On the other hand, the central region of mature nodule consists of two types of cells: one those infected with rhizobia and other uninfected cells (which are generally less in numbers) (Gordon et al. 1992; Brown and Walsh 1994). Immunogold labelling studies using polyclonal antibodies to sucrose synthase were conducted by Gordon and co-workers (1992). They found a greater intensity of labelling in the cytosol of uninfected interstitial cells of the central nodule region compared with the cytosol of the infected cells. Thus, in indeterminate nodules starch is stored in both infected and uninfected cells, whereas it is rarely or never found in infected cells in determinate nodules (Gordon et al. 1992). In both determinate and indeterminate nodules, the epidermal responses are similar, but cortical responses are different, viz. in determinate nodules initials arise from outer/midcortical cells of the root, whereas in indeterminate nodules, the initials arise from inner cortical cells (Subramanian 2013).

The tissues that surround the infected tissue consist of three different cell layers. First layer is known as outer cortex, followed by nodule endodermis, which is one cell layered and inner cortex or 'nodule parenchyma' forms the third layer (Brown and Walsh 1994). Thus, the inner and outer cortex are separated by a 'common endodermis' termed as nodule endodermis (Frazer 1942; Bederska et al. 2012). The inner cortex or nodule parenchyma houses vascular bundles, each with its own endodermis (Brown and Walsh 1994). The xylem of the vascular bundles provide water and the photo assimilates are supplied to the nodule by phloem (Bederska et al. 2012). Thus vascular system guarantees import of nutrients from the host and export of nitrogenous products from nodules, as effective nitrogen fixation depends on the balance between the import of photo assimilates and the export of nitrogenous solutes (Walsh et al. 1989; Streeter 1993; Schulze 2004; Bederska et al. 2012). Inner cortex is also important to protect the nitrogenase (a key enzyme in nitrogen fixation, which is highly sensitive to oxygen) by forming a diffusion barrier. However, this barrier is strongly dependent on the nodule cortical anatomy (Brown and Walsh 1994; Sujkowska et al. 2011; Bederska et al. 2012). A physiological paradox occurs in the nodule where the aerobic requirements of bacteroid and the oxygen sensitivity of nitrogenase both have to be dealt with. Protection against oxygen is provided by the nodule environment through a cortical diffusion barrier. The main route of oxygen diffusion is through nodule apex, which generates a longitudinal oxygen gradient. As a result, the free oxygen concentration drops to less than 50 nM in the central nitrogen-fixing zone containing *Rhizobium* bacteroids. Interestingly, bacteroid respiration in the central zone is made possible by a high concentration of leghaemoglobin and induction of a high-affinity cbb3 oxidase. Therefore, these microorganisms fix nitrogen in a microaerobic, nitrogen-rich environment, and thus nif gene induction during symbiosis is regulated by N (Dixon and Kahn 2004).

The indeterminate nodules are generally elongated and have a persistent meristem, while the determinate nodules are globose or obovate and lack a persistent meristem (Walsh et al. 1992). Lotocka et al. (2012) suggested that the appropriate term for indeterminate nodules should be 'nodules with indeterminate growth meristem'. The first cell division occurs in the cortex in indeterminate nodules and is anticlinal, whereas in determinate nodules' first cell division takes place in outer cortex (Ferguson et al. 2010). In indeterminate and determinate nodules, the vascular elements are surrounded by one to several layers of pericycle and an endodermis, but in indeterminate nodules, the vascular elements continue to differentiate throughout the nodule life, towards the meristem (Walsh et al. 1992).

There are certain plants that have been used historically for studies on indeterminate and determinate nodules. These include *Medicago sativa* (alfalfa), *M. truncatula*, *Pisum sativum* (pea), *Vicia* sp. (vetches) and *Trifolium* sp. (cloves) for indeterminate nodule and G*lycine max* (soybean), *Vicia faba* (bean) and *Lotus japonicus* for determinate nodules (Cook 2000; Handberg and Stougaard 1992). However, *Lotus japonicus* and *Medicago truncatula* that develop determinate and indeterminate nodules, respectively, are considered as model organisms (Lopez et al. 2008). Both these plants had a common ancestor ~40 MY ago; still they

Table 1 Summary of differences between determinate and indeterminate nodules

Determinate nodules	Indeterminate nodules
Formed in tropical legumes	Formed in temperate legumes
Generally globose or obovate in shape	Elongated/cylindrical
No persistent meristem	Meristem is persistent, and the vascular elements continue to differentiate throughout the nodule existence
Starch is rarely or never stored in infected cells	Starch is present in both infected and uninfected cells
First cell division is periclinal and the initials arise from outer/midcortical cells	First cell division is anticlinal and the initials arise from inner cortical cells
No clear zonation	Five histological zones can be seen
Infected cells have minimal vacuolation	Infected cells are highly vacuolated
The bacteroids have high viability and are normal rod shaped and many per symbiosome	The bacteroids have low viability and are enlarged and branched and one per symbiosome
Bacteroids represent same genomic DNA content	Differentiation of bacteroids causes genome amplification
Model organism for studies *Lotus japonicus*	Model organism: *Medicago truncatula*

form different types of nodules (Lavin et al. 2005). Both these plants are diploid, have small genome and can be inbred to form genetically homogenous lines. Other characters which make these plants a favourite material are their short life cycle and prolific seed production. The genome sequencing has been done for both these plants, and thus mutants specific to symbiotic nitrogen fixation have been characterized, and the responsible genes have been isolated (Cannon et al. 2006). Table 1 summarizes the differences between determinate and indeterminate nodules.

4.1 Indeterminate Nodules

In the indeterminate nodules, the activity of meristem is persistent and new cells are constantly added to the distal end, forming cylindrical nodules. The nodules, growth and functioning occur simultaneously, and the differentiation can be observed in a single longitudinal section. During the development of indeterminate nodules, the first cell division is anticlinal and occurs in the inner cortex, and then in the endodermis and pericycle, the periclinal divisions take place and a primordium is formed. Being indeterminate nodules, the nodule meristem maintains its activity throughout the growth cycle and apical meristem continuously produces new cells that are being infected by bacteria, thus a gradient of developmental stages/zones can be identified while the nodule continues to grow. Five histological zones can be distinguished in the fully developed indeterminate nodules (Timmers et al. 2000; Ferguson et al. 2010; Bederska et al. 2012).

The apical part (Zone I) consists of meristem and produces cells of the nodule tissue, but no rhizobia. The distal part has an invasion or symbiotic zone. Adjacent to this part is the infection zone (Zone II) that has young symbiotic tissue. In this zone the cell division comes to an end and bacteria are released from the infection threads into the cytosol. These bacteria then undergo endocytotic internalization and differentiate into bacteroids to form symbiosomes. Bacteroid is different from the free-living, rod-shaped rhizobia (Paau et al. 1978, 1980; Vasse et al. 1990). This differentiation of bacteroids is linked to morphological and cytological changes, such as cell elongation, genome amplification, membrane permeabilization and loss of reproductive capacity (Mergaert et al. 2006).

Next to this is a transitional zone or interzone II/III with starch stored in cells, and here bacteroid-containing tissues undergo final differentiation. Bacteroid differentiation is orchestrated with dramatic changes in the invaded plant cells, which enlarge and are highly polyploid (Timmers et al. 2000). Zone III is the differentiated zone, where nitrogen fixation takes place. There is a senescent zone (Zone IV), where symbionts degenerate (Vasse et al. 1990; Hirsch 1992). The presence of a saprophytic zone (Zone V) was first time shown in alfalfa by Timmers and coworkers (2000). In this zone, rhizobia neither undergo differentiation into bacteroid nor they are surrounded by membrane envelope and possess features of free-living bacteria. This zone is of special interest as it forms an ecological niche where intracellular rhizobia take advantage of the interaction for their exclusive benefit and live as parallel saprophytic partners (Timmers et al. 2000). These rhizobia are returned to the soil after nodule decomposition (Lotocka et al. 2012).

4.2 Determinate Nodules

In determinate nodules, the nodule zonation is not clearly distinguished. The determinate nodules originate from mitotic activity of the root outer cortex. However, the mitotic activity stops during development, and increase in nodule size occurs mainly due to cell expansion. The inner region of determinate nodule has rhizobia-colonized cells where symbiotic nitrogen fixation occurs and relatively small rhizobia-infected (as yet uncolonized) cells in the surrounding region. During the development process, the infection thread branches and penetrates the cells of the central region, once the infection thread comes in contact with nodule primordia. The bacteria bud off from the tips of the infection threads into the plant cytoplasm and the bacteria become enclosed by the peribacteroid membrane. The bacteroids of determinate nodules represent the same cell size, genomic DNA content and reproductive capacity as the free-living bacteria. Thus at the end of symbiosis, these bacteria can return to a free-living lifestyle and recolonize the rhizosphere (Mergaert et al. 2006).

5 Molecular Conversation

Symbiotic nitrogen fixation genes can be broadly divided into nod, nif and fix genes (Fischer 1994). The nod gene products are required for the early steps in nodule formation (which is discussed subsequently). In free-living diazotrophs such as *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, nif genes exist and are structurally homologous to rhizobial nif genes. The conserved nif gene plays a similar role in rhizobia as in *K. pneumoniae* (Long 1989; Fischer 1994, Schmitz et al. 2002). Alternatively, the term 'fix gene' is used for genes that are essential for nitrogen fixation but do not have a homologous counterpart in *K. pneumoniae* (Long 1969; Fischer 1994). However, the homologues of some of the fix genes exist in bacteria that do not fix N (Dixon and Kahn 2004). Interestingly, both nif and fix gene mutants are able to cause nodule development, but the nodules do not fix nitrogen (Long 1969). Regulation of nif expression is a complex phenomenon, and the regulatory events that control the transcription of the nif genes in free-living and symbiotic diazotrophs have been well reviewed by Dixon and Kahn (2004).

5.1 NF Perception and Signalling Cascade

Roots of the host plant attract the rhizobia and activate the expression of rhizobial nod genes that in turn leads to the production and secretion of strain-specific NFs. There are two receptor-like kinases (RLK) that are located on the epidermal cells: LjNFR1 and LjNFR5 in *L. japonicus* and MtLYK3/MtLYK4 and MtNFP in *M. truncatula* (Limpens et al. 2003; Madsen et al. 2003; Radutoiu et al. 2003; Arrighi et al. 2006). These NF receptors comprise of an intracellular kinase domain, a transmembrane domain and an extracellular region having lysin motif (LysM) domains. These LysM domains mediate recognition of different NAG-containing ligands and facilitate microbial infection and symbiosis (Gust et al. 2012). Most of the NF receptors are characterized by the presence of activation loop (the site of phosphorylation). The NF receptors, LjNFR1 and MtLYK3/MtLYK4, have a typical serine/threonine kinase domain, but LjNFR5 and MtNFP do not have any activation loop (Limpens et al. 2003; Madsen et al. 2003; Radutoiu et al. 2003). The absence of an activation loop in the receptor of one of the kinase domains gives an indication that the two LysM RLKs form a heterodimeric receptor, with the active kinase domain functioning in downstream signal transduction. Thus, the NF that is perceived by two LysM RLKs leads to NF signalling cascade, cortical and pericycle cell division and bacterial infection events (Cardenas et al. 1998; de Ruijter et al. 1998).

The signalling cascade involves potassium ion (K^+) channel proteins located in the nuclear membrane (encoded by MtDML1, LjCASTOR and LjPOLLUX) (Ané et al. 2004; Imaizumi-Anraku et al. 2005; Riely et al. 2007), two nucleoporins (encoded by LjNup133 and LjNUP85) (Kanamori et al. 2006; Saito et al. 2007)

and a calcium- and calmodulin-dependent protein kinase (CCaMK) (encoded by MtDM13/PsSYM9) (Lévy et al. 2004; Mitra et al. 2004). Rapid influx of Ca^{+2}, followed by membrane depolarization involving efflux of Cl^- and K^+ (Felle et al. 1999), induces oscillation in cytosolic Ca^{+2} concentration, which is known as Ca^{+2} ion spiking (Wais et al. 2000). Ca^{+2} spiking signals are perceived by CCaMK (Oldroyd and Downie 2004). Various mutation studies suggest that NF LRR RLK, the ion channels and the nucleoporins act downstream of NF perception, but upstream of Ca^{+2} spiking, and CCaMK acts downstream of Ca^{+2} spiking (Ferguson et al. 2010). Downstream of CCaMK, many transcription factors necessary for nodulation and nodule inception get activated. These include nodulation signalling pathway 1 (NSP1) (Smit et al. 2005), NSP2 (Kaló et al. 2005), Ets2 repressor factor required for nodulation (ERN) (Middleton et al. 2007) and nodule inception (NIN) (Schauser et al. 1999; Borisov et al. 2003). Mutational studies of NSP1 and NSP2 have shown that these mutants exhibit normal Ca^{+2} responses when treated with NFs but fail to initiate transcription of the early nodulation (ENOD) genes localized in the epidermis. NSP1 and NSP2 get activated after Ca^{+2} spiking (Catoira et al. 2000; Oldroyd and Long 2003), but probably downstream of CCaMK (Ferguson et al. 2010). In addition to these genes, the ENOD gene shows its expression in the epidermal cells. Experimental evidences suggest that expression of ENODs in the epidermis is an orchestrated effort of NSP1, NSP2, ERN1 and NIN (Andriankaja et al. 2007; Hirsch et al. 2009; Ferguson et al. 2010). NF signalling cascade, cell divisions in cortex and pericycle and bacterial infection, all these events occur in a coordinated way and give rise to a nodule.

5.2 Epidermal and Cortical Responses During Early Stages of Nodulation

During root hair invasion, bacterial infection is regulated by epidermis, whereas formation of a nodule is controlled by cortex. However, in case of crack invasion, the epidermis is breached and the bacteria gain direct access to cortical cells. The developmental processes in the cortex and epidermis are different, but coordinated such that a nodule primordium occurs close to the site of bacterial infection.

Essentiality of a cytokinin receptor for nodule development indicates cytokinin as a key player in nodule organogenesis. Indeed, cytokinin may be the mobile signal communicating epidermal perception of NF to the inner root (Subramanian 2013; Ferguson et al. 2010). Abscisic acid (ABA) has already been proposed as a mobile signal and is known to have a role in both the epidermis and cortex (Ding et al. 2008; Biswas et al. 2009; Ding and Oldroyd 2009). ABA is a negative regulator of nodule development and other plant hormones such as auxin, brassinosteroids and gibberellins acting as positive regulators. Like the hormones, there are certain factors and signals that are required both in the cortex and in the epidermis. For example, CCaMK is required in the epidermis and the cortex but involves entirely different pathways. Similarly, NSP1 and NSP2, which act downstream of CCaMK in the epidermis, and

downstream of CCaMK and the cytokinin receptor in the cortex is thus required in both epidermis and cortex (Heckmann et al. 2006). Another transcription factor, NIN, also appears to have a role in both epidermal and cortical cells. NF perception in the epidermis causes rapid responses in the inner root. In *M. truncatula* within 16 h, cytoskeletal rearrangement takes place in pericycle cells (Timmers et al. 1999). Such rapid response in the inner root to rhizobia/NF suggests some form of signalling communication.

The activation of the mitotic cell cycle and regulators of the cell cycle in cortical cells play an important role during the formation of a nodule primordium. A cytokinin receptor, which has a histidine kinase domain (encoded by MtCRE1/LjLHK1), functions in the root cortex and is essential for cell division events (Gonzalez-Rizzo et al. 2006; Tirichine et al. 2007). Downregulation, or loss of function, of this receptor results in decreased nodule numbers, as nodule primordium is not formed by plant (Gonzalez-Rizzo et al. 2006; Murray et al. 2007). During such an event rhizobial infections take place, but the infection threads lose their direction and spread laterally rather than growing towards the root cortex (Murray et al. 2007). Thus, nodule primordia formation or the cytokinin receptor is not mandatory for bacterial infection events, but for guiding the growth of infection thread.

The loss-of-function Mtdmi3 mutants produce a non-nodulation phenotype as CCaMK activity is required in the epidermis. But gain-of-function mutants of CCaMK result in spontaneous nodulation due to controlled cell divisions in the cortex (Gleason et al. 2006; Tirichine et al. 2006). However, presence of functional copies of NSP1 or NSP2 is essential for nodulation in gain-of-function mutants of CCaMK (Gleason et al. 2006; Tirichine et al. 2007). Thus, NSP1 and NSP2 act downstream of CCaMK in the epidermis.

The transcription factor, NIN, has a role in both epidermal and cortical cells (Schauser et al. 1999; Borisov et al. 2003; Marsh et al. 2007). In the epidermis, the mutant NIN plants show show excessive ENOD11 expression (suggesting that NIN is not essential for NF-induced ENOD11 expression), excessive root hair curling, blocked rhizobial infection (Schauser et al. 1999; Marsh et al. 2007) and in the cortex, such mutants are unable to initiate cell divisions and nodule primordium formation (Schauser et al. 1999; Borisov et al. 2003). NIN acts as a negative regulator of NF signalling to regulate the spatial expression of ENOD11 in the root epidermis (Marsh et al. 2007). The expression of NIN is brought out by cytokinin or NF application (Gonzalez-Rizzo et al. 2006; Murray et al. 2007), further supporting the idea that NIN positively regulates cortical cell divisions.

6 Legume–*Rhizobium* Under Stress

Stress refers to any environmental condition that affects normal growth, metabolism and development of organisms. More than 90 % of arable land experience one or other kind of stress and causes more than 50 % of crop loss worldwide. In the symbiotic association of rhizobium and legume, it is important to discuss the factors that affect the microbe, the host plant and the functioning of the symbiotic association, as the N_2

fixation is strongly related to the physiological state of the host plant (Bordeleau and Prevost 1994; Zahran 1999). Stress factors may be from natural or anthropogenic sources (i.e. due to human activities). Natural stresses include soil pH, soil moisture, salinity, temperature, nutrients, predation, etc. Stress leads to the generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS). These ROS react with biomolecules like proteins, nucleic acids, membrane lipids, etc. and hamper their normal functioning in the cell. Plants respond to these stresses through synthesis of metabolites and antioxidant enzymes that enhance tolerance mechanisms in plants under stress (Latef and Ahmad 2015). The presence of stress changes the physiological state of host plant, rhizobial survival in the soil, infection and nodule establishment and ultimately the nodule functioning. In the following section, major environmental constraints and their effects on the legumes, rhizobium and legume–*Rhizobium* interaction are discussed.

6.1 Soil pH

Soil acidity alters the availability of phosphorous, calcium and molybdenum and determines the toxicity of iron, aluminium and manganese (Muthukumar et al. 2014). Highly alkaline soil has sodium chloride, bicarbonate and borate which are toxic to both legume and rhizobium. Neutral or slightly acidic pH in soil is required for most leguminous plants (Bordeleau and Prevost 1994). In both tropical and temperate areas, the acidic pH limits the growth and survival of rhizobium strains in soil and nodulation and ultimately constrains nitrogen fixation of legumes (Graham et al. 1994). In a study by Tang and Thomson (1996), they studied the effects of pH (4, 5, 6, 7 and 8) and bicarbonate (5 mM $KHCO_3$) on the growth and nodulation of 14 grain legume species supplied with N or reliant on N_2 fixation. Species shows a broader optimal pH range for growth when supplied with N, but showed sensitivity at low pH when reliant on N_2 fixation.

Thus, soil pH affects the number of nodules, the nitrogenase activity, the nodule ultrastructure and the fresh and dry weights of nodules to a greater extent (Vassileva et al. 1997; Zahran 1999). Generally, nodulation problems occur once the pH falls below 5.5, as the rhizobium attachment to root hair is hampered (Bordeleau and Prevost 1994; Zahran 1999).

Taylor et al. (1991) suggested that at low pH, the rhizobial population decreases. However, not all the strains exhibit pH sensitivity, and rhizobia appear to be more tolerant to alkalinity and acidity and then do their legume hosts, thus host legume is considered to be a limiting factor for creating rhizobium–legume symbiosis (Tang and Thomson 1996; Graham et al. 1994; Zahran 1999). *Bradyrhizobium* (slow-growing strain) is more tolerant to low pH than the fast-growing strains of rhizobium, with the exception of *R. loti* and *R. tropici*. In pH-tolerant strains, the cytoplasmic pH is not altered much by external acidity. Experimental evidences suggest that this tolerance can be attributed due to the differences in the lipopolysaccharide composition of strains, proton exclusion and extrusion, synthesis of acid shock proteins and high

cytoplasmic potassium and glutamate levels (Aarons and Graham 1991; Bhat and Carlson 1992; Fujihara and Yoneyama 1993; Zahran 1999).

Like rhizobial species, the legume species also differ in their response to low pH (Tang and Thomson 1996). Muthukumar et al. (2014) suggest three possible mechanisms that enable plants to tolerate acidic conditions: (1) exclusion of toxic ions (such as Al and Mn) from the root apex, (2) tolerance to toxic levels of Al and Mn through detoxification in the plant symplasm and (3) enhanced efficiency in the uptake of limiting nutrients from acid soils (Kochian et al. 2005; Bhalerao and Prabhu 2013).

Soil acidity also limits the phosphorous availability, reduces legume growth and indirectly limits nodulation (Bordeleau and Prevost 1994). Phosphorous deficiency affects the growth of the legume host as well as of the symbiont. Rhizobial strains differ in their capacity to tolerate phosphorous deficiency, and generally slow-growing strains are more tolerant than the fast-growing ones (Zahran 1999). The presence of heavy metals such as aluminium further aggravates the problem of low pH, as under these conditions phosphorous is precipitated and becomes unavailable to plant and rhizobium in the rhizosphere. Thus, such conditions result in the stunted root growth, low calcium uptake by plant and reduced nodulation and nitrogen fixation (Zahran 1999; Azooz and Ahmad 2015). Wood et al. (1984) observed the symbiosis of *Trifolium repens* var Huia–*Rhizobium trifolii* strain HP3 in axenic solution culture system that under 10 mM phosphate and 50 mM Al, aluminium inhibits the root elongation at pH < 6.0 and root hair formation at pH < 5, while nodulation and rhizobium multiplication at pH < 6.0. Ferreira et al. (2012) demonstrated that the rhizobial strains of *R. tropici*, viz. UFLA04-195, UFLA04-173 and UFLA04-20, have greater efficiency for plant growth, shoot nitrogen content and nodulation when compared to strain CIAT 899.

6.2 Soil Moisture

Moisture regime determines the distribution, survival and activity of the rhizobium in their microhabitats (Orchard and Cook 1983; Zahran 1999). Waldon et al. (1989) isolated 74 rhizobial strains from the nodules of the desert woody legumes. Rhizobia isolated from surface and deep phreatic soil were compared. Jenkins et al. (1989) worked on three warm desert ecosystems such as sand dune, Chihuahuan Desert of New Mexico and Sonoran Desert of Southern California and observed that fast-growing rhizobia exists as free-living populations from 0 to 8 m depth, while slow-growing rhizobia dominated the surface 1 m of soil. However, this distribution of rhizobia was related to the concentration of total soil salts in the soils. Such studies show that rhizobia can exist in soil with low moisture contents but with low population density, while legumes are sensitive to extreme water regimes (Jenkins et al. 1989; Waldon et al. 1989; Tate 1995; Bordeleau and Prevost 1994). Faba bean and pea are known to be drought sensitive, whereas lentil and chickpea are known as drought-resistant genera (Azooz and Ahmad 2015). Tolerant

legumes show osmotic adjustment (Ford 1984) by accumulating osmolytes such as glutamic acids (Botsford and Lewis 1990), trehalose, N-acetylglutaminylglutamine amide (D'Souza-Ault et al. 1993; Smith et al. 1994), proline (Kapuya et al. 1985) and pinitol (*o*-methylinositol) (Ford 1984).

Low moisture induces oxidative damage in legumes thereby effecting nodule performance (Azooz and Ahmad 2015). When 1-month-old alfalfa plants were inoculated with *Sinorhizobium meliloti* strains 102 F78 and subjected to drought, a decrease in plant growth due to decrease in leaf area and decrease in nodule dry mass was observed (Aranjuelo et al. 2007). Interestingly, Talbi et al. (2012) in their study observed that inoculation of *Phaseolus vulgaris* with a *R. etli* strain (which has enhanced expression of cbb 3 oxidase) increased the tolerance of *Phaseolus vulgaris–R. etli* symbiosis to drought and modulate carbon metabolism in nodules. The degree of water stress on the rhizobium and its activity also depends on the age and growth stage of the host plant. For example, in *Phaseolus vulgaris*, Pena-Cabriales and Castellanos (1993) demonstrated that water stress is more detrimental to nodulation at reproductive stage, rather than at the vegetative stage. Nodules initiated under sufficient water conditions show retarded growth, if exposed to dry conditions. In dry soil infection is restricted because of the short, stubby root hairs, which are inadequate for rhizobial infection (Bordeleau and Prevost 1994). Rate of nitrogen fixation in legume plants decreased under drought stress due to the accumulation of ureides in nodules and shoots and reduced shoot nitrogen demand, xylem translocation rate and metabolic enzyme activity (Azooz and Ahmad 2015).

6.3 Soil Salinity

Salinity is a major abiotic stress limiting agricultural production especially in arid and semiarid regions (Munns and Tester 2008). Rhizobial strains are found to be salinity tolerant than their partner legumes; the tolerance in this symbiotic nitrogen fixation depends on the plant as well as the rhizobium genotype (Dogra et al. 2013). Soil salinity adversely affects the microbial population mainly because of ion toxicity and osmotic stress (Tate 1995; Zahran 1999). The bacteria adapt to saline conditions by the intracellular accumulation of low molecular weight organic solute osmolytes (Csonka and Hanson 1991); increase in intracellular free glutamate and/or K^+ (Zahran 1999); release of osmoprotectants such as sucrose, ectoine, mannitol, lactose, etc. (Talibort et al. 1994; Ghittoni and Bueno 1995; Gouffi et al. 1999); accumulation of glycine betaine (Fougère et al. 1991); and increase in the content of polyamines (Fujihara and Yoneyama 1993). In a study by Sharma et al. (2013), the isolated rhizobial strains from the root nodules of three leguminous plants, namely, sesbania (*Sesbania sesban*), lablab (*Lablab purpureus*) and pigeon pea (*Cajanus cajan*), growing at a research farm in Dubai were able to nodulate in saline water 12 dS m^{-1} on 21-day-old seedlings.

Saline soils limit the productivity of legumes by adversely affecting the growth of the host plant, the symbiotic development of rhizobial root nodules and their

nitrogen fixating capacity (Dogra et al. 2013). Some legumes, e.g. *Vicia faba*, *Phaseolus vulgaris* and *Glycine max*, are more salt tolerant than others, e.g. *Pisum sativum* (Zahran 1999). Increase in soil salinity causes water stress, ion toxicity, nutritional disorders, oxidative stress, alteration of metabolic processes, membrane disorganization by displacing membrane Ca^{+2} by Na^{+}, reduction of cell division and expansion and genotoxicity in legumes (Azooz and Ahmad 2015). In another study by Latrach et al. (2014), salinity decreased the plant height, their dry mass and nodulation in the symbiotic combinations of two Moroccan alfalfa (*Medicago sativa*) populations (Demnate and Tata) and two rhizobial strains (rhLAr 1 and rhLAr 4). Oufdou et al. (2014) inoculated faba beans by rhizobial strains RhOF6 and exposed plants to 150 mM of NaCl. In the plant inoculated by RhOF6, glutathione S-transferase (GST) activity was generally increased while a decrease in glutathione peroxidase (GPOX), superoxide dismutase (SOD), ascorbate peroxidase (APOX) and monodehydroascorbate reductase (MDHAR) in roots of faba bean.

The initial steps of legume–rhizobium interaction are inhibited under salt stress (Zahran 1991). The legume–*Rhizobium* symbioses and nodule formation on legumes are more sensitive to salt or osmotic stress than are the rhizobia. Tu (1981) demonstrated that failure of nodulation in soybean occurs due to decrease in rhizobial colonization and shrinkage of root hairs. Salt stress reduces nodule respiration and cytosolic protein production, especially leghaemoglobin, thus depressing nitrogen fixation (Zahran 1999).

6.4 Temperature

Ideally, 28–31 °C is found to be the optimal temperature for rhizobial growth, and they are generally unable to grow at and above 37 °C. Heat-tolerant rhizobia are likely to be found in environments affected by temperature stress. For example, rhizobial isolates from southern Nile Valley of Egypt were tolerant to 35–40 °C, although they formed less effective symbiosis with their legume hosts (Zahran 1999). At high temperature, the rhizobial strains become ineffective and outnumber the infective rhizobia in the rhizosphere. Zahran et al. (1994) reported that the heat stress changes the lipopolysaccharide pattern of some strains of rhizobia.

In legume host, elevated temperature negatively affects photosynthesis, respiration, water relations and membrane stability and also modulates levels of hormones and primary and secondary metabolites. The enhanced expression of a variety of heat shock proteins and production of ROS constitutes major plant responses to heat stress (Azooz and Ahmad 2015). Increased temperatures adversely affect root hair formation, adherence of bacteria to hairs, root hair infection, sites of nodulation, bacteroid differentiation and nodule structure and functioning, but accelerate nodule senescence (Roughley 1970; Roughley and Dart 1970; Pankhurst and Gibson 1973; Sutton 1983). Hungria and Franco (1993), in their study, screened strains of *Rhizobium leguminosarum* bv. *phaseoli* and observed that some of the strains were

able to nodulate beans even when given a heat shock of 35 and 38 °C for 8 h in a day. However, the nodules formed were ineffective and nitrogen did not accumulate in plants. Thermal shocks of 40 °C at the time of flowering decreased the nitrogenase activity and nodule relative efficiency of plants but recovered only when new nodules were formed.

Michiels et al. (1994) compared heat-tolerant (CIAT899) and heat-sensitive (CNPAF512) strains of bean-nodulating rhizobia: 14 heat shock proteins were detected in CNPAF512 at 40 °C and 6 heat shock proteins in CIAT899 at 45 °C. In cowpea, Simões-Araújo and co-workers (2002) showed similarities in the transcripts – fragments derived after heat shock to those that encode for wound-induced proteins, disease resistance protein, heat shock proteins and xylan endohydrolase isoenzyme, as well as different housekeeping genes.

In temperate legumes, elevated temperatures delay nodule initiation and development, interfere with nodule structure and functioning, whereas nitrogen fixation efficiency is mainly affected in tropical legumes (Bordeleau and Prevost 1994). However, in a study on alfalfa (temperate legume) by Aranjuelo et al. (2007), elevated temperature decreased not only plant growth but also CO_2 and N_2 fixation rates and inhibited nodule activity. The results were obtained by inoculating alfalfa with *Sinorhizobium meliloti* strain 102 F78 grown under different temperature (25/15 or 28/18 °C, day/night) and water treatments.

6.5 Predation

Rhizobium bacteria have to adapt to soil conditions in the soil ecosystem, and spatial distribution of rhizobia in the soil influences their survival (Postma et al. 1990). The rhizobium is attacked by number of organisms such as insect larvae (for source of food), nematodes, bacteriophages, viruses, etc. (Andrés et al. 2012). In addition to the competition for resources with other organisms, rhizobia also have to cope with the predation by the protists (Jousset et al. 2006). This decreases bacterial number and also plays an important role in controlling bacterial populations (Jjemba 2001; Rønn et al. 2002). As a response to predation, bacteria have developed several adaptations such as morphological changes, increased motility, toxin production and membrane properties that make them unattractive (Jousset et al. 2006). In a study by Pérez et al. (2014), it was observed that in a cocultured medium of *Myxococcus xanthus* (a soil bacterium) and strains of *Sinorhizobium meliloti*, the predatory pattern is determined by the galactoglucan released by the rhizobial strain.

7 Epilogue

Understanding the role of biological N_2 fixation can help us to achieve agricultural sustainability worldwide. However, the relationship between plants, soil microorganism and soil is multifaceted. Plants and microorganisms, directly or indirectly, play a

crucial role in the major ecological processes such as nutrient cycling, soil formation, improving soil fertility and BNF, etc. The process of nodulation involves two-way molecular conversation between the host legume and the bacteria. A number of natural and anthropogenic factors affect the legume–*Rhizobium* interaction. However, there are varieties of strains that can tolerate harsh environmental conditions. Optimum utilization of BNF can help us to achieve agricultural sustainability worldwide. The use of new inventions and its access to the farmers could be a step towards sustainability and will help in improving the economic status of the farmers. Therefore, more research program across the world to identify the superior legume varieties and rhizobial strains for the human welfare are required.

References

Aarons SR, Graham PH (1991) Response of *Rhizobium leguminosarum* bv *phaseoli* to acidity. Plant Soil 134:145–151

Andrés JA, Rovera M, Guiñazú LB, Pastor NA, Rosas SB (2012) Interactions between legumes and rhizobia under stress conditions. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Bacteria in agrobiology: stress management. Springer, Berlin

Andriankaja A, Boisson-Dernier A, Frances L, Sauviac L, Jauneau A, Barker DG, de Carvalho-Niebel F (2007) AP2-ERF transcription factors mediate nod factor-dependent *MtENOD11* activation in root hairs via a novel cis-regulatory motif. Plant Cell 19:2866–2885

Ané JM, Kiss GB, Riely BK, Penmetsa RV, Oldroyd GE, Ayax C, Lévy J, Debellé F, Baek JM, Kalo P, Rosenberg C, Roe BA, Long SR, Dénarié J, Cook DR (2004) *Medicago truncatula* DMI1 required for bacterial and fungal symbioses in legumes. Science 303:1364–1367

Aranjuelo I, Irigoyen JJ, Sánchez-Díaz, M (2007). Effect of elevated temperature and water availability on CO_2 exchange and nitrogen fixation of nodulated alfalfa plants. Environ Exp Bot 59(2):99–108

Arrighi JF, Barre A, Ben Amor B, Bersoult A, Soriano LC, Mirabella R, de Carvalho-Niebel F, Journet EP, Ghérardi M, Huguet T, Geurts R, Dénarié J, Rougé P, Gough C (2006) The *Medicago truncatula* Lysine motif-receptor-like kinase gene family includes *NFP* and new nodule-expressed genes. Plant Physiol 142(1):265–279

Azooz MM, Ahmad P (eds) (2015) Legumes under environmental stress: yield, improvement and adaptations. John Wiley & Sons, Hoboken

Bederska M, Borucki W, Znojek E (2012) Movement of fluorescent dyes Lucifer Yellow (LYCH) and carboxyfluorescein (CF) in *Medicago truncatula Gaertn*. roots and root nodules. Symbiosis 58:183–190

Bhalerao SA, Prabhu DV (2013) Aluminium toxicity in plants: a review. J Appl Chem 2:447–474

Bhat UR, Carlson RW (1992) Chemical characterization of pH-dependent structural epitopes of lipopolysaccharides from *Rhizobium leguminosarum* biovar *phaseoli*. J Bacteriol 174(7):2230–2235

Biswas B, Chan PK, Gresshoff PM (2009) A novel ABA insensitive mutant of *Lotus japonicus* with a wilty phenotype displays unaltered nodulation regulation. Mol Plant 2:487–499

Bond L (1948) Origin and developmental morphology of root nodules of *Pisum sativum*. Bot Gaz 109(4):411–434

Bordeleau LM, Prevost D (1994) Nodulation and nitrogen fixation in extreme environments. Plant Soil 161:115–125

Borisov AY, Madsen LH, Tsyganov VE, Umehara Y, Voroshilova VA, Batagov AO, Sandal N, Mortensen A, Schauser L, Ellis N, Tikhonovich IA, Stougaard J (2003) The sym35 gene required for root nodule development in pea is an ortholog of NIN from *Lotus japonicus*. Plant Physiol 131:1009–1017

Botsford JL, Lewis TA (1990) Osmoregulation in *Rhizobium meliloti*: production of glutamic acid in response to osmotic stress. Appl Environ Microbiol 56(2):488–494

Brown SM, Walsh KB (1994) Anatomy of the legume nodule cortex with respect to nodule permeability. Aust J Plant Physiol 21:49–68

Cannon SB et al (2006) Legume genome evolution viewed through the *Medicago truncatula* and *Lotus japonicus* genomes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103(40):14959–14964

Cardenas L, Vidali L, Dominguez J, Perez H, Sanchez F, Hepler PK, Quinto C (1998) Rearrangement of actin microfilaments in plant root hairs responding to *Rhizobium etli* nodulation signals. Plant Physiol 116(3):871–877

Catoira R, Galera C, de Billy F, Penmetsa RV, Journet EP, Maillet F, Rosenberg C, Cook D, Gough C, Denarie J (2000) Four genes of *Medicago truncatula* controlling components of a nod factor transduction pathway. Plant Cell 12:1647–1665

Cook D (2000) *Medicago truncatula*—a model in the making! Curr Opin Plant Biol 2:301–304

Cooper JE (2007) Early interactions between legumes and rhizobia: disclosing complexity in a molecular dialogue. J Appl Microbiol 103:1355–1365

Csonka LN, Hanson AD (1991) Prokaryotic osmoregulation: genetics and physiology. Annu Rev Microbiol 45:569–606

D'Souza-Ault MR, Smith LT, Smith GM (1993) Roles of N-acetylglutaminylglutamine amide and glycine betaine in adaptation of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* to osmotic stress. Appl Environ Microbiol 59(2):473–478

de Ruijter N, Rook M, Bisseling T, Emons A (1998) Lipochitooligosaccharides re-initiate root hair tip growth in *Vicia sativa* with high calcium and spectrin-like antigen at the tip. Plant J 13:341–350

Ding YL, Oldroyd GE (2009) Positioning the nodule, the hormone dictum. Plant Signal Behav 4:89–93

Ding YL, Kalo P, Yendrek C, Sun J, Liang Y, Marsh JF, Harris JM, Oldroyd GE (2008) Abscisic acid coordinates Nod factor and cytokinin signaling during the regulation of nodulation in *Medicago truncatula*. Plant Cell 20:2681–2695

Dixon R, Kahn D (2004) Genetic regulation of biological nitrogen fixation. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:621–631

Dogra T, Priyadarshini A, Kumar A, Singh NK (2013) Identification of genes involved in salt tolerance and symbiotic nitrogen fixation in chickpea rhizobium *Mesorhizobium ciceri* Ca181. Symbiosis 61(3):135–143

Felle HH, Kondorosi E, Kondorosi A, Schultze M (1999) Elevation of the cytosolic free [Ca^{2+}] is indispensable for the transduction of the nod factor signal in alfalfa. Plant Physiol 121:273–279

Ferguson BJ, Indrasumunar A, Hayashi S, Lin MH, Lin YH, Reid DE, Gresshoff PM (2010) Molecular analysis of legume nodule development and autoregulation. J Integr Plant Biol 52(1):61–76

Ferreira PAA, Bomfeti CA, Soares BL, de Souza Moreira FM (2012). Efficient nitrogen-fixing Rhizobium strains isolated from amazonian soils are highly tolerant to acidity and aluminium. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28: 1947–1959.

Fischer H-M (1994) Genetic regulation of nitrogen fixation in Rhizobia. Microbiol Rev 58:352–386

Fliegmann J, Bono J (2015) Lipo-chitooligosaccharidic nodulation factors and their perception by plant receptors. Glycoconj J 32:455–464

Ford CW (1984) Accumulation of low molecular weight solutes in water stressed tropical legumes. Phytochemistry 23:1007–1015

Fougère F, Le-Rudulier D, Streeter JG (1991) Effects of salt stress on amino acid, organic acid, and carbohydrate composition of roots, bacteroids and cytosol of alfalfa (*Medicago sativa* L.). Plant Physiol 96:1228–1236

Franssen HJ, Vijn I, Yang WC, Bisseling T (1992) Developmental aspects of the Rhizobium-legume symbiosis. Plant Mol Biol 19(1):89–107

Frazer HL (1942) The occurrence of endodermis in leguminous root nodules and its effect on nodule function. Proc R Soc Edinb B 61:328–343

Fujihara S, Yoneyama T (1993) Effects of pH and osmotic stress on cellular polyamine contents in the soybean rhizobia *Rhizobium fredii* P220 and *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* A1017. Appl Environ Microbiol 59:1104–1109

Gage DJ (2004) Infection and invasion of roots by symbiotic, nitrogen-fixing rhizobia during nodulation of temperate legumes. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 68(2):280–300
Ghittoni NE, Bueno MA (1995) Peanut rhizobia under salt stress: role of trehalose accumulation in strain ATCC 514466. Can J Microbiol 41:1021–1030
Gibson KE, Kobayashi H, Walker GC (2008) Molecular determinants of a symbiotic chronic infection. Annu Rev Genet 42:413–441
Gleason C, Chaudhuri S, Yang TB, Munoz A, Poovaiah BW, Oldroyd GE (2006) Nodulation independent of rhizobia induced by a calcium-activated kinase lacking autoinhibition. Nature 441:1149–1152
Gonzalez-Rizzo S, Crespi M, Frugier F (2006) The *Medicago truncatula* CRE1 cytokinin receptor regulates lateral root development and early symbiotic interaction with *Sinorhizobium meliloti*. Plant Cell 18:2680–2693
Gordon AJ, Thomas BJ, Reynolds PHS (1992) Localization of sucrose synthase in soybean root nodules. New Phytol 122:35–44
Gouffi K, Pica N, Pichereau V, Blanco C (1999). Disaccharides as a new class of nonaccumulated osmoprotectants for *Sinorhizobium meliloti*. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:1491–1500.
Graham PH, Vance CP (2003) Legumes: Importance and constraints to greater use. Plant Physiol 131:872–877
Graham PH, Draeger K, Ferrey ML, Conroy MJ, Hammer BE, Martinez E, Naarons SR, Quinto C (1994) Acid pH tolerance in strains of *Rhizobium* and *Bradyrhizobium* tolerance of *Rhizobium tropici* UMR1899. Can J Microbiol 40:198–207
Gust AA, Willmann R, Desaki Y, Grabherr HM (2012) Plant LysM proteins: modules mediating symbiosis and immunity. Trends Plant Sci 17(8):495–502
Haeze WD, Holsters M (2002) Nod factor structures, responses, and perception during initiation of nodule development. Glycobiology 12(6):9R–105R
Handberg K, Stougaard JS (1992) *Lotus japonicus*, an autogamous, diploid legume species for classical and molecular genetics. Plant J 2:487–496
Heckmann AB, Lombardo F, Miwa H, Perry JA, Bunnewell S, Parniske M, Wang TL, Downie JA (2006) *Lotus japonicus* nodulation requires two GRAS domain regulators, one of which is functionally conserved in a non-legume. Plant Physiol 142:1739–1750
Hepler PK, Vidali L, Cheung AY (2001) Polarized cell growth in higher plants. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 17:159–187
Hirsch AM (1992) Developmental biology of legume nodulation. New Phytol 122:211–237
Hirsch AM (1999) Role of lectins (and rhizobial exopolysaccharides) in legume nodulation. Curr Opin Plant Biol 2:320–326
Hirsch S, Kim J, Munoz A, Heckmann AB, Downie JA, Oldroyd GE (2009) GRAS proteins form a DNA binding complex to induce gene expression during nodulation signaling in *Medicago truncatula*. Plant Cell 21:545–557
Hungria M, Franco AA (1993) Effects of high temperature on nodulation and nitrogen fixation by *Phaseolus vulgaris* L. Plant Soil 149(1):95–102
Imaizumi-Anraku H, Takeda N, Kawaguchi M, Parniske M, Hayashi M, Kawasaki S (2005) Host genes involved in activation and perception of calcium spiking. Plant Cell Physiol 46:S5–S5
Iwanami Y (1956) Protoplasmic movement in pollen grains and pollen tubes. Phytomorphology 6:288–295
Jenkins MB, Virginia RA, Jarrell WM (1989) Ecology of fast-growing and slow-growing mesquite-nodulating rhizobia in Chihuahuan and Sonoron Desert ecosystems. Soil Sci Soc Am J 53(2):543–549
Jjemba PK (2001) The interaction of protozoa with their potential prey bacteria in the rhizosphere. J Eukaryot Microbiol 48:320–324
Jousset A, Lara E, Wall LG, Valverde C (2006) Secondary metabolites help biocontrol strain *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0 to escape protozoan grazing. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:7083–90
Kaló P, Gleason C, Edwards A, Marsh J, Mitra RM, Hirsch S, Jakab J, Sims S, Long SR, Rogers J, Kiss GB, Downie JA, Oldroyd GE (2005) Nodulation signaling in legumes requires NSP2, a MEMBER of the GRAS family of transcriptional regulators. Science 308:1786–1789

Kanamori N, Madsen LH, Radutoiu S, Frantescu M, Quistgaard EM, Miwa H, Downie JA, James EK, Felle HH, Haaning LL, Jensen TH, Sato S, Nakamura Y, Tabata S, Sandal N, Stougaard J (2006) A nucleoporin is required for induction of Ca^{2+} spiking in legume nodule development and essential for rhizobial and fungal symbiosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:359–364

Kapuya JA, Barendse GWM, Linskens HF (1985) Water stress tolerance and proline accumulation in *Phaseolus vulgaris*. Acta Bot Neerl 34:295–300

Ketelaar T, Emons AMC (2001) The cytoskeleton in plant cell growth: lessons from root hairs. New Phytol 152:409–418

Kochian LV, Piñeros MA, Hoekenga OA (2005) The physiology, genetics and molecular biology of plant aluminum resistance and toxicity. Plant Soil 274:175–195

Kropf DL, Bisgrovet SR, Hable WE (1998). Cytoskeletal control of polar growth in plant cells. Curr Opin Cell Biol 10:117–122.

Latef AAHA, Ahmad P (2015) Legumes and breeding under abiotic stress: an overview. In: Azooz MM, Ahmad P (eds) Legumes under environmental stress: yield, improvement and adaptations. John Wiley & Sons, Hoboken

Latrach L, Farissi M, Mouradi M, Makoudi B, Bouizgaren A, Ghoulam C (2014) Growth and nodulation of alfalfa-rhizobia symbiosis under salinity: electrolyte leakage, stomatal conductance, and chlorophyll fluorescence. Turk J Agric For 38(3):320–326

Lavin M, Herendeen PS, Wojciechowski MF (2005) Evolutionary rates analysis of Leguminosae implicates a rapid diversification of lineages during the tertiary. Syst Biol 54:574–594

Lévy J, Bres C, Geurts R, Chalhoub B, Kulikova O, Duc G, Journet EP, Ané JM, Lauber E, Bisseling T, Dénarié J, Rosenberg C, Debellé F (2004) A putative Ca^{2+} and calmodulin-dependent protein kinase required for bacterial and fungal symbioses. Science 303:1361–1364

Lhuissier FGP, De Ruijter NCA, Sieberer BJ, Esseling JJ, Emons AMC (2001) Time course of cell biological events evoked in legume root hairs by Rhizobium Nod factors: state of the art. Ann Bot 87:289–302

Limpens E, Franken C, Smit P, Willemse J, Bisseling T, Geurts R (2003) LysM domain receptor kinases regulating rhizobial nod factor-induced infection. Science 302:630–633

Lloyd C, Pearce K, Rawlins DJ, Ridge RW, Shaw PJ (1987) Endoplasmic microtubules connect the advancing nucleus to the tip of legume root hairs, but F-actin is involved in basipetal migration. Cell Motil Cytoskeleton 8:27–36

Lodwig EM et al (2003) Amino-acid cycling drives nitrogen fixation in the legume–Rhizobium symbiosis. Nature 422:722–726

Long SR (1989) Rhizobium-legume nodulation: life together in the underground. Cell 56:203–214

Long SR (2015) Receptive to infection. Nature 523:298–299

Lopez M, Herrera-Cervera JA, Iribarne C, Tejera NA, Lluch C (2008) Growth and nitrogen fixation in *Lotus japonicus* and *Medicago truncatula* under NaCl stress: Nodule carbon metabolism. J Plant Physiol 165(6):641–650

Lotocka B, Kopcinska J, Skalniak M (2012) Review article: the meristem in indeterminate root nodules of faboideae. Symbiosis 58:63–72

Madsen EB, Madsen LH, Radutoiu S, Olbryt M, Rakwalska M, Szczyglowski K, Sato S, Kaneko T, Tabata S, Sandal N, Stougaard J (2003) A receptor kinase gene of the LysM type is involved in legume perception of rhizobial signals. Nature 425:637–640

Marsh JF, Rakocevic A, Mitra RM, Brocard L, Sun J, Eschstruth A, Long SR, Schultze M, Ratet P, Oldroyd GE (2007) *Medicago truncatula* NIN is essential for rhizobial-independent nodule organogenesis induced by autoactive calcium/calmodulin-dependent protein kinase. Plant Physiol 144:324–335

Maunoury N, Kondorosi A, Kondorosi E, Mergaert P (2008) Cell biology of nodule infection and development. In: James EK, Sprent JI, Dilworth WE (eds) Nitrogen-fixing leguminous symbioses. Springer, The Netherlands

Mergaert P, Uchiumi T, Alunni B, Evanno G, Cheron A, Catrice O, Mausset AE, Barloy-Hubler F, Galibert F, Kondorosi A, Kondorosi E (2006) Eukaryotic control on bacterial cell cycle and differentiation in the Rhizobium-legume symbiosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103(13):5230–5235

Michiels J, Verreth C, Vanderleyden J (1994) Effects of temperature stress on bean-nodulating Rhizobium strains. Appl Environ Microbiol 60(4):1206–1212

Middleton PH, Jakab J, Penmetsa RV, Starker CG, Doll J, Kaló P, Prabhu R, Marsh JF, Mitra RM, Kereszt A, Dudas B, VandenBosch K, Long SR, Cook DR, Kiss GB, Oldroyd GE (2007) An ERF transcription factor in Medicago truncatula that is essential for nod factor signal transduction. Plant Cell 19:1221–1234

Miller DD, de Ruijter NCA, Emons AMC (1997) From signal to form: aspects of the cytoskeleton plasma membrane cell wall continuum in root hair tips. J Exp Bot 48:1881–1896

Mitra RM, Gleason CA, Edwards A, Hadfield J, Downie JA, Oldroyd GE, Long SR (2004) A Ca^{2+}/calmodulin-dependent protein kinase required for symbiotic nodule development: Gene identification by transcript-based cloning. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101:4701–4705

Munns R, Tester M (2008) Mechanisms of salinity tolerance. Ann Rev Plant Biol 59:651–681

Murray JD, Karas BJ, Sato S, Tabata S, Amyot L, Szczyglowski K (2007) A cytokinin perception mutant colonized by *Rhizobium* in the absence of nodule organogenesis. Science 315:101–104

Muthukumar T, Priyadharsini P, Uma E, Jaison S, Pandey RR (2014) Role of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi in alleviation of acidity stress on plant growth. In: Miransari M (ed) Use of microbes for the alleviation of soil stresses. Springer, New York

Nap JP, Bisseling T (1990) Developmental biology of plant-prokaryote symbiosis: the legume root nodule. Science 250:948–954

Newcomb W, Peterson RL (1979) The occurrence and ontogeny of transfer cells associated with lateral roots and root nodules in Leguminosae. Can J Bot 57:2583–2602

Oldroyd GED, Downie JA (2004) Calcium, kinases and nodulation signalling in legumes. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 5:566–576

Oldroyd GED, Long SR (2003) Identification and characterization of nodulation-signaling pathway 2, a gene of *Medicago truncatula* involved in Nod factor signaling. Plant Physiol 131:1027–1032

Orchard VA, Cook FG (1983) Relation between soil respiration and soil moisture. Soil Biol Biochem 15:447–453

Oufdou K, Benidire L, Lyubenova L, Daoui K, Fatemi ZEA, Schröder P (2014) Enzymes of the glutathione–ascorbate cycle in leaves and roots of rhizobia-inoculated faba bean plants (*Vicia faba* L.) under salinity stress. Eur J Soil Sci 60:98–103

O'Brian MR, Kirshbom PM, Maier RJ. (1987). Bacterial heme synthesis is required for expression of the leghemoglobin holoprotein but not the apoprotein in soybean root nodules. Proc Nati Acad Sci U S A 84: 8390–8393.

O'Hara GW, Howieson JG, Yates RJ, Real D, Revell C. (2008). BNF Applications for Poverty Alleviation. In: Dakora F, Chimphango SBM, Valentine AJ, Elmerich C, Newton WE (eds.) Biological Nitrogen Fixation: Towards Poverty Alleviation through Sustainable Agriculture. pp. 25–26. Springer Netherlands.

Paau AS, Cowles JR, Raveed D (1978) Development of bacteroids in alfalfa (*Medicago sativa*) nodules. Plant Physiol 62:526–530

Paau AS, Bloch CB, Brill WJ (1980) Developmental fate of *Rhizobium meliloti* bacteroids in alfalfa nodules. J Bacteriol 143:1480–1490

Pankhurst CE, Gibson AH (1973) Rhizobium strain influence on disruption of clover nodule development at high root temperature. J Gen Microbiol 74:219–231

Parsons R, Day DA (1990) Mechanism of soybean nodule adaptation to different oxygen pressure. Plant Cell Environ 13:501–512

Pena-Cabriales JJ, Castellanos JZ (1993) Effects of water stress on N_2 fixation and grain yield of *Phaseolus vulgaris* L. Plant Soil 152(1):151–155

Peoples MB, Brockwell J, Herridge DF, Rochester IJ, Alves BJR, Urquiaga S, Boddey RM, Dakora FD, Bhattarai S, Maskey SL, Sampet C, Rerkasem B, Khan DF, Hauggaard-Nielsen H, Jensen ES (2009) The contributions of nitrogen-fixing crop legumes to the productivity of agricultural systems. Symbiosis 48:1–17

Pérez J, Jiménez-Zurdo JI, Martínez-Abarca F, Millán V, Shimkets LJ, Muñoz-Dorado J (2014) Rhizobial galactoglucan determines the predatory pattern of *Myxococcus xanthus* and protects *Sinorhizobium meliloti* from predation. Environ Microbiol 16:2341–2350

Pislariu CI, Sinharoy S, Wen J, Murray JD, Ratet P, Udvardi MK (2015) Retrotransposon (Tnt1)-Insertion mutagenesis in *Medicago* as a tool for genetic dissection of symbiosis in legumes. In: de Bruijn FJ (ed) Biological nitrogen fixation. John Wiley& Sons Inc, Hoboken, NJ

Postma J, Hok-A-Hin CH, van Veen JA (1990) Role of microniches in protecting introduced *Rhizobium leguminosarum* biovar *trifolii* against competition and predation in soil. Appl Environ Microbiol 56:495–502

Pueppke SG, Broughton WJ (1999) Rhizobium sp. strain NGR234 and R. fredii USDA257 share exceptionally broad, nested host ranges. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 12(4):293–318

Radutoiu S, Madsen LH, Madsen EB, Felle HH, Umehara Y, Grønlund M, Sato S, Nakamura Y, Tabata S, Sandal N, Stougaard J (2003) Plant recognition of symbiotic bacteria requires two LysM receptor-like kinases. Nature 425:585–592

Riely BK, Lougnon G, Ane JM, Cook DR (2007) The symbiotic ion channel homolog DMI1 is localized in the nuclear membrane of *Medicago truncatula* roots. Plant J 49:208–216

Robbins NE, Trontin C, Duan L, Dinneny JR (2014) Beyond the barrier: communication in the root through the endodermis. Plant Physiol 166:551–559

Roche P, Debelle F, Maillet F, Lerouge P, Faucher C, Truchet G, Denarib J, Prome JC (1991) Molecular basis of symbiotic host specificity in *Rhizobium meliloti*: nodH and nodPQ genes encode the sulfation of lipo-oligosaccharide signals. Cell 67:1131–1143

Rønn R, Mccaig AE, Griffiths BS, Prosser JI (2002) Impact of protozoan grazing on bacterial community structure in soil microcosms. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:6094–6105

Roughley RJ (1970) The influence of root temperature, Rhizobium strain and host selection on the structure and nitrogen-fixing efficiency of the root nodules of *Trifolium subterraneum*. Ann Bot 34:631–646

Roughley RJ, Dart PJ (1970) Root temperature and root-hair infection of *Trifolium subterraneum* L. cv. Cranmore. Plant Soil 32:518–520

Rounds CM, Bezanilla M (2013) Growth Mechanisms in tip-growing plant cells. Annu Rev Plant Biol 64:243–265

Saito K, Yoshikawa M, Yano K, Miwa H, Uchida H, Asamizu E, Sato S, Tabata S, Imaizumi-Anraku H, Umehara Y, Kouchi H, Murooka Y, Szczyglowski K, Downie JA, Parniske M, Hayashi M, Kawaguchi M (2007) NUCLEOPORIN85 is required for calcium spiking, fungal and bacterial symbioses, and seed production in *Lotus japonicus*. Plant Cell 19:610–624

Schauser L, RoussisA SJ, Stougaard J (1999) A plant regulator controlling development of symbiotic root nodules. Nature 402(6758):191–195

Schmitz RA, Klopprogge K, Grabbe R (2002) Regulation of Nitrogen Fixation in Klebsiella pneumoniae and Azotobacter vinelandii: NifL, Transducing Two Environmental Signals to the nif Transcriptional Activator NifA. J Mol Microbiol Biotechnol 4(3): 235–242

Schulze J (2004) How are nitrogen fixation rates regulated in legumes? J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 167:125–137

Sharma SR, Rao NK, Gokhale TS, Ismail S (2013) Isolation and characterization of salt-tolerant rhizobia native to the desert soils of United Arab Emirates. Em J Food Agric 25(2):102–108

Sieberer BJ, Timmers ACJ, Lhuissier FGP, Emons AMC (2002) Endoplasmic microtubules configure the subapical cytoplasm and are required for fast growth of *Medicago truncatula* root hairs. Plant Physiol 130:977–988

Simões-Araújo JL, Rodrigues, RL, Liliane BDA, Mondego, JM, Alves-Ferreira M, Rumjanek, NG, Margis-Pinheiro M. 2002. Identification of differentially expressed genes by cDNA-AFLP technique during heat stress in cowpea nodules. FEBS letters 515(1):44–50

Smit P, Raedts J, Portyanko V, Debellé F, Gough C, Bisseling T, Geurts R (2005) NSP1 of the GRAS protein family is essential for rhizobial Nod factor-induced transcription. Science 308:1789–1791

Smith LG (2003) Cytoskeletal control of plant cell shape: getting the fine points. Curr Opin Plant Biol 6:63–73

Smith LT, Smith GM, D'souza MR, Pocard JA, Rudulier DL, Madkour MA (1994) Osmoregulation in *Rhizobium meliloti*: mechanism and control by other environmental signals. J Exp Zool 268(2):162–165

Streeter G (1993) Translocation−A key factor limiting the efficiency of nitrogen fixation in legume nodules. Physiol Plant 87:616–623

Subramanian S (2013) Distinct hormone regulation of determinate and indeterminate nodule development in legumes. J Plant Biochem Physiol 1(110):2

Sujkowska M, Górska-Czekaj M, Bederska M, Borucki W (2011) Vacuolar organization in the nodule parenchyma is important for the functioning of pea root nodules. Symbiosis 54:1–16

Sutton WD (1983) Nodule development and senescence. In: Broughton WJ (ed) Nitrogen Fixation, vol 3. Clarendon Press, Oxford

Talbi C, Sánchez C, Hidalgo-Garcia A, González EM, Arrese-Igor C, Girard L, Bedmar EJ, Delgado MJ (2012) Enhanced expression of *Rhizobium etli* cbb 3 oxidase improves drought tolerance of common bean symbiotic nitrogen fixation. J Exp Bot 63(14):5035–5043

Talibart R, Jebbar M, Gouesbet G, Himdi-Kabbab S, Wróblewski H, Blanco C, Bernard T (1994) Osmoregulation in rhizobia: ectoine-induced salt tolerance. J Bacteriol 176:5210–5217

Tang C, Thomson BD (1996) Effects of solution pH and bicarbonate on the growth and nodulation of a range of grain legumes. Plant Soil 186:321–330

Tate RL (1995) Soil microbiology (symbiotic nitrogen fixation). Wiley, New York

Taylor RW, Williams ML, Sistani KR (1991) Nitrogen fixation by soybean-*Bradyrhizobium* combinations under acidity, low P and high Al stresses. Plant Soil 131:293–300

Timmers AC, Auriac MC, Truchet G (1999) Refined analysis of early symbiotic steps of the *Rhizobium-Medicago* interaction in relationship with microtubular cytoskeleton rearrangements. Development 126:3617–3628

Timmers AC, Soupene E, Auriac MC, de Billy F, Vasse J, Boistard P, Truchet G (2000) Saprophytic intracellular rhizobia in alfalfa nodules. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 13(11):1204–1213

Tirichine L, Imaizumi-Anraku H, Yoshida S, Murakami Y, Madsen LH, Miwa H, Nakagawa T, Sandal N, Albrektsen AS, Kawaguchi M, Downie A, Sato S, Tabata S, Kouchi H, Parniske M, Kawasaki S, Stougaard J (2006) Deregulation of a Ca^{2+}/calmodulin-dependent kinase leads to spontaneous nodule development. Nature 441:1153–1156

Tirichine L, Sandal N, Madsen LH, Radutoiu S, Albrektsen AS, Sato S, Asamizu E, Tabata S, Stougaard J (2007) A gain-of-function mutation in a cytokinin receptor triggers spontaneous root nodule organogenesis. Science 315:104–107

Tominaga MK, Sonobe MS, Yokota E, Shimmen T (1997) Microtubules regulate the organization of actin filaments at the cortical region in root hair cells of *Hydrocharis*. Protoplasma 199:83–92

Tu JC (1981) Effect of salinity on Rhizobium-root-hair interaction, nodulation and growth of soybean. Can J Plant Sci 61(2):231–239

Udvardi M, Day D (1997) Metabolite transport across symbiotic membranes of legume nodules. Annu Rev Plant Biol 48:493–523

Vasse J, de Billy F, Camut S, Truchet G (1990) Correlation between ultrastructural differentiation of bacteroids and nitrogen fixation in alfalfa nodules. J Bacteriol 172(8):4295–4306

Vassileva V, Milanov G, Ignatov G, Nikolov B (1997) Effect of low pH on nitrogen fixation of common bean grown at various calcium and nitrate levels. J Plant Nutr 20:279–94

Wagner SC (2011) Biological nitrogen fixation. Nat Educ Knowledge 3(10):15

Wais RJ, Galera C, Oldroyd G, Catoira R, Penmetsa RV, Cook D, Gough C, Denarié J, Long SR (2000) Genetic analysis of calcium spiking responses in nodulation mutants of Medicago truncatula. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97(24):13407–13412

Waldon HB, Jenkins MB, Virginia RA, Harding EE (1989) Characteristics of woodland rhizobial populations from surface-and deep-soil environments of the Sonoran Desert. Appl Environ Microbiol 55(12):3058–3064

Walsh KB, McCully ME, Conny MJ (1989) Vascular transport and soybean nodule function: nodule xylem is a blind alley, not a throughway. Plant Cell Environ 12:395–405

Walsh KB, Atkins RS, Low CS (1992) Vascular anatomy of fabaceous nodules of determinate growth. Plant Cell Environ 15:849–854

Witty JF, Skot L, Revsbech NP (1987) Direct evidence for changes in the resistance of legume root nodules to O_2 diffusion. J Exp Bot 38:1129–1140

Wood M, Cooper JE, Holding AJ (1984). Aluminium toxicity and nodulation of Trifofium repens. Plant and Soil 78: 381–391.

Wymer CL, Bibikova TN, Gilroy S (1997) Cytoplasmic free calcium distributions during the development of root hairs of *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Plant J 12(2):427–439

Zahran HH (1991) Conditions for successful Rhizobium-legume symbiosis in saline environments. Biol Fertil Soils 12:73–80

Zahran HH (1999) *Rhizobium*-Legume symbiosis and nitrogen fixation under severe conditions and in an arid climate. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 63(4):968–989

Zahran HH, Räsänen LA, Karsisto M, Lindström K (1994) Alteration of lipopolysaccharide and protein profiles in SDS-PAGE of rhizobia by osmotic and heat stress. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 10(1):100–105

Role of Phytohormones in Stress Tolerance of Plants

Sajid Mahmood Nadeem, Maqshoof Ahmad, Zahir Ahmad Zahir, and Muhammad Ali Kharal

Abstract Environmental stresses, both biotic and abiotic, cause negative impact on plant growth and development, and plants need to adopt certain strategies for maintaining proper growth under stress conditions. These strategies include certain physiological, biochemical, and molecular mechanisms to cope with these stresses. These mechanisms include the production of hormones (phytohormones) and osmolytes. Phytohormones are organic molecules that affect various plant physiological processes like growth, development, and cell differentiation. Phytohormones regulate key physiological events under normal and stress conditions. They play a vital role for enhancing the ability of plants to adapt to the harsh environmental conditions by mediating a wide range of adaptive responses. These responses enable the plants to acclimatize to adverse soil conditions. Various types of phytohormones play an important function in plants individually or in coordination with each other. The nature and level of these hormones in plants are major factors that influence plant processes and functions. The present chapter describes the potential role of phytohormones for promoting plant growth and development under stress conditions. The major classes of plant hormones and their source of production have been described. Metabolism of phytohormones and their physiological responses with special reference to their concentration-dependent or negative impact on plant growth have been discussed in detail. The impact of these hormones on plant growth under stress conditions has been reviewed and discussed with selected examples. Also, the role of microbes in phytohormone production has been elaborated with examples. Future perspectives of the area have also been discussed.

Keywords Brassinosteroids • Gibberellins • Phytohormones • Stress tolerance

S.M. Nadeem
University of Agriculture Faisalabad, Sub Campus, Burewala-Vehari, Pakistan

M. Ahmad • M.A. Kharal
Department of Soil Science, University College of Agriculture and Environmental Sciences, The Islamia University Bahawalpur, Bahawalpur, Pakistan

Z.A. Zahir (✉)
Institute of Soil and Environmental Sciences, University of Agriculture, Faisalabad, Pakistan
e-mail: zazahir@yahoo.com

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_17

1 Introduction

Stress conditions cause significant negative effect on crop productivity by disturbing plant processes owing to their impact on hormonal and nutritional imbalances. Some of the common stresses that cause negative impact on plant growth and development include salinity, drought, heavy metals, nutrient deficiency, and pathogens. These stresses affect the plant growth in one way or another. One stress may affect more than one plant processes by causing negative impact in a number of ways. For example, salinity affects plant growth by causing ion toxicity, oxidative stress, nutritional disorders, water stress, and hormonal imbalances (Munns 2002; Zhu 2007; Ashraf 2009; Nadeem et al. 2010a). In natural soil environment, plant develops certain mechanisms to cope with biotic and abiotic stresses in harsh environment. Multiple pathways of cellular signaling are activated to any given stimuli. These signals enhance the accumulation of phytohormones. Phytohormones are signaling molecules directing physiological and developmental processes in plants. The amount of hormones varies greatly depending upon certain biotic and abiotic factors. Even very low concentration of these hormones may cause significant impact on plant growth and development.

Hormonal signaling is critical for plant defenses against environmental stresses (Taiz and Zeiger 2010). Production of phytohormones plays central role in plant stress tolerance. The five major classes of phytohormones are auxin, cytokinins, ethylene, gibberellins, and abscisic acid. In addition to these well-known plant hormones, brassinosteroids, jasmonic acid, salicylic acid, and nitric acid have also been identified as chemical messengers present in trace quantities in plants (Rao et al. 2002). These hormones move throughout the plant body via the xylem or phloem transport stream.

Among these hormones, abscisic acid (ABA) is the most studied stress-responsive hormone that is involved in number of stresses including osmotic, drought, and cold stress (Peleg and Blumwald 2011; Wasilewska et al. 2008). Auxin is involved in the regulation of plant processes like organogenesis, embryogenesis, and vascular tissue formation (Petrasek and Friml 2009). Brassinosteroids, that is a new group of plant hormones, influence plant development processes like seed germination, flowering, and senescence (Rao et al. 2002).

These biochemical substances (phytohormones) are produced by plants (Santner et al. 2009), and it is a well-documented concept that phytohormones perform many functions in plants by influencing a number of physiological and biochemical processes of plant. These hormones also play an important role in mitigating the negative impact of various environmental stresses, both biotic and abiotic, on plant growth and development. These hormones integrate biotic and abiotic stress signals. Stress environment activates phytohormone signaling pathway that plays an important role in stress adaptation. It has been reported that adverse effect of salt stress on seed germination and plant growth was due to the decline in endogenous level of phytohormones (Wang et al. 2001; Debez et al. 2001). This argument was further supported when plant growth was enhanced under stress conditions by the exogenous application of phytohormones (Khalid et al. 2006; Egamberdieva 2009).

These and a number of other studies show that although plant itself has its mechanism to produce hormones to combat stress responses (Wasternack 2007; Xoconostle-Cazares et al. 2010; Kolaksazov et al. 2013), however its application from some other sources like inoculation with hormones producing bacteria and/or application of synthetic phytohormones may be useful for alleviating stress-induced impact on plant growth and development (Khan et al. 2004; Afzal et al. 2005; Egamberdieva 2009). This review highlights the importance of phytohormones in plant stress tolerance. The sources of phytohormones, its metabolism, and physiological impact of these hormones on plant growth particularly under stress environment have been reviewed and discussed in the following sections.

2 Sources of Phytohormones

Plant hormones or phytohormones are naturally occurring organic compounds that affect various physiological processes of plant. These hormones could be either synthesized by the plant or the microorganisms.

2.1 Plant Hormones

Plants have high plasticity for adaptation to certain environmental stresses by virtue of their specific mechanisms like their ability to synthesize endogenous hormones. Hormones are involved in response to certain environmental stimuli as well as for regulating internal development processes. Among phytohormones, auxin was the first hormone about which Charles Darwin in 1880 provided clue in his book entitled *The power of movement of plants*. Later on, in 1926, Dutch botanist Frits W. Went discovered auxin. L-Tryptophan is the precursor of the auxins, and root exudates are the main source of auxins in soil (Etesami et al. 2009).

These hormones serve as endogenous messengers against biotic and abiotic stresses. Initially, five plant hormones are identified including ethylene, abscisic acid, cytokinins, gibberellins, and auxins (IAA). These hormones are considered as classical phytohormones, and higher plants can synthesize all these five major classes of phytohormones. In addition to these well-documented hormones, brassinosteroids, jasmonic acid, polyamines, strigolactones, nitric oxide, and salicylic acid are also included in the list of phytohormones (Santner et al. 2009; Chen et al. 2009a). These hormones have been identified from a variety of plants (Table 1).

The synthesis of a plant hormone is tightly regulated and subject to positive or negative feedback mechanism and often affected by other hormones and environmental factors. A number of stress phytohormones can mediate stress tolerance in plants (Wasternack 2007). For example, drought tolerance limits the loss of water through abscisic acid-mediated closure of stomata (Xoconostle-Cazares et al. 2010). Also, an increase in content of jasmonates and salicylic acid in wheat has been observed under cold stress (Kosova et al. 2012; Kolaksazov et al. 2013).

Table 1 Phytohormones production by plants

Plant	Hormone	Reference
Barley (*Hordeum vulgare* L.)	Indole-3-acetic acid	Ayvaz et al. (2012)
	Abscisic acid	Ayvaz et al. (2012)
Alpine (*Arabis alpina*)	Jasmonate	Kolaksazov et al. (2013)
Wheat (*Triticum aestivum*)	Jasmonic acid	Kosova et al. (2012)
	Ethylene	Datta et al. (1998)
	Abscisic acid	Zhao et al. (2001)
	Salicylic acid	Kosova et al. (2012)
Arabidopsis (*Arabidopsis thaliana*)	Indole-3-acetic acid	Bartling et al. (1994)
	Gibberellins	Kobayashi et al. (1994)
	Abscisic acid	Xiong et al. (2001)
	Cytokinins	Takei et al. (2001)
	Auxin	Wang et al. (2015)
Rice (*Oryza sativa*)	Gibberellins	Helliwell et al. (2001)
Maize (*Zea mays*)	Gibberellins	Spray et al. (1996)
	Abscisic acid	Tan et al. (1997)
Bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.)	Brassinosteroids	Yokota et al. (1987)
Conifer (*Cryptomeria japonica*)	Brassinosteroids	Watanabe et al. (2000)
Tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum*)	Brassinosteroids	Yokota et al. (2001)
	Ethylene	Mayak et al. (2004)
Chick pea (*Cicer arietinum*)	Ethylene	Kukreja et al. (2005)
Potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.)	Salicylic acid	Coquoz et al. (1998)

Brassinosteroids are considered as the sixth group of phytohormones that was isolated from pollen of rape plant (*Brassica napus* L.) (Rao et al. 2002) and confers resistance to biotic and abiotic stresses (Sasse 2003; Mussig 2005). Brassinosteroids are present in plants at extremely low concentration, and their level varies in plant tissues with higher concentration of brassinosteroids in young tissues compared to mature ones (Yokota and Takahashi 1986). In addition to this, occurrence of jasmonic acid and salicylic acid is also reported in plants which are involved in various developmental processes like seed germination, root growth, and senescence (Creelman and Rao 2002; Chen et al. 2009b; Wasternack and Hause 2002, 2013).

Phytohormones move throughout the plant body and are distributed within plant tissues from cell to cell via the xylem or phloem transport stream. These hormones can cause significant impact on plant physiological processes. The excess amount of hormones may be stored in plant tissues as conjugates for further use. Plant gene and phytohormones interact with each other. Some genes activate the plant hormones, whereas certain hormones activate the genes as well. Many genes are involved in hormone perception and signaling pathways that control the production and activity of hormones by expression level of relevant gene. In plants, there are hormone receptors with high affinity responding to the phytohormones. The activities of phytohormones are affected by different parameters that include the properties and affinity of the receptors as well as the cytosolic Ca^{2+} (Weyers and

Paterson 2001). Most plant cells have receptors for different hormones. These cells recognize the hormones, and when a hormone meets the right receptor, it triggers a response.

The release of hormones is a normal physiological process of a plant during its life cycle and is also mediated by environmental conditions. After the release of hormones, these may act either close to or remote from their sites of synthesis to regulate responses to environmental stimuli (Davies 2004). Plant hormones operating at low concentration are able to translocate within the body and bind to a specific receptor protein.

2.2 *Microbial Hormones*

It is well established that two types of hormones are available to plants, one is endogenous production by plants and second is exogenous production by microorganisms. Like plants, a number of microorganisms residing in the soil also produce phytohormones; however, their pathways for hormone production may be different from plants. So far, a number of bacterial and fungal strains have been evaluated for their ability to produce phytohormones, and some selected examples have been mentioned in Table 2.

Table 2 Microbial production of phytohormones

Microbe	Hormone	Reference
Bacterial phytohormones		
Stenotrophomonas maltophilia SSA	Indole-3-acetic acid, gibberellic acid, trans-zeatin riboside, and abscisic acid	Naz and Bano (2012)
Pseudomonas mendocina Khsr2, *Pseudomonas stutzeri* Khsr3, and *Pseudomonas putida* Khsr4	Indole-3-acetic acid, gibberellic acid, trans-zeatin riboside, and abscisic acid	Naz and Bano (2012)
Bradyrhizobium japonicum	Indole-3-acetic acid	Minamisawa and Fukai (1991)
Bacillus subtilis IB-22	Cytokinins	Kudoyarova et al. (2014)
Pseudomonas putida	Indole acetic acid	Gravel et al. (2007)
Azospirillum spp.	Abscisic acid, gibberellins	Cohen et al. (2009)
Rhizobium phaseoli	Gibberellins, indole-3-acetic acid	Atzorn et al. (1988)
Bradyrhizobium japonicum	Indole-3-acetic acid, gibberellic acid, abscisic acid	Boiero et al. (2007)
Pseudomonas putida	Indoleacetic acid	Patten and Glick (2002)
Rhizobium leguminosarum	Indole-3-acetic acid, ethylene	Dazzo et al. (2000)
Pseudomonas putida	Indole-3-acetic acid, ethylene	Mayak et al. (1999)
Azotobacter chroococcum	Gibberellin	Pati et al. (1995)
Azospirillum brasilense	Auxin, abscisic acid	Kolb and Martin (1985)
Bacillus pumilus, *Bacillus licheniformis*	Gibberellins	Gutierrez-Manero et al. (2001)

(continued)

Table 2 (continued)

Microbe	Hormone	Reference
Azospirillum brasilense	Indole acetic acid (IAA) and gibberellic acid	Kumaran and Elango (2013)
Pseudomonas sp.	Indole acetic acid	Malik and Sindhu (2011)
Fungal phytohormones		
Cladosporium sp.	Gibberellins	Hamayun et al. (2010a)
Penicillium citrinum	Indole acetic acid	Khan et al. (2008a, b)
Paecilomyces formosus LHL10	Gibberellins, indole acetic acid	Khan et al. (2012a, b)
Fusarium oxysporum	Gibberellin and auxin	Hasan (2002)
Phoma glomerata LWL2 and *Penicillium* sp. LWL3	Gibberellins, indole acetic acid	Waqas et al. (2012)
Aspergillus fumigatus sp. LH02	Gibberellins	Khan et al. (2011b)
Aspergillus fumigatus	Gibberellins	Hamayun et al. (2009)
Trichoderma atroviride	Indole acetic acid	Gravel et al. (2007)
Pisolithus tinctorius	Indole-3-acetic acid	Frankenberger and Poth (1987)
Cyanobacteria/algal phytohormones		
Nostoc OS-1	Indole-3-acetic acid	Hussain et al. (2015)
Nostoc PCC 73102	Indole-3-acetic acid	Sergeeva Prasanna et al. (2002)
Anabaena	Indole-3-acetic acid	Prasanna et al. (2010)
Oscillatoria annae	Indole-3-acetic acid	Varalakshmi and Malliga (2012)
Scenedesmus obliquus	Indole-3-acetic acid	Correa et al. (2011)
Haematococcus pluvialis	Abscisic acid	Kobayashi et al. (1997)
Chlorophyta (Cyanobacteria)	Cytokinins	Ordog et al. (2004)
Cyanophyta (Cyanobacteria)	Cytokinins	Stirk et al. (2002)
Dunaliella sp.	Abscisic acid	Tominaga et al. (1993)
Dunaliella salina	Abscisic acid	Cowan and Rose (1991)
Hydrodictyon reticulatum	Brassinosteroids	Yokota et al. (1987)

Among this microbial population, beneficial bacteria commonly known as plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) are the major contributor of phytohormones. These PGPR promote the plant growth and development by the production of phytohormones and act as biostimulators (Glick et al. 1998; Jimenez-Delgadillo 2004). A number of workers have reported the production of phytohormones by a significant population of bacteria (Arshad and Frankenberger 1998; Rao et al. 2002; Baca and Elmerich 2003; Khalid et al. 2006; Egamberdieva 2009). The type and amount of hormones produced by microorganisms are variable depending upon microbial community as well as suitable substrate or precursor available to the microorganisms. For example, Khalid et al. (2004) reported that among 30 bacterial isolates, 22 were able to use precursor of indole-3-acetic acid (IAA). They further reported that in the presence of IAA precursor, i.e., L-tryptophan, the bacterial efficiency

to synthesize IAA enhanced manyfold. Likewise, mevalonic acid is the substrate for the microbial synthesis of gibberellins and abscisic acid; however, formation of different intermediate compounds during the growth phase of a microorganism determines what will be the final compound, i.e., a gibberellin or an abscisic acid. It is worth noting that the presence of a precursor in the environment can stimulate/enhance the synthesis of phytohormones and it may or may not be the basic requirement for microbial synthesis of hormones. A PGPR strain can also produce a phytohormone in the absence of a substrate in the soil environment as it has been observed in the case of IAA production by certain bacteria without precursor (Khalid et al. 2006).

Free-living bacteria and bacteria living in association with plants produce phytohormones. For example, free-living *Azospirillum brasilense* and symbiotic *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* have been reported to produce indole-3-acetic acid, gibberellic acid, and zeatin (Cassan et al. 2009). Similarly, an endophytic bacterium *Sphingomonas paucimobilis* ZJSH1 has also been found to produce indole acetic acid, salicylic acid, abscisic acid, and zeatin (Yang et al. 2014).

Apart from bacterial population, a number of fungi present in soil environment are also able to produce growth hormones. Akhtar et al. (2005) reported that 78, 83, 89, and 72 % fungal strains isolated from wheat, maize, potato, and tomato rhizosphere, respectively, were able to produce ethylene in the presence of L-methionine. Reports about phytohormone production by endophytic fungi are also available (Khan et al. 2008a, b; Hamayun et al. 2010a). Khan et al. (2011a) reported gibberellin production by endophytic *Aspergillus fumigatus* sp. LH02. Brassinosteroids have also been identified in unicellular green algae *Chlorella vulgaris* (Bajguz 2009; Stirk et al. 2013). Kim et al. (2005) reported more than 50 naturally occurring brassinosteroids from the entire plant kingdom.

3 Metabolism of Phytohormones

In an earlier study, Bont et al. (1979) observed that ethylene metabolism in *Mycobacterium* involves the epoxidation of the double bond by a mono-oxygenase. Wiegant and DE Bont (1980) found a new route for the degradation of ethylene glycol via acetaldehyde and acetate. They found that ethylene glycol was not an intermediate in ethylene metabolism.

It has been observed that in addition to synthesize IAA, some strains of *B. japonicum* are also able to catabolize IAA. Jensen et al. (1995) studied the catabolism of indole-3-acetic acid and 4- and 5-chloro-indole acetic acid by two strains of *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* (strains 61A24 and 110). They observed that both strains metabolized IAA with different efficacies and IAA was metabolized via dioxindole-3-acetic acid, dioxindole, isatin, and 2-aminophenyl glyoxylic acid (isatinic acid) to anthranilic acid. They reported that degradation of 4-Cl-IAA apparently stopped at the 4-Cl-dioxindole. The metabolism of IAA by peroxidases has been reported by oxidizing IAA via two different mechanisms: one is conventional mechanism that requires H_2O_2 (Schulz et al. 1984) and the other one is not dependent on H_2O_2 and requires O_2 instead of H_2O_2 (Savitsky et al. 1999).

Cytokinins are present in plants both as free base and the corresponding nucleosides and nucleotides. In earlier studies, first of all, Paces et al. (1971) demonstrated the oxidative cleavage of cytokinins in a crude tobacco culture. Later on Whitty and Hall (1974) named this cleavage as enzyme cytokinin oxidase. Mok et al. (2000) reviewed the synthesis and metabolism of cytokinin and reported that a number of enzymes were involved in cytokinin metabolism and these enzymes were not cytokinin specific. Cytokinin dehydrogenase is the enzyme that catalyzes irreversible inactivation of cytokinins. For years, it was assumed that molecular oxygen was essential for the activity of cytokinin dehydrogenase; however, the work of Galuszka et al. (2001) and Frebortova et al. (2004) showed that other electron acceptors, especially quinone types such as 2,3-dimethoxy-5-methyl-1,4-benzoquinone, also functioned efficiently other than oxygen. In addition to many plant species, the activity of this enzyme has also been reported in few lower organisms like moss, slime mold, and yeast (Gerhauser and Bopp 1990; Armstrong and Firtel 1989; Van Kast and Laten 1987).

4 Physiological Effects of Phytohormones

Phytohormones are naturally occurring substances that are produced by the plant and play a very important role in certain physiological processes of plant. These are released by the plant during its life cycle in normal conditions and also in response to some environmental stimuli. These signal molecules are present in trace quantities and are actively involved in many biochemical processes (Ogweno et al. 2010). Among these hormones, ethylene, jasmonic acid, and salicylic acid play a role in biotic stress tolerance, and abscisic acid plays a role in regulating the abiotic stress tolerance (Ton et al. 2009; Bailey et al. 2009; Kavroulakis et al. 2007; Hadi and Balali 2010). However, some of these phytohormones are also equally effective for promoting biotic and abiotic stress tolerance in plants like jasmonates and salicylic acid (Hadi and Balali 2010; Hara et al. 2012; Khan and Khan 2013; Kazan 2015).

These hormones affect almost all the processes of plant life cycle and also play a critical role in plant defense system against environmental stresses both biotic and abiotic (Taiz and Zeiger 2010; Williams 2010). The effectiveness of the hormone depends upon its suitable concentration, its production at the right place and time, as well as its interaction with specific receptor. Depending upon their nature and concentration, they may cause positive and negative impacts on plant growth and development. They exert their influence on target cells where they bind transmembrane receptors, and depending upon the context, they are subject to positive or negative feedback control. Some of the major positive and negative impacts of these hormones on plant growth are discussed in the following sections.

4.1 Positive Effects

The role of phytohormones for accelerating plant growth and development is well documented. Hormones affect almost all physiological processes of plant. These hormones also enhance the plant resistance against unfavorable conditions and protect the plant from negative impact of a number of biotic and abiotic stresses. Among these hormones, ABA serves as an endogenous messenger in biotic and abiotic stress responses of plants (Adie et al. 2007; Ton et al. 2009). Gibberellic acids have been shown to have an effect on reactive oxygen and antioxidant activities (Tian et al. 2011; Wang et al. 2012).

Schumacher and Chory (2000) reviewed the role of brassinosteroids and reported that these hormones were required for a wide range of plant developmental processes including shoot and root elongation, seed development and germination, and development of vascular tissue. Gibberellic acids are also involved in stem and leaf elongation, flower induction, trichome, anther, seed germination, and fruit and seed development (Pharis and King 1985; Singh et al. 2002). Jasmonic acid (JA) induces resistance to a broad range of herbivores and is known to reduce the growth and survivorship of many insects. Fan et al. (2014) reported the role of JA to enclose the invading nematodes at the initial site of infection and then inhibit nematode multiplication and spread. The application of cytokinins also proved useful for regulating the plant response to environmental stress (Ha et al. 2012).

Auxin is a well-known group of phytohormones that plays a significant role in the initiation of primary root growth and promotion of root hair and lateral root formation (Takahashi 2013). The involvement of auxin in plant-microbe signaling is also known (Berg 2009). Recently, Kovaleva et al. (2015) observed that the addition of IAA to the nutrient medium increased the content of actin cytoskeleton (F-actin) in the apical and subapical zones of pollen tubes that might be responsible for the stimulation of pollen growth. This argument is supported by further observations such as the decrease in the content of endogenous IAA, inhibited germination, and/or blocked male gametophyte polar growth. It is also evident from the work of Tian et al. (2008) who observed that root inhibition due to high nitrate concentration was closely related to the reduction of IAA level in roots.

This positive impact of auxin is not only observed due to naturally occurring auxin compounds but also with the application of synthetic ones. It was observed from the work of Bajguz and Piotrowska-Niczyporuk (2014) that the application of natural as well as synthetic auxins caused significant impact on the growth, metabolite content, and antioxidant response of green alga (*Chlorella vulgaris*).

These phytohormones work individually and in coordination with each other and cause impact on plant physiological processes. An increase in ABA level has been observed in green algae when exposed to heat stress in the presence of brassinosteroids (Bajguz 2009). The synergistic role of ABA in regulating plant growth and development with brassinosteroids, gibberellic acid, and auxin has also been reported by workers (Zhang et al. 2009; Achard et al. 2006). Similarly, physiological activity of brassinosteroids is largely consistent with physiological influences

exerted by auxins. Stimulation of cell proliferation and endogenous accumulation of proteins, chlorophylls, and monosaccharides has been in algal cell by this synergistic interaction (Bajguz and Piotrowska-Niczyporuk 2013). Although the basic mechanisms of these interactions are not much clear however, it has been reported that these interactions are possibly mediated through various metabolic pathways (Kudryakova et al. 2013; Bajguz and Piotrowska-Niczyporuk 2014). Along with auxins and gibberellins, brassinosteroids promote cotton fiber initiation and elongation in the cultured ovule system (Sun et al. 2005; Shi et al. 2006).

These hormones in addition to controlling intrinsic growth also mediate adaptation of plant development to changing environmental conditions (Tuteja and Sopory 2008; Wolters and Jurgens 2009). Javid et al. (2011) reviewed the role of phytohormones in alleviating salt stress in crop plants. They concluded that the concentration of auxin, cytokinins, gibberellins, and salicylic acid decreased in the plant tissues under salinity stress, while an increase was observed in abscisic acid and jasmonate level. They demonstrated that changes in hormonal level is the cause of growth reduction under salinity stress and this negative impact can be diluted by the application of plant growth regulators. Cabello-Conejo et al. (2014) evaluated the phytoextraction capacity and growth of four Ni hyperaccumulating species (*Alyssum malacitanum*, *Alyssum corsicum*, *Alyssum murale*, and *Noccaea goesingense*) in the presence of four phytohormones (B, C, K, and P) based on gibberellins, cytokinins, and auxins. They observed that plant species were varied regarding biomass production and depend on the type of PGR and its rate of application. A significant increase in plant biomass and Ni accumulation was observed with the application of phytohormones, and most effective results were obtained in case of Ni accumulation with auxin-based product.

4.2 Negative Effects

Phytohormones cause positive effects on a number of plant processes; however, certain negative impacts on plant growth have also been observed due to these hormones. As discussed in previous sections, the effects on plant growth by phytohormones may be variable which depends upon their concentration, environmental factors, and physiological status/process of the plant. A phytohormone enhances plant growth up to a particular concentration, and growth inhibition may occur if concentration increases from that particular level. For example, ethylene that plays significant role in a number of plant processes also causes negative impact on plant growth and development due to its elevated level particularly under stress environment (Nadeem et al. 2010a). At low concentration, promotion of root growth while at high concentration inhibition of root elongation has been observed (Mattoo and Suttle 1991; Belimov et al. 2002). Ethylene plays an important role in legume-rhizobia association and causes significant impact on rhizobial infection in legumes (Penmetsa and Cook 1997). Inhibition of nodulation with ethylene has been observed whether it was applied directly as a gas or in the form of its precursor like

ACC (Yuhashi et al. 2000). This argument is further supported when nodulation was restored after treating with ethylene inhibitor (Guinel and Sloetjes 2000). Ethylene also affects the plant growth negatively by causing certain disorder or many other disorders such as leaf abscission, senescence, epinasty, and chlorophyll destruction (Shibli et al. 2007; Nadeem et al. 2010b). In addition to ethylene, indole acetic acid and abscisic acid are also known to modulate abscission (Suttle and Hultstrand 1993; Sexton and Roberts 1982).

Kukavica et al. (2007) observed that IAA inhibited the root elongation of hydroponically grown pea plants. IAA induced the disappearance of peroxidase isoforms and hydroxyl radical formation in the root and the root cell wall. Malik and Sindhu (2011) while studying the impact of co-inoculation of indole acetic acid producing *Pseudomonas* sp. with *Mesorhizobium* on chickpea (*Cicer arietinum*) growth and nodulation observed that exogenous seed treatment with higher concentration of IAA (10.0 μM) inhibited the growth of seedlings.

Similar response was also observed in the case of other hormones. For example, the phytotoxicity caused by some bacteria and fungi was due to the suppression of root growth by secretion of IAA at high concentration (Barazani and Friedman 1999a; Ditengou and Lapeyrie 2000). ABA positively affected the leaf size and bud dormancy and negatively influenced the size of guard cells and internode length (LeNoble et al. 2004). Severe inhibition of pollen germination and pollen tube growth was observed due to the application of gibberellins to grape flowers before or during anthesis (Kimura et al. 1996).

The phytohormones interact with each other, and this interaction may be a negative one, as observed in the case of jasmonic acid and gibberellins (Heinrich et al. 2013) where a high level of jasmonic acid antagonizes the biosynthesis of gibberellins. This decrease in gibberellins results in the inhibition of stem elongation of *Nicotiana attenuata*. They reported that this inhibition of gibberellins was due to high level of jasmonic acid.

5 Environmental Stresses and Plant Growth

The growth and productivity of plants are affected by various biotic and abiotic stresses. The plant growth is affected by osmotic stress, ionic toxicity, nutrient, and hormonal imbalances (Ashraf 2004; Munns et al. 2006; Ashraf and Foolad 2007). The important environmental stresses that effect plant growth and development include drought, salinity, high temperatures, freezing, flooding, and mechanical impedance.

Among environmental stresses, soil salinity is one of common problems of various arid and semiarid regions. Salinity causes an adverse effect on soil by degrading its quality, reducing the area of crop cultivation, and minimizing the crop yield (Sadiq et al. 2002). In arid and semiarid regions, 50 % reduction in the yield of major crops has been observed owing to salinity (Munns 2005; Keshtehgar et al. 2013). Growth inhibition is one of the primary impacts of salinity on plants that

might be due to its negative impact on photosynthesis as well as cellular disruption and oxidative disintegration under saline environment (Zhu 2007). Almost all morphological and physiological processes of plants are affected by salinity. In salty conditions, among various ions that cause a negative impact on plant growth, the effect of sodium is more pronounced that interferes the potassium uptake (Zhu 2007) that results in potassium deficiency in plant (Nawaz and Ashraf 2010). This increased Na/K ratio causes certain cellular and nutritional imbalances in plants like reduction in soluble sugars and essential nutrients (Ibrahim et al. 2006). Lowering of membrane stability of vital cell organelles was also observed due to high Na/K ratio (Gadallah 1999; Heuer 2003). In addition to Na^+, higher chloride (Cl^-) concentrations also disturb the plant metabolic activities by affecting the activities of certain enzymes. For example, plant losses its ability to maintain their osmotic pressure due to high chloride ion in the cytoplasm (Misra and Saxena 2009). In saline environment, inhibition of RNA and DNA synthesis has been observed due to reduced production of certain amino acids and respective nitrogenous bases required for this purpose (Chen et al. 2003; Song et al. 2006).

For plants, water availability is considered as a major dictating factor for their production. Under salinity stress, due to the increase in soil osmotic potential, soil water becomes unavailable to plants and extraction of water from soil becomes difficult (Nawaz et al. 2010) that result in the disturbance of certain cellular and metabolic activities of plants that leads to improper plant growth and development (Munns 2005). Under water-deficit conditions, plant growth is adversely affected due to alteration in many key physiological processes related to growth and reproduction (Manivannan et al. 2008). Plants respond promptly to water stress, and the consequences of even a short-term drought at any growth stage cause negative impact on plant's whole life cycle. Drought affects almost every morphological, physiological, and biochemical aspect of plant and poses severe limitations for crop production (Aroca 2012). The literature revealed that drought mainly affects key processes regarding cell division, water relations, nutrient uptake, nutrient assimilation, energy transfer, carbon fixation, and photosynthesis (Yamance et al. 2003; Gomes et al. 2010; Taiz and Zeiger 2010; Asrar and Elhindi 2011). The reduction in water contents of cytoplasm restricts the cell division, elongation, and differentiation primarily due to decrease in turgor pressure, metabolic activity, and inhibition of energy transfer (Taiz and Zeiger 2010). The inhibition of cell multiplication adversely affects the vegetative and reproductive growth due to lower biomass accumulation leading to stunted root and shoot growth, poor flowering, and fruit development (Asrar and Elhindi 2011). Under water-deficit conditions, plants show limited nutrient uptake and become nutrient deficient. Several reports indicate that under water shortage, plants show significant reduction in all macro- and micronutrients in roots and shoots, especially nitrogen, potassium, and phosphorus (McWilliams 2003; Subramanian et al. 2006; Asrar and Elhindi 2011).

Temperature affects every physical, chemical, and biological process in living cells. A slight increase or decrease in temperature can cause irreversible damage to crop plants. High temperature is the most extreme form of temperature stress which

is challenging the plant's survival in extreme climatic conditions. Plants under high temperature stress show a variety of responses at cellular and molecular level. High temperature adversely affects the growth, phenology, biochemistry, physiology, and anatomy of plant (Wahid et al. 2012).

Like other stresses, the effect of high temperature on plant growth can be observed at any stage from germination to seed production. Ren et al. (2009) reported that high temperature inhibits the germination due to alteration in expression of protein profiles. At germination, plants are more sensitive to temperature change that severely inhibits the seedling emergence and its development (Egli et al. 2005). Specific enzymes involved in germination are denatured by high temperature that inhibits the growth of germinating embryos (Wahid et al. 2012). Photosynthesis is also affected by heat stress as high temperature destroys the mesophyll cell followed by deshaping and swallowing of chloroplasts, stroma, and lamella, severely affecting the activity of photosystem II (Carpentier 1999).

The chilling injury refers to the extreme low temperature but slightly above freezing point, while freezing injuries occur when freezing temperature prevails and solutions in plants start freezing followed by crystallization resulting in complete ceasing of biochemical machinery and rupture of membrane structures (Sokolnik 2012). The disturbance in biochemical mechanisms also results in the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) that induces oxidative stress, as low temperature hinders the functioning of oxido-reductive enzymes, e.g., catalase inhibition leads to higher accumulation of H_2O_2 and free radicals (Los and Murata 2004; Sun et al. 2010).

At present, due to the rapidly increasing industrialization and urbanization, environmental pollution is becoming a serious issue. The most toxic pollutants that prevail in the environment are heavy metals that are toxic to every living, and reports showed that almost every ecosystem has been contaminated with these pollutants (Wei and Yang 2010; Azizullah et al. 2011). The release of heavy metals in soil and water is becoming a serious limitation for crop production not only in area surrounding the industrial locations, but heavy metal stress is also becoming a serious issue even in remote areas as the injudicious and blind use of chemicals for crop production severely contaminated the soils with heavy metals (Hjortenkrans et al. 2006; Nada et al. 2007). These heavy metals pose cytotoxic, genotoxic, and mutagenic effects on plants. Most of heavy metals are actively uptaken by plants and transferred into food chain resulting in serious health issues in animals and humans as well (Flora et al. 2008).

The above discussion showed that plants faces a number of stresses in soil environment. All these stresses affect the plant growth and development by causing negative impact on various plant physiological processes. These stresses also interact with each other, and the intensity of their impact may be increased. The intensity of these stresses may vary with plant species as well as growth stage. One stress may be more detrimental at particular growth stage, and control of this negative effect at that stage could be beneficial for proper plant growth and development.

6 Mitigation of Stress-Induced Impacts on Plant Growth Through Phytohormones

The use of plant growth regulators is an effective approach to promote plant growth and development. Owing to their growth promotion abilities, phytohormones are being used effectively for enhancing crop production under normal as well as stress conditions. There are certain reports which show their effectiveness in agricultural production (Saeedipour 2013; Bano and Yasmeen 2010; Kovaleva et al. 2015; Afzal et al. 2005).

6.1 Mechanism of Action

A variety of mechanisms are adopted by plants to cope with stress conditions. Among these, one of the effective and comprehensive mechanisms includes the biosynthesis of plant growth regulators or phytohormones. Production of these organic metabolites is a primary tool for plants to mediate a wide range of adaptive response systems (Santner et al. 2009) and be involved in regulating various plant processes under normal as well as adverse soil conditions necessary for normal plant growth and development (Kaya et al. 2009).

The phytohormones cause impact on all phases of the plant throughout its life cycle. Movement of phytohormones throughout the body takes place via the xylem or phloem transport stream. In order to exert their response, phytohormones bind transmembrane receptors or endoplasmic reticulum. Hormonal concentrations and tissue sensitivity regulate the physiological process that causes profound effects on plant growth (Taiz and Zeiger 2010). In response to stress conditions, plants tend to accumulate high concentrations of phytohormones like auxins and IAA (Javid et al. 2011; Wang et al. 2001). This high concentration of hormones might be helpful for mitigating the negative impact of stress. For example, under low soil water potential, auxins accumulation in plant roots takes place which are transported to leaves. At the surface of cell membrane of stomatal cells, these auxins bind to receptors that result in enhanced stomatal conductance (Babu et al. 2012). It is reported that IAA has influence on oxidative phosphorylation in respiration and enhances oxygen uptake. It has been assumed that growth enhancement by IAA might be due to increased energy supply.

Gibberellin biosynthesis is also greatly influenced by developmental and environmental stimuli that disturb the level of hormone in the plant (Yamaguchi and Kamiya 2000; Olszewski et al. 2002). A decrease in endogenous level of gibberellic acid (GA) and reduced crop yield have been observed under salinity stress (Xie et al. 2003; Hamayun et al. 2010b). It might be due to decrease GA biosynthesis in plant and due to the activity of oxidases that cause distraction of hormones in plant. Similarly, there are many reports which show that in order to get immunity against stresses, plants accumulate significant amount of cytokinins in their body. Regulation of carbon and nitrogen assimilation with the accumulation of cytokinin that

enhanced drought tolerance in rice has been reported by Reguera et al. (2013). Rivero et al. (2007) also reported tobacco tolerance against drought through accumulation of cytokinins. It has been hypothesized that cytokinins enhance wheat salt tolerance through interacting with other plant hormones by regulation and detoxification of toxic ions and reactive oxygen species. Abscisic acid and cytokinins interact antagonistically causing opposite effects on various plant developmental processes including stomatal conductance, seed germination, and cotyledon expansion (Blackman and Davies 1984; Thomas 1992). It is also reported that high CK accumulating in plants show improved nutrient efficiency during nutrient deficiency (Rubio-Wilhelmia et al. 2011). It has been observed that cytokinins influence the nitrogen metabolism (Sakakibara et al. 2006) by enhancing nitrate reductase activity in plants (Sykorova et al. 2008).

6.2 Phytohormones and Plant Stress Tolerance

Endogenous and exogenous applications of phytohormones play a significant role in enhancing plant ability to maintain their growth under stress conditions. In addition to endogenous plant hormones, exogenous application of phytohormones also plays an important role in improving plant tolerance against adverse conditions (Table 3). A number of reports are available that are demonstrating the positive effects of endogenous and exogenous application of phytohormones on plant growth and development (Fan et al. 2014; Afzal et al. 2005; Fassler et al. 2010; Kumar et al. 2014; Shaddad et al. 2013).

Auxins are well-known phytohormone that play an important role in plant tolerance against various environmental stresses like salinity, waterlogging, and soil acidity (Salama and Awadalla 1987; Ribaut and Pilet 1991; Gadallah 1994, 1995). In many plants and under certain environmental conditions, endogenous phytohormone production may be lower which is not sufficient to mitigate the negative impact of stress environment (Wyn Jones and Storey 1981; Yancey 1994; Subbarao et al. 2001). Exogenous application of phytohormones under such conditions may be helpful in reducing adverse effects of stress (Makela et al. 1998a, b; Yang and Lu 2005). For example, exogenous application of auxins caused significant increase in crop yield by reducing the adverse effect of water stress (Abdoli et al. 2013a, b). Similar response was also observed in the case of heavy metal stress where the application of IAA minimizes the negative impact of heavy metal toxicity on plant growth by regulating metal accumulation and decreasing oxidative damage (Gangwar and Singh 2011; Gangwar et al. 2014). It is achieved by enhancing the activity of antioxidant enzymes as reported by Kumar et al. (2012a, b). They demonstrated that regulation of heavy metal uptake by auxin application was due to enhancement in enzymatic and nonenzymatic antioxidant activity. In water-deficit environment, the closing of stomata reduces the CO_2 fixation that disturbs the photosynthetic activity of the plants (Chatrath et al. 2000); however, reverse has been observed by application of IAA under such condition (Khalid et al. 2013).

Table 3 Effect of phytohormones on plant growth

Crop	Hormone	Response	Reference
Tomato (*Lycopersicum esculentum*)	Jasmonic acid	Proved as a useful disease control agent by inhibiting the multiplication of nematode and enclosing the invading nematodes at the initial site of infection	Fan et al. (2014)
	Salicylic acid	Decreased disease symptoms and 73 % reduction in the infection symptoms on the potato tubers were observed. With increase in concentration from 0.2 to 2 mM, the number of potato tubers was enhanced	Hadi and Balali (2010)
Petunia (*Petunia hybrida* L.).	Auxin and cytokinin	Stimulation of polar growth due to the intensification of the cytoplasm flow. Auxin and cytokinin regulate the pollen tube polar growth via their effects on actin polymerization and spatial organization	Kovaleva et al. (2015)
Black gram (*Phaseolus mungo* L.)	Indole acetic acid	Reduction in protein content and nitrate reductase activity were observed that was alleviated by IAA application and crop yield improved	Guru Devi et al. (2012)
Maize (*Zea mays*)	Cytokinins	Enhanced germination and pollen tube growth of maize (Zea mays L.) under sodium chloride salinity	Dhingra and Varghese (1985)
	GA3 and IAA	Seed priming with phytohormones enhanced germination and radicle and plumule length. 8 h was more effective than 16 h in all aspects	Saeedipour (2013)
	GA3 and IAA	EDTA significantly reduced the plant growth and dry biomass, while application of phytohormones improved it. Combined application of EDTA, GA3, and IAA was more effective, and significant increase in Pb uptake and its translocation into shoot were observed	Hadi et al. (2010)
	Indole-3-acetic acid, gibberellic acid, and *trans*-zeatin	Significant improvement in growth and their P status. GA3 and *t*-Z promoted shoot/root growth and morphological changes. IAA affected the chemical composition of the rhizosphere	Wittenmayer et al. (2008)
	Auxins	Diluted the impact of cold stress by reducing the morphological and physiological changes in cold-stressed plants	Battal et al. (2008)

Pepper (*Capsicum annuum*)	Indole-3-acetic acid	An increase in spermine and a decrease in putrescine in leaves of pepper were observed with IAA application	San-Francisco et al. (2005)
Sunflower (*Helianthus annuus*)	Indole-3-acetic acid	Significant increase in Zn uptake and alleviation of toxic effects of Pb and Zn on plant root and shoot growth. Enhanced phytoextraction potential of treated plants	Fassler et al. (2010)
	Cytokinins	Enhanced phytoextraction by improving biomass production that might be due to stimulation of cell division and shoot initiation	Tassi et al. (2008)
Hyperaccumulating species (*Alyssum corsicum*, *Alyssum malacitanum*, *Alyssum murale*, and *Noccaea goesingense*)	Gibberellins, cytokinins, and auxins	Enhanced Ni extraction efficiency and improved growth and biomass production of tested species	Cabello-Conejo et al. (2014)
Coriander (*Coriandrum sativum* L.)	GA3 and 2,4-D	Improved growth parameters and decreased proline contents were observed with increasing concentration of applied hormones	Kumar et al. (2014)
Wheat (*Triticum aestivum*)	Abscisic acid and benzyladenine	Decrease in IAA and GA and increase in proline and ABA under water stress. Application of said hormones played a role in osmoregulation by the production of proline. ABA was more effective at the later stages while benzyladenine at early stages	Bano and Yasmeen (2010)
	Gibberellins	Seed soaking with gibberellins enhanced the seedling vigor under salinity stress	Afzal et al. (2005)
	Gibberellic acid	Improved Ca^{2+} and K^{+} uptake and enhanced growth and yield parameters of wheat	Iqbal and Ashraf (2013)
	Jasmonic acid	Enhanced activities of antioxidant enzymes and the concentration of antioxidative compounds to reduce the excessive reactive oxygen species	Qiu et al. (2014)
	Auxins	Grain yield improved under drought stress by the application of auxins	Abdoli et al. (2013a, b)
	Auxins	Improvement in plant antioxidant defense system occurred that reduced the negative impact of heavy metal stress	Kumar et al. (2012a)
	Gibberellins	Enhanced root and shoot dry matter. Chlorophyll and carotenoid contents improved	Turkyilmaz (2012)

(continued)

Table 3 (continued)

Crop	Hormone	Response	Reference
Rice (*Oryza sativa*)	Auxin	Application of IAA precursor L-TRP improved the growth and yield. Enhanced the uptake and translocation of cadmium	Farooq et al. (2015)
	Auxins	Enhanced carbohydrate accumulation in grains	Javid et al. (2011)
Roselle (*Hibiscus sabdariffa*)	Gibberellic acid	Improved photosynthetic pigments, growth, and osmotic relations under salinity stress	Ali et al. (2012)
Strawberry (*Fragaria ananassa*)	Gibberellins	Application of phytohormone improved the fruit quality	Qureshi et al. (2013)
Groundnut (*Arachis hypogaea*)	Gibberellins	Positively increased growth and yield parameters	Khan et al. (2011a, b)

Gibberellins play an important role in plant growth and development owing to their impact on seed germination, root/shoot elongation, as well as flowering and fruit patterning (Fleet and Sun 2005; Shani et al. 2013). Gibberellins are significantly focused phytohormones by researchers to be used as stress protectant (Basalah and Mohammad 1999; Hisamatsu et al. 2000). An enhancement of wheat growth has been observed under saline condition by the application of gibberellins (Parasher and Varma 1988). According to the findings of Maggio et al. (2010), exogenous application of gibberellic acid under stress conditions reduces the stomatal resistance and increases water use efficiency. Afroz et al. (2005) reported the improvement in photosynthetic efficiency and nitrogen metabolism of salt stress mustard plant due to the application of gibberellins. Yield enhancement due to seed priming with gibberellin is attributed to the regulation of ion uptake and their partitioning (Kumar and Singh 1996; Iqbal and Ashraf 2010). Kaya et al. (2006) demonstrated that maize drought tolerance can also be improved by the application of gibberellic acid. According to their findings, it was due to enhancing chlorophyll and leaf water content as well as maintaining membrane permeability and nutrient concentrations in plant body. This can also be obtained by enhancing the activity of antioxidant enzymes against reactive oxygen species (Falkowaska et al. 2010). Plants under high temperature stress show increased acidulation of extracellular solution and decreased proteolysis level that can be regulated by the application of gibberellins (Aleksandrova et al. 2007).

The fundamental role of cytokinins is considered to maintain the indeterminate property of shoot apical meristems (Davies 2004; Hopkins and Huner 2008). Cytokinins also regulate the assimilate partitioning, sink strength, and source/sink relationships (Kuiper 1993; Ronzhina and Mokronosov 1994; Roitsch 1999). Like other phytohormones, cytokinins also affect the plant responses to environmental stresses, and this effect may be a direct and indirect one (Wilkinson et al. 2012). For example, under drought stress, the decrease in cellular contents of cytokinin results in an increase of abscisic acid (Davies and Zhang 1991) which caused the closing of stomata resulting to low photosynthetic activity of the plant (Rivero et al. 2010). In certain cases, stress-induced cytokinin synthesis like in tobacco (Rivero et al. 2009), cotton (Kuppu et al. 2013), and peanut (Qin et al. 2011) protects the plants from adverse effects of different stresses that cause negative impact on plant physiology (Reguera et al. 2013). Barciszewski et al. (2000) also reported the plant tolerance against salinity and drought due to accumulation of cytokinins. Other workers also reported the role of exogenous application of cytokinins in plant stress tolerance (Wang et al. 2001; Gupta et al. 2003; Yang et al. 2003) which is considered as an economical and easy strategy for inducing stress tolerance in many crops (Torres-Garcia et al. 2009). For example, seed priming with cytokinin is reported to increase germination and seedling survival under salt stress (Iqbal et al. 2006). Improvement of wheat seedlings and potato plants with cytokinin application under salt stress has been observed (Naqvi et al. 1982; Abdullah and Ahmad 1990). Cytokinins also act as protectant agent against plant pathogens as reported by Ketabchi and Shahrtash (2011). where the application of cytokinin significantly reduces the negative impact of *Fusarium moniliforme* on maize seedlings.

Plants synthesize different phytohormones under stress conditions depending upon the strength of their defense mechanism. The exogenous application of different phytohormones has been proven as an effective method to cope with stressful environments. It is concluded that the exogenous application of phytohormones to stress-sensitive plants can induce stress tolerance in plants.

7 Enhancing Plant Stress Tolerance Through Phytohormone-Producing Microbes

As described earlier, plant growth regulators (PGRs) or phytohormones are organic compounds and produced by plants in very minute quantities and translocated to different tissues. These PGRs play a primary role in the coordination of physiological processes related to growth, reproduction, and stress management. In rhizosphere, a number of microbes also synthesize these hormones as signaling agents for phytostimulation (Egamberdiyeva 2005). For example, auxins are important group of phytohormones, which are synthesized by soil microbes in abundance. Under stress conditions, inoculation of PGR-synthesizing microbes enhances the stress tolerance of plants. Use of PGR-synthesizing microbes as biofertilizers has been proven as a highly effective technique for enhancing crop production under normal as well as stress conditions (Ahemad and Kibret 2014). A number of microbial strains produce a variety of phytohormones including IAA, gibberellic acid, proline, and zeatin (cytokinins). All these hormones play a pivotal role in the enhancement of plant growth and productivity not only under normal conditions but also under stress conditions especially salinity, drought, temperature, and oxidative and photogenic stresses (Cassan et al. 2009). The role of PGPR for promoting plant growth owing to their ability to produce phytohormones has been reviewed in Table 4.

Literature indicates that PGR-synthesizing rhizobacteria greatly help in protecting plants under stressful conditions (Khalid et al. 2006; Egamberdiyeva 2005; Nadeem et al. 2010b). A number of bacterial strains are capable of synthesizing different phytohormones (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009). Commercially available PGRs are also being used exogenously to induce different plant responses and enhance plant growth under stress conditions. But, these artificially synthesized PGRs are not only very expensive but are also less efficient than PGRs from microbes (Khalid et al. 2006). Under stress, the use of PGR-producing microbes as biofertilizer is reported to improve plant growth and production by the ameliorating action of phytohormones, secreted by rhizospheric microbes, that helps plant to regulate their osmotic potential, hormonal balance, and level of toxic ions in cytoplasm.

Leinhos and Bergmann (1995) reported that phytohormone-producing microbes enhance plant growth and induce drought tolerance in plants by producing IAA that is taken up by plants and performs a significant role in alleviation of adverse effects of drought on plants. San-Francisco et al. (2005) also reported in pepper plants that inoculation of auxin-producing microbes enhanced the growth and physiology of pepper plants growing under nutrient stress conditions. The induction of stress tolerance was attributed to the production of free polyamines and enhanced levels of

Table 4 Effect of phytohormone-producing microbes on plant growth

Crop	Microbe	Response	Reference
Maize (*Zea mays*)	*Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*	Significant improvement in growth occurred. Root and shoot proline content enhanced under normal and salinity stress	Naz and Bano (2012)
	Azospirillum lipoferum	ABA and GA inhibitors negatively affected the growth of plants; however, inoculation with phytohormone-producing bacteria completely reversed this effect. The relative water contents of inhibitor-treated plants and drought-stressed plants were significantly lower, and this effect was completely neutralized by inoculation	Cohen et al. (2009)
Rice (*Oryza sativa*) and wheat (*Triticum aestivum*)	*Nostoc*OS-1	Efficiently colonized the roots of both crops and improved growth	Hussain and Iqbal (2015)
Wheat (*Triticum aestivum*)	*Pseudomonas aurantiaca*, *Pseudomonas extremorientalis* TSAU6, and *Pseudomonas extremorientalis* TSAU20	Significantly increased root growth. Response was more significant under salinity stress	Egamberdieva (2009)
	Bacillus subtilis IB-22, *B. subtilis* IB-21	*B. subtilis* IB-22 increased amino acid rhizodeposition, while *B. subtilis* IB-21 did not significantly affect amino acid concentrations and failed to accumulate cytokinins in culture media	Kudoyarova et al. (2014)
	Rhizobium spp.	Through production of IAA, *Rhizobium* inoculation enhanced water and micronutrients by improving root growth. Overall plant growth was improved	Etesami et al. (2009)
Soybean (*Glycine max* L.)	*Penicillium funiculosum*	Significant enhancement in soybean growth parameters. Less endogenous abscisic acid and elevated jasmonic acid contents in treated plants under salt stress	Khan et al. (2011a)
	Aspergillus fumigatus sp. LH02	Significant improvement in growth parameters including shoot length and shoot fresh and dry biomass under salt stress. Chlorophyll contents and photosynthetic rate also enhanced	Khan et al. (2011b)
Corn (*Zea mays* L.) and soybean (*Glycine max* L.)	*Azospirillum brasilense* Az39, *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* E109	Inoculation with PGPR singly or in combination promoted seed germination, nodule formation, and early development of corn and soybean seedlings	Cassan et al. (2009)

(continued)

Table 4 (continued)

Crop	Microbe	Response	Reference
Fodder (*Galega orientalis* Lam.)	*Rhizobium galegae*, *Pseudomonas* sp.	Application of IAA producing *Pseudomonas* with IAA absent *R. galegae* enhances rhizobia-legume interactions acting as "rhizobium helper bacteria"	Egamberdieva et al. (2010)
Indian mustard (*Brassica juncea*)	*Pseudomonas* sp. and *Bacillus megaterium*	Enhanced plant growth and protected the plant from Ni toxicity. Nonsignificant effect on Ni extraction, however, produced significant biomass	Rajkumar and Freitas (2008)
Cucumber (*Cucumis sativus*)	*Paecilomyces formosus* LHL10	Significantly enhanced cucumber growth parameters. Dilute the negative impact of salinity by accumulating proline and antioxidants and maintaining plant water potential	Khan et al. (2012a, b)
	Burkholderia sp.	Significantly enhanced cucumber growth parameters. Soluble sugar and crude protein contents were significantly higher in inoculated plants	Kang et al. (2010)
	Phoma glomerata LWL2 and *Penicillium* sp. LWL3	Under stress, growth was affected that was regulated by endophytes inoculation through altering abscisic acid, jasmonic acid, and salicylic contents	Waqas et al. (2012)
Tomato (*Lycopersicum esculentum*)	*P. putida* and *T. atroviride*	Inoculation caused significant improvement in the fresh weight of both root and shoot in the presence of L-tryptophan	Gravel et al. (2007)
Chickpea (*Cicer arietinum*)	*Pseudomonas* sp., *Mesorhizobium* sp.	Co-inoculation significantly increased nodule number and nodule biomass. The response was more significant in case of co-inoculation compared to *Mesorhizobium*-inoculated plants alone	Malik and Sindhu (2011)

spermine and decreased levels of putrescine that efficiently regulated the mineral uptake in plants and reduced the stress intensity. Similarly, Wilmowicz et al. (2008) reported that several microbes were capable of producing abscisic acid, which is a vital phytohormone. The inoculation of such microbes to plants resulted in significant improvement in reproductive growth including flowering and fruiting (Zhang et al. 2006). Under stress conditions, microbial-derived phytohormones also help plants to withstand stress-induced oxidative destruction through maintaining the equilibrium between antioxidants and ROS (Arbona et al. 2005).

Under high nitrate supply plant shows reduced root growth due to nitrate stress. However, the introduction of IAA producing microbial inoculants increases the concentration of endogenous IAA which improves root growth under nitrate stress (Forde 2002; Tian et al. 2008). Liu et al. (2007) reported that the uptake of bacterial synthesized phytohormones increased the heavy metals chelation which reduced the severity of heavy metal stress on plants. Ahmad et al. (2014) reported the inoculation with auxin-producing halo-tolerant PGPR. Ahmad et al. (2013) improved the productivity of mung bean grown under salinity stress.

Some soil microbes synthesize phytohormones from their precursors and release the soil solutions that are taken up by plants. The abundant availability of these precursors enhances the ability of plants to produce larger concentrations of phytohormones. Zahir et al. (2010) reported that the inoculation of auxin-producing rhizobacteria and application of L-tryptophan (a precursor of auxin) alone and in combination enhanced the endogenous auxins and significantly improved yield of maize. The combined application was more effective for promoting plant growth and yield. Similar results were obtained by Arkhipchenko et al. (2005) as growth and biomass production were significantly improved in legume fodder when applied with L-tryptophan-synthesizing microbes under drought conditions. L-tryptophan results in higher production of auxins in plant's body resulting in improved water relations and vascular conductance (Barazani and Friedman 1999b; Taiz and Zeiger 2000).

Under stress conditions, the production of ethylene is a fundamental phenomenon that obstructs major plant physiological processes. Ethylene is a growth regulator, and higher production of this restricts plant growth and induces early senescence (Nadeem et al. 2010a). On the other hand, soil microbes having 1-aminocycloprop ane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase restrict the activity of ethylene, produced under stress conditions. Several microbes have the ability to biosynthesize ACC-deaminase and help the plants in maintaining adequate levels of ethylene (Glick et al. 2007; Nadeem et al. 2007; Ahmad et al. 2011). Cheng et al. (2007) reported that the application of soil microbes having the ability to produce ACC deaminase was found to enhance plant growth under low temperature and salinity stress.

It may be concluded that phytohormones are unique substances involved in plant growth and stress regulation. However, the biosynthesis of these substances varies from species to species as not all the plants can produce ample concentrations of these hormones under stress conditions. In this case, soil microorganisms take part in plant stress tolerance mechanisms and provide them with already synthesized phytohormones which are highly effective for plant growth promotion under stress conditions so that plants can grow and produce better even under hostile conditions without any laborious input.

8 Conclusions and Future Prospects

The above discussed review shows the importance of plant growth regulators in plant growth promotion. In soil environment, plant faces various biotic and abiotic stresses that affect a number of plant physiological processes. To cope with these stresses, plant develops certain strategies, and the production of hormones is one of them. These phytohormones play an important role in plant growth and development by accelerating plant processes. Not only the endogenous plant hormone but its exogenous application and microbial synthesized phytohormones are equally effective for promoting plant growth. It is also evident from the above discussed review that these phytohormones also interact with each other and this interaction may be positive or negative. Most of the negative responses by phytohormones are due to high concentration that directly affects the particular plant process or antagonizes the production of other hormones that results in impaired plant growth. This elevated level of growth hormone might be due to the result of some environmental stimuli or overproduction of a particular hormone by inoculated strains.

The work of a number of researchers discussed here shows that concentration of a hormone, its use for particular purpose, as well as application of phytohormone-producing strain are some of the major factors that should be kept in mind for improving plant growth and development under normal and stress conditions. In order to clear our understanding about these aspects, there is a huge gap that should be filled by conducting research on gross root level. Research should be focused on rate and timing of phytohormone application, their stability, as well as their bioavailability in soil environment. The selection and evaluation of potential strains that have the ability to produce phytohormones need further research so that a suitable strain for a particular purpose can be used effectively.

By using biotechnological and molecular approaches, efforts could also be focused in developing genetically engineered plants that have the ability to synthesize particular hormones which enable them to withstand and maintain their growth in adverse soil conditions. These transgenic plants would be able to grow under various conditions with minimal yield losses.

References

Abdoli M, Saeidi M, Azhand M, Honarmand SJ, Esfandiari E, Shekari F (2013a) The effects of different levels of salinity and indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) on early growth and germination of wheat seedling. J Stress Physiol Biochem 9:329–338

Abdoli M, Saeidi M, Jalali-Honarmand S, Azhand M (2013b) The effect of foliar application of indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) and roles of ear photosynthesis on grain yield production of two wheat cultivars (*Triticum aestivum* L.) under post anthesis water deficit. Int J Sci Basic Appl Res 4:1406–1413

Abdullah Z, Ahmad R (1990) Effect of pre- and post-kinetin treatments on salt tolerance of different potato cultivars growing on saline soils. J Agron Crop Sci 165:94–102

Achard P, Cheng H, De Grauwe L, Decat J, Schoutteten H, Moritz T, Van Der Straeten D, Peng J, Harberd NP (2006) Integration of plant responses to environmentally activated phytohormonal signals. Science 311:91–94

Adie BA, Perez-Perez J, Perez-Perez MM, Godoy M, Sánchez-Serrano J-J, Schmelz EA, Solano R (2007) ABA is an essential signal for plant resistance to pathogens affecting JA biosynthesis and the activation of defenses in Arabidopsis. Plant Cell 19:1665–1681

Afroz S, Mohammad F, Hayat S, Siddiqui MH (2005) Exogenous application of gibberellic acid counteracts the ill effect of sodium chloride in mustard. Turk J Bot 29:233–236

Afzal I, Basra S, Iqbal A (2005) The effect of seed soaking with plant growth regulators on seedling vigor of wheat under salinity stress. J Stress Physiol Biochem 1:6–14

Ahemad M, Kibret M (2014) Mechanisms and applications of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria: current perspective. J King Saud Univ Sci 26:1–20

Ahmad M, Zahir ZA, Asghar HN, Asghar M (2011) Inducing salt tolerance in mung bean through co-inoculation with *Rhizobium* and PGPR containing ACC deaminase. Can J Microbiol 57:578–589

Ahmad M, Zahir ZA, Khalid M, Nazli F, Arshad M (2013) Efficacy of *Rhizobium* and *Pseudomonas* strains to improve physiology, ionic balance and quality of mung bean under salt affected conditions on farmers fields. Plant Physiol Biochem 63:170–176

Ahmad M, Zahir ZA, Jamil M, Nazli F, Latif M, Akhtar MF (2014) Integrated use of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria biogas slurry and chemical nitrogen for sustainable production of maize under salt affected conditions. Pak J Bot 46:375–382

Akhtar M, Arshad M, Khalid A, Mahmood MH (2005) Substrate-dependent biosynthesis of ethylene by rhizosphere soil fungi and its influence on etiolated pea seedlings. Pedobiologia 49:211–219

Aleksandrova IF, Lebedeva AS, Petrunina NA (2007) Modulating influence of gibberellic acid in hyperthermia in wheat grains. 2nd International symposium on plant growth substances: intracellular hormonal signaling and applying in agriculture, 8–12 October, 2007, Kyiv, Ukraine

Ali HM, Siddiqui MH, Basalah MO, Al-Whaibi MH, Sakran A, Al-Amri A (2012) Effects of gibberellic acid on growth and photosynthetic pigments of *Hibiscus sabdariffa* L. under salt stress. Afr J Biotechnol 11:800–804

Arbona V, Marco AJ, Iglesias DJ, Lopez-Climent MF, Talon M, Gomez-Cadenas A (2005) Carbohydrate depletion in roots and leaves of salt-stressed potted *Citrus clementina* L. Plant Growth Regul 46:153–160

Arkhipchenko IA, Salkinoja-Salonen MS, Karyakina JN, Tsitko I (2005) Study of three fertilizers produced from farm waste. Appl Soil Ecol 30:126–132

Armstrong DJ, Firtel RA (1989) Cytokinin oxidase activity in the cellular slime mold *Dictyostelium discoideum*. Dev Biol 136:491–499

Aroca R (2012) Plant responses to drought stress from morphological to molecular features. Springer, Berlin

Arshad M, Frankenberger WT (1998) Plant growth-regulating substances in the rhizosphere: microbial production and functions. Adv Agron 62:46–152

Ashraf M (2004) Some important physiological selection criteria for salt tolerance in plants. Flora 199:361–376

Ashraf M (2009) Biotechnological approach of improving plant salt tolerance using antioxidants as markers. Biotechnol Adv 27:84–93

Ashraf M, Foolad MR (2007) Roles of glycine betaine and proline in improving plant abiotic stress resistance. Environ Exp Bot 59:206–216

Asrar AWA, Elhindi KM (2011) Alleviation of drought stress of marigold (*Tagetes erecta*) plants by using arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. J Biol Sci 18:93–98

Atzorn R, Crozier A, Wheeler CT, Sandberg G (1988) Production of gibberellins and indole-3-acetic acid by *Rhizobium phaseoli* in relation to nodulation of *Phaseolus* vulgaris roots. Planta 175:532–538

Ayvaz M, Koyuncu M, Guven A, Fagerstedt KV (2012) Does boron affect hormone levels of barley cultivars? Eurasian J Biosci 6:113–120

Azizullah A, Khattak MNK, Richter P, Hader D (2011) Water pollution in Pakistan and its impact on public health a review. Environ Int 37:479–497

Babu MA, Singh D, Gothandam KM (2012) The effect of salinity on growth, hormones and mineral elements in leaf and fruit of tomato cultivar PKM1. J Anim Plant Sci 22:159–164

Baca BE, Elmerich C (2003) Microbial production of plant hormones. In: Elmerich C, Newton WE (eds) Associative and endophytic nitrogen-fixing bacteria and cyanobacterial associations. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Netherlands

Bailey TA, Xiangjun Z, Jianping C, Yinong Y (2009) Role of ethylene, abscisic acid and MAP kinase pathways in rice blast resistance. In: Yang Y (ed) Advances genetics genomics control rice blast disease. Springer, Berlin, pp 185–190

Bajguz A (2009) Isolation and characterization of brassinosteroids from algal cultures of *Chlorella vulgaris* Beijerinck (Trebouxiophyceae). J Plant Physiol 166:1946–1949

Bajguz A, Piotrowska-Niczyporuk A (2013) Synergistic effect of auxins and brassinosteroids on the growth and regulation of metabolite content in the green alga *Chlorella vulgaris* (Trebouxiophyceae). Plant Physiol Biochem 71:290–297

Bajguz A, Piotrowska-Niczyporuk A (2014) Interactive effect of brassinosteroids and cytokinins on growth, chlorophyll, monosaccharide and protein content in the green alga *Chlorella vulgaris* (Trebouxiophyceae). Plant Physiol Biochem 80:176–183

Bano A, Yasmeen S (2010) Role of phytohormones under induced drought stress in wheat. Pak J Bot 42:2579–2587

Barazani O, Friedman J (1999a) Is IAA the major root growth factor secreted from plant-growth-mediating bacteria. J Chem Ecol 25:2397–2406

Barazani OZ, Friedman J (1999b) Allelopathic bacteria and their impact on higher plants. Crit Rev Plant Sci 18:741–755

Barciszewski J, Siboska G, Rattan SIS, Clark BFC (2000) Occurrence, biosynthesis and properties of kinetin (N6-furfuryladenine). Plant Growth Regul 32:257–265

Bartling D, Seedorf M, Schmidt RC, Weiler EM (1994) Molecular characterization of two cloned nitrilases from *Arabidopsis thaliana*, key enzymes in biosynthesis of the plant hormone indole-3-acetic acid. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 91:6021–6025

Basalah MO, Mohammad S (1999) Effect of salinity and plant growth regulators on seed germination of Medicago sativa. Pak J Biol Sci 3:651–653

Battal P, Erez ME, Turker M, Berber I (2008) Molecular and physiological changes in Maize (*Zea mays*) induced by exogenous NAA ABA and MeJa during cold stress. Ann Bot Fenn 45:173–185

Belimov AA, Safranova VI, Mimura T (2002) Response of spring rape (*Brassica napus*) to inoculation with PGPR containing ACC-deaminase depends on nutrient status of plant. Can J Microbiol 48:189–199

Berg G (2009) Plant–microbe interactions promoting plant growth and health: perspectives for controlled use of microorganisms in agriculture. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 84:11–18

Blackman PG, Davies WJ (1984) Modification of the CO_2 responses of maize stomata by abscisic acid and by naturally occurring and synthetic cytokinins. J Exp Bot 35:174–179

Boiero L, Perrig D, Masciarelli O, Penna C, Cassán F, Luna V (2007) Phytohormone production by three strains of *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* and possible physiological and technological implications. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 74:874–880

Bont JD, Attwood M, Primrose S, Harder W (1979) Epoxidation of short chain alkenes in *Mycobacterium* E20: the involvement of a specific mono-oxygenase. FEMS Microbiol Lett 6:183–188

Cabello-Conejo M, Prieto-Fernández A, Kidd P (2014) Exogenous treatments with phytohormones can improve growth and nickel yield of hyper accumulating plants. Sci Total Environ 494:1–8

Carpentier R (1999) The effect of high temperature stress on photosynthetic apparatus. In: Pessarakli M (ed) Handbook of plant and crop stress. Marcel Dekker, New York, pp 337–348

Cassan F, Perrig D, Sgroy V, Masciarelli O, Penna C, Luna V (2009) *Azospirillum brasilense* Az39 and *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* E109, inoculated singly or in combination, promote seed

germination and early seedling growth in corn (*Zea mays* L.) and soybean (*Glycine max* L.). Eur J Soil Biol 45:28–35
Chatrath A, Mandal PK, Anuradha M (2000) Effect of secondary salinity on photosynthesis in fodders oat genotypes. J Agron Crop Sci 184:13–16
Chen GP, Ma WS, Huang ZJ, Xu T, Xue YB, Shen YZ (2003) Isolation and characterization of TaGSK1 involved in wheat salt tolerance. Plant Sci 165:1369–1375
Chen C, Zou J, Zhang S, Zaitlin D, Zhu L (2009a) Strigolactones are a new-defined class of plant hormones which inhibit shoot branching and mediate the interaction of plant-AM fungi and plant-parasitic weeds. Sci China Series C Life Sci 52:693–700
Chen Z, Zheng Z, Huang J, Lai Z, Fan B (2009b) Biosynthesis of salicylic acid in plants. Plant Signal Behav 4:493–496
Cheng Z, Park E, Glick BR (2007) 1-Aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase from *Pseudomonas putida* UW4 facilitates the growth of canola in the presence of salt. Can J Microbiol 53:912–918
Cohen AC, Travaglia CN, Bottini R, Piccoli PN (2009) Participation of abscisic acid and gibberellins produced by endophytic *Azospirillum* in the alleviation of drought effects in maize. Botany 87:455–462
Coquoz JL, Buchala A, Metraux J-P (1998) The biosynthesis of salicylic acid in potato plants. Plant Physiol 117:1095–1101
Correa REP, Castro NMC, Jaramillo AMM, Gonzalez-Marino GE (2011) Production of indole-3-acetic acid in the culture medium of Microalga *Scenedesmus obliquus* (UTEX 393). J Braz Chem Soc 22:2355–2361
Cowan AK, Rose PD (1991) Abscisic acid metabolism in salt-stressed cells of *Dunaliella salina*. Plant Physiol 97:798–803
Creelman RA, Rao MV (2002) The oxylipin pathway in Arabidopsis. In: Somervile CR, Meyerowitz EM (eds) The *Arabidopsis* book. American Society of Plant Biologists, Rockville, MD
Datta KS, Varma SK, Angrish R, Kumar B, Kumari P (1998) Alleviation of salt stress by plant growth regulators in *Triticum aestivum* L. Biol Plant 40:269–275
Davies PJ (2004) Plant hormones: biosynthesis, signal transduction, action. Kluwer Academic Press, Dordrecht
Davies WJ, Zhang J (1991) Root signals and the regulation of growth and development of plants in drying soil. Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol 42:55–76
Dazzo FB, Yanni YG, Rizk R, De Bruijn F, Rademaker J, Squartini A, Corich V, Mateos P, Martinez-Molina E, Velazquez E, Biswas J, Hernandez R, Ladha JK, Hill J, Weinman J, Rolfe B, Vega-Hernandez M, Bradford JJ, Hollingsworth RI, Ostrom P, Marshall E, Jain T, Orgambide G, Philip-Hollingsworth S, Triplett E, Malik K, Maya-Flores J, Hartmann A, Umali-Garcia M, Izaguirre-Mayoral ML (2000) Progress in multi-national collaborative studies on the beneficial association between *Rhizobium leguminosarum* bv. trifolii and rice. In: Ladha JK, Reddy PM (eds) The quest for nitrogen fixation in rice. International Rice Research Institute, Manila, The Philippines, pp 167–189
Debez A, Chaibi W, Bouzid S (2001) Effect du NaCl et de regulatoeurs de croissance sur la germination d' *Atriplex halimus* L. Cah Agric 10:135–138
Dhingra BR, Varghese TM (1985) Effect of growth regulators on the in vitro germination and tube growth of maize (*Zea Mays* L.) pollen from plants raised under sodium chloride salinity. New Phytol 100:563–569
Ditengou FA, Lapeyrie F (2000) Hypaphorine from the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Pisolithus tinctorius* counteracts activities of indole-3-acetic acid and ethylene but not synthetic auxins in *Eucalyptus* seedlings. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 13:151–158
Egamberdieva D (2009) Alleviation of salt stress by plant growth regulators and IAA producing bacteria in wheat. Acta Physiol Plant 31:861–864
Egamberdieva D, Berg G, Lindstrom K, Rasanen L (2010) Co-inoculation of *Pseudomonas* spp. with *Rhizobium* improves growth and symbiotic performance of fodder galega (*Galega orientalis* Lam.). Eur J Soil Biol 46:269–272

Egamberdiyeva D (2005) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria isolated from a calcisol in semi-arid region of Uzbekistan biochemical characterization and effectiveness. J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 168:94–99

Egli DB, TeKrony DM, Heitholt JJ, Rupe J (2005) Air temperature during seed filling and soybean seed germination and vigor. Crop Sci 45:1329–1335

Etesami H, Alikhani HA, Akbari AA (2009) Evaluation of plant growth hormones production (IAA) ability by Iranian soils rhizobial strains and effects of superior strains application on wheat growth indexes. World Appl Sci J 6:1576–1584

Falkowaska M, Pietryczuk A, Piotrowska A, Bajguz A, Grygoruk A, Czerpak R (2010) The effect of GA_3 on growth metal biosorption and metabolism of green algae *Chlorella vulgaris* Beijerinck exposed to cadmium and lead stress. Pol J Environ Stud 20:52–59

Fan Y, Zhu M, Shabala S, Li CD, Johnson P, Zhou MX (2014) Antioxidant activity in salt-stressed barley leaves evaluating time- and age-dependence and suitability for the use as a biochemical marker in breeding programs. J Agron Crop Sci 200:261–272

Farooq H, Asghar HN, Muhammad YK, Saleem M, Zahir ZA (2015) Auxin-mediated growth of rice in cadmium-contaminated soil. Turk J Agric For. doi:10.3906/tar-1405-54

Fassler E, Evangelou MW, Robinson BH, Schulin R (2010) Effects of indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) on sunflower growth and heavy metal uptake in combination with ethylene diamine disuccinic acid (EDDS). Chemosphere 80:901–907

Fleet CM, Sun TP (2005) A delicate balance the role of gibberellin in plant morphogenesis. Curr Opin Plant Biol 8:77–85

Flora SJS, Mittal M, Mehta A (2008) Heavy metal induced oxidative stress and its possible reversal by chelation therapy. Indian J Med Res 128:501–523

Forde BG (2002) Local and long-range signaling pathways regulating plant responses to nitrate. Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol 53:203–224

Frankenberger WT Jr, Poth M (1987) Biosynthesis of indole-3-acetic acid by the pine ectomycorrhizal fungus *Pisolithus tinctorius*. Appl Environ Microbiol 53:2908–2913

Frebortova J, Fraajie MW, Galuszka P, Sebela M, Pec P, Hrbac J, Novak O, Bilyeu KD, English JT, Frebort I (2004) Catalytic reaction of cytokinin dehydrogenase: preference for quinones as electron acceptors. Biochem J 380:121–130

Gadallah MAA (1994) The combined effects of acidification stress and kinetin on chlorophyll content, dry matter accumulation and transpiration coefficient in *Sorghum bicolor* plants. Biol Plan 36:149–153

Gadallah MAA (1995) Effect of waterlogging and kinetin on the stability of leaf membranes leaf osmotic potential soluble carbon and nitrogen compounds and chlorophyll contents of *Ricinus* plant. Phyton 35:199–208

Gadallah MAA (1999) Effects of proline and glycinebetaine on *Vicia faba* responses to salt stress. Biol Plant 42:249–257

Galuszka P, Frebort I, Sebela M, Sauer P, Jacobsen S, Pec P (2001) Cytokinin oxidase or dehydrogenase? Mechanism of cytokinin degradation in cereals. Eur J Biochem 268:450–461

Gangwar S, Singh VP (2011) Indole acetic acid differently changes growth and nitrogen metabolism in *Pisum sativum* L. seedlings under chromium (VI) phytotoxicity: implication of oxidative stress. Sci Hortic 129:321–328

Gangwar S, Singh VP, Tripathi DK, Chauhan DK, Prasad SM, Maurya JN (2014) Plant responses to metal stress the emerging role of plant growth hormones in toxicity alleviation. In: Ahmad P (ed) Emerging technologies and management of crop stress tolerance. Elsevier Inc., Amsterdam, pp 215–248

Gerhauser D, Bopp M (1990) Cytokinin oxidases in mosses. 2. Metabolism of kinetin and benzyladenine in vivo. J Plant Physiol 135:714–718

Glick BR, Penrose DM, Li JP (1998) A model for the lowering of plant ethylene concentrations by plant growth-promoting bacteria. J Theor Biol 190:63–68

Glick BR, Todorovic B, Czarny J, Cheng Z, Duan J, McConkey B (2007) Promotion of plant growth by bacterial ACC deaminase. Crit Rev Plant Sci 26:227–242

Gomes FP, Oliva MA, Mielke MS, Almeida A-AF, Aquino LA (2010) Osmotic adjustment proline accumulation and cell membrane stability in leaves of *Cocos nucifera* submitted to drought stress. Sci Hortic 126:379–384

Gravel V, Antoun H, Tweddell RJ (2007) Growth stimulation and fruit yield improvement of greenhouse tomato plants by inoculation with *Pseudomonas putida* or *Trichoderma atroviride*: possible role of indole acetic acid (IAA). Soil Biol Biochem 39:1968–1977

Guinel FC, Sloetjes LL (2000) Ethylene is involved in the nodulation phenotype of *Pisum sativum* R50 (sym 16), a pleiotropicmutant that nodulates poorly and has pale green leaves. J Exp Bot 51:885–894

Gupta NK, Gupta S, Shukla DS, Deshmukh PS (2003) Differential response of BA injection on yield and specific grain weight in wheat genotypes recommenced for normal and late sown conditions. Plant Growth Regul 40:201–205

Guru Devi R, Pandiyarajan V, Gurusaravanan P (2012) Alleviating effect of IAA on salt stressed *Phaseolus mungo* (L.) with reference to growth and biochemical characteristics. Recent Res Sci Technol 4:22–24

Gutiérrez-Mañero FJ, Ramos-Solano B, Probanza A, Mehouachi J, Tadeo FR, Talon M (2001) The plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria *Bacillus pumilus* and *Bacillus licheniformis* produce high amounts of physiologically active gibberellins. Physiol Plant 111:206–211

Ha S, Vankova R, Yamaguchi-Shinozaki K, Shinozaki K, Tran L-SP (2012) Cytokinins: metabolism and function in plant adaptation to environmental stresses. Trends Plant Sci 17:172–179

Hadi MR, Balali GR (2010) The effect of salicylic acid on the reduction of *Rizoctonia solani* damage in the tubers of *Marfona Potato* Cultivar. Am Eurasian J Agric Environ Sci 7:492–496

Hadi F, Bano A, Fuller MP (2010) The improved phytoextraction of lead (Pb) and the growth of maize (Zeamays L.): the role of plant growth regulators (GA3 and IAA) and EDTA alone and in combinations. Chemosphere 80:457–462

Hamayun M, Khan SA, Khan MA, Khan AL, Kang S-M, Kim S-K, Joo G-J, Lee I-J (2009) Gibberellin production by pure cultures of a new strain of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 25:1785–1792

Hamayun M, Khan SA, Khan AL, Rehman G, Kim Y-H, Iqbal I, Hussain J, Sohn E-Y, Lee I-J (2010a) Gibberellin production and plant growth promotion from pure cultures of Cladosporium sp. MH-6 isolated from cucumber (*Cucumis sativus* L.). Mycologia 102:989–995

Hamayun M, Khan SA, Khan AL, Shin JH, Ahmad B, Shin DH, Lee IJ (2010b) Exogenous gibberellic acid reprograms soybean to higher growth and salt stress tolerance. J Agric Food Chem 58:7226–7232

Hara M, Furukawa J, Sato A, Mizoguchi T, Miura K (2012) Abiotic stress and role of salicylic acid in plants. In: Ahmad P, Prasad MNV (eds) Abiotic stress responses in plants: metabolism, productivity and sustainability. Springer, Berlin, pp 235–251

Hasan H (2002) Gibberellin and auxin production by plant root-fungi and their biosynthesis under salinity-calcium interaction. Rostl Vyroba 48:101–106

Heinrich M, Hettenhausen C, Lange T, Wunsche H, Fang J, Baldwin IT, Wu J (2013) High levels of jasmonic acid antagonize the biosynthesis of gibberellins and inhibit the growth of *Nicotiana attenuata* stems. Plant J 73:591–606

Helliwell CA, Chandler PM, Poole A, Dennis ES, Peacock WJ (2001) The CYP88A cytochrome P450, ent-kaurenoic acid oxidase, catalyzes three steps of the gibberellin biosynthesis pathway. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98:2065–2070

Heuer B (2003) Influence of exogenous application of proline and glycinebetaine on growth of salt-stressed tomato plants. Plant Sci 165:693–699

Hisamatsu T, Koshioka M, Kubota S, Fujime Y, King RW, Mander LN (2000) The role of gibberellin in the control of growth and flowering in *Matthiola incana*. Physiol Planta 109:97–105

Hjortenkrans D, Bergbäck B, Häggerud A (2006) New metal emission patterns in road traffic environments. Environ Monit Assess 117:85–98

Hopkins WG, Huner NPA (2008) Introduction to plant physiology, 4th edn. John Wiley and Sons, New York

Hussain A, Iqbal A (2015) Effect of IAA on in vitro growth and colonization of Nostoc on plant roots. Front Plant Sci 6:46

Hussain A, Shah ST, Rahman H, Irshad M, Iqbal A (2015) Effect of IAA on in vitro growth and colonization of Nostoc in plant roots. Front Plant Sci 6:1–9

Ibrahim M, Anjum A, Khaliq N, Iqbal M, Athar H (2006) Four foliar applications of glycinebetaine did not alleviate adverse effects of salt stress on growth of sunflower. Pak J Bot 38:1561–1570

Iqbal M, Ashraf M (2013) Gibberellic acid mediated induction of salt tolerance in wheat plants growth ionic partitioning photosynthesis yield and hormonal homeostasis. Environ Exp Bot 86:76–85

Iqbal M, Ashraf M, Jamil A (2006) Seed enhancement with cytokinins changes in growth and grain yield in salt stressed wheat plants. Plant Growth Regul 50:29–39

Javid MG, Sorooshzadeh A, Moradi F, Sanavy SAMM, Allahdadi I (2011) The role of phytohormones in alleviating salt stress in crop plants. Aust J Crop Sci 5:726–734

Jensen JB, Egsgaard H, Van Onckelen H, Jochimsen BU (1995) Catabolism of indole-3-acetic acid and 4-and 5-chloroindole-3-acetic acid in *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*. J Bacteriol 177:5762–5766

Jimenez-Delgadillo MR (2004) Peptidos Secretados por Bacillus subtilis que Codifican la Arquitectura de la Raiz de Arabidopsis thaliana. PhD Dissertation. CINVESTAV, Unidad Irapuato, MX

Kang S-M, Hamayun M, Joo G-J, Khan AL, Kim Y-H, Kim S-K, Jeong H-J, Lee I-J (2010) Effect of *Burkholderia* sp. KCTC 11096BP on some physiochemical attributes of cucumber. Eur J Soil Biol 46:264–268

Kavroulakis N, Ntougias S, Zervakis GI, Ehaliotis C, Haralampidis K, Papadopoulou KK (2007) Role of ethylene in the protection of tomato plants against soil-borne fungal pathogens conferred by an endophytic *Fusarium solani* strain. J Exp Bot 58:3853–3864

Kaya MD, Okçu G, Atak M, Cikili Y, Kolsarici O (2006) Seed treatments to overcome salt and drought stress during germination in sunflower (*Helianthus annuus* L.). Eur J Agron 24:291–295

Kaya C, Tuna AL, Yokas I (2009) The role of plant hormones in plants under salinity stress. Book Salinity Water Stress 44:45–50

Kazan K (2015) Diverse roles of jasmonates and ethylene in abiotic stress tolerance. Trends Plant Sci 20:219–229

Keshtehgar A, Khashayar R, Vazirimehr MR (2013) Effects of salt stress in crop plants. Int J Agric Crop Sci 5:2863–2867

Ketabchi S, Shahrtash M (2011) Effects of methyl jasmonate and cytokinin on biochemical responses of maize seedlings infected by *Fusarium moniliforme*. Asian J Exp Biol Sci 2:299–305

Khalid A, Arshad M, Zahir ZA. (2004). Screening plant growth promoting rhizobacteria for improving growth and yield of wheat. J App Microbiol 96:473-480

Khalid A, Arshad M, Arshad Zahir ZA (2006) Phytohormones: microbial production and applications. In: Uphoff N, Ball AS, Fernandes E, Herren H, Husson O, Laing M, Palm C, Pretty J, Sanchez P, Sanginga N, Thies J (eds) Biological approaches to sustainable soil systems. CRS Press, Boca Raton, pp 207–220

Khalid S, Parvaiz M, Nawaz K, Hussain K, Arshad A, Shawakat S, Sarfaraz ZN, Waheed T (2013) Effect of indole acetic acid (IAA) on morphological biochemical and chemical attributes of two varieties of maize (*Zea mays* L.) under salt stress. World Appl Sci J 26:1150–1159

Khan MIR, Khan NA (2013) Salicylic acid and jasmonates: approaches in abiotic stress tolerance. J Plant Biochem Physiol 1(4)

Khan MA, Gul B, Weber DJ (2004) Action of plant growth regulators and salinity on seed germination of *Ceratoides lanata*. Can J Bot 82:37–42

Khan SA, Hamayun M, Yoon H, Kim H-Y, Suh S-J, Hwang S-K, Kim J-M, Lee I-J, Choo Y-S, Yoon U-H (2008a) Plant growth promotion and *Penicillium citrinum*. BMC Microbiol 8:231–237

Khan SA, Hamayun M, Yoon H, Kim H-Y, Suh S-J, Hwang S-K, Kim J-M, Lee I-J, Choo Y-S, Yoon U-H (2008b) Plant growth promotion and *Penicillium citrinum*. BMC Microbiol 8:1–10

Khan AL, Hamayun M, Kim Y-H, Kang S-M, Lee I-J (2011a) Ameliorative symbiosis of endophyte (*Penicillium funiculosum* LHL06) under salt stress elevated plant growth of *Glycine max* L. Plant Physiol Biochem 49:852–861

Khan AL, Hamayun M, Kim Y-H, Kang S-M, Lee J-H, Lee I-J (2011b) Gibberellins producing endophytic *Aspergillus fumigatus* sp. LH02 influenced endogenous phytohormonal levels, isoflavonoids production and plant growth in salinity stress. Process Biochem 46:440–447

Khan A, Bakht J, Bano A, Malik NJ (2012a) Response of groundnut (*Arachis hypogaea* L.) genotypes to plant growth regulators and drought stress. Pak J Bot 44:861–865

Khan AL, Hamayun M, Kang S-M, Kim Y-H, Jung H-Y, Lee J-H, Lee I-J (2012b) Endophytic fungal association via gibberellins and indole acetic acid can improve plant growth under abiotic stress: an example of *Paecilomyces formosus* LHL10. BMC Microbiol 12:3

Kim T-W, Hwang J-Y, Kim Y-S, Joo S-H, Chang S-C, Lee J-S, Takatsuto S, Kim S-K (2005) Arabidopsis CYP85A2, a cytochrome P450, mediates the baeyer-villiger oxidation of castasterone to brassinolide in brassinosteroid biosynthesis. Plant Cell 17:2397–2412

Kimura PH, Okamoto G, Hirano K (1996) Effects of gibberellic acid and streptomycin on pollen germination and ovule and seed development in Muscat Bailey A. Am J Enol Viticult 47:152–156

Kobayashi M, Gaskin P, Spray CR, Phinney BO, MacMillan J (1994) The metabolism of gibberellin A20 to gibberellin A1 by tall and dwarf mutants of *Oryza sativa* and Arabidopsis thaliana. Plant Physiol 106:1367–1372

Kobayashi M, Hirai N, Kurimura Y, Ohigashi H, Tsuji Y (1997) Abscisic acid-dependent algal morphogenesis in the unicellular green alga *Haematococcus pluvialis*. Plant Growth Regul 22:79–85

Kolaksazov M, Laporte F, Ananieva K, Dobrev P, Herzog M, Ananiev E (2013) Effect of chilling and freezing stresses on jasmonate content in *arabis alpina*. Bulg J Agric Sci 19:15–17

Kolb W, Martin P (1985) Response of plant roots to inoculation with Azospirillum brasilense and the application of indole acetic acid. In: Klingmuller W (ed) *Azospirillum* III: genetics, physiology, ecology. Springer, Berlin, pp 215–221

Kosova K, Prasil IT, Vitamvas P, Dobrev P, Motyka V, Flokova K, Novak O, Tureckova V, Rolcik J, Pesek B (2012) Complex phytohormone responses during the cold acclimation of two wheat cultivars differing in cold tolerance, winter Samanta and spring Sandra. J Plant Physiol 169:567–576

Kovaleva LV, Voronkov AS, Zakharova EV (2015) Role of auxin and cytokinin in the regulation of the actin cytoskeleton in the in vitro germinating male gametophyte of petunia. Russ J Plant Physiol 62:179–186

Kudoyarova GR, Melentiev AI, Martynenko EV, Timergalina LN, Arkhipova TN, Shendel GV, Kuz'mina LY, Dodd IC, Veselov SY (2014) Cytokinin producing bacteria stimulate amino acid deposition by wheat roots. Plant Physiol Biochem 83:285–291

Kudryakova NV, Efimova MV, Danilova MN, Zubkova NK, Khripach VA, Kusnetsov VV, Kulaeva ON (2013) Exogenous brassinosteroids activate cytokinin signalling pathway gene expression in transgenic Arabidopsis thaliana. Plant Growth Regul 70:61–69

Kuiper D (1993) Sink strength established and regulated by plant growth regulators. Plant Cell Environ 16:1025–1026

Kukavica B, Mitrovic A, Mojovic M, Veljovic-Jovanovic S (2007) Effect of indole-3-acetic acid on pea root growth, peroxidase profiles and hydroxyl radical formation. Arch Biol Sci 59:319–326

Kukreja S, Nandwal A, Kumarn N, Sharma S, Unvi V, Sharma P (2005) Plant water status, H_2O_2 scavenging enzymes, ethylene evolution and membrane integrity of *Cicer arietinum* roots as affected by salinity. Biol Plant 49:305–308

Kumar B, Singh B (1996) Effect of plant hormones on growth and yield of wheat irrigated with saline water. Ann Agric Res 17:209–212

Kumar CS, Singh A, Sagar RK, Negi MPS, Maurya JN (2012a) Study of indole acetic acid and antioxidant defense system of wheat grown under sewage water. Int J Environ Sci 3(2):821–832

Kumar M, Bijo AJ, Baghel RS, Reddy CRK, Jha B (2012b) Selenium and spermine alleviate cadmium induced toxicity in the red seaweed *Gracilaria dura* by regulating antioxidants and DNA methylation. Plant Physiol Biochem 5:129–138

Kumar M, Agnihotri R, Vamil R, Bhagat V, Sharma R (2014) Influencing of phytohormones on root development and some biochemical parameters of *Coriandrum sativum* L. Acad J Agric Res 2:154–158

Kumaran S, Elango R (2013) Production of indole acetic acid (IAA) and gibberellic acid (GA) by *Azospirillum brasilense* under temperature and salt stress condition. Int J Curr Life Sci 3:356–359

Kuppu S, Mishra N, Hu R, Sun L, Zhu X, Shen G, Blumwald E, Payton P, Zhang H (2013) Water-deficit inducible expression of a cytokinin biosynthetic gene IPT improves drought tolerance in cotton. PLoS One 8, e64190

Leinhos V, Bergmann H (1995) Changes in yield, lignin content and protein pattern of barley (*Hordeum vulgare* cv. Alexis) induced by drought stress. J Appl Bot 69:206–210

LeNoble ME, Spollen WG, Sharp RE (2004) Maintenance of shoot growth by endogenous ABA: genetic assessment of the involvement of ethylene suppression. J Exp Bot 55:237–245

Liu D, Li T, Yang X, Islam E, Jin X, Mahmood Q (2007) Enhancement of lead uptake by hyper accumulator plant species *Sedum alfredii* Hance using EDTA and IAA. Bull Environ Contam Toxicol 78:280–283

Los DA, Murata N (2004) Membrane fluidity and its roles in the perception of environmental signals. Biochim Biophy Acta 1666:142–157

Lugtenberg B, Kamilova F (2009) Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:541–555

Maggio A, Barbieri G, Raimondi G, De Pascale S (2010) Contrasting effects of GA3 treatments on tomato plants exposed to increasing salinity. J Plant Growth Regul 29:63–72

Makela P, Jokinen K, Kontturi M, Peltonen-Sainio P, Pehu E, Somersalo S (1998a) Foliar application of glycine betaine a novel product from sugar beet as an approach to increase tomato yield. Ind Crops Prod 7:139–148

Makela P, Munns R, Colmer TD, Condon AG, Peltonen-Sainio P (1998b) Effect of foliar applications of glycinebetaine on stomatal conductance abscisic acid and solute concentrations in leaves of salt- or drought-stressed tomato. Aust J Plant Physiol 25:655–663

Malik DK, Sindhu SS (2011) Production of indole acetic acid by *Pseudomonas* sp.: effect of coinoculation with *Mesorhizobium* sp. Cicer on nodulation and plant growth of chickpea (*Cicer arietinum*). Physiol Mol Biol Plants 17:25–32

Manivannan P, Jaleel CA, Somasundaram R, Panneerselvam R (2008) Osmoregulation and antioxidant metabolism in drought-stressed *Helianthus annuus* under triadimefon drenching. C R Biol 331:418–425

Mattoo AK, Suttle CS (1991) The plant hormone ethylene. CRS Press, Boca Raton, FL

Mayak S, Tirosh T, Glick BR (1999) Effect of wild type and mutant plant growth promoting rhizobacteria on the rooting of mung bean cuttings. J Plant Growth Regul 18:49–53

Mayak S, Tirosh T, Glick BR (2004) Plant growth-promoting bacteria confer resistance in tomato plants to salt stress. Plant Physiol Biochem 42:565–572

McWilliams D (2003) Drought strategies for cotton, cooperative extension service circular 582. College of Agriculture and Home Economics, New Mexico State University, Las Cruces, NM

Minamisawa K, Fukai K (1991) Production of indole-3-acetic acid by *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*: a correlation with genotype grouping and rhizobitoxine production. Plant Cell Physiol 32:1–9

Misra N, Saxena P (2009) Effect of salicylic acid on proline metabolism in lentil grown under salinity stress. Plant Sci 177:181–189

Mok MC, Martin RC, Mok DWS (2000) Cytokinins: biosynthesis, metabolism and perception. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol Plant 36:102–107

Munns R (2002) Comparative physiology of salt and water stress. Plant Cell Environ 25:239–250

Munns R (2005) Genes and salt tolerance: bringing them together. New Phytol 167:645–663

Munns R, James RA, Lauchli A (2006) Approaches to increasing the salt tolerance of wheat and other cereals. J Exp Bot 57:1025–1043

Mussig C (2005) Brassinosteroid-promoted growth. Plant Biol 7:110–117

Nada E, Ferjani BA, Ali R, Bechir BR, Imed M, Makki B (2007) Cadmium induced growth inhibition and alteration of biochemical parameters in almond seedlings grown in solution culture. Acta Physiol Plant 29:57–62

Nadeem SM, Zahir ZA, Naveed M, Arshad M (2007) Preliminary investigations on inducing salt tolerance in maize through inoculation with rhizobacteria containing ACC deaminase activity. Can J Microbiol 53:1141–1149

Nadeem SM, Zahir ZA, Naveed M, Asghar HN, Arshad M (2010a) Rhizobacteria capable of producing ACC– deaminase may mitigate salt stress in wheat. Soil Sci Soc Am J 74:533–542

Nadeem SM, Zahir ZA, Naveed M, Ashraf M (2010b) Microbial ACC-deaminase: prospects and applications for inducing salt tolerance in plants. Crit Rev Plant Sci 29:360–393

Naqvi SSM, Ansari R, Kuawada AN (1982) Responses of salt stressed wheat seedlings to kinetin. Plant Sci Lett 26:279–283

Nawaz K, Ashraf M (2010) Exogenous application of glycinebetaine modulates activities of antioxidants in maize plants subjected to salt stress. J Agron Crop Sci 196:28–37

Nawaz K, Talat A, Iqra I, Hussain K, Majeed A (2010) Induction of salt tolerance in two cultivars of sorghum by exogenous application of proline at seedling stage. World Appl Sci J 10:93–99

Naz I, Bano A (2012) Assessment of phytohormones producing capacity of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* SSA and its interaction with *Zea mays* L. Pak J Bot 44:465–469

Ogweno JO, Hu WH, Song XS, Shi K, Mao WH, Zhou YH, Yu JQ (2010) Photoinhibition-induced reduction in photosynthesis is alleviated by abscisic acid, cytokinin and brassinosteroid in detached tomato leaves. Plant Growth Regul 60:175–182

Olszewski N, Sun TP, Gubler F (2002) Gibberellin signaling biosynthesis catabolism and response pathways. Plant Cell 14:561–580

Ordog V, Stirk WA, Van Staden J, Novák O, Strnad M (2004) endogenous cytokinins in three genera of microalgae from the chlorophyta1. J Phycol 40:88–95

Paces V, Werstiuk E, Hall RH (1971) Conversion of N6-(D2-isopentenyl)adenosine to adenosine by enzyme activity in tobacco tissue. Plant Physiol 48:775–778

Parasher A, Varma SK (1988) Effect of pre-sowing seed soaking in gibberellic acid on growth of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) under different saline conditions. Ind J Biol Sci 26:473–475

Pati BR, Sengupta S, Chandra AK (1995) Impact of selected phyllospheric diazotrophs on the growth of wheat seedlings and assay of the growth substances produced by the diazotrophs. Microbiol Res 150:121–127

Patten CL, Glick BR (2002) Role of *Pseudomonas putida* indoleacetic acid in development of the host plant root system. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:3795–3801

Peleg Z, Blumwald E (2011) Hormone balance and abiotic stress tolerance in crop plants. Curr Opin Plant Biol 14:290–295

Penmetsa RV, Cook DR (1997) A legume ethylene-insensitive mutant hyperinfected by its rhizobial symbiont. Science 275:527–530

Petrasek J, Friml J (2009) Auxin transport routes in plant development. Development 136:2675–2688

Pharis RP, King RW (1985) Gibberellins and reproductive development in seed plants. Annu Rev Plant Physiol 36:517–568

Prasanna R, Joshi M, Rana A, Nain L (2010) Modulation of IAA production in cyanobacteria by tryptophan and light. Pol J Microbiol 59:99–105

Qin H, Gu Q, Zhang J, Sun L, Kuppu S, Zhang Y, Burow M, Payton P, Blumwald E, Zhang H (2011) Regulated expression of an isopentenyl transferase gene (IPT) in peanut significantly improves drought tolerance and increases yield under field conditions. Plant Cell Physiol 52:1904–1914

Qiu Z, Guo J, Zhu A, Zhang L, Zhang M (2014) Exogenous jasmonic acid can enhance tolerance of wheat seedlings to salt stress. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 104:202–208

Qureshi KM, Chughtai S, Qureshi US, Abbasi NA (2013) Impact of exogenous application of salt and growth regulators on growth and yield of strawberry. Pak J Bot 45(4):1179–1185

Rajkumar M, Freitas H (2008) Effects of inoculation of plant-growth promoting bacteria on Ni uptake by *Indian mustard*. Bioresour Technol 99:3491–3498

Rao SSR, Vardhini BV, Sujatha E, Anuradha S (2002) Brassionsteroids-a new class of phytohormones. Curr Sci 82:1239–1245

Reguera M, Peleg Z, Abdel-Tawab YM, Tumimbang EB, Delatorre CA, Blumwald E (2013) Stress induced cytokinin synthesis increases drought tolerance through the coordinated regulation of carbon and nitrogen assimilation in rice. Plant Physiol 163:1609–1622

Ren C, Bilyeu KD, Beuselinck PR (2009) Composition vigor and proteome of mature soybean seeds developed under high temperature. Crop Sci 49:1010–1022

Ribaut JM, Pilet PE (1991) Effect of water stress on growth, osmotic potential and abscisic acid content of maize roots. Physiol Plant 81:156–162

Rivero RM, Kojima M, Gepstein A, Sakakibara H, Mittler R, Gepstein S, Blumwald E (2007) Delayed leaf senescence induces extreme drought tolerance in a flowering plant. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:19631–19636

Rivero RM, Shulaev V, Blumwald E (2009) Cytokinin-dependent photorespiration and the protection of photosynthesis during water deficit. Plant Physiol 150:1530–1540

Rivero RM, Gimeno J, Van DA, Walia H, Blumwald E (2010) Enhanced cytokinin synthesis in tobacco plants expressing PSARK:IPT prevents the degradation of photosynthetic protein complexes during drought. Plant Cell Physiol 51:1929–1941

Roitsch T (1999) Source-sink regulation by sugar and stress. Curr Opin Plant Biol 2:198–206

Ronzhina ES, Mokronosov AT (1994) Source-sink relations and the role of cytokinins in the regulation of transport and partitioning of organic substances in plants. Russ J Plant Physiol 41:396–406

Rubio-Wilhelmia MM, Sanchez-Rodrigueza E, Rosalesa MA, Begonaa B, Riosa JJ, Romeroa Romeroa L, Blumwaldb E, Ruiza JM (2011) Effect of cytokinins on oxidative stress in tobacco plants under nitrogen deficiency. Environ Exp Bot 72:167–173

Sadiq M, Jamil M, Mehdi SM, Sarfraz M, Hassan G (2002) Comparative performance of *Brassica* varieties/lines under saline sodic condition. Asian J Plant Sci 2:77–78

Saeedipour S (2013) Effects of phytohormones seed priming on germination and seedling growth of cowpea (*Vigna sinensis* L.) under different duration of treatments. Int J Biosci 3:187–192

Sakakibara H, Takei K, Hirose N (2006) Interactions between nitrogen and cytokinin in the regulation of metabolism and development. Trends Plant Sci 11:440–448

Salama FM, Awadalla AA (1987) The effects of different kinetin application methods on some chlorophyll parameters of two crop plants grown under salinity stress. Phyton 21:181–193

San-Francisco S, Houdusse F, Zamarreno AM, Garnica M, Casanova E, García-Mina JM (2005) Effects of IAA and IAA precursors on the development, mineral nutrition, IAA content and free polyamine content of pepper plants cultivated in hydroponic conditions. Sci Hortic 106:38–52

Santner A, Calderon-Villalobos LIA, Estelle M (2009) Plant hormones are versatile chemical regulators of plant growth. Nat Chem Biol 5:301–307

Sasse JM (2003) Physiological actions of brassinosteroids: an update. J Plant Growth Regul 22:276–288

Savitsky PA, Gazaryan IG, Tishkov VI, Lagrimini LM, RuzGas T, Gorton L (1999) Oxidation of indole-3-acetic acid by dioxygen catalyzed by plant peroxidases: specificity for the enzyme structure. Biochem J 340:579–583

Schumacher K, Chory J (2000) Brassinosteroid signal transduction: still casting the actors. Curr Opin Plant Biol 3:79–84

Schulz CE, Rutter R, Sage JT, Debrunner PG, Hager LP (1984) Mossbauer and electron paramagnetic resonance studies of horseradish peroxidase and its catalytic intermediates. Biochem 23: 4743-4754

Sergeeva Prasanna E, Liaimer A, Bergman B (2002) Evidence for production of the phytohormone indole-3-acetic acid by cyanobacteria. Planta 215:229–238

Sexton R, Roberts JA (1982) Cell biology of abscission. Annu Rev Plant Physiol 33:133–162

Shaddad MAK, Abd El-Samad HM, Mostafa D (2013) Role of gibberellic acid (GA3) in improving salt stress tolerance of two wheat cultivars. Int J Plant Physiol Biochem 5:50–57

Shani E, Weinstain R, Zhanga Y, Castillejo C, Kaiserli E, Chory J, Tsienb RY, Estelle M (2013) Gibberellins accumulate in the elongating endodermal cells of *Arabidopsis* root. PNAS 110:4834–4839

Shi YH, Zhu SW, Mao XZ, Feng JX, Qin YM, Zhang L, Cheng J, Wei LP, Wang ZY, Zhu YX (2006) Transcriptome profiling, molecular biological, and physiological studies reveal a major role for ethylene in cotton fiber cell elongation. Plant Cell 18:651–664

Shibli RA, Kushad M, Yousef GG, Lina MA (2007) Physiological and biochemical responses of tomato microshoots to induced salinity stress with associated ethylene accumulation. Plant Growth Regul 51:159–169

Singh DP, Jermakow AM, Swain SM (2002) Gibberellins are required for seed development and pollen tube growth in Arabidopsis. Plant Cell 14:3133–3147

Sokolnik AZ (2012) Temperature stress and responses of plants. In: Aroca R (ed) Plant responses to drought stress from morphological to molecular features. Springer, Berlin, pp 113–134

Song JQ, Mei XR, Fujiyama H (2006) Adequate internal water status of NaCl salinized rice shoots enhanced selective calcium and potassium absorption. Soil Sci Plant Nutr 52:300–304

Spray CR, Kobayashi M, Suzuki Y, Phinney BO, Gaskin P, MacMillan J (1996) The dwarf-1 (dt) Mutant of *Zea mays* L. blocks three steps in the gibberellin-biosynthetic pathway. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93:10515–10518

Stirk W, Ördög V, Van Staden J, Jager K (2002) Cytokinin-and auxin-like activity in Cyanophyta and microalgae. J Appl Phycol 14:215–221

Stirk WA, Bálint P, Tarkowská D, Novák O, Strnad M, Ördög V, van Staden J (2013) Hormone profiles in microalgae: gibberellins and brassinosteroids. Plant Physiol Biochem 70:348–353

Subbarao GV, Wheeler RM, Levine LH, Stutte GW (2001) Glycine betaine accumulation, ionic and water relations of red-beet at contrasting levels of sodium supply. J Plant Physiol 158:767–776

Subramanian KS, Santhanakrishnan P, Balasubramanian P (2006) Responses of field grown tomato plants to arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal colonization under varying intensities of drought stress. Sci Hortic 107:245–253

Sun Y, Veerabomma S, Abdel-Mageed HA, Fokar M, Asami T, Yoshida S, Allen RD (2005) Brassinosteroid regulates fiber development on cultured cotton ovules. Plant Cell Physiol 46:1384–1391

Sun WH, Duan M, Li F, Shu D-F, Yang S, Meng QW (2010) Overexpression of tomato tAPX gene in tobacco improves tolerance to high or low temperature stress. Biol Plant 54:614–620

Suttle JC, Hultstrand JF (1993) Involvement of abscisic acid in ethylene-induced cotyledon abscission in cotton seedlings. Plant Physiol 101:641–646

Sykorova B, Kurešova G, Daskalova S, Trckova M, Hoyerova K, Raimanova I, Motyka V, Travnickova A, Elliott MC, Kaminek M (2008) Senescence-induced ectopic expression of the A. tumefaciens ipt gene in wheat delays leaf senescence, increases cytokinin content, nitrate influx, and nitrate reductase activity, but does not affect grain yield. J Exp Bot 59:377–387

Taiz L, Zeiger E (2000) Plant physiology, 2nd edn. Benjamin Cumings Publishing Company, Redwood City

Taiz L, Zeiger E (2010) Plant physiology, 5th edn. Sinauer Associates Inc Publishers, Sunderland, MA

Takahashi H (2013) Auxin biology in roots. Plant Root 7:49–64

Takei K, Sakakibara H, Sugiyama T (2001) Identification of genes encoding adenylate isopentenyltransferase, a cytokinin biosynthesis enzyme, in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. J Biol Chem 76:26405–26410

Tan BC, Schwartz SH, Zeevaart JA, McCarty DR (1997) Genetic control of abscisic acid biosynthesis in maize. Proc Natl Acad Sci 94:12235–12240

Tassi E, Pouget J, Petruzzelli G, Barbafieri M (2008) The effects of exogenous plant growth regulators in the phytoextraction of heavy metals. Chemosphere 71:66–73

Thomas TH (1992) Some reflections on the relationship between endogenous hormones and light-mediated seed dormancy. Plant Growth Regul 11:239–248

Tian Q, Chen F, Liu J, Zhang F, Mi G (2008) Inhibition of maize root growth by high nitrate supply is correlated with reduced IAA levels in roots. J Plant Physiol 165:942–951

Tian S, Wang Y, Du G, Li Y (2011) Changes in contents and antioxidant activity of phenolic compounds during gibberellin-induced development in Vitis vinifera. p. L. 'Muscat'. Acta Physiol Plant 33:2467–2475

Tominaga N, Takahata M, Tominaga H (1993) Effects of NaCl and KNO_3 concentrations on the abscisic acid content of Dunaliella sp. (Chlorophyta). Hydrobiologia 267:163–168
Ton J, Flors V, Mauch-Mani B (2009) The multifaceted role of ABA in disease resistance. Trends Plant Sci 14:310–317
Torres-Garcia JR, Estradaa JAE, Gonzбlez MTR (2009) Exogenous application of growth regulators in snap bean under water and salinity stress. J Stress Physiol Biochem 5:13–21
Turkyilmaz B (2012) Effects of salicylic and gibberellic acids on wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) under salinity stress. Bangladesh J Bot 41(1):29–34
Tuteja N, Sopory SK (2008) Plant signaling in stress: G-protein coupled receptors, heterotrimeric G-proteins and signal coupling via phospholipases. Plant Signal Behav 3(2):79–86
Van Kast CA, Laten H (1987) Cytokinin utilization by adenine requiring mutants of the yeast Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Plant Physiol 83:726–727
Varalakshmi P, Malliga P (2012) Evidence for production of Indole-3-acetic acid from a fresh water cyanobacteria (*Oscillatoria annae*) on the growth of *H. annus*. Int J Sci Res Pub 2:1–15
Wahid A, Farooq M, Hussain I, Rasheed R, Galani S (2012) Responses and management of heat stress in plants. In: Aroca R (ed) Plant responses to drought stress from morphological to molecular features. Springer, Berlin, pp 135–157
Wang Y, Mopper S, Hasentein KH (2001) Effects of salinity on endogenous ABA, IAA, JA, and SA in *Iris hexagona*. J Chem Ecol 27:327–342
Wang Z, Zhao F, Zhao X, Ge H, Chai L, Chen S, Perl A, Ma H (2012) Proteomic analysis of berry-sizing effect of GA3 on seedless *Vitis vinifera* L. Proteomics 12:86–94
Wang B, Chu J, Yu T, Xu Q, Sun X, Yuan J, Xiong G, Wang G, Wang Y, Li J (2015) Tryptophan-independent auxin biosynthesis contributes to early embryogenesis in Arabidopsis. Proc Natl Acad Sci 112:4821–4826
Waqas M, Khan AL, Kamran M, Hamayun M, Kang SM, Kim YH, Lee IJ (2012) Endophytic fungi produce gibberellins and indole acetic acid and promotes host-plant growth during stress. Molecules 17:754–773
Wasilewska A, Vlad F, Sirichandra C, Redko Y, Jammes F, Valon C, Frey NFD, Leung J (2008) An update on abscisic acid signaling in plants and more. Mol Plant 1:198–217
Wasternack C (2007) Jasmonates: an update on biosynthesis, signal transduction and action in plant stress response, growth and development. Ann Bot 100:681–697
Wasternack C, Hause B (2002) Jasmonates and octadecanoids: signals in plant stress responses and development. Prog Nucleic Acid Res Mol Biol 72:165–221
Wasternack C, Hause B (2013) Jasmonates: biosynthesis, perception, signal transduction and action in plant stress response, growth and development. An update to the 2007 review in Annals of Botany. Ann Bot 111:1021–1058
Watanabe T, Yokota T, Shibata K, Nomura T, Seto H, Takatsuto S (2000) Cryptolide, a new brassinolide catabolite with a 23- oxo group from Japanese cedar pollen/anther and its synthesis. J Chem Res 2000:18–19
Wei B, Yang L (2010) A review of heavy metal contaminations in urban soils, urban road dusts and agricultural soils from China. Microchem J 94:99–107
Weyers JDB, Paterson NW (2001) Plant hormones and the control of physiological processes. New Phytol 152:375–407
Whitty CD, Hall RH (1974) A cytokinin oxidase in *Zea mays*. Can J Biochem 52:787–799
Wiegant WM, DE Bont AMJ (1980) A new route for ethylene glycol metabolism in *Mycobacterium* E44. J Gen Microbiol 120:325–331
Wilkinson S, Kudoyarova GR, Veselov DS, Arkhipova TN, Davies WJ (2012) Plant hormone interactions innovative targets for crop breeding and management. J Exp Bot 63:3499–3509
Williams ME (2010) Introduction to phytohormones. Plant Cell 22:1–9
Wilmowicz E, Kesy J, Kopcewicz J (2008) Ethylene and ABA interactions in the regulation of flower induction in Pharbitis nil. J Plant Physiol 165:1917–1928
Wittenmayer L, Deubel A, Merbach W (2008) Phytohormonal effects on rhizosphere processes of maize (*Zea mays* L.) under phosphorus deficiency. J Appl Bot Food Qual 82:35–40
Wolters H, Jurgens G (2009) Survival of the flexible: hormonal growth control and adaptation in plant development. Nat Rev Genet 10:305–317

Wyn Jones RG, Storey R (1981) Betaines. In: Paleg LG, Aspinall D (eds) The physiology and biochemistry of drought resistance in plants. Academic, Sydney, pp 171–204

Xie Z, Jiang D, Cao W, Dai T, Jing Q (2003) Relationships of endogenous plant hormones to accumulation of grain protein and starch in winter wheat under different post-anthesis soil water statusses. Plant Growth Regul 41:117–127

Xiong L, Gong Z, Rock C, Subramanian S, Guo Y, Xu W, Galbraith D, Zhu JK (2001) Modulation of abscisic acid signal transduction and biosynthesis by an Sm-like protein in Arabidopsis. Dev Cell 1:771–781

Xoconostle-Cazares B, Ramirez-Ortega FA, Flores-Elenes L, Ruiz-Medrano R (2010) Drought tolerance in crop plants. Am J Plant Physiol 5:241–256

Yamaguchi S, Kamiya Y (2000) Gibberellin biosynthesis, its regulation by endogenous and environmental signals. Plant Cell Physiol 41:251–257

Yamance K, Hayakawa K, Kawasaki M (2003) Bundle sheath chloroplasts of rice are more sensitive to drought stress than mesophyll chloroplasts. J Plant Physiol 160:1319–1327

Yancey PH (1994) Compatible and counteracting solutes. In: Strange K (ed) Cellular and molecular physiology of cell volume regulation. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 81–109

Yang X, Lu C (2005) Photosynthesis is improved by exogenous glycinebetaine in salt-stressed maize plants. Physiol Plant 124:343–352

Yang S, Yu H, Xu Y, Goh CJ (2003) Investigation of cytokinin-deficient phenotypes in *Arabidopsis* by ectopic expression of orchid DSCKX1. FEBS Lett 555:291–296

Yang S, Zhang X, Cao Z, Zhao K, Wang S, Chen M, Hu X (2014) Growth-promoting *Sphingomonas paucimobilis* ZJSH1 associated with *Dendrobium officinale* through phytohormone production and nitrogen fixation. Microbiol Biotechnol 7:611–620

Yokota T, Takahashi N (1986) Chemistry, physiology and agricultural application of brassinolide and related steroids. In: Bopp M (ed) Plant growth substances. Springer, Berlin, pp 129–138

Yokota T, Kim SK, Fukui Y, Takahashi N, Takeuchi Y, Takematsu T (1987) Brassinosteroids and sterols from a green alga, *Hydrodictyon reticulatum*: configuration at C-24. Phytochemistry 26:503–506

Yokota T, Sato T, Takeuchi Y, Nomura T, Uno K, Watanabe T, Takatsuto S (2001) Roots and shoots of tomato produce 6-deoxo-28-cathasterone, 6-deoxo-28-nortyphasterol and 6 deoxo- 28-norcastasterone, possible precursors of 28-norcastasterone. Phytochemistry 58:233–238

Yuhashi KI, Ichikawa N, Ezuura H, Akao S, Minakawa Y, Nukui T, Minamisawa K (2000) Rhizobitoxine production by *Bradyrhizobium elkanii* enhances nodulation and competitiveness on *Macroptilium atropurpureum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:2658–2663

Zahir ZA, Asghar HN, Akhtar MJ, Arshad M (2010) Precursor (L-tryptophan)-inoculum (Azotobacter) interaction for improving yields and nitrogen uptake of maize. J Plant Nutr 28:805–817

Zhang J, Jia W, Yang J, Ismail AM (2006) Role of ABA in integrating plant responses to drought and salt stresses. Field Crop Res 97:111–119

Zhang S, Cai Z, Wang X (2009) The primary signaling outputs of brassinosteroids are regulated by abscisic acid signaling. Proc Natl Acad Sci 06:4543–4548

Zhao Z, Chen G, Zhang C (2001) Interaction between reactive oxygen species and nitric oxide in drought-induced abscisic acid synthesis in root tips of wheat seedlings. Aus J Plant Physiol 28:1055–1061

Zhu JK (2007) Plant salt stress. Wiley, New York

Soil Pollution and Remediation

Sameen Ruqia Imadi, Zeshan Ali, Hamna Hasan, and Alvina Gul

Abstract The planet Earth is suffering from an ever-escalating rate of pollution. It was not until the twentieth century that mankind was seriously concerned about pollution. But now pollution has reached to such a significant level that is influencing all ecological compartments. There are many types of pollution. Among these most important are i.e. soil pollution, air pollution, noise pollution, and water pollution. Concerns about soil pollution have increased in the recent decades. Soil pollution has deteriorated large areas of agricultural land around the globe. It is due to soil pollution that soil biodiversity is declining. Human health is also at risk due to high concentration of pollutants found in soil. Vegetation grown on polluted soil is also contaminated to varying degrees. Simple and cost effective solution to soil pollution is bioremediation. It is an efficient technique in which hyper-accumulator plants and native plants along with bacteria and other microorganisms are grown in polluted soils. These organisms absorb and or degrade pollutants and enhance soil quality. As the bioavailability of nutrients increase, soil functioning improves. Bioremediation can be performed using a large number of techniques including biostimulation, bioaugmentation, phytoremediation, mycoremediation etc. This chapter deals with soil pollution, its possible causes and adverse environmental effects. The chapter is concluded with bioremediation as a potential alternative for soil cleanup with possible future recommendations.

Keywords Phytoremediation • Bioremediation • Environmental pollution • Human Health • Agricultural soils

S.R. Imadi • A. Gul (✉)
Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences, National University of Sciences & Technology (NUST), Islamabad, Pakistan
e-mail: alvina_gul@yahoo.com

Z. Ali
Department of Plant and Environmental Protection, National Institute of Bioremediation, National Agricultural Research Centre, Park Road, Islamabad PO 45500, Pakistan

H. Hasan
Quaid-I-Azam University, Islamabad, Pakistan

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_18

1 Introduction

On the planet Earth, one of the most vital, life-supporting system is soil. Estimates are made in which it is claimed that almost 25 % of the soil worldwide is highly degraded, whereas 44 % soil is moderately degraded. This degradation of soil has been attributed to pollution caused by metals, radionuclides, metalloids, pesticides, and persistent organic pollutants. New soil pollutants are also emerging with industrialization and globalization. These pollutants are antibiotics, nanoparticles, disinfectants, and flame retardants (Tripathi et al. 2015). Soil quality can be defined as the capability of soil to perform its specific functions. Microbial properties of soil are being used for a long time to indicate the quality of soil. This is because soil microbial properties have a quick response and are highly sensitive. Microbial properties of a certain soil are undoubtedly the most ecologically relevant indicators of soil quality (Gómez-Sagasti et al. 2012).

Soil pollution is basically caused by poor management of municipal effluents as well as industrial wastes (Fernández-Caliani 2012). Many economic activities are involved in enhancement of soil pollution. Among these anthropogenic activities, mining and smelting are at top. Mining takes place where high concentration of metals or minerals is present. The presence of large concentration of heavy metals causes impacts on water resources, crops, soils, and vegetables. Eating crop and vegetables grown on such soil may be hazardous to human health (Zhang et al. 2012). It is due to ever-increasing urbanization and industrialization which have posed serious social and environmental threats to the world. Some of these threats include soil pollution and ecological degradation (Wang et al. 2014).

Sewage sludge, mine tailing, industrial wastewater, waste rock piles, and acid mine drainage have resulted in contamination and pollution of large cultivable as well as fallow lands. This not only causes pollution but also leads to soil deterioration. It is difficult to reestablish vegetation in polluted soil due to toxic elements, harsh climatic conditions, organic contaminants, and acidic constituents of soil (Anawar et al. 2015). Soil pollution can be determined using biological as well as chemical approaches. Different plant species can be used as bioindicators of soil pollution especially heavy metal pollution. Some of these plants include *Oenanthe* sp., *Callitriche* sp., *Juncus* sp., and *Typha* sp. (Ladislas et al. 2012). Some of the common wastes which lead to the development of soil pollution include domestic wastes, hazardous wastes, commercial wastes, nonbiodegradable wastes, ashes, biodegradable wastes, animal wastes, sewer, biomedical wastes, industrial solid wastes, and construction wastes (Demirbas 2011).

2 Causes of Soil Pollution

2.1 Coal Ash

Large-scale production of coal ash from thermal power plants around the world is now causing a serious threat to the environment by polluting the soil. This increases the soil toxicity by increasing heavy metal content of the soil; moreover,

fly ash has a slow rate of degradation due to which it pollutes the soil (Bhattacharya et al. 2012). Coal burning leads to emission of chromium, cadmium, and lead. An experiment was conducted in China in which it was observed that the total yearly emissions of chromium, cadmium, and lead have significantly increased in recent years. This leads to soil pollution as well as air pollution (Tian et al. 2012). Coal combustion also yields mercury in the coal ash (Sun et al. 2014). Extraction of coal from mines and combustion of coal result in damaging the soil and environment. Coal ash acts as a deteriorating agent of soil (Srivastava et al. 2014).

It can be rightly said that every step of life cycle of coal from extraction, transport, processing to combustion enhance the pollution. It carries a vast variety of hazards to health as well as the environment (Epstein et al. 2011). It has been observed that soils which are located in the vicinity of coal-fired thermal power stations are polluted not only by ashes but also by heavy metals including arsenic, nickel, strontium, chromium, copper, cobalt, mercury, cadmium, barium, beryllium, and vanadium (George et al. 2015). Residues of coal combustion are considered as hazardous solid waste around the globe (Verma et al. 2014).

2.2 Sewage and Industrial Waste

Random dumping of hazardous waste generated by industrial area can be a major cause of soil contamination and eventually pollution. It has been observed that random dumping of industrial wastes is the main source of heavy metal pollution in surrounding areas (Bhagure and Mirgane 2011). Severe soil pollution can be caused due to poor management of effluents and industrial wastes. Anthropogenic sources lead to deterioration of soil in the worst way possible (Fernández-Caliani 2012; Ali et al. 2015a, b). Industrial wastes basically comprise heavy metals including zinc, lead, arsenic, chromium, mercury, copper, cobalt, nickel, and cadmium. Soil around the world is under serious threat by heavy metal toxicity (Kodom et al. 2012). Rapid industrial development has posed serious threats to soil. These threats are in the form of heavy metal accumulation. Soil, polluted due to industrial wastes and sewage, largely contains lead, copper, zinc and cadmium. Different kinds of industries add different types of waste materials in soil. For example, it has been observed that metal producing industrial wastes and smelting industrial wastes have large amount of lead, arsenic, zinc, iron, nickel, and copper. Similarly the waste of textile industry includes manganese and cadmium, whereas that of leather industry includes chromium (Kabir et al. 2012).

Solid waste management is becoming a complicated problem day by day. This complication is due to the increase in population, changes in lifestyle and industrialization. In developing countries, industrial wastes and sewage are dumped in open dumps, whereas in developed countries, it is dumped in landfills or recycled. Severe environmental problems like soil pollution may be caused by open dumping and landfilling (Singh et al. 2011).

2.3 Pesticides and Herbicides

Pesticides are widely being used in agriculture. Pesticides help in prevention from pests, diseases, weeds, and plant pathogens. They also contribute in maintaining high quality and ensure increase in yield (Damalas and Eleftherohorinos 2011). Enhanced use of pesticides might lead to the development of soil pollution through accumulation of nitrogen and different chemicals in cultivable soils. This results in deteriorating soil and soil biota (Sun et al. 2012). Concerns about pesticide pollution of the environment have increased in previous decades (Van Toan et al. 2013). DDT and HCH are potential contaminants which are largely used on agricultural lands. These compounds are used because they have low cost and high effectiveness. They have high stability due to which they stay in soil and result in soil pollution (Mishra et al. 2012).

Soil pollution due to pesticides and herbicides can be easily measured by manipulating soil enzyme activities. It has been observed that activities of enzymes like phenol oxidase act as early indicator of soil pollution. Further enzymes which can be used to detect pesticide soil pollution are arylamidase and beta-glucosidase (Floch et al. 2011). During studies it has been observed that there are several groups of pesticides which largely pollute the soil. Among these groups are organochlorine pesticides which include dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethanes (DDT's), hexachlorocyclohexanes (HCH's), and chlordane (Syed et al. 2013).

Herbicides like oxyfluorfen pollute the soil. They not only pollute the soil but also have adverse effects on soil biodiversity, i.e., act as fatal agents for a variety of earthworm species which are living in soil. Earthworms including *A. molleri*, *E. fetida*, and *L. terrestris* accumulate oxyfluorfen present in soil. This compound also alters soil biochemical properties by polluting it (Tejada et al. 2016). Other herbicides which pollute the soil include mesotrione and atrazine. They are degraded by soil and produce a large number of degradation products. These products include deethylatrazine, hydroxyatrazine, desethyldesisopropylatrazine, and deisopropylatrazine. These herbicidal products add to the pollution of soil. High levels of these products pose toxicity to soil biodiversity (Barchanska et al. 2012).

2.4 Heavy Metals

Heavy metals are released in the environment due to their mobilization through extraction from ores and processing. These elements are nonbiodegradable; hence, they accumulate in the soil (Ali et al. 2013; Ali et al. 2015a). Soil pollution caused by heavy metals is a worldwide problem. Among heavy metals, the most prominent is arsenic pollution. It usually occurs in soils which are at the river basin. Human disturbance is associated with increase in arsenic and lead contents in the soil. Besides lead and arsenic, the main pollutant heavy metals include copper, nickel, iron, cobalt, cadmium, manganese, mercury and zinc (Zhao et al. 2014b). Industries including chemical, paint, machinery, plastic, packing, electric, cosmetics, metal, food, textile, automotive supply, and wood increase significant amounts of heavy

Table 1 Standard permissible concentration of metals in soil

Sr. No	Heavy metal	Standard concentration in soil (mg/kg)
1	Cadmium	5
2	Arsenic	5
3	Barium	1
4	Chromium	8
5	Lead	5
6	Mercury	0.2
7	Selenium	5
8	Silver	5
9	Zinc	12
10	Copper	5
11	Molybdenum	15
12	Nickel	1.75

metals in soil (Yaylali-Abanuz 2011). Heavy metal pollution has affected many parts of the world especially developing areas (Li et al. 2014). High levels of chromium might leach in soil due to mining, corrosion inhibitors in cooling water, metal plating, tanning and textile industries, wood preservation, glass and ceramics, ink manufactures, dye, and pigments (Dhal et al. 2013). Standard permissible concentrations of heavy metals in soil are given in Table 1.

Soil contamination due to heavy metals is of serious concern because heavy metals possess intense toxic effects (Ali et al. 2015c). Soil is polluted by metals which are largely produced from wastewater treatment plants, agricultural/industrial, activities and treated/untreated wastewater (Rahman et al. 2012). It has been observed that the cadmium pollution of soil is the result of industrial wastewater and agricultural practices (Hani and Pazira 2011). Application of large levels of phosphorus fertilizers on soil causes arsenic pollution (Hartley et al. 2013). Mining is one of the greatest contributors of soil heavy metal pollution (Jin and You 2015).

2.5 Traffic Activities

Heavy traffic significantly contributes in soil pollution. In an experiment conducted in Mexico, it was observed that cesium, zinc, and arsenic contents are significantly high in urban soils as compared to rural ones. These concentrations are much more than the standard guidelines of the US Environmental Protection Agency and are not without harmful effects on biodiversity and human health (Mireles et al. 2012). Heavy traffic contributes to soil pollution with heavy metals like copper, lead, and zinc. This anthropogenic activity also adds cadmium in the soil (Zhao et al. 2014a). It has been observed that heavy traffic also emits zinc and lead. Increase in concentration of zinc and lead can overcome the threshold and result in soil pollution. Soil pollution with polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons is also due to intense traffic near agricultural lands (Gunawardena et al. 2012). Agricultural soils which are present near heavy traffic roads are observed to be greatly affected by lead pollution (Hu et al. 2013).

3 Effects of Soil Pollution

Effects of soil pollution were observed in a biomarker response of earthworms. Earthworm samples were collected from different areas, and it was observed that high levels of soil pollution cause significant health hazards in earthworms. Histopathological and biochemical changes are observed. In all the samples examined, epithelial cell lining was enlarged, hyperplasia was caused in muscle cells, and mucus secretion was also enhanced. It was also seen that structural integrity of circular and longitudinal muscles was lost. Dilation and vacuolization was seen in chloragogenous tissue. Affected earthworms also showed tissue necrosis. These examinations show that soil pollution has biological effects. It also predicts and warns about ecological changes which will soon affect human health (Kiliç 2011). Soil is a very important medium of the environment which is closely linked to humans and biodiversity. The presence of harmful materials in soil leads to the development of problems in the environment (Li et al. 2011).

Polluted soils possess ecotoxicological effects on all terrestrial, groundwater, and aquatic ecosystems. These effects can be fatal to a large number of organisms. Large groups of organisms are on verge of extinction due to soil pollution (Machender et al. 2013).

3.1 Harmful Effects on Health

Soil pollution is observed to increase risks of diseases. Cancer risks are seen to be enhanced by the excess of arsenic in soil. If polluted soil gets a dermal contact, then the probability of cancer further increases (Fernández-Caliani 2012). Significant harmful effects on human health are caused by inorganic chemicals present in soil as pollutants. Major contaminants to cause harmful health effects are arsenic and fluorine (Farooqi 2015). The existence of a high amount of heavy metals in soil possesses serious negative influences on human health (Zhao et al. 2011). Soil polluted with heavy metals is the cause of high carcinogenic as well as noncarcinogenic risks to humans especially children and women (Li et al. 2014). Cadmium present as soil pollutant shows potent human health risks (Zhao et al. 2012). It has been observed that the people living in areas in which soil is polluted by zinc and cadmium have a high risk of high blood levels of lead, arthralgia, and osteomalacia and high amount of cadmium in urine (Zhang et al. 2012).

Human health is prone to serious effects by chromium toxicity (Dhal et al. 2013). Some heavy metals are carcinogenic, endocrine disruptors, mutagenic, and teratogenic. They are also involved in causing neurological and behavioral changes in children (Ali et al. 2013). Heavy metals cause serious health effects in diet dominated pathways. Non-cancer risks are increasingly caused by chromium and lead, whereas cadmium is involved in posing serious cancer effects (Liu et al. 2013). Soil contaminated through coal-fired thermal power stations may lead to the levels of pollution

which have devastating effects on human health (George et al. 2015). Studies predict that non-carcinogenic risks to children are mainly posed by soil which is polluted with chromium, manganese, lead, and arsenic. These heavy metals had carcinogenic risks which were almost 30–200 times higher than the safe level. These risks are largely attributed to soil pollution with these heavy metals (Cao et al. 2014).

Studies were conducted in paddy fields grown in heavy metal-polluted soils. It was observed that edible parts of paddy also contain large concentration of cadmium, lead, and zinc. Eating paddy which is grown under polluted soil might cause significant damage (Luo et al. 2011). Pesticides including HCH- and DDT polluted soils possess carcinogenic as well as non-carcinogenic toxicities on children and women (Hu et al. 2011). It has been observed that soil polluted by antimony is a reason behind a large number of toxicities and carcinogenicities. High levels of antimony exposure may lead to the development of cardiovascular diseases, liver diseases, respiratory system diseases, and skin diseases (Jin and You 2015). Toxicities caused by heavy metals are mentioned in Fig. 1.

It is known that exposure to heavy metal-polluted soil results in significant carcinogenic and non-carcinogenic effects. The cancer risks in adults have been seen, and it was observed that chromium contributes to 93.8 % cancer risks, whereas lead may lead to the development of cancer in 6.19 % cases (Luo et al. 2012). Soil polluted with thallium is toxic to human health. Excessive thallium in soil causes chronic thallium poisoning. It is also involved in urinary tract infections (Xiao et al. 2012). It has been concluded through studies that dermal contact with soil polluted by arsenic derived from sewage irrigation can result in carcinogenic risks. Lead-polluted soil however causes non-carcinogenic effects on children (Qiao et al. 2011). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons may have significant carcinogenic effects to human health (Wang et al. 2013).

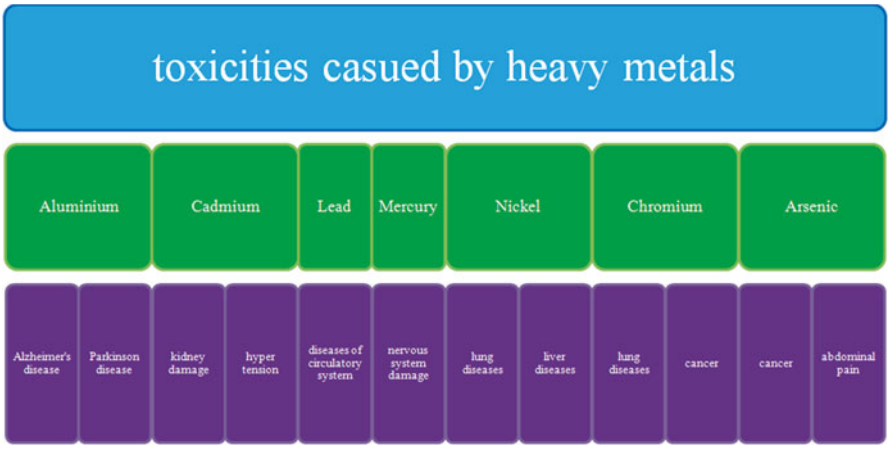


Fig. 1 Toxicities caused by heavy metals in humans

3.2 Devastating Effects on Environment and Biodiversity

Soil biodiversity is a prerequisite for environmental stability and sustainability. It is the plant biodiversity on which richness of soil biota depends. Soil biota functions to keep the soil living. It also helps in nutrient cycling and storage, formation of soil organic matter, and its turnover. Soil pollution affects soil biodiversity in worst way possible. It kills most of the living organisms as well as it alters their metabolism and biochemical pathways which lead to the ultimate degradation of soil (Thiele-Bruhn et al. 2012). The toxic effects which are produced by soil pollution reach soil biota, thus affecting microbial community biomass and metabolic activities. Although almost all of the communities of a certain society respond to soil pollution, it is the microbiota community which are most affected (Wahsha et al. 2013).

Soils polluted with pesticides are a risk to biodiversity. They may leach into water and hence are a cause of death of marine organisms. Pesticides are also observed to have detrimental effects on wildlife and plants. Risk assessment of pesticide-based toxicities can be different depending upon the type of pesticide used, amount of pesticide used, and time of exposure (Damalas and Eleftherohorinos 2011). Heavy metal pollution gives rise to severe harms to ecological environment and soil biodiversity (Jin and You 2015). Petroleum hydrocarbon pollution in soil may cause severe toxic effects on earthworms and plant growth (Tang et al. 2011). The presence of petroleum components in soil is toxic to humans, microorganisms, plants, as well as soil (Besalatpour et al. 2011).

4 Soil Remediation

It was not until the last quarter of the twentieth century that environmental pollution was considered as a threat. The present scenario of soil pollution needs an immediate attention and research toward remediation of polluted soil and detoxification of deteriorated soil. Hazardous agents need to be cleaned from the soil to ensure sustainable environmental growth (Wasi et al. 2013). Bioremediation is known to be a natural process of gaining soil functioning back by using soil microorganisms and higher plants. These plants and microbe change bioavailability of metals and metalloids present in contaminated soil (Park et al. 2011). Soil remediation can be performed using aquatic as well as dominant terrestrial plants (Kumari et al. 2016).

Soil remediation can be obtained through biochar. Biochar is known to be a stable carbon rich by product which is synthesized as a result of pyrolysis or carbonization of plant and animal-based biomass (Ahmad et al. 2014; Barrow 2012). It has been observed that using biochar as a soil remediating agent helps in enhancing the emergence ability of seed and productivity of crop. It also increases nutrients in soil, soil water holding capacity, and microbial diversity. Biochar is also observed to possess properties which ameliorate the deteriorated soils (Anawar et al. 2015). The soil which has concentration of highly stable as well as mobile agrochemicals

including pesticides and herbicides can be remediated using biochar (Uchimiya et al. 2012). Biochar has been used to remediate the soils which are polluted both by heavy metal and organic pollutants. Further studies on biochar need consideration before its commercialization as remediating agent because it might have some negative effects on activity of pesticides and herbicides (Tang et al. 2013).

Bioremediation of lead- and cadmium-polluted soil can be performed by waste oyster shells. In this way, oyster shells can be used instead of wasting and soil can also be remediated. Shells contain large amounts of calcium carbonates which are healthy remediating agents. It is known that the polluted soil with lead and cadmium most of the times gets acidic. This acidic nature of soil can be cured by using basic calcium carbonate from oyster shells (Ok et al. 2011). Earthworm species including *A. molleri* can be used to bioremediate the soils which are polluted by herbicides like oxyfluorfen. These earthworms accumulate excessive herbicide and decrease its concentration in soil (Tejada et al. 2016). Petroleum hydrocarbon contaminants can easily be removed using cost-effective bioremediation technique. As it is known that major components of most of crude oil are biodegradable, hence they can easily be treated by bioremediation (Thapa et al. 2012).

Another method to enhance bioremediation is aerobic remediation of petroleum sludge. In this method microbial community composition of soil is changed to degrade petroleum compounds into organic compounds and release nutrients. It has been observed that populations of certain bacterial communities increase during bioremediation. Among these communities are Proteobacteria which are observed to be almost 50 % of the total bacterial population. Around 16.6 % *Firmicutes* were also present in this population. Hence, it can be said with ease that these organisms have role in bioremediation of petroleum sludge-polluted soil (Reddy et al. 2011). Soil polluted with heavy metals and radionuclides, organic compounds which include chlorinated solvents, for example, TCE, petroleum hydrocarbons, and atrazine pesticides, can be remediated with microorganisms (Das and Adholeya 2011).

5 Techniques Used in Bioremediation

Many techniques can be used for remediation of soil. Heavy metal remediation is the most important aspect of soil amelioration after pollution. Among the heavy metals, mercury is of serious concern because it may cause high toxicity even in small amounts. Soil mercury remediation can be performed using a large number of techniques which are named as stabilization/solidification (SS), phytovolatilization, immobilization, phytoextraction, vitrification, phytostabilization, thermal desorption, electro-remediation, nanotechnology, and soil washing (Wang et al. 2012). Research has explored that richness of plant species in soil and availability of wide variety of nutrients enhance the activity of plant soil microbes. This has an apparent effect on counteracting soil toxicity by heavy metals (Stefanowicz et al. 2012). Natural bioremediation potentials to get rid of soil pollution can be activated by a technique known as bioaugmentation (Sprocati et al. 2012).

5.1 Biostimulation

Diesel-polluted soil was remediated with Fenton combined with NPK (nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium) fertilizer. It has been observed that coupled treatment of Fenton and NPK fertilizers results in increased efficiency of soil to get rid of petroleum hydrocarbons. Percentage removal of petroleum hydrocarbons as a result of this treatment was measured to be 58 % as compared to natural attenuation which was 49 % in surface layer. Similarly removal of petroleum hydrocarbons from saturated layer and non-saturated layer was also enhanced. It has been observed that application of Fenton alone might reduce natural biodiversity of soil, but as it was accompanied with NPK fertilizer, hence no negative effects on biodiversity were observed. This biostimulation technique also enhances degrading microbiota of soil. This technique can be considered as an efficient technique to remediate hydrocarbon-polluted soils (Silva-Castro et al. 2013).

Biostimulation of crude oil-contaminated soil was performed using Fenton coupled with nitrilotriacetic acid in a ratio of 1:1. After 20 weeks of remediation, it was observed that soil in which Fenton was coupled with nitrilotriacetic acid had reduced the amount of the total petroleum hydrocarbons by up to 88.9 % as compared to 55.1 % which was the result of treatment only with Fenton (Gong 2012). In situ metal stabilization technique can be used to remediate the contaminated soil. Long-term stability of copper and arsenic in coal ash-polluted soil helps in regaining the soil functioning (Tsang et al. 2014).

5.2 Phytoremediation

Phytoremediation which is performed through phytoextraction as well as phytostabilization is considered to be a potent technology through which we can get rid of soil pollution. Soil quality can be restored by the use of remediation technologies (Olaniran et al. 2013). Metal hyper-accumulators are being explored to be used as phytoremediating agents. Phytoremediation is performed using plants and microflora (Ali et al. 2013; Farid et al. 2014). Dominant terrestrial plants which basically include ferns can be used for remediation of soil in a synergistic way. Contaminated wastelands can be restored using ferns (Kumari et al. 2016). Among different tree species, *Acacia auriculiformis*, *Vetiveria zizanoides*, *Albizia lebbeck*, *Cymbopogon flexuosus*, and *Dalbergia sissoo* are considered to be the best to improve physiochemical properties of soil. They not only remediate soil pollution caused by coal ash but also help in improving the functioning of soil (Srivastava et al. 2014). A study suggests that *Alhagi maurorum Desv* and *Tamarix* sp. are important plants which can help in remediation of polluted soil in coal ash landfill area (Pen-Mouratov et al. 2014).

Soils which are contaminated by heavy metals are very hard to restore. In this case phytoremediation can be performed using hyper-accumulators. Plants accumulate heavy metals, thus remediate the soil. It is one of the most successful and

environment-friendly approaches of modern era to get rid of soil heavy metal pollution by plants (Shakoor et al. 2013). Phytoremediation is the best-known alternative for conventional remediation technologies. It is not only cheap but also an efficient technique (Witters et al. 2012). Microbe-assisted phytoremediation helps in detoxifying harmful soil and restoring biodiversity of degraded land to a large extent. This technology termed as MAP can be applied to various lands deteriorated by metals, pesticides, and hydrocarbons (Juwarkar 2012).

Experiments have been conducted in cold regions. It has been seen that treatment of petroleum-polluted soils with native tree species and grasses is an effective way of phytoremediation. It not only remediates the soil but also promotes ecological recovery. Phytoremediation possesses long-term positive effects on soil (Leewis et al. 2013).

5.3 Mycoremediation

Mycoremediation is a technique in which mycorrhizal fungi are used to ameliorate the soil from pollution (Ali et al. 2015c). Mycoremediation is considered to be one of the most suited techniques for remediation of heavy metal-polluted soil. The use of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi has emerged as an interesting choice for remediation. This fungus helps in regaining soil potential by contributing to plant growth and nutrient acquisition. Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi help the plants to grow and develop in soils which are highly toxic with heavy metals because they accumulate these heavy metals themselves and hence promote remediation (Meier et al. 2012).

6 Conclusion and Future Prospects

Analysis of soil pollution is considered to be a prerequisite for ecological restoration and management of soil (Qian et al. 2012). In the developing regions, comprehensive assessment of soil metal pollution originating from municipalities, acid mine drainage, agricultural activities, and industries is required (Guillén et al. 2012). This will help in identification of recommended policies to mitigate pollution and save the environment (Li et al. 2014). Biochar can be produced from industrial wastes and domestic sewage to improve soil condition and help in enhancement of soil biodiversity. Research has to be done to use industrial wastes and sewage properly and convert them in useful substances (Paz-Ferreiro et al. 2012). There are many anthropogenic sources which cause important environmental risks. Remediation of polluted soil has been performed using physical and chemical methods, which are largely not suited due to operational costs and technical inputs involved (Tripathi et al. 2015). In future, appropriate measures need to be taken to control levels of heavy metals in cultivatable soil. This will in turn result in enhancement of life quality and human health (Zhao et al. 2011). In future, vermicomposting as a huge bioremediation technique can be performed.

Vermicomposting of municipal solid waste before it affects the soil can be a sustainable waste management option (Singh et al. 2011). Phytoremediation is a promising alternative for commercial soil cleanup technologies because it is cost-effective as well as efficient, but its use is limited because it takes long period for remediation of soil. Profitable phytoremediation strategy should be planned in which biofuel crops can be used to remediate the soil. In such a case, not only the soil will be remediated, but these crops will also produce increased levels of biofuels. Further research has to be done to grow biofuel crops on contaminated soil (Oh et al. 2013).

References

Ahmad M, Rajapaksha AU, Lim JE, Zhang M, Bolan N, Mohan D, Vithanage M, Lee SS, Ok YS (2014) Biochar as a sorbent for contaminant management in soil and water: a review. Chemosphere 99:19–33

Ali Z, Malik RN, Shinwari ZK and Qadir A (2015a) Enrichment, risk assessment and statistical apportionment of heavy metals in tannery-affected areas, International Journal of Environmental Science and Technology. 12(2): 537–550.

Ali Z, Malik RN, Gul A and Kazi AM (2015b) Taming Food Security through Wastewater Irrigation Practices. In: Munir Ozturk (ed.), Plants, Pollutants and Remediation, Springer Publishing, Netherlands, pp. 111–136.

Ali H, Khan E, Sajad MA (2013) Phytoremediation of heavy metals—concepts and applications. Chemosphere 91(7):869–881

Ali Z, Kazi AG, Naz M, Khan T, Hayat A, Kazi AM and Malik RN (2015c) Heavy Metal Built-Up in Agricultural Soils of Pakistan: Sources, Ecological Consequences, and Possible Remediation Measures. In: Irena Sherameti and Ajit Varma (ed.), Heavy Metal Contamination of Soils, Soil Biology Series 44, Springer International Publishing, Switzerland, pp. 23–42.

Anawar HM, Akter F, Solaiman ZM, Strezov V (2015) Biochar: an emerging panacea for remediation of soil contaminants from mining, industry and sewage wastes. Pedosphere 25(5):654–665

Barchanska H, Rusek M, Szatkowska A (2012) New procedures for simultaneous determination of mesotrione and atrazine in water and soil. Comparison of the degradation processes of mesotrione and atrazine. Environ Monitor Assess 184(1):321–334

Barrow CJ (2012) Biochar: potential for countering land degradation and for improving agriculture. Appl Geogr 34:21–28

Besalatpour A, Hajabbasi MA, Khoshgoftarmanesh AH, Dorostkar V (2011) Landfarming process effects on biochemical properties of petroleum-contaminated soils. Soil Sediment Contamin Int J 20(2):234–248

Bhagure GR, Mirgane SR (2011) Heavy metal concentrations in groundwaters and soils of Thane Region of Maharashtra, India. Environ Monitor Assess 173(1):643–652

Bhattacharya SS, Iftikhar W, Sahariah B, Chattopadhyay GN (2012) Vermicomposting converts fly ash to enrich soil fertility and sustain crop growth in red and lateritic soils. Resour Conserv Recycl 65:100–106

Cao S, Duan X, Zhao X, Ma J, Dong T, Huang N, Sun C, He B, Wei F (2014) Health risks from the exposure of children to As, Se, Pb and other heavy metals near the largest coking plant in China. Sci Total Environ 472:1001–1009

Damalas CA, Eleftherohorinos IG (2011) Pesticide exposure, safety issues, and risk assessment indicators. Int J Environ Res Public Health 8(5):1402–1419

Das M, Adholeya A (2011) Role of microorganisms in remediation of contaminated soil. In: Microorganisms in Environmental Management. Springer, Berlin, pp 81–111

Demirbas A (2011) Waste management, waste resource facilities and waste conversion processes. Energy Convers Manag 52(2):1280–1287
Dhal B, Thatoi HN, Das NN, Pandey BD (2013) Chemical and microbial remediation of hexavalent chromium from contaminated soil and mining/metallurgical solid waste: a review. J Hazard Mater 250–251:272–291
Epstein PR, Buonocore JJ, Eckerle K, Hendryx M, Stout BM, Heinberg R, Clapp RW, May B, Reinhart NL, Ahern MM, Doshi SK, Glustrom L (2011) Full cost accounting for the life cycle of coal. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1219:73–98
Farid M, Irshad M, Fawad M, Ali Z, Eneji AE, Aurangzeb N, Mohammad A and Ali B (2014) Effect of cyclic phytoremediation with different wetland plants on municipal wastewater, International Journal of Phytoremediation. 16(6): 572–581.
Farooqi A (2015) Status of As and F− Groundwater and Soil Pollution in Pakistan. In Arsenic and Fluoride Contamination (pp. 21–33). Springer India
Fernández-Caliani JC (2012) Risk-based assessment of multimetallic soil pollution in the industrialized peri-urban area of Huelva, Spain. Environ Geochem Health 34(1):123–139
Floch C, Chevremont A, Joanico K, Capowiez Y, Criquet S (2011) Indicators of pesticide contamination: soil enzyme compared to functional diversity of bacterial communities via Biolog® Ecoplates. Eur J Soil Biol 47(4):256–263
George J, Masto RE, Ram LC, Das TB, Rout TK, Mohan M (2015) Human exposure risks for metals in soil near a coal-fired power-generating plant. Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 68(3):451–461
Gómez-Sagasti MT, Alkorta I, Becerril JM, Epelde L, Anza M, Garbisu C (2012) Microbial monitoring of the recovery of soil quality during heavy metal phytoremediation. Water Air Soil Pollut 223(6):3249–3262
Gong X (2012) Remediation of weathered petroleum oil-contaminated soil using a combination of biostimulation and modified Fenton oxidation. Int Biodeterioration Biodegradation 70:89–95
Guillén MT, Delgado J, Albanese S, Nieto JM, Lima A, De Vivo B (2012) Heavy metals fractionation and multivariate statistical techniques to evaluate the environmental risk in soils of Huelva Township (SW Iberian Peninsula). J Geochem Explor 119–120:32–43
Gunawardena J, Egodawatta P, Ayoko GA, Goonetilleke A (2012) Role of traffic in atmospheric accumulation of heavy metals and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Atmos Environ 54:502–510
Hani A, Pazira E (2011) Heavy metals assessment and identification of their sources in agricultural soils of Southern Tehran, Iran. Environ Monitor Assess 176(1):677–691
Hartley TN, Macdonald AJ, McGrath SP, Zhao F (2013) Historical arsenic contamination of soil due to long-term phosphate fertiliser applications. Environ Pollut 180:259–264
Hu Y, Qi S, Zhang J, Tan L, Zhang J, Wang Y, Yuan D (2011) Assessment of organochlorine pesticides contamination in underground rivers in Chongqing, Southwest China. J Geochem Explor 111(1–2):47–55
Hu Y, Liu X, Bai J, Shih K, Zeng EY, Cheng H (2013) Assessing heavy metal pollution in the surface soils of a region that had undergone three decades of intense industrialization and urbanization. Environ Sci Pollut Res Int 20(9):6150–6159
Jin X, You S (2015) Soil pollution of abandoned tailings in one zinc antimony mine and heavy metal accumulation characteristics of dominant plants. International conference on materials, environmental and biological engineering. Atlantis Press, pp 500–504
Juwarkar AA (2012) Microbe-assisted phytoremediation for restoration of biodiversity of degraded lands: a sustainable solution. PNAS 82(2):313–318
Kabir E, Ray S, Kim K, Yoon H, Jeon E, Kim YS, Cho Y, Yun S, Brown RJC (2012). Current status of trace metal pollution in soils affected by industrial activities. Scientific World J. Article ID 916705
Kiliç GA (2011) Histopathological and biochemical alterations of the earthworm (Lumbricus Terrestris) as biomarker of soil pollution along Porsuk River Basin (Turkey). Chemosphere 83(8):1175–1180

Kodom K, Preko K, Boamah D (2012) X-ray fluorescence (XRF) analysis of soil heavy metal pollution from an industrial area in Kumasi, Ghana. Soil Sediment Contamin Int J 21(8):1006–1021

Kumari A, Lal B, Rai UN (2016) Assessment of native plant species for phytoremediation of heavy metals growing in the vicinity of NTPC sites, Kahalgaon, India. Int J Phytoremediation

Ladislas S, El-Mufleh A, Gérente C, Chazarenc F, Andrés Y, Béchet B (2012) Potential of aquatic macrophytes as bioindicators of heavy metal pollution in urban stormwater runoff. Water Air Soil Pollut 223(2):877–888

Leewis M, Peynolds CM, Leigh MB (2013) Long-term effects of nutrient addition and phytoremediation on diesel and crude oil contaminated soils in subarctic Alaska. Cold Reg Sci Technol 96:129–137

Li J, Lu Y, Shi Y, Wang T, Wang G, Luo W, Jiao W, Chen C, Yan F (2011) Environmental pollution by persistent toxic substances and health risk in an industrial area of China. J Environ Sci 23(8):1359–1367

Li Z, Ma Z, van der Kuijp TJ, Yuan Z, Huang L (2014) A review of soil heavy metal pollution from mines in China: pollution and health risk assessment. Sci Total Environ 468–469:843–853

Liu X, Song Q, Tang Y, Li W, Xu J, Wu J, Wang F, Brookes PC (2013) Human health risk assessment of heavy metals in soil–vegetable system: a multi-medium analysis. Sci Total Environ 463–464:530–540

Luo C, Liu C, Wang Y, Liu X, Li F, Zhang G, Li X (2011) Heavy metal contamination in soils and vegetables near an e-waste processing site, south China. J Hazard Mater 186(1):481–490

Luo X, Ding J, Xu B, Wang Y, Li H, Yu S (2012) Incorporating bioaccessibility into human health risk assessments of heavy metals in urban park soils. Sci Total Environ 424:88–96

Machender G, Dhakate R, Rao GT, Loukya G, Reddy MN (2013) Assessment of trace element contamination in soils around Chinnaeru River Basin, Nalgonda District, India. Environ Earth Sci 70(3):1021–1037

Meier S, Borie F, Bolan N, Cornejo P (2012) Phytoremediation of metal-polluted soils by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Crit Rev Environ Sci Technol 42(7):741–775

Mireles F, Davila JI, Pinedo JL, Reyes E, Speakman RJ, Glascock MD (2012) Assessing urban soil pollution in the cities of Zacatecas and Guadalupe. Mexico by instrumental neutron activation analysis. Microchem J 103:158–164

Mishra K, Sharma RC, Kumar S (2012) Contamination levels and spatial distribution of organochlorine pesticides in soils from India. Ecotoxicol Environ Safety 76:215–225

Oh K, Li T, Cheng H, Hu X, He C, Yan L, Shinichi Y (2013) Development of profitable phytoremediation of contaminated soils with biofuel crops. J Environ Prot 4(4A). Article ID:30858

Ok YS, Lim JE, Moon DH (2011) Stabilization of Pb and Cd contaminated soils and soil quality improvements using waste oyster shells. Environ Geochem Health 33(1):83–91

Olaniran AO, Balgobind A, Pillay B (2013) Bioavailability of heavy metals in soil: impact on microbial biodegradation of organic compounds and possible improvement strategies. Int J Mol Sci 14(5):10197–10228

Park JH, Lamb D, Paneerselvam P, Choppala G, Bolan N, Chung J (2011) Role of organic amendments on enhanced bioremediation of heavy metal(loid) contaminated soils. J Hazard Mater 185(2–3):549–574

Paz-Ferreiro J, Gascó G, Gutiérrez B, Méndez A (2012) Soil biochemical activities and the geometric mean of enzyme activities after application of sewage sludge and sewage sludge biochar to soil. Biol Fertil Soils 48(5):511–517

Pen-Mouratov S, Shukurov N, Yu J, Rakhmonkulova S, Kodirov O, Barness G, Kersten M, Steinberger Y (2014) Successive development of soil ecosystems at abandoned coal-ash landfills. Ecotoxicology 23(5):880–897

Qian W, Ning D, YingJin S (2012) Comparison between sequential Gaussian simulation and kriging interpolation on soil heavy metal pollution. Agric Sci Technol 13(3):561–564

Qiao M, Cai C, Huang Y, Liu Y, Lin A, Zheng Y (2011) Characterization of soil heavy metal contamination and potential health risk in metropolitan region of northern China. Environ Monitor Assess 172(1):353–365

Rahman SH, Khanam D, Adyel TM, Islam MS, Ahsan MA, Akbor MA (2012) Assessment of heavy metal contamination of agricultural soil around Dhaka Export Processing Zone (DEPZ), Bangladesh: implication of seasonal variation and indices. Appl Sci 2(3):584–601

Reddy MV, Devi MP, Chandrasekhar K, Goud RK, Mohan SV (2011) Aerobic remediation of petroleum sludge through soil supplementation: microbial community analysis. J Hazard Mater 197:80–87

Shakoor MB, Ali S, Farid M, Farooq MA, Tauqeer HM, Iftikhar U, Hannan F, Bharwana SA (2013) Heavy metal pollution, a global problem and its remediation by chemically enhanced phytoremediation: a review. J Bidivers Environ Sci 3(3):12–20

Silva-Castro GA, Rodelas B, Perucha C, Laguna J, González-López J, Calvo C (2013) Bioremediation of diesel-polluted soil using biostimulation as post-treatment after oxidation with Fenton-like reagents: assays in a pilot plant. Sci Total Environ 445–446:347–355

Singh RP, Singh P, Araujo ASF, Ibrahim MH, Sulaiman O (2011) Management of urban solid waste: vermicomposting a sustainable option. Resour Conserv Recycl 55(7):719–729

Sprocati AR, Alisi C, Tasso F, Marconi P, Sciullo A, Pinto V, Chiavarini S, Ubaldi C, Cramisini C (2012) Effectiveness of a microbial formula, as a bioaugmentation agent, tailored for bioremediation of diesel oil and heavy metal co-contaminated soil. Process Biochem 47(11):1649–1655

Srivastava NK, Ram LC, Masto RE (2014) Reclamation of overburden and lowland in coal mining area with fly ash and selective plantation: a sustainable ecological approach. Ecol Eng 71:479–489

Stefanowicz AM, Kapusta P, Szarek-Lukaszewska G, Grodzinska K, Niklinska M, Vogt RD (2012) Soil fertility and plant diversity enhance microbial performance in metal-polluted soils. Sci Total Environ 439:211–219

Sun B, Zhang L, Yang L, Zhang F, Norse D, Zhu Z (2012) Agricultural non-point source pollution in china: causes and mitigation measures. Ambio 41(4):370–379

Sun R, Sonke JE, Heimbürger L-E, Belkin HE, Liu G, Shome D, Cukrowska E, Liousse C, Pokrowsky OS, Streets DG (2014) Mercury stable isotope signatures of world coal deposits and historical coal combustion emissions. Environ Sci Technol 48(13):7660–7668

Syed JH, Malik RN, Liu D, Xu Y, Wang Y, Li J, Zhang G, Jones KC (2013) Organochlorine pesticides in air and soil and estimated air–soil exchange in Punjab, Pakistan. Sci Total Environ 444:491–497

Tang J, Wang M, Wang F, Sun Q, Zhou Q (2011) Eco-toxicity of petroleum hydrocarbon contaminated soil. J Environ Sci 23(5):845–851

Tang J, Zhu W, Kookana R, Katayama A (2013) Characteristics of biochar and its application in remediation of contaminated soil. J Biosci Bioeng 116(6):653–659

Tejada M, Gómez I, Franco-Andreu L, Benitez C (2016) Role of different earthworms in a soil polluted with oxyfluorfen herbicide. Short-time response on soil biochemical properties. Ecol Eng 86:39–44

Thapa B, Kumar AKC, Ghimire A (2012) A review on bioremediation of petroleum hydrocarbon contaminants in soil. Kathmandu Univ J Sci 8(1):164–170

Thiele-Bruhn S, Bloem J, de Vries FT, Kalbitz K, Wagg C (2012) Linking soil biodiversity and agricultural soil management. Curr Opin Environ Sustain 4(5):523–528

Tian H, Cheng K, Wang Y, Zhao D, Lu L, Jia W, Hao J (2012) Temporal and spatial variation characteristics of atmospheric emissions of Cd, Cr, and Pb from coal in China. Atmos Environ 50:157–163

Tripathi V, Fraceto LF, Abhilash PC (2015) Sustainable clean-up technologies for soils contaminated with multiple pollutants: plant-microbe-pollutant and climate nexus. Ecol Eng 82:330–335

Tsang DC, Yip ACK, Olds WE, Weber PA (2014) Arsenic and copper stabilisation in a contaminated soil by coal fly ash and green waste compost. Environ Sci Pollut Res 21(17):10194–10204

Uchimiya M, Wartelle LH, Boddu VM (2012) Sorption of triazine and organophosphorus pesticides on soil and biochar. J Agric Food Chem 60(12):2989–2997

Van Toan P, Sebesvari Z, Bläsing M, Rosendahl I, Renaud FG (2013) Pesticide management and their residues in sediments and surface and drinking water in the Mekong Delta. Vietnam Sci Total Environ 452–453:28–39

Verma SK, Singh K, Gupta AK, Pandey VC, Trivedi P, Verma RK, Patra DD (2014) Aromatic grasses for phytomanagement of coal fly ash hazards. Ecol Eng 73:425–428

Wahsha M, Bini C, Fornasier F, Al-Rshaidat MMD (2013) The utility of a consortium of microbial enzymes as an early warning tool for monitoring soil pollution with heavy metals. Marine Science Station, University of Jordan, Aqaba Section, Jordan. id. EGU2013-10631

Wang J, Feng X, Anderson CWN, Xing Y, Shang L (2012) Remediation of mercury contaminated sites – a review. J Hazard Mater 221–222:1–18

Wang X, Miao Y, Zhang Y, Li Y, Wu M, Yu G (2013) Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) in urban soils of the megacity Shanghai: occurrence, source apportionment and potential human health risk. Sci Total Environ 447:80–89

Wang B, Xia D, Yu Y, Jia J, Xu S (2014) Detection and differentiation of pollution in urban surface soils using magnetic properties in arid and semi-arid regions of northwestern China. Environ Pollut 184:335–346

Wasi S, Tabrez S, Ahmad M (2013) Toxicological effects of major environmental pollutants: an overview. Environ Monitor Assess 185(3):2585–2593

Witters N, Mendelsohn R, Van Passel S, Van Slycken S, Weyens N, Schreurs E, Meers E, Tack F, Vanheusden B, Vangronsveld J (2012) Phytoremediation, a sustainable remediation technology? II: economic assessment of CO_2 abatement through the use of phytoremediation crops for renewable energy production. Biomass Bioenergy 39:470–477

Xiao T, Yang F, Li S, Zheng B, Ning Z (2012) Thallium pollution in China: a geo-environmental perspective. Sci Total Environ 421–422:51–58

Yaylali-Abanuz G (2011) Heavy metal contamination of surface soil around Gebze industrial area, Turkey. Microchem J 99(1):82–92

Zhang X, Yang L, Li Y, Li H, Wang W, Ye B (2012) Impacts of lead/zinc mining and smelting on the environment and human health in China. Environ Monit Assess 184(4):2261–2273

Zhao H, Wang L, Liu Z, Wei J, Wang Y, Jiang L, Dong L, Zhang Y (2011) Analysis of heavy metal sources for vegetable soils from Shandong Province, China. Agric Sci China 10(1):109–119

Zhao H, Xia B, Fan C, Zhao P, Shen S (2012) Human health risk from soil heavy metal contamination under different land uses near Dabaoshan Mine, Southern China. Sci Total Environ 417–418:45–54

Zhao L, Xu Y, Hou H, Shangguan Y, Li F (2014a) Source identification and health risk assessment of metals in urban soils around the Tanggu chemical industrial district, Tianjin, China. Sci Total Environ 468–469:654–662

Zhao XR, Nasier T, Cheng YY, Zhan JY, Yang JH (2014b) Environmental geochemical baseline of heavy metals in soils of the Ili river basin and pollution evaluation. Huan Jing Ke Xue 35(6):2392–2400

ERRATUM TO

Plant, Soil and Microbes
Volume 2: Mechanisms and Molecular Interactions

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.)

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2

DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_19

The spelling of the second editor, Mohd Sayeed Akthar's name was incorrect in the Table of contents and Chapter opening pages of chapters 4 and 7. The name should read as Mohd Sayeed Akhtar.

The online version of the original book can be found at
http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2

K.R. Hakeem, M.S. Akhtar (eds.), *Plant, Soil and Microbes*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-29573-2_19